



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Phar & Swigg  
125 Oxford St H. 29  
Cambridge  
Massachusetts

Harvard College  
Library

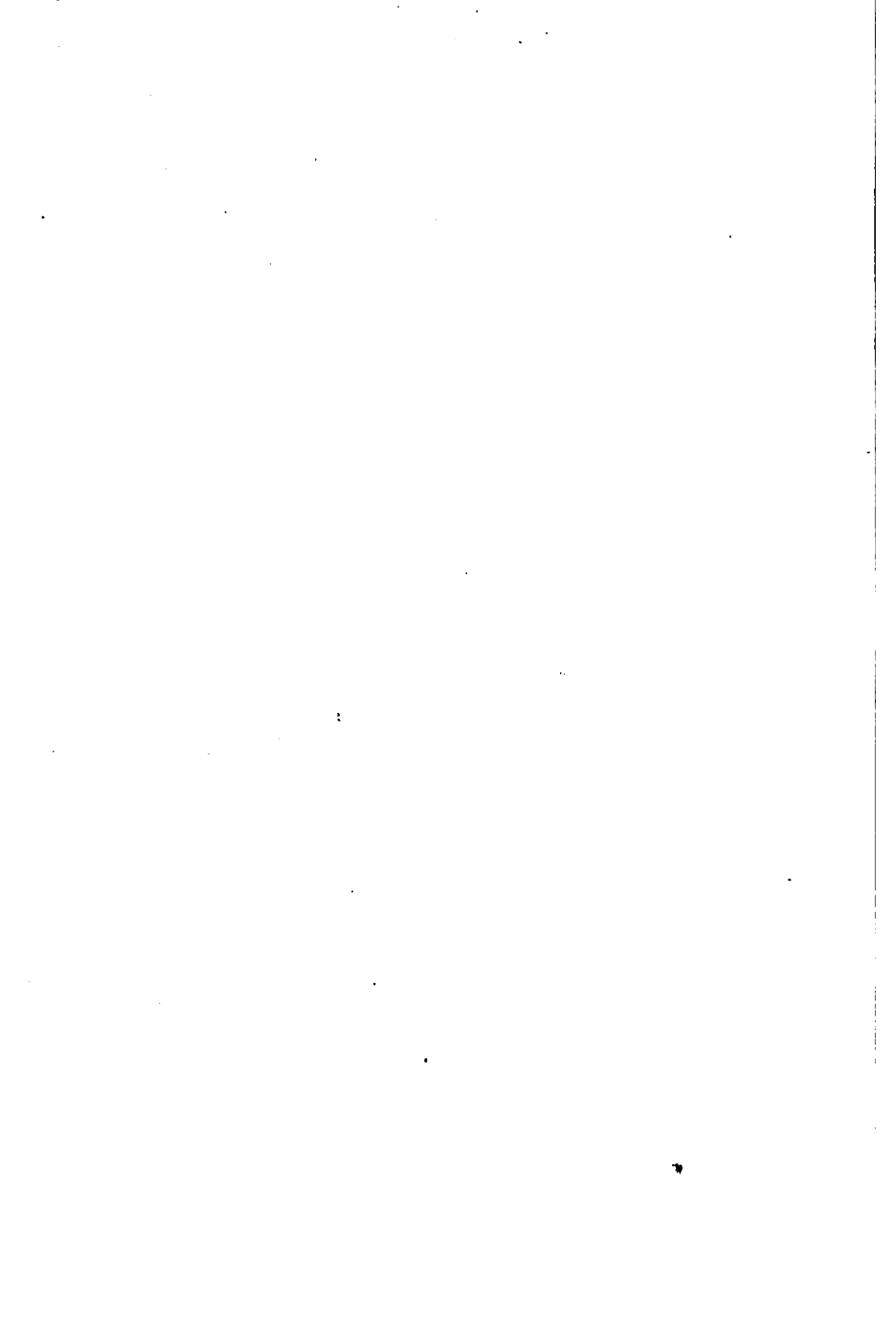


Gratis



3 2044 102 849 676

TUT  
~~87~~  
~~1~~  
9K



**GREEK SERIES FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS**

**EDITED**

**UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF**

**HERBERT WEIR SMYTH, Ph.D.**

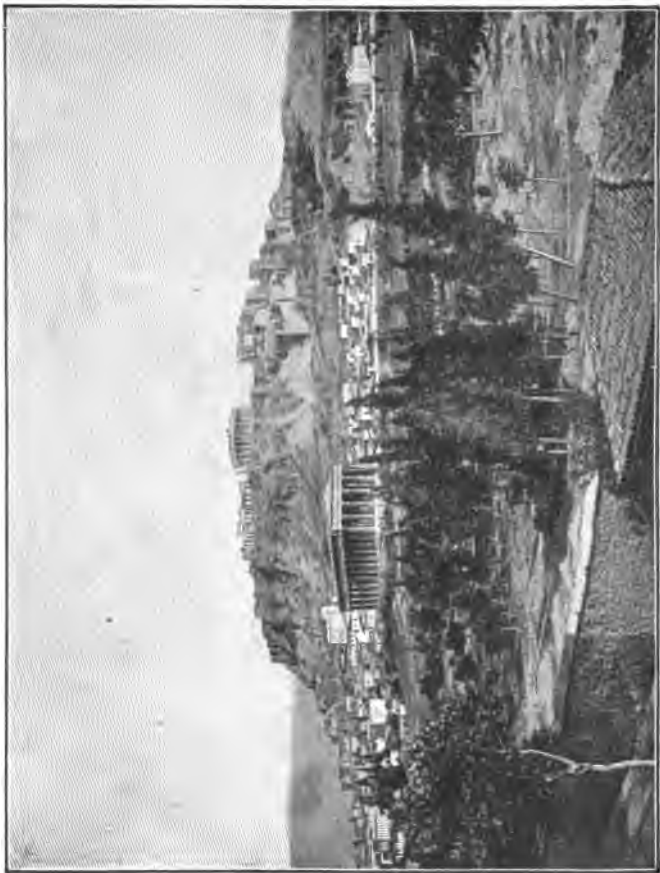
**ELIOT PROFESSOR OF GREEK LITERATURE IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY**

## VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

- GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.** By the Editor, Prof. Herbert Weir Smyth.
- GREEK GRAMMAR FOR COLLEGES.** By the Editor, Prof. Herbert Weir Smyth.
- BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK.** Prof. Allen R. Benner, Phillips Academy, Andover; and the Editor.
- BRIEF GREEK SYNTAX.** Prof. Louis Bevier, Jr., Rutgers College.
- GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR SCHOOLS.** Clarence W. Gleason, Volkmann School, Boston.
- GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR COLLEGES.** Prof. Edward H. Spieker, Johns Hopkins University.
- AESCHYLUS. PROMETHEUS.** Prof. J. E. Harry, University of Cincinnati.
- ARISTOPHANES. CLOUDS.** Dr. L. L. Forman, Cornell University.
- DEMOSTHENES. ON THE CROWN.** Prof. Milton W. Humphreys, University of Virginia.
- EURIPIDES. IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS.** Prof. William N. Bates, University of Pennsylvania.
- EURIPIDES. MEDEA.** Prof. Mortimer Lamson Earle, Columbia University.
- HERODOTUS. BOOKS VII.-VIII.** Prof. Charles Forster Smith and Prof. Arthur Gordon Laird, University of Wisconsin.
- HOMER. ILIAD.** Prof. J. R. S. Sterrett, Cornell University.  
BOOKS I.-III. BOOKS I.-III. AND SELECTIONS.
- LYSIAS.** Prof. Charles D. Adams, Dartmouth College.
- PLATO. APOLOGY AND CRITO.** Prof. Isaac Flagg, University of California.
- PLATO. EUTHYPHRO.** Prof. William A. Heidel, Wesleyan University.
- THUCYDIDES. BOOKS II.-III.** Prof. W. A. Lamberton, University of Pennsylvania.
- XENOPHON. ANABASIS. BOOKS I.-IV.** Dr. M. W. Mather, Instructor in Harvard University, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University.
- XENOPHON. HELLENICA (Selections).** Prof. Carleton L. Brownson, College of the City of New York.
- GREEK ARCHAEOLOGY.** Prof. Harold N. Fowler, Western Reserve University, and Prof. James R. Wheeler, Columbia University.
- GREEK LITERATURE.** Dr. Wilmer Cave Wright, Bryn Mawr College.
- GREEK RELIGION.** Arthur Fairbanks, Ph.D., Litt.D., Director of the Boston Museum of Fine Arts.
- GREEK SCULPTURE.** Prof. Rufus B. Richardson, formerly Director of the American School of Classical Studies, Athens.







THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS.  
(The "Theseum" in the foreground.)

# BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK

BY

ALLEN ROGERS BENNER

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN PHILLIPS ACADEMY, ANDOVER

AND

HERBERT WEIR SMYTH, Ph.D.

ELIOT PROFESSOR OF GREEK LITERATURE IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Edue T 1119.06.200  
v



*lists*

COPYRIGHT, 1906, BY  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

---

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK.

W. P. 15

## PREFATORY SUGGESTIONS

THIS book contains all the grammar that is needed by beginners in the first year of Greek. It is not at all designed, however, to restrict or to replace the use of a larger Greek Grammar in connection with the study of the *Anabasis* and of Homer. Experience has shown that the systematic (but not merely mechanical) study of grammar is indispensable throughout the preparatory course if the student is to deal successfully with the authors commonly read at a more advanced stage of his education. With the view, therefore, that the larger grammar will be used by the student after his first year, the makers of this book have felt free to limit its contents to the strict essentials of the language. The result has been to eliminate some matters that are usually found in books intended for beginners.

It has been found possible, and in fact advisable, to omit altogether the paradigms of certain infrequent words. Such are nouns and adjectives of the "Attic second declension," rare contract nouns like *ὄσπουν*, and, in particular, the adjectives *χαρλεύς* and *μέλας*. While adjectives in *-εις*, *-εσσα*, *-εν* are usual in Homer, *χαρλεύς* alone is relatively common in standard Attic prose, but even there the form *χαρλέσσα* (and *not χαρλέττα*) shows that the word was poetic in character. Of *χαρλεύς* there is but one occurrence in the *Anabasis* (iii. 5. 12). A similar case is presented by *μέλας*, which occurs twice in the same work (iv. 5. 13, iv. 5. 15). The only other adjective which is declined like

*μέλας*, namely the poetic *τάλας*, does not occur in the *Anabasis* at all. It is obviously inadvisable to impede the beginner's progress by requiring him to memorize paradigms of these and similar words.

In the case of some words which are generally required of beginners, opinions may justly differ. Such words, if omitted from the Lessons of this book, are printed in the Summary of Forms (after the Lessons), out of deference to the opinion of teachers who may wish to use them. The list includes *ναῦς*, omitted from the Lessons with some hesitation; also *κέρας*, *Ἡρακλῆς*, *Ζεὺς*, the verb *κάθημαι*, and one word not found in the *Anabasis*, *νεᾶνιᾶς* (for which *Ξενιᾶς* is substituted in the paradigms of Lesson XII).

The retention of the dual number in the paradigms may be thought inconsistent with the design of a simple book, particularly as first-rate books, like Kaegi's *Kurzgefasste griechische Schulgrammatik*, regularly omit the dual from the paradigms proper. In this book the dual has been retained out of respect to a widespread opinion among American teachers, that since the dual is needed for the study of Homer, it is most economically memorized at the outset. Those teachers, however, who prefer to omit the forms of the dual may readily do so, inasmuch as no instances of its use have been introduced into the exercises.

Regarding the development of the forms of the verb, special attention is called to the fact that the most frequent tenses as well as the tenses adapted to initial study are the present (and imperfect), future, and aorist. Only after these have been in some degree mastered are the perfect tenses introduced in the Lessons.<sup>1</sup> And the per-

<sup>1</sup> Regard to the symmetrical development of the subject has caused the introduction of the comparatively uncommon future passive before the perfect is taken up.

fect itself is much simplified by the omission of some forms which are commonly given in the Grammars (e.g. *λελύκω, λελύκοιμι*), but which rarely occur in the reading of most students. Attention is also called to the early introduction of infinitives and participles and of compound verbs. In the first fifty Lessons the prefix of a compound verb is regularly separated from the verb proper by a hyphen.

In matters of syntax the rule of the Editors has been to give early preference to the most common idioms as far as is possible in a book where precedence must obviously be given to the development of forms. In determining questions of the relative frequency of syntactical usages, the exhaustive work of Joost (*Sprachgebrauch Xenophons in der Anabasis*) has been of great assistance, and the placing of several usages has been settled by it. The Editors wish also to make mention of Bennett and Bristol's manual on *The Teaching of Latin and Greek in the Secondary School*, which they have found suggestive as to the presentation of both forms and syntax.

Certain constructions that are shown by Joost to be comparatively rare in the *Anabasis* are omitted from the Lessons. *φθάνω* with the participle will serve as an example, a construction regularly set before beginners and invariably difficult to them. Yet this construction occurs but four times in the seven books of the *Anabasis*, and in the first four books only twice (i. 3. 14, iii. 4. 49). Further, these instances are regularly explained, where they occur, in the notes of our best American editions.

A glance at the Table of Contents will show the early prominence given to certain important constructions.

It is suggested that the teacher should not assign the whole Introduction at the outset, but only such parts of

it as are immediately necessary, particularly the alphabet and the subjects of pronunciation and accent. The arrangement in Lessons or Chapters is solely for convenience, to mark divisions of the subject where exercises may properly be introduced. One class may do a whole Chapter, another class may do no more than half a Chapter, for a day's lesson. The ability of the class will therefore determine the length of the lessons, which should be assigned by the numbered sections.

The vocabularies contain only such words as are used by Xenophon, with preference given to the commoner words of the *Anabasis*.

The exercises for translation from English into Greek have been made short designedly. For it is desirable that the teacher should have the class turn the English rendering of the Greek sentences themselves back into Greek without the aid of the book, — an unexcelled method of teaching this part of the subject. Teachers who so desire may omit some sentences if time fails for all. Lessons L to LX have been specially arranged so that the second division of each exercise may be omitted altogether, or may be taken up in connection with review work.

On the completion of the sixty Lessons, the student should be able to translate, without much difficulty, simple Attic prose. Many students will be found competent to begin at once the first Book of Xenophon's *Anabasis*. But if, in the judgment of the teacher, the class is not ripe for this work, a simplified text of the *Anabasis* will make the transition from the Beginner's Book easier.

For the use of such teachers and classes there have been provided the simplified Selections from the *Anabasis* which follow the Greek Lessons in this book. It is hoped that they are so remote from the introductory chapters of

the *Anabasis* as not utterly to spoil the freshness of Xenophon's narrative when the student takes up the original work. On the other hand, they are passages that will well stand re-reading when the student meets them again. All the new words that occur in the Selections will be found in the Vocabulary.

The directions about Greek pronunciation in §§ 1 and 22 are for practical use. As a matter of fact, they are not designed to reproduce, in every particular, the pronunciation of Greek current in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C., — partly because we do not know how every letter was then sounded, and partly because some of the known sounds are too difficult for beginners. Pedantry in pronunciation is an abomination; but every teacher should be at least familiar with the fact that, while most of the pronunciations recommended in this book are approximately those of the period from Pericles to Demosthenes, certain others are distinctly later and concessions to established usage.

Thus a divergence between the ancient and the modern practice of pronunciation is illustrated by the sounds  $\phi$ ,  $\chi$ , and  $\theta$ . These letters were anciently pronounced respectively as *ph* in 'upheaval,' *kh* in 'backhand,' and *th* in 'hothouse'; in Greek, however, both sounds occur in the same syllable. When two aspirates ( $\phi$ ,  $\chi$ ,  $\theta$ ) came together, probably only one *h* (the second) was heard; thus,  $\delta\phi\theta\omicron\gamma\omicron\varsigma$  was pronounced  $\delta\pi\theta\omicron\gamma\omicron\varsigma$  ( $\delta\pi\tau\acute{o}\gamma\gamma\omicron\varsigma$ ). Probably not until after 300 A.D. were  $\phi$ ,  $\chi$ , and  $\theta$  pronounced as in 'Philip,' German 'ach,' and 'theater.' The latter are the sounds in modern Greek.  $\zeta$  was probably sounded *sd*, though there is some evidence that it was sounded as *ds*; in Hellenistic times it certainly was equivalent to *s* in 'seal,' and is so sounded in modern Greek.



Short *a*, *i*, *υ* differed in sound from the long *a*, *i*, *υ* only in being less prolonged. The vowel *ε* was evidently sounded like French *é*, as in *bonté*. *ω* was not diphthongal like English *ō* (i.e. *o* with a vanishing *u* sound), but rather like *o* in the French *encore*. Greek *ο* was sounded like *o* in French *mot*.

The teacher is urged to make every effort to preserve the proper quantity, which is often disregarded in American pronunciation of Greek; special care is required to prevent an *accented* vowel from being sounded as long when it is short; e.g. *φίλος* may easily be mispronounced *fēlos*, instead of *filos*.

These Lessons are the result of considerable experience in teaching Greek to beginners; and each section has been tested in the class room before it was incorporated in this book.

The Editors gratefully acknowledge the criticisms which they have received from Mr. Horace M. Poynter of Phillips Academy and Mr. Louis E. Lord of Oberlin College, who have read the proof sheets of the Lessons.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction: the alphabet of Attic Greek; pronunciation; accent; Greek words in English; classification of consonants (mutes and liquids); elision; crasis; aspiration; -ν movable; punctuation marks; number; gender; case; voice; mood; tense . . . . .	17
<b>LESSON</b>	
I. Present indicative and infinitive of ω-verbs in the active voice. Recessive accent . . . . .	29
II. Declension of o-stems. Common constructions. Article as possessive pronoun . . . . .	31
III. Declension of o-stems ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	34
IV. Declension of o-stems ( <i>continued and reviewed</i> ). Nouns and adjectives declined together. Attributive position. Predicate position. Attributive phrases. Agreement of verb with neuter plural subject. Position of possessive genitive . . . . .	37
V. Imperfect indicative of ω-verbs in the active voice. Augment. Second aorist indicative and infinitive of ω-verbs in the active voice. Article with name of person . . . . .	40
VI. Declension of ā-stems. Nominatives in -η. Infinitive used as object of verbs meaning <i>wish, command</i> , etc. . . . .	45
VII. Present indicative and infinitive of ελυ I am. Enclitics. Simple conditions. Predicate substantive without article . . . . .	48
VIII. Simple sentences in indirect discourse after verbs of <i>saying</i> (φησι and εφη) and <i>thinking</i> . Dative with adjectives . . . . .	51
IX. Declension of ā-stems ( <i>continued</i> ). Nominatives in -ā. Review of adjectives of the o- and ā-declensions. Adjectives of two endings in -ος, -ον. Dative of possession . . . . .	54
X. Some pronouns: αὐτός, meanings and uses; ἄλλος, ὅς. Possessive adjectives. Compound verbs. Rules of euphony (applying to σύν and ἐν in composition). Agreement of relative. Dative with compounds . . . . .	58
XI. Declension of ā-stems ( <i>continued</i> ). Nominatives in -ᾶ. Instrumental dative ( <i>means</i> and <i>manner</i> ). Accusative of extent of time or space. Article with name of country . . . . .	63

LESSON		PAGE
XII.	Declension of $\bar{a}$ -stems ( <i>continued</i> ). Masculines in $-ης$ and $-\bar{a}s$ . Clauses of result. . . . .	66
XIII.	Future indicative and infinitive of $\omega$ -verbs in the active voice. Rules of writing and euphony (applying to mute themes): mutes before <i>sigma</i> . Genitive of time. Future infinitive in indirect discourse and after $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\lambda\omega$ . . . . .	69
XIV.	First aorist indicative and infinitive of $\omega$ -verbs in the active voice. $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\lambda$ and $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\eta$ meaning <i>when</i> with imperfect or aorist indicative. . . . .	72
XV.	The demonstrative pronouns. Uses of the demonstratives. Predicate position of the demonstratives. Name of river in attributive position. Partitive genitive. Dative of time. Cognate accusative . . . . .	75
XVI.	General review. Summary of previous vocabularies. Alpha privative . . . . .	80
XVII.	Consonant declension. Stems ending in a mute (palatal or labial). $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\sigma$ in predicate position . . . . .	83
XVIII.	Consonant declension ( <i>continued</i> ). Stems ending in a mute (lingual). Genitive of separation . . . . .	87
XIX.	Declension of present, future, and aorist active participles of the $\omega$ -verb. Declension of $\acute{\omega}\nu$ . Attributive participles. Substantive participles. Circumstantial participles of time, cause, etc. Supplementary participles with $\tau\upsilon\chi\acute{\alpha}\nu\omega$ . . . . .	91
XX.	Consonant declension ( <i>continued</i> ). Stems ending in a liquid. Declension of adjectives in $-\omega\nu$ , $-\sigma\nu$ . Infinitive with $\delta\epsilon\acute{\iota}$ , $\chi\rho\eta$ , $\acute{\epsilon}\xi\epsilon\sigma\tau\iota\nu$ , etc. . . . .	98
XXI.	Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ). The interrogative $\tau\iota s$ . The indefinite $\tau\iota s$ . The indefinite relative $\delta\sigma\tau\iota s$ . The predicate genitive. Infinitive with $\acute{\alpha}\nu\acute{\alpha}\gamma\kappa\eta$ and $\acute{\omega}\rho\bar{\alpha}$ . . . . .	102
XXII.	The subjunctive (present and aorist) active of $\omega$ -verbs. Tenses of the subjunctive. More vivid future conditions. Warning future conditions. Purpose clauses. Hortatory subjunctive . . . . .	105
XXIII.	Present subjunctive of $\epsilon\lambda\mu\iota$ . Uses of the subjunctive ( <i>contin-</i> <i>ued</i> ). Conditional relative sentences: more vivid future . . . . .	110
XXIV.	The optative (present, future, and aorist) active of $\omega$ -verbs. Tenses of the optative. Simple sentences in indirect dis- course after verbs that take $\delta\tau\iota$ or $\acute{\omega}s$ <i>that</i> . . . . .	113
XXV.	Present optative of $\epsilon\lambda\mu\iota$ . Uses of the optative ( <i>continued</i> ). Potential optative. Less vivid future conditions. Purpose clauses in the secondary sequence . . . . .	118

# CONTENTS

13

LESSON	PAGE
XXVI. Consonant declension ( <i>continued</i> ). Stems ending in <i>sigma</i> . Adjectives of two endings with stems in <i>-σ</i> . Potential optative in indirect discourse. Genitive of measure. Accusative of specification . . . . .	120
XXVII. Declension of stems ending in <i>iota</i> or <i>upsilon</i> (included under the consonant declension). Adverbial accusative. Attraction of the relative . . . . .	126
XXVIII. Adjectives of the consonant declension and <i>ā</i> -declension combined. Declension of <i>ἡδύς</i> and <i>πᾶς</i> . Nouns with stems in <i>-εῦ</i> or <i>-ου</i> . Omission of the copula. <i>βασιλεύς</i> without the article. <i>πᾶς</i> in predicate position, etc. . . . .	129
XXIX. The imperative active of <i>ω</i> -verbs. Imperative of <i>εἰμὶ</i> . Tenses of the imperative. Declension of <i>ἐγώ</i> and <i>σύ</i> . Uses of personal pronouns. Accent of successive enclitics. Predicate position of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Prohibitions. <i>ἐπεὶ</i> and <i>ὅτι</i> causal . . . . .	133
XXX. The present middle system of <i>ω</i> -verbs. Meanings of the middle voice. Deponent verbs. Dative of association . . . . .	138
XXXI. Syncopated nouns. Dative of respect . . . . .	142
XXXII. The second aorist middle and the future middle systems of <i>ω</i> -verbs. Future system of <i>εἰμὶ</i> . Future participle expressing purpose. <i>ὥς</i> with future participle. Infinitive with adjectives of <i>fitness</i> and <i>ability</i> . . . . .	145
XXXIII. Consonant declension ( <i>continued</i> ). Some important irregular nouns. <i>μέγας</i> and <i>πολύς</i> . . . . .	150
XXXIV. The first aorist middle system of <i>ω</i> -verbs. Indirect questions introduced by the interrogative <i>τίς</i> , the indefinite relative <i>ὅστις</i> , and other interrogative words . . . . .	153
XXXV. Comparison of adjectives. Declension of comparatives in <i>-ων</i> . Genitive of comparison. Accusative of the <i>way by which</i> . Superlative translated by <i>very</i> . . . . .	157
XXXVI. Comparison of adjectives ( <i>continued</i> ). Irregular comparison. Double questions . . . . .	161
XXXVII. Formation and comparison of adverbs. Irregular adverbs. Genitive after adverbs of place . . . . .	164
XXXVIII. Reflexive pronouns. The reciprocal pronoun. The indirect reflexive <i>οἱ</i> . Attributive position of the possessive genitive of reflexive pronouns . . . . .	168
XXXIX. The passive voice of <i>ω</i> -verbs. First aorist passive system. Euphonic laws of mutes before mutes. Declension of	

LESSON	PAGE
	participles in <i>-els</i> . Deponent passives. Agent expressed by <i>ὄρω</i> and genitive. Construction after passive of λέγω say 172
XL.	The first future passive system. Present general conditions. Conditional relative protasis in present time. Genitive absolute. Genitive of value. Dative of cause . . . 177
XLI.	The second aorist passive system. Dative of degree of difference . . . . . 181
XLII.	The second future passive system. Past general conditions. Conditional relative protasis in past time. Imperfect indicative in protasis of past general relative condition . . 184
XLIII.	Numerals. Declension of numerals. Article with "round" numbers. Emphatic negations . . . . . 188
XLIV.	The first perfect and first pluperfect in the active voice. Reduplication. Declension of the perfect participle. Object clauses after verbs of <i>fearing</i> . Supplementary participle after verbs of <i>beginning</i> , etc.; after verbs of <i>perception</i> . Supplementary participle in indirect discourse . . . . . 192
XLV.	The second perfect and the second pluperfect active. Attic reduplication. Reduplication with <i>el-</i> . Supplementary participle with <i>δῆλός ἐστιν</i> , etc. . . . . 199
XLVI.	The perfect and pluperfect middle and passive of vowel themes. Infinitive with <i>μὲμνημαι</i> <i>remember how</i> , etc. Dative of agent . . . . . 202
XLVII.	Perfect middle and passive of mute themes. Euphonic rules: mutes before <i>μ</i> . <i>Sigma</i> dropped between two consonants . . . . . 206
XLVIII.	The future perfect middle and passive. Meaning of future perfect. Verbal adjectives in <i>-τός</i> and <i>-τέος</i> . Dative of agent with verbals in <i>-τέος</i> . . . . . 211
XLIX.	Synopsis of the <i>ω</i> -verb. Principal parts of typical verbs. Some common suffixes of nouns and adjectives . . . . 215
L.	Contract nouns of the <i>ā</i> -declension and of the <i>o</i> -declension. Contract adjectives. The infinitive with the article used as a noun . . . . . 221
LI.	Contract verbs. Present system of <i>ποιέω</i> . Dissyllabic verbs in <i>-έω</i> . Two accusatives after verbs of <i>making</i> , <i>appointing</i> ; <i>asking</i> , <i>depriving</i> . Construction of <i>δοκέω</i> . . . . 224
LII.	Present system of <i>τιμάω</i> . Irregular contract verbs in <i>-άω</i> . Infinitive after verbs of <i>promising</i> , <i>hoping</i> , and <i>swearing</i> . Clauses introduced by conjunctions meaning <i>while</i> , <i>until</i> , and <i>before</i> . . . . . 228

# CONTENTS

15

LESSON	PAGE
LIII. Present system of <i>δηλώω</i> . Complex sentences in indirect discourse . . . . .	233
LIV. Declension of contract participles. Object clauses introduced by <i>ὅπως</i> . Various idioms . . . . .	237
LV. The future and aorist of liquid themes. Some other verbs that contract in the future, including verbs in <i>-ίζω</i> . Unreal suppositions . . . . .	240
LVI. The inflection of <i>μι</i> -verbs: <i>ἵστημι, ἐπριάμην, ἔβην, ἀπ-έδρᾶν</i> . Meanings of the tenses and voices of <i>ἵστημι</i> . . . . .	244
LVII. The inflection of <i>μι</i> -verbs ( <i>continued</i> ): <i>τίθημι, ἔθημι</i> . Deliberative subjunctive. Accusative absolute . . . . .	249
LVIII. The inflection of <i>μι</i> -verbs ( <i>continued</i> ): <i>δίδωμι, ἐάλων</i> or <i>ἦλων, ἔγγων</i> . . . . .	253
LIX. The inflection of <i>μι</i> -verbs ( <i>continued</i> ): <i>δεκνῦμι, ἔδῦν, κεῖμαι</i> . Wishes . . . . .	257
LX. Irregular <i>μι</i> -verbs: <i>εἶμι, φημί, οἶδα</i> , and <i>εἶμι</i> ( <i>completed and reviewed</i> ) . . . . .	260
Selections from the <i>Anabasis</i> . . . . .	263
Summary of Forms . . . . .	280
Summary of Syntax . . . . .	328
Important Lists . . . . .	337
Abbreviations . . . . .	340
English-Greek Vocabulary . . . . .	341
Greek-English Vocabulary and Index to the Lessons . . . . .	357
English Index . . . . .	391



# INTRODUCTION

## THE ALPHABET OF ATTIC GREEK

NAME	FORM		SOUND AS IN	LATIN EQUIVALENT
	Capitals	Small Letters		
I. <i>alpha</i>	A	a	{ (ā) father } { (ǎ) haha' }	a ✓
<i>beta</i>	B	β	boy	b ✓
<i>gamma</i>	Γ	γ	girl	g ✓
<i>delta</i>	Δ	δ	day	d ✓
<i>epsilon</i>	E	ε	met	ě ✓
<i>zeta</i>	Z	ζ	zeal, daze	z ✓
<i>eta</i>	H	η	hēte	ē ✓
<i>theta</i>	Θ	θ	theater	th ✓
<i>iota</i>	I	ι	{ (i) machine } { (î) the first e in eternal }	i ✓
<i>kappa</i>	K	κ	keep	c ✓
<i>lambda</i>	Λ	λ	led	l ✓
<i>mu</i>	M	μ	man	m ✓
<i>nu</i>	N	ν	now	n ✓
<i>xi</i>	Ξ	ξ	ax	x ✓
<i>omicron</i>	O	ο	omit	ö ✓
<i>pi</i>	Π	π	pin	p ✓
<i>rho</i>	P	ρ	run	r ✓
<i>sigma</i>	Σ	σ s	sit	s ✓
<i>tau</i>	T	τ	tin	t ✓
<i>upsilon</i>	Υ	υ	Ger. Tür, Fr. tu <sup>1</sup>	y ✓
<i>phi</i>	Φ	φ	Philip	ph ✓
<i>chi</i>	X	χ	Ger. ach, Scotch loch	ch ✓
<i>psi</i>	Ψ	ψ	topsy	ps ✓
<i>omega</i>	Ω	ω	vote	ō ✓

<sup>1</sup> The short vowel (υ) is less prolonged in sound than the long vowel (ῠ).



2. The form  $\varsigma$  is used at the end of a word; in other places  $\sigma$  is used.

The capital letters are used as initials of proper names. In current practice they are not used at the beginning of a sentence unless the sentence begins a paragraph or a quotation.

3. There is no separate letter to represent English *h*. But many Greek words begin with this sound, which is indicated by writing a sign called the **rough breathing** over the initial vowel of a word; as  $\acute{\omicron}\rho\acute{\iota}\zeta\omega\nu$  *horizon*. If an initial vowel is not pronounced with *h*, a **smooth breathing** is written over it; as  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\iota\theta\epsilon\sigma\iota\varsigma$  *antithesis*. These breathings are not written over capital letters, but in front of them; as  $\text{'}\omicron\rho\acute{\iota}\zeta\omega\nu$ ,  $\text{'}\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\iota\theta\epsilon\sigma\iota\varsigma$ .

4. Initial  $\rho$  regularly has the rough breathing ( $\acute{\rho} = rh$ ); as  $\acute{\rho}\acute{\eta}\tau\omega\rho$  *rhctor*.

5. The letter  $\gamma$  is pronounced *ng* when it comes before  $\kappa$ ,  $\gamma$ ,  $\chi$ , or  $\xi$ . It is then called **gamma nasal**. Thus  $\acute{\alpha}\gamma\kappa\upsilon\rho\alpha$  *anchor*,  $\sigma\phi\iota\gamma\xi$  *sphinx*.

6. **Double consonants**, so called because they unite two sounds in one character, are  $\zeta$ , which equals *zd* or *dz*;  $\xi$ , which equals *ks* (i.e. *x*); and  $\psi$ , which equals *ps*.

7. The **vowels** are A E H I O T  $\Omega$ ; in small letters,  $a e \eta i o u \omega$ . H (or  $\eta$ ) is the long form of E (or  $\epsilon$ );  $\Omega$  (or  $\omega$ ) is the long form of O (or  $o$ ). So this list corresponds to the English: *a e i o u*. The long and short forms of *a*, *i*, and *u* are not distinguished by separate characters; but it is usual in grammars to mark these vowels when *long*, thus:  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{i}$ ,  $\bar{u}$ . This is the practice in this book.

8. Each Greek word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs (§ 22). This rule is the same in Latin also.

9. In dividing a word into syllables a consonant is regularly written after the hyphen; and if there are two or three consonants, they too are written after the hyphen, *provided* they represent a combination which may begin a Greek word. For illustrations see § 11.

a. A group formed of a mute (§ 27) and  $\mu$  or  $\nu$ , or  $\mu\nu$ , belongs after the hyphen; as *πρᾶ-γμα thing*.

10. Greek words may end only in a vowel or in one of these consonants:  $\nu$ ,  $\rho$ ,  $\varsigma$  with  $\xi$  and  $\psi$ .

## EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

11. Pronounce *aloud* the following words, referring to the table under § 1 for the equivalent English sounds. The English transliterations in the second column may be pronounced like Latin words (except in respect to accent) after the Roman method; *ü* is the Latin *y*.

	TO BE ACCENTED THUS	MEANING
νέ-κταρ	<i>ne'-ktar</i>	nectar
δε-σπό-της	<i>de-spo'-tēs</i>	despot
πο-τα-μός	<i>po-ta-mos'</i>	river
λο-χᾶ-γός	<i>lo-chā-gos'</i>	captain
χω-ρί-ον	<i>chō-ri'-on</i>	stronghold
φί-λος	<i>phi'-los</i>	friend
θε-ός	<i>the-os'</i>	god
κώ-μη	<i>kō'-mē</i>	village
θά-λατ-τα	<i>tha'-lat-ta</i>	sea
ὁ ἀ-νὴρ	<i>ho a-nēr'</i>	the man
ἡ γυ-νή	<i>hē gü-nē'</i>	the woman

	TO BE ACCENTED THUS	MEANING
ἡ-μέ-ρα	<i>hē-me'-rā</i>	day
ὑ-ψη-λός	<i>hū-psē-los'</i>	lofty
φά-λαγξ	<i>pha'-langks</i>	phalanx
ὀ-πι-σθο-φύ-λαξ	<i>o-pi-sitho-phiū'-laks</i>	rear-guard
πε-ζός	<i>pe-zos'</i>	afoot
τύ-πτω	<i>tū'-ptō</i>	I strike
ἄ-στρον	<i>a'-stron</i>	star
Βα-βυ-λών	<i>Ba-bū-lōn'</i>	Babylon

## ACCENT

12. Most Greek words are written with accents. The **acute accent** is illustrated by the words in the preceding exercise (§ 11). On inspection it will be seen that this accent stands sometimes on the last syllable of a word, sometimes on the last but one, and again on the last but two.

13. When a word having the acute accent on its final syllable is immediately followed by another word, without any intervening mark of punctuation, the accent of the first word is written thus, `; this is called the **grave accent**. Thus ὑψηλὸν χωρίον *a lofty stronghold*. The grave accent is written on the last syllable only, and only under the conditions just stated.

14. There is a third common mark of accentuation, called the **circumflex** (^). It may stand on the last syllable of a word, or on the last but one. It may not stand on the last but two, as the acute may. And, what is very important, it may stand only on a *long* vowel or a diphthong (§ 22). Hence, if a vowel has the circumflex accent, no other mark to indicate its quantity is needed or used. Thus σί-τος *food*.

15. The last syllable of a word is called the **ultima**; the last but one, the **penult**; and the one before the penult, the **antepenult**.

16. The acute accent may stand on the ultima or the penult or the antepenult. The circumflex accent may stand on the ultima or the penult. The grave accent stands on the ultima only.

17. There are three important rules of accent that must be mastered at the outset, in addition to the principles already stated.

1. The acute accent cannot stand on the antepenult when the ultima is long.

2. The circumflex accent cannot stand on the penult when the ultima is long.

3. When the ultima is short, an accented penult has the circumflex if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong (§ 14).

Illustrations of these rules are provided in §§ 11 and 24.

a. *What* accent a word has and *where* it stands must be learned with the letters that spell the word itself.

18. Accent means to us a *stress* of the voice, *i.e.* force of utterance. This is also what an accent mark means to the native Greeks of to-day. So far as pronunciation goes, we make no distinction between the acute, the grave, and the circumflex accent. When originally invented and introduced, however, the accent marks interpreted to foreigners the *tone* or *pitch* of the voice in pronouncing syllables. The acute indicated a *higher* pitch; the grave, a *lower* pitch; and the circumflex, a higher followed by a lower pitch of the voice on the same syllable. The spoken language was therefore melodious.

19. When marks of both accent and breathing (§ 3) belong to the same vowel, the accent mark, if acute, follows the breathing; if circumflex, is written directly over the breathing. The accent, like the breathing, is written in front of a capital letter, but over a small one. Thus ἔξω *outside*; ἦσαν *they were*; Ἴρις *Iris*. In the case of a diphthong, both the accent and the breathing must be written over the second vowel. Thus οἶνος *wine*.

a. The mark of diaeresis (¨) indicates a separate pronunciation of two successive vowels. Thus ἰχθῦι *tó or for a fish*.

20. Not all Greek words have accents. There is one small class of monosyllables, called **proclitics**, that are pronounced with the words that follow them and so lack accents of their own. Thus *ó* and *ῆ* of § 11.

21. There is another class of words, called **enclitics**, that are pronounced with the words that precede them. These, too, usually have no accents of their own. This subject is taken up in §§ 103, 104, 105, 305.

## DIPHTHONGS

22. The diphthongs are :

ENGLISH VALUE		ENGLISH VALUE	
αι	<i>aisle</i>	ηυ	ê ( <i>fête</i> ) + oo ( <i>moon</i> ), pronounced in close succession
ει	<i>veil</i>	ου	<i>moon</i>
οι	<i>oil</i>	υι	French <i>huit</i> , English <i>we</i>
αυ	<i>house</i>		
ευ	e ( <i>met</i> ) + oo ( <i>moon</i> ), pronounced in close succession		
α̣	like simple	α̣	} This <i>iota</i> , which is written beneath the other vowel and not pronounced, is called <i>iota subscript</i> .
η̣	“ “	η̣	
ω̣	“ “	ω̣	

With capitals *iota subscript* is written in the same line, but not pronounced. Thus Ἅιδης (*i.e.* ἄδης) *Hades*.

23. In quantity all diphthongs are long. But final *-oi* and *-ai* are reckoned short in influencing the accent of a penult or antepenult, — thus ἄνθρωποι *men*, and οἶνοι *wines*, — except the adverb οἴκοι *at home* and certain verb forms (§ 253).

## EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

24. Pronounce aloud the following words, referring to the tables under §§ 1 and 22 for the equivalent English sounds :

βασιλεύς	king	ἡμεῖς	we
Ζεὺς	Zeus	ἐαυτοῦ	of himself
στράτευμα	army	παίω	I strike
πλοῖον	boat	δικαίως	justly
πορεύᾱ	journey	λελυκῖα	having loosed
χεῖρ	hand	ποταμῶ	to <i>or</i> for a river
οἶνος	wine	κώμη	to <i>or</i> for a village
οὗτος	this	ἡμέρα	to <i>or</i> for a day
αὐτός	self, same	λύουσιν	they loose

## GREEK WORDS IN ENGLISH

25. 1. Some scholars prefer to transliterate Greek proper names directly into English. Thus Αἰσχύλος *Aischylos*; Θουκυδίδης *Thoukydides*; Κλέαρχος *Klearchos*; Ἄλκαῖος *Alkaios*; ὁ Βοιωτίας *the Boiotian*.

2. Others prefer to follow the fashion of the Romans of the Augustan age, and to interpret the Greek names through the Latin equivalents. This has been a long prevailing custom. The table of Latin equivalents for the Greek letters has already been given (§ 1). It must

be supplemented, however, by calling attention to the following letters or combinations:

γ nasal (§ 5) = <i>n</i>	but final -οι = <i>i</i>	final -ος = <i>us</i>
αι = <i>ae</i>	ου = <i>ū</i>	“ -ον = <i>um</i>
οι = <i>oe</i>	ει = <i>i</i> or <i>ē</i>	“ -πος = <i>er</i>

a. At the present time ει is often transliterated *ei*, pronounced like *i* in *mine*. Words in -ειον are best transliterated *-ēum*; as Θεσείον *Thesēum*.

## 26. ILLUSTRATIONS OF TRANSLITERATION THROUGH LATIN INTO ENGLISH

Κῦρος	= <i>Cyrus</i>	Αἰσχύλος	= <i>Aeschylus</i>
Κλέαρχος	= <i>Clearchus</i>	Θουκυδίδης	= <i>Thucydides</i>
Αἰνεῖās	= <i>Aenēas</i> (an- glicized)	Ἄλκαῖος	= <i>Alcaeus</i>
Δᾶρείος	= <i>Dariūs</i> (an- glicized)	Τεύκρος	= <i>Teucer</i>
Ἄρταξέρξης	= <i>Artaxerxes</i>	Ἀλέξανδρος	= <i>Alexander</i>
Παρύσατις	= <i>Parysatis</i>	Σπερχειός	= <i>Spercheius</i> (or <i>Sperchēus</i> )
Ἰκόνιον	= <i>Iconium</i>	Ῥῆσος	= <i>Rhesus</i>
ὁ Βοιώτιος	= <i>the Boeotian</i>	Δελφοί	= <i>Delphi</i>
		Σαγγάριος	= <i>Sangarius</i>

## LIQUIDS AND MUTES (OR STOPS)

27. The following classification of consonants is important, and should be committed to memory:

LIQUIDS, so called from their smoothly

“flowing” sounds, are

λ μ ν ρ

Mutes (or stops) are so called because they are formed by a position of the organs of the mouth which stops the

passage of the breath, no sound being heard while the closure of these organs continues.

CLASSES OF MUTES	{	Labial mutes, <i>i.e.</i> stops made with the lips ( <i>labium</i> )	$\pi$	$\beta$	$\phi$
		Palatal mutes, <i>i.e.</i> stops made with the soft palate ( <i>palatum</i> )	$\kappa$	$\gamma$	$\chi$
		Lingual or dental mutes, <i>i.e.</i> stops made with the tongue ( <i>lingua</i> ) or teeth ( <i>dēns</i> )	$\tau$	$\delta$	$\theta$

28. Another important classification of these mutes is the following :

ORDERS OF MUTES	{	Smooth mutes (not aspirated)	$\pi$	$\kappa$	$\tau$
		Middle mutes	$\beta$	$\gamma$	$\delta$
		Rough mutes (aspirated)	$\phi$	$\chi$	$\theta$

It will be observed that this table is only another arrangement of the preceding one, the first column of which (§ 27) represents the "smooth" mutes, the second the "middle," and the third the "rough."

### ELISION

29. The loss of a final short vowel is called *elision*; it occurs only before a word beginning with a vowel, and is marked by the apostrophe. Thus  $\acute{\alpha}\lambda\lambda' \acute{o} \acute{\alpha}\nu\eta\rho$  *but the man* (for  $\acute{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\acute{\alpha}$ ),  $\acute{\eta} \delta' \acute{\eta}\mu\acute{\epsilon}\rho\acute{\alpha}$  *but the day* (for  $\delta\acute{\epsilon}$ ).

a. Elision is often omitted.

b. When a preposition or conjunction suffers elision of the accented vowel, the accent is also lost.

### CRASIS

30. Crasis (*κρᾶσις mingling*) is the contraction of a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word with a vowel or diphthong



beginning the following word. Over the syllable resulting from crasis is placed a ', as *κάν* for *καὶ ἄν* and *if*; *τάπιτήδεια* for *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια* *the provisions*.

#### ASPIRATION

**31.** A smooth mute (§ 28) is roughened before the rough breathing (§ 3). Thus *ἐφ' ἵππου* on *horseback* for *ἐπ(ι) ἵππου*; *καθήκω* *come down* for *κατά + ἦκω*.

#### -N MOVABLE

**32.** The letter *ν* may be annexed to all words ending in *σι*, to the third person singular of verbs when this ends in *ε*, and to *ἐστί* *is*. In modern practice this *-ν* (called *-ν movable*) is used only when the next word begins with a vowel, or at the end of a sentence.

#### PUNCTUATION MARKS

**33.** The Greek uses the comma and the period like the English. But the Greek question mark is like the English semicolon (;). For the colon (or semicolon) the Greek uses a point set at the top of the line, thus: *Κῦρος ·*

The English question mark (?) is not used in Greek.

Marks of quotation (" ") are commonly introduced into modern Greek texts. But editors often prefer not to use this modern device; and instead, they begin the first word of the Greek quotation with a capital letter. This is the practice of the translators of the English Bible.

#### NUMBER

**34.** The Greek has three numbers: singular and plural, as in Latin and English; and dual, to indicate *two*. In

the oldest Greek (Homer) the dual was common; but it was comparatively little used in the Greek of the fifth and fourth centuries B.C. It will not be used at all in the exercises of this book.

## GENDER

35. The Greek has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. Like Latin, Greek makes a formal distinction of gender among objects without life; thus *ποταμός river* is masculine (ὁ), and *ἡμέρᾱ day* is feminine (ἡ).

## CASE

36. The Greek has five cases: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative. These cases are used like the corresponding cases in Latin. The Greek has no ablative; and the functions of the Latin ablative are performed in Greek partly by the genitive (of separation) and partly by the dative (locative and instrumental).

## VOICE

37. The Greek verb has three voices: active, middle, and passive. The active and passive voices are used as in Latin and English. The uses of the middle voice are explained in §§ 315, 316.

## MOOD

38. The Greek verb has four moods, — indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, — besides the infinitive and participle. The uses of these moods are explained and illustrated as they are introduced in the lessons.

## TENSE

39. The Greek verb has the following tenses :

## PRIMARY

Present : *I loose or I am loosing*

Perfect : *I have loosed*

Future : *I shall loose*

Future Perfect : *I shall have loosed*

## SECONDARY

Imperfect : *I loosed or I was loosing*

Aorist : *I loosed*

Pluperfect : *I had loosed*



FIG. 1.—Winged Victory inscribing a trophy of armor.

## I

PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN  
THE ACTIVE VOICE. RECESSIVE ACCENT

40. The **stem** or **theme** of a Greek verb is the part which carries the permanent meaning; to this stem are joined various suffixes and prefixes to express person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

41. The stem of λύω *I loose* is λῦ- (in some tenses λῦ̄). The endings that express different persons, as *I, you, he*, are joined to this stem in some tenses by means of a **thematic vowel**. In the indicative mood this vowel is *e* before endings that begin with *μ* or *ν*, and *ε* before other letters. It is distinctly seen in the following paradigm (§ 45) in the dual, and first and second persons plural. In other forms of the present indicative the thematic vowel has suffered modification or has coalesced with the personal ending.

42. The theme λῦ + % forms the present tense-stem.

43. The original personal endings (cp. § 639) in the singular of the present indicative are no longer apparent in the forms of the ω-verb. But they will be seen later in the inflection of the μ-verb. In the third person plural λῦ-ουσι is for an original λῦ-ο-ντι (λῦ-ο-νσι).

44. Verbs are regularly accented as far from the end as the laws of accent permit (§§ 12-17). Such accent is known as **recessive accent**.

## 45. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λύ-ω <i>I loose</i> <sup>1</sup>		λύ-ο-μεν <i>we loose</i>
2.	λύ-εις <i>you loose</i>	λύ-ε-τον	λύ-ε-τε <i>you loose</i>
3.	λύ-ει <i>he loses</i>	λύ-ε-τον	λύ-ουσι(ν) <sup>2</sup> <i>they loose</i>

Present infinitive λύ-ειν *to loose*

## 46.

## VOCABULARY I

ἔγω: *lead.*

ἄρπάζω: *seize, make booty of, plunder.* ἡγῆρῶ.

ἔχω: *have, hold.*

λείπω: *leave.*

λύω: *loose, break, destroy.*

πείθω: *persuade.*

πέμπω: *send.*

## EXERCISES FOR PRONUNCIATION AND TRANSLATION

47. I. πείθει. λείπω. ἀρπάζομεν. ἄγειν. λείπει.  
 ἔχεις. ἄγουσιν. ἔχομεν. πείθουσι. ἔχω. ἀρπά-  
 ζετε. πείθειν. λείπουσι. ἄγει. πείθομεν. ἀρπάζω.  
 πέμπουσιν. πέμπετε. ἄγεις. λείπειν. πείθω. ἄγετε.  
 ἀρπάζεις. πέμπει. ἔχετε. λείπομεν. πέμπεις.

II. You<sup>8</sup> leave. I send. He has. We send. I lead.  
 To send. You<sup>8</sup> persuade. You<sup>4</sup> persuade. They seize.  
 He seizes. They have. You<sup>4</sup> leave. We lead. To seize.  
 To have.

<sup>1</sup> Or *I am loosing, you are loosing, etc.*

<sup>2</sup> Cp. § 32.

<sup>8</sup> Pl.

<sup>4</sup> Sing.

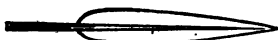


FIG. 2.—Spearhead (of iron) from Dodona.

## II

DECLENSION OF O-STEMS. COMMON CONSTRUCTIONS.  
ARTICLE AS POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

48.	Sing. N.	ὁ φίλος <i>the friend</i>	ὁ ἵππος <i>the horse</i>
	G.	τοῦ φίλου <i>of the friend</i>	ἵππου
	D.	τῷ φίλῳ <i>to or for the friend</i>	ἵππῳ
	A.	τὸν φίλον <i>the friend</i>	ἵππον
	V.	— φίλε <i>friend</i>	ἵπτε
	Dual N. A. <sup>1</sup>	τῷ φίλῳ	ἵππῳ
	G. D.	τοῖν φίλοιν	ἵπποιν
	Plur. N.	οἱ φίλοι <i>the friends</i>	ἵπποι
	G.	τῶν φίλων <i>of the friends</i>	ἵππων
	D.	τοῖς φίλοις <i>to or for the friends</i>	ἵπποις
	A.	τούς φίλους <i>the friends</i>	ἵππους
	V.	— φίλοι <i>friends</i>	ἵπποι
49.	Sing. N.	τὸ πεδῖον <i>the plain</i>	τὸ ἔργον <i>the work</i>
	G.	τοῦ πεδίου <i>of the plain</i>	ἔργου
	D.	τῷ πεδίῳ <i>to or for the plain</i>	ἔργῳ
	A.	τὸ πεδῖον <i>the plain</i>	ἔργον
	V.	— πεδῖον <i>plain</i>	ἔργον
	Dual N. A. <sup>1</sup>	τῷ πεδίῳ	<del>ἔργῳ</del>
	G. D.	τοῖν πεδίοιν	<del>ἔργοιν</del>
	Plur. N.	τὰ πεδία <i>the plains</i>	ἔργα
	G.	τῶν πεδίων <i>of the plains</i>	ἔργων
	D.	τοῖς πεδίοις <i>to or for the plains</i>	ἔργοις
	A.	τὰ πεδία <i>the plains</i>	ἔργα
	V.	— πεδία <i>plains</i>	ἔργα

<sup>1</sup> There is no vocative case of the definite article *ὁ the*; but nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative dual alike. Thus φίλῳ is nominative, accusative, and vocative dual.

50. φίλος and ἵππος are masculine in gender, and are accordingly accompanied by the masculine form of the article ὁ *the*; πεδῖον and ἔργον are neuter, and therefore the neuter article τό *the* is used with them.

51. All neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike, in the three numbers.

52. For the grave accent seen in τὸν φίλον, etc., see § 13.

### COMMON CONSTRUCTIONS

These fundamental rules, most of which the student will have already learned in Latin, are sufficiently illustrated, without special examples, in the exercises of this book.

53. *a.* The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
- b.* The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.
- c.* The indirect object of a verb is regularly in the dative case (*to* or *for* dative).
- d.* The dative is often used to indicate the person interested (*to* or *for* dative, sometimes denoting advantage or disadvantage).
- e.* But after a verb of motion, *to* is generally expressed by a preposition with the accusative (not by the dative), as πρὸς *to* with the accusative. See § 55. 6. Cp. Latin *ad*.
- f.* The genitive case denotes *of* relations. It may be "subjective" (*fuga hostium* the flight of the enemy) or "objective" (*amor patriae* love of fatherland) in Greek as in Latin. It often denotes possession.
- g.* The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

- h.* A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.
- i.* Adjectives and participles agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns that they modify.
- j.* A noun in apposition to another noun agrees with it in case.
- k.* A noun or adjective in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with the subject in case. Adjectives agree also in gender and number.

## 54.

## VOCABULARY II

ἐν, prep. with dat. only: *in*; as to accent, proclitic (§ 20).

ἔργον, ου, τό: *work*.

ἵππος, ου, ὄ: *horse*.

λόχος, ου, ὄ: *company* of soldiers.

ὄπλον, ου, τό: *implement*; com-

monly pl. ὄπλα, τά: *arms* of war. See p. 28, Fig. 1.

πεδῖον, ου, τό: *plain*.

πρός, prep. with acc.: *to, toward, against*.

φίλος, ου, ὄ: *friend*.

ὄ, gen. τοῦ, masc. art.: *the*; τό, gen. τοῦ, neut. art.: *the*. The forms ὄ (nom. sing.) and οἱ (nom. pl. masc.) are proclitic (§ 20).—The forms of the definite article are often used for **possessive pronouns** of the first, second, or third person, either singular or plural, as suggested by the context, *i.e.* for *my, your* (sing. or pl.), *his, her, our, their*.—In the VOCABULARY ὄ, τό (and the fem. ἡ), placed after a noun, indicate its gender.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

55. I. 1. τοὺς ἵππους λῦουσιν. 2. ἄγει τὸν λόχον.  
3. πείθωμεν τοὺς<sup>1</sup> φίλους. 4. λείπετε<sup>2</sup> τὸ ἔργον;

<sup>1</sup> *our*.

<sup>2</sup> *are you leaving*.



5. ἀρπάζει τοὺς ἵππους. 6. πέμπω τὰ ὄπλα πρὸς τοὺς φίλους. 7. ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις ἔχουσι τοὺς ἵππους. 8. πρὸς τὸ ἔργον ἄγουσι τοὺς λόχους. 9. πέμπει τοὺς φίλους πρὸς τὸ ἔργον. 10. λήει ἵππους τῶν φίλων. 11. οἱ φίλοι ἄγουσι τοὺς ἵππους πρὸς τὰ πεδία. 12. ἔχεις φίλους;

II. In turning English into Greek, *first* compose each sentence aloud in Greek; *next* write it down, taking care to observe the accent and, where necessary, the breathing of each word. Always write the accent of a word before passing to the next word.

*Vocabulary for oral practice:* friends<sup>1</sup>; we have; horses<sup>1</sup>; the horses<sup>1</sup>; he looses; we leave; to<sup>2</sup> the plain<sup>3</sup>; in the plain<sup>4</sup>; to<sup>5</sup> the friends; he leads; we lead; of the friends; he persuades; the company.<sup>1</sup>

1. We have friends. 2. He-is-loosing<sup>6</sup> the horses. 3. We leave our<sup>7</sup> horses in the plain. 4. He leads horses to<sup>5</sup> his<sup>7</sup> friends. 5. We lead horses of our<sup>7</sup> friends. 6. He persuades his friends. 7. He leads his company.

### III

#### DECLENSION OF O-STEMS (*Continued*)

56.	Sing. N.	ποταμός, ὁ, river	ἄνθρωπος, ὁ, man
	G.	ποταμοῦ	ἀνθρώπου
	D.	ποταμῷ	ἀνθρώπῳ
	A.	ποταμόν	ἄνθρωπον
	V.	ποταμί	ἄνθρωπε

<sup>1</sup> Acc.

<sup>2</sup> Or for.

<sup>3</sup> Two words only.

<sup>4</sup> ἐν with dat.

<sup>5</sup> πρὸς.

<sup>6</sup> = looses.

<sup>7</sup> = the.

Dual N. A. V.	<del>ποταμοί</del>	<del>ἄνθρωποι</del>
G. D.	<del>ποταμῶν</del>	<del>ἀνθρώπων</del>
Plur. N. V.	ποταμοί	ἄνθρωποι
G.	ποταμῶν	ἀνθρώπων
D.	ποταμοῖς	ἀνθρώποις
A.	ποταμούς	ἄνθρώπους

57. The accent of the nominative case must be learned by observation (§ 17. a).

58. A long ultima (§ 15) in the genitive or dative case, if accented, receives the circumflex accent. Thus ποταμοῦ.

59. In the declension of a noun the accent is kept, if possible, on the syllable on which it rests in the nominative case; but if in the nominative the acute accent rests on the antepenult, as in ἄνθρωπος, a long ultima in other cases draws the accent forward (§ 17. 1) one syllable. Thus ἀνθρώπου.

For the short ultima of ἄνθρωποι see § 23.

60.	Sing. N.	οἶνος, ὄ, wine	πλοῖον, τό, boat
	G.	οἶνου	πλοῖου
	D.	οἶνῳ	πλοῖῳ
	A.	οἶνον	πλοῖον
	V.	οἶνε	πλοῖον
	Dual N. A. V.	οἶνω	πλοῖω
	G. D.	οἶνοι	πλοῖοι
	Plur. N. V.	οἶνοι	πλοῖα
	G.	οἶνων	πλοίων
	D.	οἶνοις	πλοίοις
	A.	οἶνους	πλοῖα

61. While the tendency of the accent is to remain the same as in the nominative case, a circumflex accent on the penult of the nominative must be changed to the acute on the penult of those cases that have the ultima long (§ 17. 2). Thus οἶνος, οἶνου.

## 62.

## VOCABULARY III

ἀγαθός (declined like ποταμός),  
masc. adj., neut. ἀγαθόν (de-  
clined like πλοῖον, except the  
accent): *good, brave.*

ἄνθρωπος, ου, ὁ: *man.* Phil-  
anthropy (φίλος).

ἄπορος (declined like ἄνθρωπος),  
masc. and fem. adj., neut.  
ἄπορον: *impassable.*

ἦν, 3 sing. imp. : *he (she or it) was.*

ἦσαν, 3 pl. impf. : *they were.*

καί, conj. : *and, also.* καί . . . καί :  
*both . . . and.*

οἶνος, ου, ὁ: *wine.*

πλοῖον, ου, τό: *boat.*

ποταμός, ου, ὁ: *river.* Hippo-  
potamus (ἵππος).

στρατηγός, ου, ὁ: *general.*

σύν, prep. with dat. only: *with,*  
*with the aid of.*

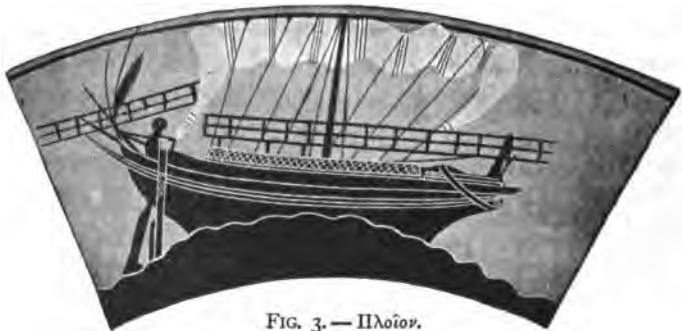


FIG. 3.—Πλοῖον.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

63. I. 1. ἄγει τὸν ἵππον πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν. 2. ὁ πο-  
ταμός ἀρπάζει τὰ ὄπλα. 3. ἔχει καὶ πλοῖα καὶ οἶνον.  
4. πέμπει οἶνον τῷ φίλῳ.<sup>1</sup> 5. πείθομεν τοὺς ἀνθρώ-  
πους. 6. λῦει ἵππους τῶν ἀνθρώπων. 7. σὺν τοῖς  
φίλοις ἀρπάζει τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ ὄπλα. 8. ὁ φίλος  
ἦν ἀγαθός. 9. ὁ ποταμός ἦν ἄπορος. 10. λείπετε

<sup>1</sup> The dative is sometimes used with πέμπω instead of πρὸς with the accu-  
sative, when there is the further idea of advantage — *for his friend*, § 53. d.

τὰ πλοῖα; 11. ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις ἦσαν οἱ στρατηγοί.  
12. ἔχεις οἶνον τοῖς ἀνθρώποις;

II. 1. The men have boats and horses. 2. He has wine in his<sup>1</sup> boat. 3. Are you unhitching<sup>2</sup> the horses for your friends? 4. They have good horses. 5. The men were brave. 6. The company<sup>3</sup> was brave. 7. They lead the men to the river.

φην

---

## IV

DECLENSION OF O-STEMS (*Continued and Reviewed*).

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES DECLINED TOGETHER.  
ATTRIBUTIVE POSITION. PREDICATE POSITION.  
ATTRIBUTIVE PHRASES. AGREEMENT OF VERB  
WITH NEUTER PLURAL SUBJECT. POSITION OF  
POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

64. Sing. N. ὁ ἀγαθὸς λοχᾶγός *the brave captain*  
G. τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ *of the brave captain*  
D. τῷ ἀγαθῷ λοχᾶγῷ *to or for the brave captain*  
A. τὸν ἀγαθὸν λοχᾶγόν *the brave captain*  
V. ὁ ἀγαθὸς λοχᾶγέ *O brave captain*
- Plur. N. οἱ ἀγαθοὶ λοχᾶγοὶ *the brave captains*  
G. τῶν ἀγαθῶν λοχᾶγῶν *of the brave captains*  
D. τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς λοχᾶγοῖς *to or for the brave captains*  
A. τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς λοχᾶγούς *the brave captains*  
V. ὁ ἀγαθοὶ λοχᾶγοὶ *O brave captains*

The dual need not be included in these paradigms for practice.

---

<sup>1</sup> = the.

<sup>2</sup> *i.e.* loosening.

<sup>3</sup> of soldiers.

65. Sing. N. ποταμὸς ἄπορος *an impassable river*

G. ποταμοῦ ἀπόρου

D. ποταμῷ ἀπόρῳ

A. ποταμὸν ἄπορον

V. ποταμὲ ἄπορι

Pl. N. V. ποταμοὶ ἄποροι

G. ποταμῶν ἀπόρων

D. ποταμοῖς ἀπόροις

A. ποταμοῖς ἀπόρους

66. Sing. N. A. V. χωρίον ἀφύλακτον *an unguarded stronghold*

G. χωρίου ἀφυλάκτου

D. χωρίῳ ἀφυλάκτῳ

Plur. N. A. V. χωρία ἀφύλακτα

G. χωρίων ἀφυλάκτων

D. χωρίοις ἀφυλάκτοις

Decline also τὸ ἀφύλακτον χωρίον *the unguarded stronghold*.

67. **Attributive position of adjectives.** — When an adjective is used with the definite article and a noun, as in the expression *the brave captain*, the adjective commonly stands between the article and the noun in Greek as in English (cp. the paradigm, § 64). But it may follow the noun, in which case the article must be repeated before it: ὁ λοχᾶγός ὁ ἀγαθός *the brave captain*.

a. Least frequently of all, the first article is omitted: λοχᾶγός ὁ ἀγαθός *the brave captain*.

68. **Predicate position of adjectives.** — If the adjective precedes the article, or follows the article and the noun *without* repetition of the article, it stands in a predicate relation to the noun which it modifies; *i.e.* a verb is expressed or understood between the noun and the adjective.

69.

SUMMARY WITH EXAMPLES

Attributive position	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \delta \acute{\alpha}\gamma\alpha\theta\acute{o}\varsigma \lambda\omicron\chi\alpha\gamma\acute{o}\varsigma, \\ \text{less frequently} \\ \delta \lambda\omicron\chi\alpha\gamma\acute{o}\varsigma \delta \acute{\alpha}\gamma\alpha\theta\acute{o}\varsigma, \\ \text{least frequently} \\ \lambda\omicron\chi\alpha\gamma\acute{o}\varsigma \delta \acute{\alpha}\gamma\alpha\theta\acute{o}\varsigma, \end{array} \right\} \textit{the brave captain}$
Predicate position	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \acute{\alpha}\gamma\alpha\theta\acute{o}\varsigma \delta \lambda\omicron\chi\alpha\gamma\acute{o}\varsigma \textit{ brave [is] the captain} \\ \delta \lambda\omicron\chi\alpha\gamma\acute{o}\varsigma \acute{\alpha}\gamma\alpha\theta\acute{o}\varsigma \textit{ the captain [is] brave} \end{array} \right.$

70. **Attributive phrases.** — A prepositional phrase or an adverb may be used like an adjective in the attributive position :

*οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ ἄνθρωποι* the men in the stronghold.

a. In this phrase the word for *men* may be omitted without affecting the sense :

*οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ* the men (*or* those) in the stronghold.

b. Similarly the noun is omitted in other phrases :

*οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ* the men with Cyrus ;

*τὰ Κύρου* the affairs of Cyrus.

71. **Agreement of verb with neuter plural subject.** — A subject in the neuter plural commonly takes a singular verb :

*πλοῖα ἦν* there were boats.

72. **Position of possessive genitive.** — The genitive denoting possession commonly stands in the attributive position :

*οἱ Κύρου λοχᾶγοί* the captains of Cyrus.

73.

VOCABULARY IV

*ἀ-φύλακτος* (declined like *ἄνθρωπος* and *ἄπορος*), masc. and fem. adj., neut. *ἀφύλακτον*: *unguarded*.

*Κύρος*, ου, ὁ: *Cyrus*.

*λοχᾶγός*, ου, ὁ: *captain* (cp. *λόχος* and *ἔγω*).

*σίτος*, ου, ὁ: *grain, food*. In the pl. the declension irregularly changes to neut. *τὰ σίτα*.

*χωρίον*, ου, τό: *place, stronghold*.

*ὦ*, interj.: *O*, often preceding the vocative case.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

74. I. 1. τὸ χωρίον ἦν ἀφύλακτον. 2. οἱ σὺν Κῦρῳ<sup>1</sup> ἄγουσι τὸν ἄνθρωπον πρὸς ποταμὸν ἄπορον. 3. τὰ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ σῖτα ἦν<sup>2</sup> ἀγαθὰ. 4. πέμπομεν οἶνον ἀγαθὸν πρὸς Κῦρον. 5. οἱ ποταμοὶ ἦσαν ἄποροι. 6. καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ἦν ἀφύλακτα. 7. λείπουσι τὰ πλοῖα ἀφύλακτα.<sup>3</sup> 8. ὧ ἀγαθοὶ στρατηγοί, πέμπετε πλοῖα; 9. ἐν τῷ ἀφυλάκτῳ χωρίῳ ἦσαν ἄνθρωποι ἀγαθοί. 10. καὶ οἱ Κῦρου λοχᾶγοὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 11. ἀρπάζουσι τὸ ἀφύλακτον χωρίον. 12. ἔχομεν λόχους ἀγαθοῦς.

II. 1. The river was impassable. 2. The good men are-sending<sup>4</sup> food. 3. The men with Cyrus were brave. 4. And the boats were unguarded. 5. We leave the boats unguarded. 6. We have good wine.

## V

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. AUGMENT. SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE. ARTICLE WITH NAME OF PERSON

75. The inflection of the imperfect tense of verbs whose themes end in a vowel (as λῦ-ω) shows distinctly the theme or stem (e.g. λῦ), the thematic vowel (ο or ε), and the personal endings (-ν, -ς, etc.) throughout (see § 41). But there is no personal ending in the third singular; this applies to all secondary tenses (§ 39).

<sup>1</sup> See § 70. b.

<sup>2</sup> See § 71.

<sup>3</sup> Not *the unguarded boats*, but *the boats unguarded*.

<sup>4</sup> = send.

76. The imperfect tense stem of λύω, like the present, is λῦ%.

77. The imperfect, in common with the other secondary tenses of the indicative mood, has a prefix or increase at the beginning of the theme, known as the **augment**.

1. *Syllabic augment*. — If the theme begins with a consonant, the vowel *epsilon* (ε) is commonly prefixed to the secondary tenses.

2. *Temporal augment*. — But if the theme begins with a vowel, that vowel is lengthened in the secondary tenses thus:

a	becomes	η	αι	becomes	η
ε	“	η	α	“	η
ο	“	ω	αυ	“	ηυ
ι	“	ῖ	οι	“	φ
υ	“	ῦ			

78. ευ becomes ηυ or remains ευ; αι becomes η or remains αι.  
A verb beginning with a long vowel or with ου is not augmented.

79. A verb beginning with ρ doubles this letter after the augment. Thus ῥίπτω *hur!*, impf. ἔρριπτον.

80. The imperfect indicative of ἔχω is εἶχον *I had*, with apparently irregular augment.

### 81. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λύω

- Sing. 1. ἐ-λύ-ο-ν *I was loosing or I loosed*  
 2. ἐ-λύ-ε-ς *you were loosing or you loosed*  
 3. ἐ-λύ-ε-(ν)<sup>1</sup> *he was loosing or he loosed*
- Dual 2. ἐ-λύ-ε-τον  
 3. ἐ-λύ-ε-την
- Plur. 1. ἐ-λύ-ο-μεν *we were loosing or we loosed*  
 2. ἐ-λύ-ε-τε *you were loosing or you loosed*  
 3. ἐ-λύ-ο-ν *they were loosing or they loosed*

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 32.



## 82. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ἄγω

- Sing. 1. ἤγ-ο-ν *I was leading or I led*  
 2. ἤγ-ε-ς *you were leading or you led*  
 3. ἤγ-ε-(ν)<sup>1</sup> *he was leading or he led*
- Dual 2. ἤγ-ε-τον  
 3. ἤγ-ε-την
- Plur. 1. ἤγ-ο-μεν *we were leading or we led*  
 2. ἤγ-ε-τε *you were leading or you led*  
 3. ἤγ-ο-ν *they were leading or they led*

SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE<sup>2</sup>

83. It has already been shown (§ 76) that the imperfect is formed on the same stem as the present tense. There is another tense, belonging to *some* verbs, which is inflected exactly like the imperfect, and differs in the form of the *theme* only. This is called the **second aorist**. It usually exhibits the theme of the verb in its simplest form. Thus *λείπω leave*, imperfect ἔ-λειπ-ον, has a second aorist ἔ-λιπ-ον, inflected in § 85. *λύω* has no second aorist.

84. **Meaning of the aorist indicative and infinitive.** — The aorist indicative expresses a simple act (*i.e.* not continued or repeated) in past time.

*a.* The aorist infinitive, like the aorist indicative, denotes a simple act (*i.e.* not continued or repeated); but unlike the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 32.

<sup>2</sup> The second aorist is so called in distinction from the first aorist, which is to be learned in Lesson XIV. The second aorist is introduced here on account of its similarity in inflection to the imperfect, as well as on account of its frequent use.

aorist indicative, the aorist infinitive does not necessarily refer to past time.<sup>1</sup> It differs from the present infinitive in the *kind* of action only (cp. § 85).

85. SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λείπω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν <i>I left</i>		ἔ-λιπ-ο-μεν <i>we left</i>
2.	ἔ-λιπ-ε-ς <i>you left</i>	ἔ-λιπ-ε-τον	ἔ-λιπ-ε-τε <i>you left</i>
3.	ἔ-λιπ-ε(ν) <i>he left</i>	ἔ-λιπ-ε-την	ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν <i>they left</i>

Second aorist infinitive λῖπ-εῖν *to leave*, the simple act; while the present infinitive λείπειν may mean *to be leaving* or *to keep leaving* as well as *to leave*.

a. The accent of the second aorist infinitive is not recessive (§ 44), but placed irregularly on the ultima.

b. The infinitive is not augmented (cp. § 77).

86. The verb ἄγω, which shows the theme in its simplest form in the present, has a peculiar reduplicated second aorist, with augment (§ 87).

87. SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ἄγω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ἤγ-αγ-ο-ν <i>I led</i>		ἤγ-άγ-ο-μεν
2.	ἤγ-αγ-ε-ς	ἤγ-άγ-ε-τον	ἤγ-άγ-ε-τε
3.	ἤγ-αγ-ε(ν)	ἤγ-αγ-ε-την	ἤγ-αγ-ο-ν

Second aorist infinitive ἄγ-αγ-εῖν *to lead*, the simple act

88. The second aorist indicative of ἔχω is ἔσχου *I got*, )  
infinitive σχεῖν.

89. The name of a **person** may take the article if the person is well known or has been previously mentioned. It is usually not to be translated:

ὁ Κῦρος Cyrus.

<sup>1</sup> Except in the construction of indirect discourse, to be studied later (§ 110).

## 90.

## VOCABULARY V

ἀλλά, conj.: *but*; sometimes in an address, *well!* Final α may be elided before a vowel, thus ἀλλ'.

δέ, postpositive<sup>1</sup> conj.: *and, but*, weaker than ἀλλά. Final ε may be elided before a vowel, thus δ'.

εἰς, proclitic prep. with acc. only: *into, to*. Cp. πρὸς το.

ἐκ, proclitic prep. with gen. only: *out of, from*; before a vowel, ἐξ.

Κλέαρχος, ου, ὁ: *Clearchus*.

λαμβάνω (theme λαβ-, lengthened in pres. and impf.), impf. ἐλάμβανον, 2 aor. ἔλαβον, *take, receive, enlist*.

Ἐπαλτόν, οῦ, τό: *javelin*.

φεύγω, impf. ἔφευγον, 2 aor. ἔφυγον: *flee, flee from, avoid, shun*. Cp. Lat. *fugio*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

91. I. ἦρπαζες, ἦρπαζον, ἐλείπετε, ἐλίπετε, ἐπέμπομεν, ἔπειθε, εἶχε,<sup>2</sup> ἔσχεν,<sup>3</sup> ἤγάγετε, ἦγεν, ἔλυον, ἐπέιθομεν, ἔπεμπες, ἐλαμβάνομεν, φυγεῖν, ἔφευγε, ἐλάβετε.

II. He was leading. He led. We were plundering. You<sup>4</sup> left. He had. He was fleeing. He fled. You took.<sup>5</sup> They persuaded. They were sending. We loosed. To flee.<sup>6</sup>

92. I. 1. ἐπέμπομεν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ἀνθρώπους εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 2. ἐλείπομεν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 3. ἤγομεν τοὺς σὺν Κῦρῳ πρὸς τὸ πεδίον. 4. ἀλλ', ὦ Κῦρε, πέμπεις τὰ σῖτα; 5. ὁ Κῦρος ἔπειθε τοὺς φίλους. 6. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἤγαγε τοὺς ἵππους εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 7. Κλέαρχος ἔλιπε τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἔλαβε τὰ

<sup>1</sup> A postpositive word cannot begin a sentence, but must follow one or more words.

<sup>2</sup> § 80.

<sup>3</sup> § 88.

<sup>4</sup> Pl.

<sup>5</sup> Aor. or impf.

<sup>6</sup> Use both pres. and 2 aor.

παλτά. 8. οἱ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἔφυγον ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου.  
9. οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἦσαν ἀγαθοί.

II. 1. But the captain was brave. 2. We took the grain from the stronghold. 3. He fled into the plain. 4. Cyrus used-to-send<sup>1</sup> wine to his friends.<sup>2</sup> 5. They kept-taking<sup>1</sup> the strongholds.

## VI

DECLENSION OF  $\bar{A}$ -STEMS. INFINITIVE USED AS OBJECT OF VERBS MEANING *WISH, COMMAND, ETC.*

## NOMINATIVES IN -ῆ

93. Sing. N.	ἡ μάχη <i>the battle</i>	ἡ ἀρχή <i>the beginning</i> <sup>1</sup>
G.	τῆς μάχης <i>of the battle</i>	ἀρχῆς
D.	τῇ μάχῃ <i>to or for the battle</i>	ἀρχῇ
A.	τὴν μάχην <i>the battle</i>	ἀρχήν
V.	— μάχη <i>battle</i>	ἀρχή
Dual N. A. V.	— <sup>4</sup> μάχᾱ	ἀρχᾱ
G. D.	— μάχαῖν	ἀρχαῖν
Plur. N.	αἱ μάχαι <i>the battles</i>	ἀρχαί
G.	τῶν μαχῶν <i>of the battles</i>	ἀρχῶν
D.	ταῖς μάχαῖς <i>to or for the battles</i>	ἀρχαῖς
A.	τὰς μάχας <i>the battles</i>	ἀρχάς
V.	— μάχαι <i>battles</i>	ἀρχαί

94. See the rules for accent in §§ 57, 58.

<sup>1</sup> = impf.

<sup>2</sup> § 63. I. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Or *province, empire*.

<sup>4</sup> There are no separate feminine dual forms of the article; the masculine forms (τά, τοῖν) are used instead.

95. A special rule of accent that belongs to all words of the  $\bar{\alpha}$ -declension is this: The genitive plural is always accented with the circumflex on the ultima.

96.	Sing. N. V.	κώμη καλή <i>a beautiful village</i>
	G.	κώμης καλῆς
	D.	κώμη καλῇ
	A.	κώμην καλήν
Dual N. A. V.	κώμα καλά	
	G. D.	κώμαιν καλάιν
Plur. N. V.	κώμαι καλάί	
	G.	κωμών καλών
	D.	κώμαις καλάϊς
	A.	κώμας καλάς

97. For the short final *-αι* as in *κώμαι* see § 23, and compare *οἶνοι* (§ 60).

98. The **infinitive**, with or without a subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs meaning *wish, command, hinder, persuade*, and the like. The negative with the infinitive is *μή*:

τοὺς λοχαγούς κελεύει μὴ φυγεῖν he commands the captains not to flee.

## 99.

## VOCABULARY VI

ἀρχή, ἡς, ἡ: *beginning, rule, province, empire.*

ἐθέλω, impf. ἤθελον: *wish, desire.*

ἐνταῦθα, adv.: *there.*

ἡ, fem. art.: *the*; proclitic (§ 20) in nom. sing. and nom. pl. ai.

Cp. ὁ and τό. ἡ δέ: *and she, but she*, indicating a change of subject from the preceding sen-

tence. ἡ may mean *she*, but only with μέν and δέ.

κακός, masc. adj., fem. κακή, neut. κακόν: *bad, cowardly.*

καλός, masc. adj., fem. καλή, neut. καλόν: *beautiful, handsome, noble, honorable.*

κελεύω, impf. ἐκέλευον: *command, bid, order.*

κώμη, ἡς, ἡ: *village*.

μάχη, ἡς, ἡ: *battle, fight*.

μέν, postpositive particle, used with a word or clause that is contrasted with a following word (in another clause) or a second clause. The second word or clause often has δέ, which is sometimes replaced by another conjunction. μέν sometimes means *on the one hand*; but more often it is to be omitted in translation. ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ: *the one . . . the other*; οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ: *some . . . others*. See δέ (§ 90).

μεστός, masc. adj., fem. μεστή, neut. μέστον: *full*, with gen.

μή, neg. adv.: *not*, with inf. and in other uses to be described later.

ὁ δέ: *and he, but he*, indicating a change of subject from the preceding sentence. ὁ may mean *he*, but only with μέν and δέ.

οὐ, proclitic neg. adv.: *not*; before a vowel with smooth breathing, written οὐκ; before a rough breathing, οὐχ. At the end of a sentence, οὐ.

σκηνή, ἡς, ἡ: *tent*.

φυλακή, ἡς, ἡ: *guard, garrison*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

100. I. 1. πέμπει Κῦρον εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν. 2. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος οὐκ εἶχε φυλακήν. 3. οὐχ ἀρπάζει τὰς καλὰς κώμας. 4. πρὸς τὰς σκηναὺς ἔφυγον. 5. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἤθελε λείπειν τὸν ἵππον. 6. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἔσχον σῖτα. 7. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. 8. καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐκέλευεν ἀγαγεῖν τοὺς λοχαγούς εἰς τὴν σκηνήν. 9. οἱ καλοὶ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ<sup>1</sup> ἦσαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ. 10. ἡ δ' ἔφυγεν εἰς τὴν καλὴν κώμην. 11. ἔπειθον τοὺς λοχαγούς μὴ λείπειν ἀφύλακτον τὸ χωρίον. 12. οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοὶ λοχαγοὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, οἱ δὲ κακοὶ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ.

II. 1. In the battle were noble and brave men. 2. Cyrus ordered his generals to enlist<sup>2</sup> brave men. 3. We do not

<sup>1</sup> Understand *men*.

<sup>2</sup> = to take.

wish our friends to flee out of the fight. 4. The generals<sup>1</sup> were brave, but the captains were cowardly. 5. He orders the men with Cyrus<sup>2</sup> not to flee.

---

## VII

### PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF εἶμι I am. ENCLITICS. SIMPLE CONDITIONS. PREDICATE SUB- STANTIVE WITHOUT ARTICLE

#### 101. PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF εἶμι I am

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	εἶμι I am		εἶμεν we are
2.	εἶ you are	εἶτόν	εἶτέ you are
3.	ἔστι(ν) <sup>3</sup> he is	ἔστόν	ἔσσι(ν) <sup>3</sup> they are

Infinitive εἶναι to be

a. All these forms except εἶ and εἶναι are enclitic (§ 21).

102. ἔστι(ν) is thus accented when it means *is*, i.e. *exists*, or *is possible*; at the beginning of a sentence; and after καί, ἀλλά, οὐκ, μή, and εἰ (*if*).

#### HOW THE ENCLITIC AFFECTS THE ACCENT OF THE PRECEDING WORD

103. 1. If the preceding word naturally has an acute on the ultima, that accent is retained, and any enclitic loses its accent:

καλός τε καὶ ἀγαθός both handsome and good (for τε see the vocabulary of this lesson);  
ἀγαθός ἐστιν he is good.

---

<sup>1</sup> οἱ μὲν στρατηγοί (cp. I. 12).

<sup>2</sup> § 70. δ.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. § 32.

2. If the preceding word has an acute on the penult, its accent is not affected in any way. *Then* a monosyllabic enclitic, as usual, loses its accent; but a *dissyllabic enclitic retains its accent*:

πεδία τε καὶ ποταμοί both plains and rivers;

τὰ πεδία ἐστὶ καλά the plains are beautiful (for the singular verb see § 71).

3. If the preceding word has an acute on the antepenult, it receives an additional acute on its ultima from the following enclitic, which loses its accent:

ἀπορός τε καὶ ἀδιάβατος both pathless and impassable;

ὁ ἀνθρωπός ἐστι κακός the man is cowardly.

4. If the preceding word has a circumflex on the ultima, its accent is not affected in any way, and any enclitic loses its accent (cp. 1):

καλῶν τε καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἐστὶν it is [the part] of noble and brave men.

5. If the preceding word has a circumflex on the penult, it receives an additional accent — the acute on its ultima — from the following enclitic, which loses its accent (cp. 3):

κῶμαί τε καὶ πεδία both villages and plains;

κῶμαί εἰσιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ villages are in the plain.

**104.** Observe that the monosyllabic enclitic regularly loses its accent. The dissyllabic enclitic retains its accent only under condition 2 above.

**105.** A proclitic (§ 20) followed by an enclitic receives an acute accent:

οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ both the generals and the captains.

**106. Simple conditions.** — A supposition that assumes a fact without in any way implying its truth or falsity is expressed by *εἰ ἰf* and the appropriate tense of the indica-



tive mood. This is commonly called the *Simple Present Condition*, or, if in past time, the *Simple Past Condition*. The conclusion may be any verb form whatsoever that is required by the sense.

a. The *if* clause is called the *protasis*; the conclusion is called the *apodosis*.

b. The negative, if required with the *protasis*, is *μή*; with the *apodosis*, *οὐ*.

*εἰ φεύγει, οὐκ ἔστιν ἀγαθός* if he is fleeing, he is not brave is a simple present condition.

*εἰ ἔφυγεν, οὐκ ἦν ἀγαθός* if he fled, he was not brave is a simple past condition.

107. A predicate substantive (§ 53. *κ*) usually lacks the article:

στρατηγὸς ἦν ὁ Κῦρος Cyrus was general.

## 108.

## VOCABULARY VII

ἀδιάβατος, masc. and fem., neut.

ἀδιάβατον: not to be crossed, impassable.

εἰ, proclitic conj.: if.

εἰμί: I am. ἔστι(ν): it is possible.

ἦν: it was possible.

θεός, οὐ, ὁ: god; ἡ: goddess. Theology (λόγος discourse).

κωλύω, impf. ἐκόλυον: hinder.

οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ), used in interrogative sentence: not; expects the answer yes. Cp. Lat. *nōne*.

πεζός, fem. πεζή, neut. πεζόν: afoot, on foot; οἱ πεζοί: the infantry.

τε, enclitic conj.: and. τε . . . καί: both . . . and.

φόβος, ου, ὁ: fear.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

109. I. I. αἱ κῶμαί εἰσι μεστὰι σίτου καὶ οἴνου.  
 2. ἡ δ' ἀρχή ἐστι μεστὴ καλῶν τε καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἀνθρώπων.  
 3. οἱ ποταμοὶ εἰσιν ἀδιάβατοι, εἴ τις<sup>1</sup> κωλύει.  
 4. ἤθελον<sup>2</sup> τοὺς ἀνθρώπους εἶναι καλοὺς τε καὶ ἀγα-

<sup>1</sup> anybody, enclitic.

<sup>2</sup> Either 1 sing. or 3 pl.

θούς. 5. ἐκελεύομεν τοὺς σὺν Κῦρῳ μὴ λιπεῖν τοὺς ἵππους. 6. εἰ μὴ ἤγαγε τοὺς ἵππους, οὐκ ἔστιν ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος. 7. οὐκ ἐπέμπετε τοὺς λοχᾶγούς πρὸς Κῦρον; 8. ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν ἀρπάζουσι τὰ σῖτά τε καὶ τὸν οἶνον. 9. καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ ἐσμεν. 10. εἰ ἤγε τοὺς πεζοὺς εἰς τὴν μάχην, ἀγαθὸς στρατηγὸς ἦν. 11. ἔχομεν φόβον θεῶν τε καὶ ἀνθρώπων.

II. 1. The generals were both noble and brave. 2. The general fled on foot<sup>1</sup> to a stronghold. 3. The plains were both beautiful and full of wine. 4. He desired his men to be brave in battle. 5. If anybody hindered,<sup>2</sup> it was not possible to flee out of the village.

### VIII

#### SIMPLE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE AFTER VERBS OF SAYING AND THINKING. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

110. *a.* When a statement is quoted after a verb of *saying* (as *φησί* *he says*) or *thinking*, its main verb is changed to the *same tense* of the infinitive.

*b.* Since there is no separate form for the imperfect infinitive, an imperfect indicative of direct discourse necessarily becomes present infinitive in indirect discourse.

*c.* The subject of this "infinitive in indirect discourse" is omitted when it is the same as that of the main verb of *saying* (*φησί*) or *thinking*. But it is regularly expressed when it is different from that of the main verb.

<sup>1</sup> πεζός must agree with *the general*.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. I: 3.

*d.* The subject of an infinitive, when expressed, is in the accusative case. But a modifier of an omitted subject agrees with the subject of the main verb when it indicates the same person or thing.

*e.* The negative of the direct discourse is regularly retained in indirect. That is, the negative with the infinitive of indirect discourse is usually οὐ, not μή (cp. § 98).

#### EXAMPLES

*Original statement:* πέμπω ἐπιστολήν I send a letter.

*Quoted statements:* (1) Κῦρός φησι πέμπειν ἐπιστολήν Cyrus says he is sending a letter;

(2) νομίζω Κῦρον πέμπειν ἐπιστολήν I think Cyrus is sending a letter.

*Original statement:* ὁ στρατηγὸς πιστὰ ἔλαβε the general took pledges.

*Quoted statement:* ἔφη τὸν στρατηγὸν πιστὰ λαβεῖν he said the general took<sup>1</sup> pledges.

*Original statement:* Κῦρος ἤρχε τῆς μάχης Cyrus began the battle.

*Quoted statement:* ἔφη Κῦρον ἀρχειν τῆς μάχης he said Cyrus began the battle. (ἀρχειν might also represent an ἀρχεῖ of the original statement. The context of a narrative determines this matter.)

*Original statement:* Κῦρός εἰμι I am Cyrus.

*Quoted statement:* ἔφη Κῦρος εἶναι he said he was Cyrus. (Observe that in *English* a quoted tense is secondary if the leading verb is secondary. Such a change from present to past is *irregular* in Greek. Cp. the Latin *dixit sē Cŷrum esse.*)

**III. Dative with adjectives.** — The *to* or *for* dative is used with many adjectives that express friendliness, hostility, association, fitness, and other ideas :

φίλος Κῦρω friendly to Cyrus ;

ἦν πιστὸς τῷ ἀδελφῷ he was faithful to his brother.

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *to have taken* (cp. § 84. a).

## 112.

## VOCABULARY VIII

ἀδελφός, οὗ, ὁ: *brother*. Philadelp<sup>h</sup>ia (φίλος).

ἄρχω, impf. ἤρχον: *begin, rule, command*, with gen. Cp. ἀρχή.

βάρβαρος, οὗ, ὁ: *foreigner, barbarian*.

γάρ, postpositive conj.: *for*.

ἐπί (ἐπ' before a smooth breathing,

ἐφ' before a rough breathing,

§ 31), prep.: with GEN. *on, in the time of*; with DAT. *on, upon, at, in the power of, for*; with ACC. *against* (often with idea of hostility), *to, upon*.

ἐπιστολή, ἧς, ἡ: *letter*. Epistle.

ἔφασαν, 3 pl. impf.: *they said*.

ἔφη, 3 sing. impf.: *he said*.

λόγος, οὗ, ὁ: *word, speech*.

νομίζω, impf. ἐνόμιζον: *think*.

οὐδέ (οὐ + δέ): *nor, not even*; Lat. *nē . . . quidem*.

οὔτε . . . οὔτε (οὐ + τε): *neither . . . nor*.

πιστός, fem. πιστή, neut. πιστόν: *trustworthy, faithful*. πιστά,

ἄν, τά, neut. pl. subst.: *pledges*.

φασί(ν), enclitic verb, 3 pl. pres.: *they say*.

φησί(ν), enclitic verb, 3 sing. pres.: *he says*.

φίλος, fem. φίλη, neut. φίλον: *friendly*. The masc. φίλος has been learned before in its substantive use (*friend*), § 48.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

113. I. 1. πείθω τὸν Κύρου ἀδελφόν. 2. ὁ δέ φησι πείθειν τὸν Κύρου ἀδελφόν. 3. ἐθέλω λαβεῖν πλοῖα. 4. ἔφη ἐθέλειν λαβεῖν πλοῖα. 5. ἔφασαν ἐθέλειν πιστὰ λαβεῖν. 6. οὔτε ὁ λοχαγὸς οὔτε ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐπεμπεν ἐπιστολήν. 7. οὐδ' ἤθελε Κλέαρχος ἄρχεω τῆς μάχης. 8. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι οὐ καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ εἰσιν. 9. νομίζω τοὺς βαρβάρους οὐκ εἶναι καλοὺς τε καὶ ἀγαθοὺς. 10. νομίζομεν τὸν Κύρον οὐκ εἶναι ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup> τῷ ἀδελφῷ. 11. Κύρον φᾶσι λιπεῖν τὰ πλοῖα. 12. τοὺς Κύρου λόγους καλοὺς νομίζετε εἶναι; 13. Κύρῳ γὰρ ἔφη πιστὸς εἶναι. 14. ἡ κόμη οὐκ ἦν Κύρῳ φίλη.

<sup>1</sup> *in the power of*.

II. 1. Cyrus is not in the power of his brother. 2. He thought Cyrus was<sup>1</sup> not in the power of his brother. 3. The generals fled<sup>2</sup> on<sup>3</sup> the boats. 4. He said that the generals [had] fled<sup>2</sup> on the boats.

ε

ε φ η

## IX

DECLENSION OF  $\bar{a}$ -STEMS (*Continued*): REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES OF THE O- AND  $\bar{a}$ -DECLENSIONS. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS IN -os, -ov. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

## NOMINATIVES IN -α

114. Nouns of the  $\bar{a}$ -declension have  $\bar{a}$  and not η in the singular when this vowel is preceded by ε, ι, or ρ.

Sing. N. V.	στρατιᾶ, ἡ, <i>army</i>	Plur. N. V.	στρατιαί
G.	στρατιᾶς	G.	στρατιῶν
D.	στρατιᾷ	D.	στρατιαῖς
A.	στρατιᾶν	A.	στρατιᾶς
Dual N. A. V.	στρατιᾶ		
G. D.	στρατιαῖν		

For the accent see §§ 57, 58, 59, 95.

115. Sing. N. V.	χώρᾱ πολεμῖα <i>a hostile country</i>	N.	ἡ ὄρθια ὄδος <i>the steep road</i>
G.	χώρᾱς πολεμῖας	G.	τῆς ὄρθιᾱς ὁδοῦ
D.	χώρᾱ πολεμῖᾱ	D.	τῇ ὄρθιᾱ ὁδῷ
A.	χώρᾱν πολεμῖᾱν	A.	τὴν ὄρθιᾱν ὁδόν
		V.	— ὄρθιᾱ ὁδί
Plur. N. V.	χώραι πολεμῖαι	N.	αἱ ὄρθιαι ὁδοί
G.	χωρῶν πολεμῖων	G.	τῶν ὄρθιων ὁδῶν
D.	χώραις πολεμῖαις	D.	ταῖς ὄρθιαις ὁδοῖς
A.	χώρᾱς πολεμῖᾱς	A.	τᾶς ὄρθιᾱς ὁδοῦς
		V.	— ὄρθιαι ὁδοί

<sup>1</sup> Originally *is*.

<sup>2</sup> 2 aor.

<sup>3</sup> ἐπί with gen.

a. *όδός* belongs to the group of o-stems that are feminine, although most of the o-stems are masculine or neuter.

b. For the accent of *πολέμιαι*, *πολεμίων* and *ὄρθιαι*, *ὄρθίων* see below, § 117. a.

## REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES OF THE O- AND Ā-DECLENSIONS

## ADJECTIVES IN -ος, -η, -ον

116. *ἀγαθός* *good, brave* is declined in the masculine like *ποταμός*, in the feminine like *ἀρχή*, and in the neuter like *παλτόν*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
V.	ἀγαθί	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Dual N. A. V.	ἀγαθά	ἀγαθά	ἀγαθά
G. D.	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν
Plur. N. V.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
A.	ἀγαθοῦς	ἀγαθείς	ἀγαθά

## ADJECTIVES IN -ος, -ἄ, -ον

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
117. Sing. N.	πολέμιος <i>hostile</i>	πολεμιά	πολέμιον
G.	πολεμίου	πολεμιάς	πολεμίου
D.	πολεμίῳ	πολεμιά	πολεμίῳ
A.	πολέμιον	πολεμιάν	πολέμιον
V.	πολέμιε	πολεμιά	πολέμιον
Dual N. A. V.	πολεμίῳ	πολεμιά	πολεμίῳ
G. D.	πολεμίων	πολεμιάιν	πολεμίων
Plur. N. V.	πολέμιοι	πολέμιαι	πολέμια
G.	πολεμίων	πολεμίων	πολεμίων
D.	πολεμίοις	πολεμιάις	πολεμίοις
A.	πολεμίους	πολεμιάς	πολέμια

a. While the preceding paradigm shows the regular endings of the  $\sigma$ - and  $\bar{\alpha}$ -declensions, there are two forms that depart from the rules of accent of the  $\bar{\alpha}$ -declension (§§ 59, 95). The nominative and genitive plural feminine follow the masculine in accent: *πολέμαι* and not *πολεμῆαι*; *πολεμίων* and not *πολεμῶν*. This applies to all adjectives and participles in *-ος, -η* (or *-ᾶ*), *-ον*.

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS IN *-ος, -ον*

118. There are many adjectives in *-ος* that have one form for both masculine and feminine genders, and distinct forms for the neuter in a few cases, as shown in the following paradigm. They are declined like *ἄνθρωπος* and *πλοῖον* in respect to case endings. Their accent is regularly recessive (§ 44).

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἄπορος <i>impassable</i>	ἄπορον
G.	ἀπόρου	
D.	ἀπόρῃ	
A.	ἄπορον	
V.	ἄπορα	ἄπορον
Dual N. A. V.	<del>ἀπόροι</del>	
G. D.	<del>ἀπόρων</del>	
Plur. N. V.	ἄποροι	ἄπορα
G.	ἀπόρων	
D.	ἀπόροις	
A.	ἀπόρους	ἄπορα

So, too, is declined *ἀφύλακτος* (§ 73).

119. **Dative of possession** (*to* or *for* dative).—The dative case may be used with the verb *to be* to denote the possessor:

Κύρῳ ἀρχή ἐστιν Cyrus has a province (a province is to Cyrus).

## 120.

## VOCABULARY IX

ἀγορά, ᾶς, ἡ: *market-place, market.*

δίκη, ης, ἡ: *justice, deserts.*

μεταξύ, adv.: *between, with gen.*

ὁδός, οὗ, ἡ: *way, road. Hodo-*  
*meter (μέτρον measure).*

ὄρθιος, ᾶ, ον: *steep.*

ὄρκος, ου, ὄ: *oath.*

παρά (before a vowel παρ'), prep.:  
with GEN. *from* the side of;  
with DAT. *by* the side of, after  
verbs of rest; with ACC. *to* the  
side of, after verbs of motion;  
*contrary to.*

πάροδος, ου, ἡ (παρά + ὁδός): *road*  
*by or past, passage, pass.*

πολέμιος, ᾶ, ον (πόλεμος war): *of*  
*war, hostile. οἱ πολέμοι, subst.*  
adj.: *the enemy. Polemic.*

σπονδή, ης, ἡ: *libation; pl. truce.*  
Spondee.

στενός, ἡ, ὄν: *narrow. Steno-*  
graphy (γράφω write).

στόλος, ου, ὄ: *expedition.*

στρατιά, ᾶς, ἡ: *army.*

τάφρος, ου, ἡ: *ditch.*

χώρα, ᾶς, ἡ: *country, land.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

121. I. 1. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἦν στρατιὰ ἀγαθή. 2. νομί-  
ζομεν δὲ τὸν στόλον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους εἶναι. 3. ἦν  
γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενή. 4. ἦν δὲ πάροδος στενή μεταξύ  
τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου. 5. ἦγε δὲ τὴν στρατιὰν  
παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. 6. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ τοὺς  
πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν. 7. εἰ Κλέαρχος παρὰ<sup>1</sup> τοὺς ὄρκους  
ἔλυε<sup>2</sup> τὰς σπονδὰς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει. 8. ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν  
ἐν τῇ τῶν βαρβάρων χώρᾳ. 9. ἔφη τὴν ὁδὸν εἶναι  
εἰς χώραν καλήν. 10. ἡ δ' ὁδὸς ἦν ἄπορος, εἴ τις<sup>3</sup>  
ἐκώλυεν.

II. 1. He led the men from-the-side-of<sup>4</sup> Cyrus to the  
market-place. 2. The road to the market-place<sup>5</sup> was  
steep. 3. We think the country is beautiful. 4. Cyrus's  
expedition is against his brother.

<sup>1</sup> *contrary to.*

<sup>2</sup> *broke.*

<sup>3</sup> Enclitic, *anybody*, cp. § 105.

<sup>4</sup> *παρὰ.*

<sup>5</sup> *Put to the market-place in the attributive position.*



## X

SOME PRONOUNS: αὐτός, MEANINGS AND USES; ἄλλος, ὅς. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. COMPOUND VERBS. RULES OF EUPHONY APPLYING TO σύν AND ἐν IN COMPOSITION. AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE. DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

DECLENSION OF αὐτός, *self, same*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<b>122.</b> Sing. N.	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
D.	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
A.	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Dual N. A.	αὐτά	αὐτά	αὐτά
G. D.	αὐτοῖν	αὐταῖν	αὐτοῖν
Plur. N.	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
G.	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
A.	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

## MEANING AND USES OF αὐτός

**123.** 1. As an intensive pronoun αὐτός means *self*,<sup>1</sup> *himself*, etc. :

ὁ Κῦρος αὐτός or Κῦρος αὐτός Cyrus himself.

2. When placed between the article and the noun, that is, when used in the attributive position, αὐτός means *same* :

ὁ αὐτὸς στρατηγός the same general.

3. In the genitive, dative, and accusative cases (the "oblique" cases), this word is the common personal pro-

<sup>1</sup> Cp. auto-graph (γράφω write).

noun of the third person. This use does *not* belong to the nominative case, however :

ἦγον αὐτούς (or fem. αὐτάς) I or they led them.

See below, § 127.

ἄλλος, other, another ; the other, the rest of (if preceded by the article)

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<b>124.</b>	Sing. N.	ἄλλος	ἄλλη	ἄλλο
	G.	ἄλλου	ἄλλης	ἄλλου
	D.	ἄλλῳ	ἄλλῃ	ἄλλῳ
	A.	ἄλλον	ἄλλην	ἄλλο
Dual N. A.	A.	ἄλλω	ἄλλᾱ	ἄλλω
	G. D.	ἄλλοιν	ἄλλαιν	ἄλλοιν
Plur. N.	N.	ἄλλοι	ἄλλαι	ἄλλα
	G.	ἄλλων	ἄλλων	ἄλλων
	D.	ἄλλοις	ἄλλαις	ἄλλοις
	A.	ἄλλους	ἄλλᾶς	ἄλλα

THE RELATIVE οὗ, ἧ, οὗ, who, which, that

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
Sing. N.	N.	οὗ	ἧ	οὗ
	G.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
	D.	οὗ	ἧ	οὗ
	A.	οὖν	ἧν	οὗ
Dual N. A.	A.	οὖν	ἧ	οὖν
	G. D.	οὖν	οὖν	οὖν
Plur. N.	N.	οἱ	αἱ	αἱ
	G.	ἧν	ἧν	ἧν
	D.	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
	A.	οὓς	αῖς	αῖ

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

**126.** Possessive adjectives are ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν, *my, mine* ; σός, σή, σόν, *your (sing.), yours* ; ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρᾱ, ἡμέτε-

ρον, ουρ, ours; ὑμέτερος, ὑμετέρᾳ, ὑμέτερον, your (pl.), yours  
They are declined regularly. These pronouns are regularly accompanied by the article and stand in the attributive position when denoting a particular person or thing:

ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός my brother. <sup>ὁ</sup> article necessary

ἀδελφὸς ἐμὸς means a brother of mine.

127. We have already learned (§ 54) that *his, her, their*, etc., may be expressed by the article in agreement with its noun. The possessive genitive of αὐτός may also be used, and always in the predicate position (§§ 68, 69):

ἡ σκηνὴ αὐτοῦ his tent; .

ἡ χώρα αὐτῶν their country.

a. In this use αὐτοῦ is equivalent in meaning to the Latin *ēius*, and is not reflexive.

#### COMPOUND VERBS

128. Prepositions, which originally were adverbs, are very frequently prefixed to verbs, and modify the verbal idea accordingly:

ἐξ-άγω lead out; εἰσ-άγω lead in; ἐκ-πέμπω send forth; συμ-πέμπω (συμ- for συν- before π for the sake of euphony) send with; ἐπι-βουλεύω plot against.

129. When a final vowel of the preposition comes before an initial vowel of the verb, the final vowel of the preposition is regularly dropped:

ἀπ-άγω (ἀπό + ἄγω) lead off; ἀφ-αρπάζω (ἀπό + ἀρπάζω, π being changed to φ before the rough breathing, § 31) snatch away, seize.

**130.** Compound verbs are regularly augmented *after* the prefix. A final vowel of the prepositional prefix is likewise dropped before the augment:

ἐξ-ήγαγον they led out; ἐξ-έπεμπον they sent out; ἀπ-έφυγον they fled away; ἐπ-εβούλεψε he plotted against.

**131.** The accent of a compound verb can never recede back of the augment:

ἐξ-ήγον, *not* ἔξ-ηγον.

**132.** A compound verb is divided between the prefix and the verb proper, if a hyphen must be used, as at the end of a line:

ἀπ-έφυγον, *not* ἀ-πέφυγον (cp. § 9).

#### RULES OF EUPHONY: $\nu$ BEFORE OTHER CONSONANTS

**133.** If the prefix of a compound verb is  $\sigma\acute{\upsilon}\nu$  or  $\acute{\epsilon}\nu$ , the nasal ( $\nu$ ) undergoes euphonic changes before certain consonants, conformably to the following laws:

1. Before a labial mute (§ 27)  $\nu$  becomes  $\mu$ :

συν-πέμπω send with.

2. Before a palatal mute (§ 27)  $\nu$  becomes  $\gamma$  nasal (§ 5):

ἐν-γράφω inscribe ( $\acute{\epsilon}\nu$  + γράφω write). Κ Υ Χ

3. Before a liquid (§ 27)  $\nu$  is assimilated to the liquid:

συν-λαμβάνω arrest. λ ρ ρ

4. Before  $\sigma$ ,  $\nu$  is dropped:

συν-στρατεύω take the field with.

**134.** But the prefix always resumes its original form before the syllabic augment:

συν-έλαβον, συν-έπεμπον.

135. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, gender, and number, but its case is determined by its construction in its own clause:<sup>1</sup>

πάρ-εστιν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὃν ἔπεμπεν the man whom he sent is here.

136. Verbs compounded with ἐν, σύν, and ἐπί commonly take the dative case, if the object is dependent on the prepositional idea:

τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις ἐπι-βουλεύουσιν and they are plotting against the others.

## 137.

## VOCABULARY X

For the meanings of αὐτός, ἄλλος, ὅς, ἐμός, ἡμέτερος, σός, ὑμέτερος, see the preceding articles (§§ 123-127).

ἀπό (ἀπ' before smooth breathing, ἀφ' before rough breathing, § 31), prep. with gen. only: <i>off, from, away from</i> . Cp. Lat. <i>ab</i> .	ἦκα, impf. ἦκον: <i>come, have come</i> ; pres. with pf. meaning.
ἀπο-θνήσκω, impf. ἀπ-έθνησκον, 2 aor. ἀπ-έθανον: <i>die off, die, perish, be slain</i> .	πάλιν, adv.: <i>back, again</i> . \
ἀπο-πέμπω, impf. ἀπ-έπεμπον: <i>send off or away, dismiss</i> .	πάρ-ειμι, impf. (3 sing.) παρ-ἦν, (3 pl.) παρ-ἦσαν: <i>be by, be at hand, be present, attend, with dat.</i>
εἶτα, adv.: <i>then, thereupon</i> .	συλ-λαμβάνω (σύν + λαμβάνω), impf. συν-ελάμβανον, 2 aor. συν-έλαβον: <i>take together, seize, arrest</i> . Cp. Lat. <i>comprehendō</i> .
ἐξ-άγω, impf. ἐξ-ἤγον, 2 aor. ἐξ-ἤγαγον: <i>lead out</i> .	συμ-πέμπω (σύν + πέμπω), impf. συν-έπεμπον: <i>send a person (in acc.), with a person (in dat.)</i> .
ἐπι-βουλεύω, impf. ἐπ-εβούλευον: <i>plot against, with dat. (βουλεύω plan.)</i>	

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

138. I. 1. ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς αὐτὸν ἔπειθεν. 2. εἶτα δ' ἐξ-ἤγον αὐτόν. 3. ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶ Κῦρω καὶ τοῖς φίλοις αὐτοῦ. 4. Κῦρος δὲ πάρ-εστι σὺν τοῖς βαρβά-

<sup>1</sup> Except as is later explained in § 285.

ροις οἱ αὐτῷ εἰσι πιστοί. 5. ὁ αὐτὸς φόβος παρ-ῆν  
 τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατηγοῖς. 6. Κῦρος δὲ ἦκει ἀπὸ τῆς  
 ἀρχῆς. 7. ἡ δὲ<sup>1</sup> ἀπο-πέμπει αὐτὸν πάλω ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.  
 8. Κῦρος ἐπι-βουλεύει τῷ ἀδελφῷ. 9. ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς  
 συλ-λαμβάνει Κῦρον. 10. αὐτὸς δὲ συν-έλαβε τοὺς  
 ἄλλους στρατηγούς. 11. συμ-πέμπει δὲ λόχον αὐτοῖς.  
 12. Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς ἀπ-έθανεν.

II. 1. We do not plot against our friends. 2. They  
 have the same fear. 3. The other brothers of the general  
 were slain. 4. He himself was not present in the fight.

---

 XI

DECLENSION OF  $\bar{A}$ -STEMS (*Continued*). INSTRUMENTAL  
 DATIVE. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF TIME OR  
 SPACE. ARTICLE WITH NAME OF COUNTRY

NOMINATIVES IN  $\alpha$

139. Hitherto there have been introduced only such  
 nouns of the  $\bar{\alpha}$ -declension as have  $\bar{\alpha}$  or  $\eta$  in the nominative  
 singular. There are, however, some nouns of the  $\bar{\alpha}$ -declen-  
 sion that have  $\check{\alpha}$  in the nominative singular. They usually  
 have recessive accent (cp. § 44). In the genitive and dative  
 endings  $\bar{\alpha}$  appears if this vowel is preceded by  $\epsilon$ ,  $\iota$ , or  $\rho$   
 (cp. § 114), otherwise  $\eta$  is found. The accusative and voca-  
 tive singular have the vowel ( $\check{\alpha}$ ) and accent of the nomina-  
 tive singular. In the dual and plural all nouns of the  $\bar{\alpha}$ -  
 declension are inflected alike.

---

<sup>1</sup> and she.

Ε-Ρ	140. Sing. N. V.	θάλαττα, ἡ, <i>sea</i>	γέφυρα, ἡ, <i>bridge</i>	μαξα, ἡ, <i>wagon</i>
	G.	θαλάττης	γεφύρας	μάξης
	D.	θαλάττη	γεφύρα	μάξι
	A.	θάλατταν	γεφύραν	μάξαν
Dual N. A. V.	<del>θαλάττην</del>	<del>γεφύραν</del>	<del>μάξαν</del>	
G. D.	<del>θαλάττην</del>	<del>γεφύραν</del>	<del>μάξαν</del>	
Plur. N. V.	θάλατται	γεφύραι	μαξαι	
G.	θαλαττῶν	γεφύρων	μάξων	
D.	θαλάτταις	γεφύραις	μάξαις	
A.	θαλάττας	γεφύρας	μάξας	

141. The instrumental dative is used to denote means and manner:

γεφύρα δια-βαίνει τὸν ποταμόν he crosses the river by a bridge.

142. The accusative may denote extent of time or space, answering the question *how long?* or *how far?*

ἐξ-ελαίνει δέκα σταθμούς he marches ten days' journey.

143. The name of a country may take the article, which is not to be translated (cp. § 89):

ἡ Κιλικία Cilicia.

## 144.

## VOCABULARY XI

μαξα, ης, ἡ: carriage, wagon.

γέφυρα, ας, ἡ: bridge.

δέκα, indecl.: ten. Lat. *decem*.

Deca-gon (γωνία angle).

διά (δι' before a vowel), prep.: with GEN. *through*; with ACC. *on account of, by means of*.

Dia-meter (μέτρον measure).

δια-βαίνω, impf. δι-βαίνον: go across, cross. (βαίνω go.)

ἔδραμον, 2 aor.: ran. (Usually referred to τρέχω run.)

ἐντεῦθεν, adv.: thence; of time, then.

ἐξ-ελαύνω, impf. ἐξ-ήλανον: drive out; march out or forth. (ελαύνω drive, ride, march.)

θάλαττα, ης, ἡ: sea.

Κιλικία, ας, ἡ: Cilicia.

Κιλισσα, ης, ἡ: Cilician woman.

λόφος, ου, ὁ: *hill*.

νίκη, ης, ἡ: *victory*.

παρ-ελαύνω, impf. παρ-ήλαυον:  
*drive past or by; march past,  
ride past.*

περί (never suffers elision of the  
final vowel), prep.: with GEN.  
*about, concerning, for, as a*

prize; with DAT. (not common  
in prose), *around, about*; with  
ACC. *around, about, near*. Peri-  
meter (μέτρον *measure*).

σταθμός, οῦ, ὁ: *day's journey,  
stage; halting place* (first mean-  
ing, but less common).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

145. I. 1. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἀμάξης.  
2. λύουσι τὰς γεφύρας. 3. κῶμαι δὲ περὶ τὸν ποτα-  
μὸν ἦσαν. 4. καὶ ἔδραμον περὶ νίκης. 5. ἔστι<sup>1</sup> δὲ  
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ λόφος ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.<sup>2</sup> 6. λόφον  
δέ φᾶσιν εἶναι ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.  
7. ἐντεύθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀπο-  
πέμπει. 8. καὶ συν-έπεμπεν αὐτῇ τοὺς λόχους οὓς  
Κλέαρχος εἶχε καὶ Κλέαρχον αὐτόν. 9. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα  
παρ-ήλαυεν ἐφ' ἀμάξης.<sup>3</sup> 10. ἐντεύθεν ἔξ-ελαύνει διὰ  
τῆς χώρας τῆς Κιλίσης σταθμοὺς δέκα. 11. δι-έβαιον  
τὴν γεφύραν. 12. τὸν δὲ ποταμὸν δι-έβαινε γεφύρα.

II. 1. He sent away the company (of soldiers)<sup>4</sup> to the  
sea. 2. Cyrus marched through Cilicia ten days' journey.  
3. They cross the river by a bridge. 4. Cyrus sent to the  
Cilician woman a wagon which he had. 5. We destroyed  
the bridges which we crossed.

<sup>1</sup> § 102.

<sup>2</sup> *from sea to sea.*

<sup>3</sup> For ἐφ' see § 31.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.



## XII

DECLENSION OF  $\bar{A}$ -STEMS (*Continued*). CLAUSES OF RESULTMASCULINES IN  $-ης$  AND  $-ᾶς$ 

146.	Sing. N.	στρατιώτης, ὁ, <i>soldier</i>	πελταστής, ὁ, <i>peltast</i>
	G.	στρατιώτου	πελταστοῦ
	D.	στρατιώτῃ	πελταστῇ
	A.	στρατιώτην	πελταστήν
	V.	στρατιώτα	πελταστά
Dual N.	A. V.	στρατιώτᾶ	πελταστᾶ
	G. D.	στρατιώταιν	πελτασταιν
Plur. N. V.		στρατιώται	πελτασταί
	G.	στρατιωτῶν	πελταστῶν
	D.	στρατιώταις	πελτασταίς
	A.	στρατιώτᾶς	πελταστᾶς
Sing. N.		τοξότης, ὁ, <i>bowman</i>	ἑνίης, ὁ, <i>Xenias</i>
	G.	τοξότου	ἑνίου
	D.	τοξότη	ἑνία
	A.	τοξότην	ἑνίην
	V.	τοξότα	ἑνίᾱ
Dual N.	A. V.	τοξότᾶ	
	G. D.	τοξόταιν	
Plur. N. V.		τοξόται	
	G.	τοξοτῶν	
	D.	τοξόταις	
	A.	τοξότᾶς	

*a.* Masculines in  $-της$  have vocatives singular in  $-ᾶ$ .

*b.* It is to be noted once more that all nouns of the  $\bar{A}$ -declension are inflected alike in the dual and plural.

147. Result is expressed by *ὥστε so that* with the indicative or infinitive. The indicative usually denotes the *actual*

result; the infinitive, the *natural* result. With the indicative the negative is οὐ; with the infinitive, μή:

εἶχε πλοῖα ὥστε ἔλαβεν αὐτούς he had boats so that he captured them;

εἶχε πλοῖα ὥστε λαβεῖν αὐτούς he had boats so as to capture them.

## 148.

## VOCABULARY XII

ἀπο-φεύγω, impf. ἀπ-έφευγον, 2 aor. ἀπ-έφυγον: *flee away, escape.*

δρόμος, ου, ὅ: a *run*. δρόμος: *on the run*. Cp. ἱ-δραμ-ον. Hippodrome (ἵππος).

Ξενίας, ου, ὅ: *Xenias*.

ὀπλίτης, ου, ὅ: a heavy-armed soldier, *hoplite*. See p. 139, Fig. 18. Cp. ὄπλον.

παίω, impf. ἔπαιον: *strike, smite*.

πελταστής, ου, ὅ: a light-armed soldier, *pellast*.

Πισίδαι, ὦν, οἱ: *Pisidians*, natives of Pisidia.

στρατιώτης, ου, ὅ: *soldier*. Cp. στρατιᾶ.

συν-άγω, impf. συν-ἤγον, 2 aor. συν-ἤγαγον: *lead together, collect*.

τοξότης, ου, ὅ: *bowman*.

φυγή, ἡς, ἡ: *flight*. φυγῆ: *in flight*. Cp. φεύγω.

ΧειρISOφOς, ου, ὅ: *Cheirisophus*.

ὥστε, conj.: *so that, so as, therefore* (§ 147).



FIG. 4. — Πελταστής (cp. p. 117, Fig. 14).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

149. I. 1. Ξενίας δὲ εἶχεν ὀπλίτας. 2. συνήγαγε δὲ τοὺς στρατιώτας. 3. οἱ δ' ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου πελτασταὶ δρόμῳ<sup>1</sup> ἔφυγον. 4. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι τὸν ἄνθρωπον. 5. ἐκέλευε τοὺς πελταστὰς ἤκειν. 6. καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει αὐτῷ τοὺς πελταστάς. 7. οἱ δὲ Ξενίου στρατιῶται ἤκουσιν. 8. οἱ δὲ τοξόται φυγῇ<sup>1</sup> λείπouσι τὸν λόφον. 9. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἀποφεύγουσιν· ἔχω γὰρ πλοῖα ὥστε λαβεῖν αὐτούς. 10. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἤγες τοὺς πελταστάς; 11. ὥστε οὐκ ἐθέλω ἀποπέμπειν τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν. 12. ἐνόμιζε δὲ τὸν στόλον εἶναι εἰς τοὺς Πισιδᾶς.

II. 1. He ordered the general to dismiss the soldiers. 2. He collected his soldiers and said that the expedition was<sup>2</sup> against Cilicia. 3. Therefore they did not wish to come with him.

<sup>1</sup> Dat. of manner; cp. § 141.

<sup>2</sup> Originally *is*.



FIG. 5.—Τοξότης.

## XIII

FUTURE INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. RULES OF WRITING AND EUPHONY APPLYING TO MUTE THEMES: MUTES BEFORE SIGMA. GENITIVE OF TIME. FUTURE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE AND AFTER μέλλω

Review the statements about the formation of the present tense (§§ 41-43).

150. The future indicative active is formed from the verb theme, to which are added the future tense suffix and the personal endings. The future suffix is *σο* before *μ* and *ν*, *σε* before other letters. The personal endings are like the present.

## 151. FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λύω

- Sing. 1. λύ-σω *I shall or will loose*  
 2. λύ-σεις *you shall or will loose*  
 3. λύ-σει *he shall or will loose*
- Dual 2. λύ-σει-τον
3. λύ-σει-τον
- Plur. 1. λύ-σο-μεν *we shall or will loose*  
 2. λύ-σε-τε *you shall or will loose*  
 3. λύ-σου-σι(ν) *they shall or will loose*
- Future infinitive λύ-σειν

152. Verbs with themes ending in a vowel, e.g. κελεύω, regularly form the future like λύω. These are called **vowel themes**.

Verbs with themes ending in a mute (§ 27), e.g. πέμπω, are called **mute themes**.

RULES OF WRITING AND EUPHONY APPLYING TO MUTE  
THEMES: MUTES BEFORE SIGMA

**153.** 1. A labial mute (§ 27) unites with a following *sigma* and makes  $\psi$  (=  $\pi\varsigma$ ).

2. A palatal mute (§ 27) unites with a following *sigma* and makes  $\xi$  (=  $\kappa\varsigma$ ).

3. A lingual mute (§ 27) is dropped before a following *sigma*.

These rules are illustrated, for example, in the formation of the future of verbs with themes ending in a mute. Thus the future

of *πέμπω* is *πέμψω* (*πεμπ-σω*), of *λείπω* is *λείψω* (*λειπ-σω*);  
of *ἄγω* is *ἄξω* (*ἀγ-σω*), of *ἔχω* is *ἔξω* (*ἐχ-σω*);  
of *ἀρπάζω*<sup>1</sup> is *ἀρπάσω* (*ἀρπαδ-σω*).

**154.** The change of breathing in the future of *ἔχω* (*ἔξω*) is to be noted as unusual; there is also another future of *ἔχω*: *σχήσω*.

**155.** The **genitive** case may be used to denote *time within which*:

*οὐχ ἤξει δέκα ἡμερῶν* he will not come within ten days.

**156.** The **future infinitive** is used as follows:

1. In indirect discourse when it represents the future indicative of direct discourse (cp. § 110. *a*); this is its principal use:

*οὐχ ἤξομεν* we shall not come (*direct discourse*);

*οὐ φᾶσιν ἤξειν* they say they will not come (*indirect discourse*).

<sup>1</sup> The theme of *ἀρπάζω* is *ἀρπαδ-*, not *ἀρπαξ-*. This verb and similar verbs have for the present tense suffix  $\gamma\%$  instead of simple  $\%$ . So the ending *-ζω* is for *-δγω*.

a. Observe that the Greek prefers to place the negative before *φάσι*. Compare Latin *negō* for *dīcō nōn*.

2. After *μέλλω* *be about, intend*; but *μέλλω* also permits the present and the aorist infinitive:

*μέλλουσιν ἦξειν* they are about to come.

157.

VOCABULARY XIII

*ἅμα*, adv.: *at the same time, together with*, with dat. *ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ*: *at the same time with the day, at daybreak*. Cp. Lat. *simul*. *ἡμα-δρυᾶδ* (*δρῦς tree*). *ἐπιτήδειος*, ᾧ, ον: *suitable, necessary*. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια (neut. pl. subst.): *provisions, supplies*. *εὐθύς*, adv.: *straightway, at once*. *ἡμέρᾳ*, ᾧ, ἡ: *day*. *Ἐφ-εμεράλ* (ἔφ-).

*μέλλω*, impf. *ἔμελλον*, fut. *μελήσω* (irreg.): *be about, intend; delay*. *οικίᾳ*, ᾧ, ἡ: *house*. *παρ-έχω*, impf. *παρ-έιχον*, fut. *παρέξω* (or *παρ-σχήσω*), 2 aor. *παρ-έσχον*: *hold beside, furnish, provide, supply*. *πέντε*, indecl.: *five*. *Penta-gon* (*γωνία angle*).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

158. Give the meanings of *λείψετε*, *σχήσουσι*, *ἄξομεν*, *ἀρπάσει*, *πέμψει*, *πείσει*, *λείψουσι*, *κελεύσει*, *ἄρξομεν*, *κωλύσετε*.

159. I. 1. *ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*.<sup>1</sup> 2. *νομίζουσιν ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*. 3. *ἦξουσιν εἰς κώμας τῆς πολεμίας χώρας*. 4. *ἐνόμιζον δὲ ἦξειν εἰς κώμας τῆς πολεμίας χώρας*. 5. *στρατηγούς δὲ ἔχουσιν οἱ αὐτοὺς ἄξουσιν*. 6. *ἀγορὰν δὲ παρ-έξομεν*. 7. *εὐθύς ἀπο-πέμψει αὐτὸν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν*. 8. *ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ πολέμιοι ἦξουσιν*. 9. *ἀλλὰ παίσομεν τοὺς πολεμίους*. 10. *ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον*. II. *ἀγορὰν δὲ οὔτε Κῦρος οὔτε Κλέαρχος παρ-έξειν ἔμελλον*.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes τὰ ἐπιτήδεια by *crasis*, § 30.

- II. 1. Within ten days they will come to the river.  
 2. At daybreak we shall supply provisions to the soldiers.<sup>1</sup>  
 3. We are about to destroy the bridges. 4. They say they will not destroy the bridges. 5. He will send men who will destroy the bridges.

---

## XIV

### FIRST AORIST INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. *ἔπελ* AND *ἔπειδή* *when* WITH IMPERFECT OR AORIST INDICATIVE

**160.** The first aorist indicative, as a secondary tense (§ 39), has the augment (§ 77). To the augmented theme are added the first aorist tense suffix *σα* and the personal endings. The suffix *σα* becomes *σε* in the third person singular. Reference should be made to the personal endings already learned for the other secondary tenses, imperfect and second aorist (§§ 81, 82, 85).

*a.* Personal endings are wanting in both the first and the third persons singular of the first aorist indicative.

*b.* The *first aorist stem* is the theme of the verb plus *σα*, as the future stem is the theme plus *σ%* (§ 150).

**161.** The first aorist indicative, like the second aorist (cp. § 84), expresses a simple act in past time. The first and the second aorist may often be translated with the auxiliary *had*; this is regularly true when the aorist is introduced by the conjunction *ἔπελ* or *ἔπειδή* *when*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dat. of indir. obj.

## 162. FIRST AORIST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ἔλυσα <i>I loosed</i>		ἔλυσα-μεν <i>we loosed</i>
2.	ἔλυσα-ς <i>you loosed</i>	ἔλυσα-τον	ἔλυσα-τε <i>you loosed</i>
3.	ἔλυσε(ν) <sup>1</sup> <i>he loosed</i>	ἔλυσά-την	ἔλυσα-ν <i>they loosed</i>

First aor. infin. λύσαι *to loose*<sup>2</sup>; in indir. disc., *to have loosed*, etc. (§ 110)

163. Verbs with themes ending in a vowel regularly form the first aorist like λύω.

164. Verbs with themes ending in a mute (§ 27) form the first aorist in conformity to the euphonic laws mentioned in the last lesson (§ 153):

πέμπω (πεμπ-),	first aorist	ἔπεμψα
ἄρχω (ἀρχ-),	“ “	ἤρξα
πείθω (πειθ-),	“ “	ἔπεισα
ἀρπάζω (ἀρπαδ-),	“ “	ἤρπασα

a. λείπω, ἄγω, ἔχω, and many other verbs have no first aorists; but their second aorists (§§ 85, 87, 88) do not differ in meaning from first aorists.

165. The first aorist of ἐλαύνω *drive, ride, march*, which has been seen in the compounds ἐξ-ελαύνω *march out or forth* and παρ-ελαύνω *drive or march past*, is ἤλασα.

166. The first aorist active infinitive is always accented on the penult. Thus συμ-βουλευσαι, not συμ-βούλευσαι.

167. ἐπεὶ and ἐπειδή meaning *when* and referring to a definite act in past time take the imperfect or aorist indicative: ἐπεὶ τὴν κώμην δι-ήρπασαν, ἔφυγον *when they had sacked the town, they fled*.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 32.

<sup>2</sup> The simple act (cp. § 84. a).



## 168.

## VOCABULARY XIV

Ἄρταξέρξης, ου, ὁ: *Artaxerxes*.

Βοιώτιος, α, ον: *Boeotian*.

δι-αρπάξω (διά + ἀρπάξω), impf.

δι-ήρπαξον, fut. δι-αρπάσω, aor.

δι-ήρπασα: *tear in pieces, plunder utterly or thoroughly, sack*.

ἐπει and ἐπει-δή, temporal conj.: *when, after*.

θαυμάζω (theme θαυμαδ-), impf.

ἐθαύμαζον, fut. to be learned

later, aor. ἐθαύμασα: *wonder, wonder at, admire, with acc.*

ὄν, postpositive particle: *therefore, accordingly, at any rate*.

Πρόξενος, ου, ὁ: *Proxenus*.

συλ-λέγω (σύν + λέγω *gather*), impf.

συν-έλεγον, fut. συλ-λέξω, aor.

συν-έλεξα: *gather together, collect*.

συμ-βουλεύω (σύν + βουλεύω), impf.

συν-εβούλευον, fut. συμ-βουλεύσω,

aor. συν-εβούλευσα: *plan with, advise, with dat.*

τρέπω, impf. ἔτρεπον, fut. τρέψω,

aor. ἔτρεψα: *turn*. τρέπω εἰς

φυγῆν: *put to flight*.

χρῦσιον, ου, τό: *gold*. Chrysanthemum (*άνθεμον flower*).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

169. Give the meanings of ἔσχον, ἐκώλυσαν, ἦρξεν, ἐκελεύσατε, ἔλιπον, ἔπεισας, ἐπέμψαμεν, ἤγαγε, ἦρπασα.

170. I. 1. Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ἐκέλευσεν ἦκειν. 2. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἐθαύμασεν. 3. καὶ Κῦρος συν-έπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 4. καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλίτᾱς ἀγαγεῖν.<sup>1</sup> 5. εἰς φυγῆν ἔτρεψε τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 6. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἔλαβε τὸ χρῦσιον, στρατιώτᾱς συν-έλεξεν. 7. καὶ τὰς ἀμάξᾱς οἱ σὺν Ἄρταξέρξῃ δι-ήρπασαν. 8. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς παρ-ήλασεν, ἔπεμψεν ἄνθρωπον πιστὸν παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγούς. 9. συν-εβούλευσεν οὖν αὐτοῖς μὴ λῦσαι τὴν γέφυραν. 10. ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἐπι-βουλεύσαι τῷ ἀδελφῷ Ἄρταξέρξῃ. 11. Κλέαρχον δὲ κελεύουσι πέμψαι φυλακὴν παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν.

<sup>1</sup> §§ 87, 98.

II. 1. The men with Cyrus had thoroughly plundered the land. 2. When the Cilician woman had ridden past the soldiers, she admired them. 3. We put<sup>1</sup> the enemy to flight.

## XV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. USES OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES. PREDICATE POSITION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES. NAME OF RIVER IN ATTRIBUTIVE POSITION. PARTITIVE GENITIVE. DATIVE OF TIME. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE

DECLENSION OF οὗτος *this*, ὅς *this*, AND ἐκεῖνος *that*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<b>171.</b> Sing. N.	οὗτος <i>this</i>	αὕτη	τούτο
G.	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
D.	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
A.	τούτον	ταύτην	τούτο
Dual N. A.	<del>οὗτοι</del>	<del>αὗται</del>	<del>τάυτα</del>
G. D.	<del>τούτων</del>	<del>ταύταις</del>	<del>τούτων</del>
Plur. N.	οὗτοι	αὗται	τάυτα
G.	τούτων	ταύτων	τούτων
D.	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
A.	τούτους	ταύτας	τάυτα

Delightfully

**172.** NOTE.— The declension of οὗτος, αὕτη, τούτο may be remembered thus: (1) forms with initial τ occur in all cases in which the article ὁ, ἡ, τό has initial τ, and not otherwise; thus τούτου (τού), οὗτοι (οἱ). (2) The penult has ου when the ultima contains the ο sound (ο or ω); otherwise the penult has αυ.

173. *ὅδε* is simply the definite article *ὁ, ἡ, τό*, + an enclitic *-δε*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ὅδε <i>this</i>	ἥδε	τόδε
G.	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε
D.	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε
A.	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε
Dual N. A.	τάδε	τάδε	τάδε
G. D.	τοίνδε	τοίνδε	τοίνδε
Plur. N.	οἷδε	αἷδε	τάδε
G.	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
D.	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
A.	τούσδε	τούσδε	τάδε

174. For the declension of *ἐκεῖνος that* (Lat. *ille*), cp. *ἄλλος*, § 124.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκεῖνη	ἐκεῖνο
G.	ἐκεῖνου	ἐκεῖνης	ἐκεῖνου
D.	ἐκεῖνῳ	ἐκεῖνῃ	ἐκεῖνῳ
A.	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκεῖνην	ἐκεῖνο
Dual N. A.	ἐκεῖνω	ἐκεῖνω	ἐκεῖνω
G. D.	ἐκεῖνοιν	ἐκεῖνοιν	ἐκεῖνοιν
Plur. N.	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
G.	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων
D.	ἐκεῖνοῖς	ἐκεῖναις	ἐκεῖνοῖς
A.	ἐκεῖνοὺς	ἐκεῖνάς	ἐκεῖνα

#### USES OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES

175. While *οὗτος* and *ὅδε* both mean *this, this man*, etc., *οὗτος* often refers to what has preceded, and *ὅδε* to what is to follow :

οὐδὲ τούτο ἔφη he admitted not even this (something that has been mentioned) ;

συμβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς τάδε he advised them as follows.

## THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

a. *ἐκεῖνος* means *that, that man*, etc., much like the Latin *ille*.

b. All three of the words may be used as pronouns, *he, she, it*, etc., just like the Latin *hic, iste, and ille*.

176. When used as demonstrative adjectives meaning *this* and *that*, *οὗτος, ὅδε, and ἐκεῖνος* must have the *predicate* position (§ 68):

οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος *this man.*

177. The Greek often prefers the plural *ταῦτα these things*, when in English we properly use the singular *this*:

ταῦτα συν-εβούλευσεν *he advised this.*

178. The name of a river regularly stands between the article and the noun:

ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμός *the Euphrates river* (cp. the Hudson river).

179. The genitive is often used to denote the whole, of which a part is taken (*partitive genitive*):

ἄλλος τῶν στρατιωτῶν *another of the soldiers.*

a. The partitive genitive usually has the predicate position:

οἱ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν *the good men among (lit. of) the captains.*

180. The dative (locative) is used to denote *time when*:

ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκεν *on that day he came.*

Compare the genitive of *time within which* (§ 155) and the accusative of *time how long* (§ 142).

77  
that imperfect  
man  
nere means something  
that

a. Sometimes the preposition ἐν is used with the dative of time :

ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ on this day.

181. **Cognate accusative** or accusative of the inner object.—The direct object of a verb may repeat in the form of a noun (or adjective or pronoun) a meaning similar to that of the verb :

φυλακὰς φυλάττειν to do guard duty (*lit.* to guard guardings) ;  
 συν-εβούλευσε τάδε he advised as follows, *i.e.* he advised these [pieces of advice].

## 182.

## VOCABULARY XV

For the meanings and uses of ἐκεῖνος, ὅδε, and οὗτος, see §§ 175-177.

ἀγοράζω (theme ἀγοραδ-), impf. ἡγόραζον, fut. ἀγοράσω, aor. ἡγόρασα : *buy*. Cp. ἀγορά.

ἄηλος, ἡ, ον : *plain, clear, evident*.

δύο, generally used indeclinably : *two*. Cp. Lat. *duo*.

ἑκατόν, indecl. : *hundred*.

ἐλαύνω (for ἐλα-νυ-ω, theme ἐλα-), impf. ἤλαινον, fut. to be learned later, aor. ἤλασα (cp. § 165) : *drive, ride, march*. Much less common than its compounds.

Εὐφράτης, ου, ὁ : *Euphrātes*.

καὶ γάρ : *and in fact* ; or *for also, for even*. Sometimes may be rendered *yes, for*.

μέντοι, postpositive particle : *how-ever, yet*.

μετὰ (before smooth breathing μετ', before rough breathing μεθ', § 31), prep. : with GEN. *with, in company with* ; with ACC. *into the midst of, after*.

παρασάγγης, ου, ὁ : *parasang*, a Persian measure of distance, about 3.3 English miles. Cp. our *league* (3 miles).

ὕστερος, ἄ, ον : *later, following*. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ (supply ἡμέρᾳ) : *on the following day* (§ 180).

φυλάττω, impf. ἐφύλαττον, fut. φυλάξω, aor. ἐφύλαξα : *guard*. Cp. φυλακή.

NOTE.—The present of φυλάττω is formed from the theme φυλακ- plus the present suffix γ<sup>ο</sup>ε, κ + γ by a euphonic law becoming ττ. Cp. § 153, footnote.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

183. I. 1. μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξ-ελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν. 2. τοὺς δὲ στρατηγούς ἤγαγε διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς. 3. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς κόμης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 4. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ὁ Κῦρος ἔλαβεν. 5. Ξενίας μέντοι τούτων τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἦρχεν. 6. οὐδ' ἄλλος τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐκ ταύτης τῆς μάχης ἔφυγεν. 7. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἐφύλαττον ἐκεῖνον. 8. τοῦτον τὸν οἶνον τοῖς φίλοις Κῦρος ἔπεμψεν. 9. τοὺς μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς τῶν πελταστῶν συν-έλεξεν. 10. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἦν. 11. διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγᾱς<sup>1</sup> δέκα. 12. ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. 13. οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ συν-εβούλευσαν αὐτοῖς τάδε.

II. 1. Thence he marched five days' journey to the Euphrates river. 2. These soldiers were not slain<sup>2</sup> on that day. 3. The soldiers do guard duty. 4. He came with<sup>3</sup> his friends. 5. This wine he will send to his friends.

<sup>1</sup> § 142.<sup>2</sup> 2 aor. of ἀπο-θνήσκω.<sup>3</sup> Use μετὰ with the proper case.

FIG. 6. — Δρόμος.

## XVI

## GENERAL REVIEW

**184.** A thorough review of the past lessons is now most advisable. Of first importance is the vocabulary; and all the words hitherto given are here collected in alphabetical order (§ 186). They should be committed to memory from English into Greek as well as from Greek into English. The student should *make a list* of the English meanings and then write the Greek equivalents opposite. The same plan of review should be frequently followed later.

This list of words must be *thoroughly* mastered. It is a help to the memory to associate words that show the same stems and roots (*e.g.* *χώρᾱ* with *χωρίον*, *λοχᾶγός* with *λόχος* and *ἄγω*) and to recall similar stems in English (*e.g.* **philanthropy** from *φίλος* and *ἄνθρωπος*). See the special vocabularies for suggestions of this sort.

When verbs occur in the following list, the first persons singular of the imperfect, future, and aorist (first or second) are also given. In a few instances, however, certain verb forms have had to be postponed to a more advanced period of study. They may always be found in the general VOCABULARY.

Hereafter the imperfect will not be given, unless it shows an irregularity.

Typical words from the following list should be inflected both in written work and orally.

**185.** A common negative prefix is *ἀ(ν)*; it is equivalent to Latin *in-* and English *un-*. It is known as *alpha privative*. Cp. *ἀ-διάβατος*, *ἀ-φύλακτος*.

186.

ἀγαθός  
 ἀγορά  
 ἀγοράζω (cp. ἀγορά), ἠγόραζον, ἀγο-  
 ράσω, ἠγόρασα  
 ἄγω, ἤγον, ἄξω, ἤγαγον  
 ἀδελφός  
 ἀδιάβατος (ἀ- priv. + δια-βαίνω)  
 ἀλλά (cp. ἄλλος)  
 ἄλλος  
 ἅμα, ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ  
 ἅμαξα  
 ἄνθρωπος  
 ἀπό  
 ἀπο-θνήσκω, ἀπ-έθνησκον, fut. to be  
 learned later, ἀπ-έθανον  
 ἀπο-πέμπω, ἀπ-έπεμπον, ἀπο-πέμψω,  
 ἀπ-έπεμψα  
 ἄπορος  
 ἀπο-φεύγω, ἀπ-έφευγον, fut. to be  
 learned later, ἀπ-έφυγον  
 ἀρπάζω, ἤρπαζον, ἀρπάσω, ἤρπασα  
 Ἄρταξέρξης  
 ἀρχή (ἄρχω)  
 ἄρχω, ἤρχον, ἄρξω, ἤρξα  
 αὐτός  
 ἀφύλακτος (cp. φυλακή)  
 βάρβαρος  
 Βοιωτίας  
 γάρ  
 γέφυρα  
 δέ  
 δέκα  
 δῆλος  
 διὰ  
 δια-βαίνω, δι-έβαινον, fut. and aor.  
 to be learned later  
 δι-αρπάζω, δι-ἤρπαζον, δι-αρπάσω,  
 δι-ἤρπασα

δίκη  
 δρόμος (ἔδραμον)  
 δύο  
 ἔδραμον  
 ἐθέλω, ἤθελον, ἐθέλησω, ἠθέλησα  
 εἰ  
 εἰμί, ἐστί(ν), ἔστι(ν), εἶναι  
 εἰς  
 εἶτα  
 ἐκ  
 ἑκατόν  
 ἐκεῖνος  
 ἐλαύνω, ἤλαυνον, fut. to be learned  
 later, ἤλασα  
 ἐμός  
 ἐν  
 ἐνταῦθα  
 ἐντεῦθεν  
 ἐξ-άγω, ἐξ-ἤγον, ἐξ-άξω, ἐξ-ἤγαγον  
 ἐξ-ελαύνω, ἐξ-ἤλαυνον, fut. to be  
 learned later, ἐξ-ἤλασα  
 ἐπεὶ  
 ἐπειδή  
 ἐπί  
 ἐπι-βουλεύω, ἐπ-εβούλευον, ἐπι-  
 βουλεύσω, ἐπ-εβούλευσα  
 ἐπιστολή  
 ἐπιτήδειος, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 ἔργον  
 εὐθὺς  
 Εὐφράτης  
 ἔφασαν, ἔφη  
 ἔχω, εἶχον, ἔξω or σχήσω, ἔσχον  
 ἦ, ἡ δέ  
 ἦκα, ἦκον, ἦξω (these are all the  
 tenses)  
 ἡμέρᾳ  
 ἡμέτερος  
 ἦν



ἦσαν  
θάλαττα  
θαυμάζω, θαύμαζον, fut. to be  
learned later, θαύμασα  
θεός  
ἵππος  
καί, καί . . . καί, καί γάρ  
κακός  
καλός  
κελεύω, ἐκέλευον, κεύσσω, ἐκέλευσα  
Κιλικία  
Κλισσα (cp. Κιλικία)  
Κλέαρχος  
Κῦρος  
κωλύω, ἐκώλυον, κωλύσω, ἐκώλυσα  
κόμη  
λαμβάνω, ἐλάμβανον, fut. to be  
learned later, λαβον  
λείπω, ἔλειπον, λείψω, ἔλειπον  
λόγος  
λόφος  
λοχᾶγός (λόχος, ἄγω)  
λόχος  
λύω, ἔλυον, λύσω, ἔλυσα  
μάχη  
μέλλω, ἔμελλον, μελήσω, ἐμέλλησα  
μέν  
μέντοι  
μεστός  
μετά  
μεταξύ (cp. μετά)  
μή  
νίκη  
νομίζω, ἐνόμιζον, fut. to be learned  
later, ἐνόμισα  
Ξενίας  
ὄ, ὄ δέ, ὄ μέν . . . ὄ δέ  
ἔδε  
ὀδός

οικία  
οἱ μέν . . . οἱ δέ  
οἶνος  
ὀπλίτης (ὄπλα)  
ὄπλον, ὄπλα  
ὄρθιος  
ὄρκος  
ὄς  
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ  
οὐδέ  
οὐν  
οὔτε . . . οὔτε  
οὔτος  
παῖω, ἔπαιον, παίσω, ἔπαισα  
πάλιν  
παλτόν  
παρά  
παρασάγγης  
πάρ-εμι, παρ-ην, fut. to be learned  
later, no aor.  
παρ-ελεύω, παρ-ήλευνον, fut. to be  
learned later, παρ-ήλασα  
παρ-έχω, παρ-είχον, παρ-έξω or παρα-  
σχίσω, παρ-έσχον  
πάροδος (παρά + ὁδός)  
πεδίον  
πεζός (cp. πεδίον), οἱ πεζοί  
πέιθω, ἔπειθον, πείσω, ἔπεισα  
πελταστής  
πέμπω, ἔπεμπον, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα  
πέντε  
περί  
Πισίδαι  
πιστός (cp. πείθω), τὰ πιστά  
πλοῖον  
πολέμιος, οἱ πολέμιοι  
ποταμός  
Πρόξενος  
πρός

οἶτος	τε, τε . . . και
σκηνή	τό
σός	τοξότης
σπονδή, σπονδαί	τρέπω, ἔτρεπον, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα
σταθμός	ὑμέτερος
στενός	ὑστεραῖος, τῆ ὑστεραία
στόλος (cp. ἐπι-στολή)	φᾶσι(ν)
στρατηγός (cp. στρατιά and ἄγω)	φεύγω, ἔφευγον, fut. to be learned
στρατιά	later, ἔφυγον
στρατιώτης (cp. στρατιά)	φησί(ν)
συλ-λαμβάνω, συν-ελάμβανον, fut. to be learned later, συν-ελαβον	φίλος
συλ-λέγω, συν-ελεγον, συλ-λέξω, συν- ελεξα	φόβος
συμ-βουλεύω, συν-εβούλευον, συμ- βουλεύσω. συν-εβούλευσα	φυγή (cp. φεύγω)
συν-πέμπω, συν-έπεμπον, συμ-πέμψω, συν-έπεμψα	φυλακή
σύν	φυλάττω, ἐφύλαττον, φυλάξω, ἐφύ- λαξα (cp. φυλακή)
συν-άγω, συν-ἤγον, συν-άξω, συν- ἤγαγον	Χειρίσοφος
τάφρος	χρῦσιν
	χάρᾱ
	χωρίον (cp. χάρᾱ)
	ᾧ
	ᾧστε

XVII

CONSONANT DECLENSION: STEMS ENDING IN A MUTE  
(PALATAL OR LABIAL). μέσος IN PREDICATE  
POSITION

STEMS ENDING IN A PALATAL OR LABIAL MUTE

187.	Sing. N. V.	κήρυξ, ὁ, <i>herald</i>	φάλαγξ, ἡ, <i>phalanx</i>
	G.	κήρυκ-ος	φάλαγγ-ος
	D.	κήρυκ-ι	φάλαγγ-ι
	A.	κήρυκ-α	φάλαγγ-α
	Dual N. A. V.	κήρυκ-ε	φάλαγγ-ε
	G. D.	κήρυκ-οιν	φάλαγγ-οιν

Plur. N. V.	κήρῦκ-ες	φάλαγγ-ες
G.	κηρύκ-ων	φαλάγγ-ων
D.	κήρῦξι(ν) <sup>1</sup>	φάλαγγι(ν) <sup>2</sup>
A.	κήρῦκ-ας	φάλαγγ-ας
Sing. N. V.	διώρυξ, ἡ, <i>trench</i>	κλώψ, ὁ, <i>thief</i>
G.	διώρυχ-ος	κλωπ-ός
D.	διώρυχ-ι	κλωπ-ί
A.	διώρυχ-α	κλωπ-α
Dual N. A. V.	διώρυχ-ε	κλωπ-ε
G. D.	διωρύχ-οιν	κλωπ-οῖν
Plur. N. V.	διώρυχ-ες	κλωπ-ες
G.	διωρύχ-ων	κλωπ-ῶν
D.	διώρυξι(ν) <sup>1</sup>	κλωψί(ν) <sup>1</sup>
A.	διώρυχ-ας	κλωπ-ας

188. The stem of a noun of the consonant declension is seen when the ending *-ος* is dropped from the genitive singular. Thus the stems of the preceding nouns are respectively *κηρύκ-*, *φαλαγγ-*, *διωρυχ-*, *κλωπ-*.

189. The accent of the paradigms of *κήρυξ*, *φάλαγγξ*, and *διωρύξ* comes under laws already learned (§§ 57, 59). But *κλώψ*, a word of *one* syllable, comes under a new law, peculiar to the consonant declension: Monosyllables of the consonant declension are accented on the ultima in the genitive and dative of all numbers, — with the circumflex, if the ultima has a long vowel or diphthong, otherwise with the acute.

190. The nominative singular of the preceding nouns ends in *sigma*; the dative plural in *-σι*. With *κ*, *γ*, or *χ*, *sigma* unites to form *ξ*, as has already been explained (§ 153. 2); with *π*, *β*, or *φ*, *sigma* unites to form *ψ* (§ 153. 1).

191. *-ας* of the accusative plural is short in the consonant declension, but long in the *α*-declension (§ 93).

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 32.

192. μέσος in the predicate position has a partitive sense, meaning *middle of*:

ἡ φάλαγξ μέση ἢ μέση ἡ φάλαγξ the middle of the phalanx ;  
 but ἡ μέση φάλαγξ means *the middle phalanx, i.e. between two others.*

193.

VOCABULARY XVII

ἀκούω, fut. to be learned later,  
 ἤκουσα: *hear, hear of, listen.*  
 With object in gen. or acc.  
 Acoustic.

ἀμφί (may be elided, ἀμφ', before a vowel), prep.: with GEN. *concerning, about* (but in prose περί is generally used in this sense); with ACC. *about.* οἱ ἀμφὶ Κίρου: *Cyrus and his men* (lit. those [the men] about Cyrus). **Amphi-bious** (*bios life*), **amphi-theater** (θέατρον).

δι-έχω (for other forms, see ἔχω):  
*be apart, be separated.*

διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα: *pursue.*

διώρυξ, υχορ, ἤ: *trench, canal.*

Θραξ, Θρακός, ὄ: *a Thracian, Thracian.*

θώραξ, ἄκος, ὄ: *breastplate.* See p. 86, Fig. 7. **Thorax.**

κήρυξ, υκος, ὄ: *herald.*

κλώψ, κλωπός, ὄ: *thief.* **Kleptomania** (μανία *madness*).

μέσος, η, ον: *middle, middle of.* ἐν μέσῳ: *in the midst, between* (with gen.). μέσος in predicate position means *middle of* (§ 192).

**Meso-potamia** (ποταμός).

ὅλος, η, ον: *whole, entire, all.*

**Holo-caust** (κάω *burn*).

οὐκ-έτι, adv.: *no longer, no more.*

πῆ, enclitic adv.: *anywhere.* Πῆ

πρό (like περί, never suffers elision of the final vowel), prep. with gen. only: *before, in front of.* Lat. *prō*.

σάλπιγξ, ιγγορ, ἤ: *trumpet.*

στάδιον, ον, τό: *stadium* (race course); then a measure of distance, *stade*, 600 Greek feet. Pl. both στάδιοι, οἱ, and στάδια, τά. See p. 95, Fig. 9.

φάλαγξ, αγγορ, ἤ: *line of battle.* **Phalanx.**

φύλαξ, ακορ, ὄ: *guard, sentinel.* Cp. φυλακή.

χίλιοι, αι, α: *thousand.* **Kilometer** (μέτρον *measure*).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

194. I. 1. κήρυκας δὲ ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. 2. πάρ-  
 εστι δ' ὁ κήρυξ. 3. τοὺς δὲ κλώπας ἔλαβον. 4. καὶ

Κλέαρχος εἶχεν ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θωράκας.  
 5. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ξενίαν ἤκουσαν τῆς σάλπιγγος. 6. Κῦρος  
 δὲ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται αὐτοῦ εἶχον θωράκας. 7. καὶ οὐ-  
 κέτι δύο στάδια<sup>1</sup> διεΐχον αἱ φάλαγγες. 8. οἱ δὲ βάρβα-  
 ροὶ ἦσαν ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. 9. πρὸ  
 τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης ἦν Κῦρος. 10. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι  
 αὐτοὶ ἔχουσι φύλακας. 11. εἰ δέ πη τοῦτο ἦν,<sup>2</sup> τῇ ὅλῃ  
 φάλαγγι κακὸν ἦν. 12. οἱ δὲ φύλακες ἐδίωξαν τοὺς  
 κλώπας.

II. 1. We shall send heralds to Cyrus. 2. We think  
 we shall send heralds to Cyrus. 3. Between the canal and  
 the river are the guards of the enemy. 4. Our soldiers  
 no longer heard the trumpet. 5. Clearchus and his men  
 ran into the middle of the river.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 142.

<sup>2</sup> = *happened*.



FIG. 7. — Θωράξ.

XVIII

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). STEMS ENDING  
IN A MUTE (LINGUAL). GENITIVE OF SEPARATION

STEMS ENDING IN A LINGUAL MUTE

195.	Sing. N. V.	ἀσπίς, ἡ, <i>shield</i>	πούς, ὁ, <i>foot</i>	νύξ, ἡ, <i>night</i>
	G.	ἀσπίδ-ος	ποδ-ός	νυκτ-ός
	D.	ἀσπίδ-ι	ποδ-ί	νυκτ-ί
	A.	ἀσπίδ-α	ποδ-α	νυκτ-α
	Dual N. A. V.	ἀσπίδ-ε	πόδ-ε	νύκτ-ε
	G. D.	ἀσπίδ-οιν	ποδ-οῖν	νυκτ-οῖν
	Plur. N. V.	ἀσπίδ-ες	πόδ-ες	νύκτ-ες
	G.	ἀσπίδ-ων	ποδ-ῶν	νυκτ-ῶν
	D.	ἀσπί-σι(ν) <sup>1</sup>	πο-σί(ν) <sup>1</sup>	νυξι(ν) <sup>1</sup>
	A.	ἀσπίδ-ας	πόδ-ας	νύκτ-ας
	Sing. N. V.	ἄρχων, ὁ, <i>ruler</i>	χάρις, ἡ, <i>grace, gratitude</i>	
	G.	ἄρχοντ-ος	χάριτ-ος	
D.	ἄρχοντ-ι	χάριτ-ι		
A.	ἄρχοντ-α	<u>χάρι-ν</u>		
Dual N. A. V.	ἄρχοντ-ε	χάριτ-ε		
G. D.	ἀρχόντ-οιν	χαριτ-οῖν		
Plur. N. V.	ἄρχοντ-ες	χάριτ-ες		
G.	ἀρχόντ-ων	χαριτ-ῶν		
D.	ἄρχου-σι(ν) <sup>1</sup>	χάρι-σι(ν) <sup>1</sup>		
A.	ἄρχοντ-ας	χάριτ-ας		
Sing. N. A. V.	στράτευμα, τό, <i>army</i>			
G.	στρατεύματ-ος			
D.	στρατεύματ-ι			
Dual N. A. V.	στρατεύματ-ε			
G. D.	στρατευμάτ-οιν			
Plur. N. A. V.	στρατεύματ-α			
G.	στρατευμάτ-ων			
D.	στρατεύμα-σι(ν) <sup>1</sup>			

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 32.

## ἀσπίς, ποῦς, νύξ, χάρις

196. Four nouns of this group form the nominative singular by adding *sigma* to the stem. The stem of ἀσπίς is ἀσπιδ- (§ 188). In the nominative singular and in the dative plural, before *sigma*, the lingual mute is dropped (§ 153. 3). So with ποῦς (stem ποδ-), νύξ (νυκτ-), and χάρις (χαριτ-). A lengthening of *o* to *ou* occurs when ποδς becomes ποῦς; this is irregular. Since τ drops before σ, νύξ is for νυκ[τ]ς; χάρις, for χαρι[τ]ς; νύξι (dative plural) is for νυκ[τ]σι.

197. The accusative singular of χάρις is χάριν, not χάριτα. The ending -ιν or -ιν, in the accusative singular, belongs to almost all nouns with stems in *unaccented i* or *v* followed by a lingual mute. It does not belong to ἀσπίς, for -ιδ- is accented.

198. For the accent of the monosyllables ποῦς and νύξ, see § 189.

## ἄρχων, στρατεύμα

199. The remaining two nouns of the group form nominatives singular from the mere stem, without any ending. The stem of ἄρχων is ἀρχοντ-; of στρατεύμα, στρατευματ-. In both instances, final τ of the stem is dropped, for a Greek word cannot end in τ (§ 10). ἄρχων, having o lengthened to ω in the nominative singular, is typical of all present active masculine participles of ω-verbs, e.g. λύων loosing and ἔχων having; as well as of such second aorist participles as λιπών having left (observe that the latter differs in accent)

a. στρατεύμα is typical of a very large number of neuters of this declension.

200. ἄρχουσι(ν), the dative plural of ἄρχων, is for ἀρχοντ-σι(ν). In compensation for the loss of both ν and τ (for ν σ).

must also be dropped before *sigma*, § 133. 4), *o* is lengthened to *ou*.

**201. Genitive of separation.** — Besides the *of* genitive (§ 53. *f*), there is also a *from* genitive, which is used with verbs (and adjectives and adverbs) to express separation, source, and similar ideas. It corresponds to the Latin “ablative of separation”:

*ἀπ'έχειν τῆς Ἑλλάδος* to be distant from Greece.

The measure of distance, if added, is in the accusative (§ 142).

## 202.

## VOCABULARY XVIII

*ἀπ'έχω*: *be distant, be away*, with gen. of person or place, and acc. of extent of space.

*ἄρχων, ὄντος, ὁ*: *ruler, commander*.

Really the pres. masc. partic. of *ἄρχω*. Archon.

*ἀσπίς, ἰδος, ἡ*: *shield*. See p. 97.

*Δάρτεος, ου, ὁ*: *Dartus*.

*Ἑλλάς, ἄδος, ἡ*: *Hellas*, the name given by the Hellēnes to their own country. From the Romans they received the appellation *Greeks* and their land was called *Greece* (Lat. *Graeci, Graecia*).

*ἦλθον* 2 aor.: *I or they came or went*; inflected like *ἔλιπον*; inf. *ἔλθειν*.

*κλέπτω* (theme *κλεπ-*), *κλέψω, ἔκλεψα*: *steal*. Cp. *κλέψ*.

*κημίς, ἰδος, ἡ*: *greave*. See p. 101.

*Λακεδαιμόνιος, α, ον*: belonging to *Λακεδαιμών (Lacedaemon)*, *Lacedaemonian, Spartan*.

*νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ*: *night*. *μέσαι νύκτες*: *midnight* (middle watches of the night). Lat. *nox*.

*ὄρνις, ἰθος, ὁ* and *ἡ*: *bird*. Ornithology (*ὄρνιθος account*).

*ὄτε*, rel. adv.: *when, at the time when*, commonly with impf. indic.

*παῖς, παιδός, ὁ* and *ἡ*: *child, boy, girl*.

The gen. and dat. dual is exceptionally accented *παῖδιν*, and the gen. pl. *παίδων*. The voc. sing. is *παῖ*. Pedagogue (*ἄγω*).

*πούς, ποδός, ὁ*: *foot*. Also the Greek unit of length. Lat. *pēs*. Tri-pod (*τρεις, τρία three*).

*στράτευμα, ατος, τό* (cp. *στρατιῶν*): *army*.

*τόξευμα, ατος, τό* (cp. *τοξότης*): *arrow*.

*φυγᾶς, ἄδος, ὁ* (cp. *φεύγω*): *fugitive, exile*.

*χάρις, ἰτος, ἡ*: *grace, favor, gratitude*. *χάριν ἔχειν*: *feel thankful*, with dat.



## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

203. I. 1. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγάς ἦν. 2. τοὺς δὲ φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε παρ-εῖναι. 3. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τὸν στρατηγὸν ἀπο-πέμψαι ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα.<sup>1</sup> 4. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται εἶχον κινήμίδας καὶ ἀσπίδας. 5. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν ὄρνιθες. 6. καὶ τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων ἄρχουσιν οὐκ ἐπ-εβούλευεν. 7. ἀπ-εἶχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος χίλια στάδια. 8. ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα.<sup>2</sup> 9. ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες. 10. ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων<sup>3</sup> κλέπτειν.<sup>4</sup> 11. καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. 12. τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἦλθε διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. 13. Δᾶρείω δὲ ἦσαν παῖδες δύο, Ἄρταξέρεθης καὶ Κῦρος. 14. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάριω ἔχομεν. 15. ἐθαύμασαν δὲ τὰ πρὸ<sup>5</sup> ποδῶν.

II. 1. The soldiers have beautiful shields. 2. They are distant from Greece a hundred parasangs. 3. I hear that the commanders are<sup>6</sup> brave. 4. I hear the soldiers took the shields.

<sup>1</sup> I.e. τὸ στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε.

<sup>2</sup> during this night, § 142.

<sup>3</sup> from boyhood.

<sup>4</sup> § 110. a.

<sup>5</sup> the things before.

<sup>6</sup> Cp. sentence 10 above.



FIG. 8.—Σάλπιγξ.

## XIX

DECLENSION OF PRESENT, FUTURE, AND AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLES OF THE Ω-VERB. DECLENSION OF ὄν. ATTRIBUTIVE PARTICIPLES. SUBSTANTIVE PARTICIPLES. CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLES OF TIME, CAUSE, ETC. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLES WITH τυγχάνω

## DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES IN -ων, -ουσα, -ον

204. Participles in -ων (with stems in -οντ-) are declined, in the masculine, like ἄρχων (§ 195). The neuter nominative and accusative singular consists of the mere stem, which drops τ, since this letter cannot end a Greek word (§ 10). The neuter nominative and accusative plural ends in -α. Otherwise the neuter forms are like the masculine. The feminine of these participles, ending in -ουσα, is declined like θάλασσα (§ 140).

## ὄν being, PRESENT PARTICIPLE OF εἶμι (§ 101)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
205. Sing. N. V.	ὄν	ούσα	όν
G.	όντος	ούσης	όντος
D.	όντι	ούση	όντι
A.	όντα	ούσαν	όν
Dual N. A. V.	όντε	ούσα	όντε
G. D.	όντοιν	ούσαιν	όντοιν
Plur. N. V.	όντες	ούσαι	όντα
G.	όντων	ούσων	όντων
D.	όνσι(ν)	ούσαις	όνσι(ν)
A.	όντας	ούσας	όντα

α. The accent of ὄν in the genitive and dative, masculine and neuter, of all numbers is exceptional (§ 189).

κωλύων *hindering*, PRESENT PARTICIPLE OF κωλύω

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
206. Sing. N. V.	κωλύων	κωλύουσα	κωλύον
	G. κωλύοντος	κωλύούσης	κωλύοντος
	D. κωλύοντι	κωλύούσῃ	κωλύοντι
	A. κωλύοντα	κωλύουσαν	κωλύον
Dual N. A. V.	κωλύοντε	κωλύούσῃ	κωλύοντε
	G. D. κωλύόντων	κωλύούσαιν	κωλύόντων
Plur. N. V.	κωλύοντες	κωλύουσαι	κωλύοντα
	G. κωλύόντων	κωλύουσῶν	κωλύόντων
	D. κωλύουσι(ν)	κωλύούσαις	κωλύουσι(ν)
	A. κωλύοντας	κωλύούσῃς	κωλύοντα

*a.* κωλύων is used in the paradigm, instead of λύων, λύουσα, λύον, *loosing*, in order to show the accent in the neuter κωλύον (not recessive). The two words are declined alike.

207. λύσων, λύσουσα, λύσον, *about to loose*, future participle of λύω, is declined like the present participle λύων or κωλύων.

#### SECOND AORIST PARTICIPLES IN -όν, -ούσα, -όν

λιπόν *having left*, SECOND AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLE OF λείπω

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
208. Sing. N. V.	λιπόν	λιπούσα	λιπόν
	G. λιπόντος	λιπούσης	λιπόντος
	D. λιπόντι	λιπούσῃ	λιπόντι
	A. λιπόντα	λιπούσαν	λιπόν
Dual N. A. V.	λιπόντε	λιπούσῃ	λιπόντε
	G. D. λιπόντων	λιπούσαιν	λιπόντων
Plur. N. V.	λιπόντες	λιπούσαι	λιπόντα
	G. λιπόντων	λιπούσῶν	λιπόντων
	D. λιπούσι(ν)	λιπούσαις	λιπούσι(ν)
	A. λιπόντας	λιπούσῃς	λιπόντα

*a.* Observe that λιπόν is accented like ὦν (§ 205).

## FIRST AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLES IN -ᾱς, -ᾱσα, -αν

ἀκούσᾱς *having heard*, FIRST AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLE OF  
ἀκούω (STEM ἀκουσαντ-)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
209. Sing. N. V.	ἀκούσᾱς	ἀκούσᾱσα	ἀκούσαν
G.	ἀκούσαντος	ἀκουσᾱσης	ἀκούσαντος
D.	ἀκούσαντι	ἀκουσᾱση	ἀκούσαντι
A.	ἀκούσαντα	ἀκούσᾱσαν	ἀκούσαν
Dual N. A. V.	ἀκούσαντε	ἀκουσᾱσᾱ	ἀκούσαντε
G. D.	ἀκουσάντων	ἀκουσᾱσαι	ἀκουσάντων
Plur. N. V.	ἀκούσαντες	ἀκούσᾱσαι	ἀκούσαντα
G.	ἀκουσάντων	ἀκουσᾱσῶν	ἀκουσάντων
D.	ἀκούσᾱσι(ν)	ἀκουσᾱσαις	ἀκούσᾱσι(ν)
A.	ἀκούσαντας	ἀκουσᾱσᾱς	ἀκούσαντα

*a.* ἀκούσᾱς is for ἀκουσαντς; the loss of ντ before sigma in both nominative singular and dative plural is compensated by the lengthening of *a* to *ā* (cp. § 200).

*b.* λύσᾱς *having loosed* is declined like ἀκούσᾱς.

210. For the agreement of the participle with its noun, see § 53. *i*.

211. The participle is often used as an attributive adjective:

τὸν βασιλεύοντα<sup>1</sup> Ἀρταξέρξην the reigning Artaxerxes.

*a.* The participle may of course take one of the other attributive positions (§§ 67, 69).

212. The participle is very often used as a substantive, when it may be translated by a relative clause or by a noun:

οἱ παρόντες those who are present;

ὁ κελεύων the man who commands;

<sup>1</sup> Pres. partic. of βασιλεύω *be king*.

*act. y*  
*subst*

- οἱ κωλύοντες those who will hinder ;  
 οἱ ἐθέλοντες φυγῆς ἄρχειν those that wish to begin flight ;  
 ὁ φεύγων the fugitive, the exile ;  
 ὁ ἄρχων the ruler ;  
 ὁ ἄρξᾶς the man who had (or has) ruled.

**213. Circumstantial participle.** — The participle is very often used without the article, in agreement with a noun, to define the circumstances of an action. This, the circumstantial participle, is most often equivalent to a clause expressing time or cause :

- (Of time) Κλέαρχος δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῆσιον στράτευμα συν-έλεξεν and when Clearchus had received the gold, he collected an army ;  
 (Of cause) τὴν χώραν δι-ήρπασεν ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν he laid waste the country, since, as-he-alleged (= ὡς), it was hostile.

a. The word ὡς is not essential to the latter construction ; but its force (lit. *as*) must be observed when it is used.

b. Particularly to be noticed is the use of ἔχων and λαβὼν in the sense of *with*, expressing an attendant circumstance :

καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ἔχων ὀπλίτας and Clearchus came with hoplites.

c. The circumstantial participle may also express condition (*if*), concession (*although*), manner, and means.

**214.** The time of the participle is commonly relative to that of the main verb. That is, the present participle indicates the same time with the finite verb, the aorist participle prior time, and the future participle subsequent time. But these distinctions do not always hold, particularly in case of the present and aorist participles.

**215. Supplementary participle.** — The participle is often used to complete the idea expressed by the main verb. This is known as the supplementary participle. Of the important constructions under this head, only one is introduced in the present lesson: the participle with τυγχάνω *happen, chance:*

ὁ δὲ παρ-ὼν ἐτύγγανε and he happened to be present, *or* and he was present, as it happened.

**216.** The negative with the participle is regularly οὐ; but the conditional participle takes μή.

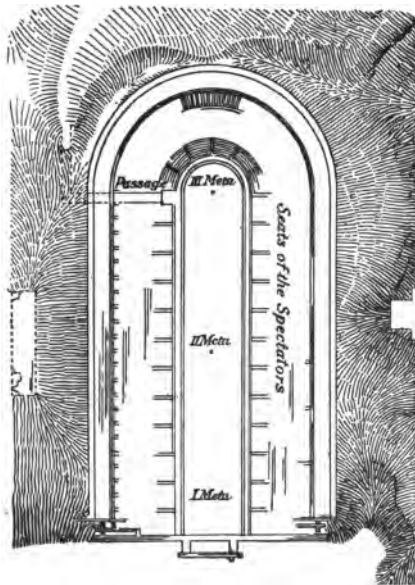


FIG. 9.—Ground Plan of the Stadium at Athens.

## 217.

## VOCABULARY XIX

ἀπ-ἦλθον, 2 aor. indic. : *I or they went away*. Inf. ἀπ-ελθεῖν, partic. ἀπ-ελθόν.

Ἀριστίππος, ου, ὁ : *Aristippus*.

βασιλεύς, ου : *of a king, royal*. τὰ βασίλεια (neut. pl. subst.) : *the royal buildings, the palace*.

βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω, ἐβασιλευσα : *be king, rule as king*.

εἶδον, 2 aor. indic. : *I or they saw*.

Inf. ἴδειν, partic. ἰδόν.

κινδυνεύω, κινδυνεύσω, ἐκινδυνεύσα : *incur danger, run a risk*.

λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ : *splendor, brilliancy*.

ἕνως, ου, ὁ : *guest-friend*.

πεντακόσιοι, αι, α : *five hundred*.

Cp. πέντε.

πράττω (theme πρᾶγ-), πρᾶξω, ἐπράξα : *accomplish, effect, do*.

Συρία, αι, ἡ : *Syria*. Τυγχάνω

τυγχάνω (theme τυχ-), fut. to be learned later, 2 aor. ἔτυχον : *hit (with gen.); happen, chance (with supplementary partic.)*.

χρῆμα, ατος, τό : *a thing of use; commonly pl., possessions, money*.

ΧΡΗΜΑ

218. NOTE. — The present of πρᾶττω is formed from the theme πρᾶγ + present suffix γ%; γ + γ by a euphonic law becoming ττ. Cp. φυλάττω, § 182, NOTE.

The present of τυγχάνω is formed from the theme τυχ + present suffix αν%. ν, taking the form γ nasal by § 133. 2, is inserted in the theme proper before χ. A similar formation is seen in λαμβάνω (theme λαβ-). In the last verb, ν inserted before β becomes μ (§ 133. 1).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

219. 1. ὁ δ' ἀπ-ἦλθε κινδυνεύσας. 2. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασεν. 3. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῆσιον στρατεύμα συν-έλεξεν ἀπὸ<sup>1</sup> τούτων τῶν χρημάτων. 4. Πρόξενος δὲ παρ-ἦν ἔχων ὀπλίτας εἰς<sup>2</sup> πεντακοσίουσ καὶ χιλίουσ. 5. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ἀπ-ἦλθον. 6. ἀγαθός ἐστιν ὁ κελεύων τὰ πλοῖα λαβεῖν. 7. ἐν

<sup>1</sup> I.e. with the aid of.

<sup>2</sup> to the number of.

εἶδον  
κινδυνεύω  
λαμπρότητα

T  
111

ταῦθα ἦν τὰ Δαρείου βασιλεια τοῦ Συριάς ἄρξαντος.  
 8. καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν<sup>1</sup> ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς  
 τὸ μέσον.<sup>2</sup> 9. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπράξαν, ἀγαγόντες χιλίους  
 ὀπλίτας. 10. καὶ ἰδὼν τὰς κόμας, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων πρὸς  
 τοὺς ὀπλίτας. 11. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ξένος ὢν ἐτύχα-  
 νεν αὐτῷ.<sup>3</sup> 12. ταῦτα ἐπράξε σὺν τῷ βασιλευόντι  
 Ἀρταξέρξη.

II. 1. Aristippus happened to see the gold. 2. After  
 the generals had led soldiers to the number of a thousand  
 into the village, they went away. 3. Since Proxenus was  
 not present, he did not see those that were<sup>4</sup> in the house.

<sup>1</sup> Subst. adj. masc. in part. gen. (§ 179), of his trusty men.

<sup>2</sup> Subst. the midst. <sup>3</sup> Dat. of possession, § 119. <sup>4</sup> that were = being.

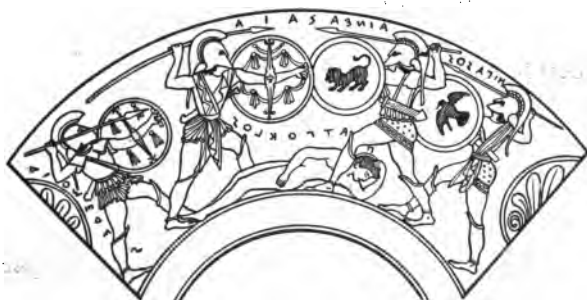


FIG. 10. — Ἀσπίδες.



## XX

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ων, -ον*. INFINITIVE WITH *δεῖ, χρῆ, ἔξεστιν*, ETC.

## STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID

220. Sing. N. V.	<u>ἀγών, ὁ</u> <i>contest</i>	<u>ἡγεμόν, ὁ</u> <i>guide</i>
	G. ἀγών-ος	ἡγεμόν-ος
	D. ἀγών-ι	ἡγεμόν-ι
	A. ἀγών-α	ἡγεμόν-α
Dual N. A. V.	ἀγών-ε	ἡγεμόν-ε
	G. D. ἀγών-οιν	ἡγεμόν-οιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀγών-ες	ἡγεμόν-ες
	G. ἀγών-ων	ἡγεμόν-ων
	D. ἀγώ-σι(ν)	ἡγεμό-σι(ν)
	A. ἀγών-ας	ἡγεμόν-ας
Sing. N. V.	<u>μῆν, ὁ</u> <i>month</i>	<u>λιμῆν, ὁ</u> <i>harbor</i>
	G. μην-ός	λιμέν-ος
	D. μην-ί	λιμέν-ι
	A. μῆν-α	λιμέν-α
Dual N. A. V.	μῆν-ε	λιμέν-ε
	G. D. μην-οῖν	λιμέν-οῖν
Plur. N. V.	μῆν-ες	λιμέν-ες
	G. μην-ῶν	λιμέν-ων
	D. μη-σί(ν)	λιμέ-σι(ν)
	A. μῆν-ας	λιμέν-ας
Sing. N.	<u>γείτων, ὁ</u> <i>neighbor</i>	<u>κράτηρ, ὁ</u> <i>mixing-bowl</i>
	G. γείτων-ος	κράτηρ-ος
	D. γείτων-ι	κράτηρ-ι
	A. γείτων-α	κράτηρ-α
	V. γείτων	κράτηρ
Dual N. A. V.	γείτων-ε	κράτηρ-ε
	G. D. γειτόν-οιν	κράτηρ-οῖν

Plur. N. V.	γείτων-ες	κρᾶτήρ-ες
G.	γειτόν-ων	κρᾶτήρ-ων
D.	γείτο-σι(ν)	κρᾶτήρ-σι(ν)
A.	γείτων-ας	κρᾶτήρ-ας

a. The nominative singular in the preceding paradigms is the stem without any case-ending; the vowel before final -ν or -ρ of the stem is always long in the nominative singular.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN -ων, -ον

221. Adjectives in -ων with stems in -ον are declined like γείτων (§ 220). There are separate forms for the neuter in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural. The feminine is like the masculine. The accent is recessive (cp. § 44).

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
222. Sing. N.	εὐδαίμων <i>prosperous</i>	εὐδαίμων <i>εὐδαιμόνω</i>
G.	εὐδαίμων-ος	
D.	εὐδαίμων-ι	
A.	εὐδαίμων-α	εὐδαίμων
V.	εὐδαίμων	
Dual N. A. V.	εὐδαίμων-ε	
G. D.	εὐδαιμόν-οιν	
Plur. N. V.	εὐδαίμων-ες	εὐδαίμων-α
G.	εὐδαιμόν-ων	
D.	εὐδαιμό-σι(ν)	
A.	εὐδαίμων-ας	εὐδαίμων-α

223. The infinitive may be used as the apparent subject of *δεῖ* or *χρή* *it is necessary*, *ἔστι(ν)* *it is possible* (§ 102), *ἔξ-εστι(ν)* *it is possible or permitted*, *καλόν ἔστι(ν)* *it is honorable*, and many similar expressions, particularly impersonal verbs:

*δεῖ* (or *χρή*) *αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἀγαθοὺς* *it is necessary for them to be brave*; *τῆς νυκτὸς οὐκ ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν* *in the night it is not possible to see the things before one's feet*;

ἔξ-εστιν αὐτοῖς πιστὰ λαβεῖν it is possible for them to receive pledges ;  
οὐ καλόν ἐστι κλέπτειν it is not honorable to steal.

a. The infinitive is neuter in gender, as the last example shows.

b. With ἔστι(ν) and ἔξ-εστι(ν) the dative is the normal case (as αὐτοῖς above), if any noun or pronoun is needed.

c. The negative with the infinitive, when not in indirect discourse, is μή (cp. § 98).

## 224.

## VOCABULARY XX

ἀγών, ὄνος, ὄ: *gathering, contest, games. Agony (ἀγωνία).*

γείτων, ονος, ὄ: *neighbor.*

δεῖ (contracted from δέω), fut. δεή-  
σει, aor. ἔδεησα, impers. verb:  
*it is necessary.*

Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὄ: *a Greek. Cp. Ἑλλάς.*

δεν, δεησαι, δεωσει  
 ↙ ἔξ-εστι(ν), 3 sing. of ἔξ-εμι: *it is possible or permitted.*

↙ ἔτι, adv.: *still, yet, besides, longer, again.*

εὐδαίμων, ον: *fortunate, prosperous.*

ἡγεμών, ὄνος, ὄ: *leader, guide, commander.*

κατὰ (κατ' and καθ', § 31), prep.:  
with GEN. down from; with  
ACC. down over, down along,

*along, opposite, against, by, in a local sense; according to; by in a distributive sense, as κατὰ*

*μήνα: by the month, monthly.*

Κατα-στροφή (στροφή *turning*).

κράτηρ, ἦρος, ὄ: *mixing-bowl.*

Lat. *cratēra*. Crater. See p. 109.

λιμήν, ἔνος, ὄ: *harbor.*

μήν, μηνός, ὄ: *month. Lat. mēnsis.*

μισθός, οθ, ὄ: *pay.*

νῦν, adv.: *now* (of time). Lat. *nunc.*

↙ προσ-ελαύνω: *drive up, riddle up, draw near.*

σωτηρία, ἰα, ἦ: *safety. σωτηρία*

χρή (ἔστι is understood, never expressed): *there is need, it behooves, it is necessary; one must. Inf. χρήσθαι.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

225. I. 1. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει. 2. ὁ δ' ἔφευγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν.  
3. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται λαμβάνουσι τὸν κατὰ μῆνα μισθόν.

4. ἔφη δὲ ἤξειν εἰς λιμένα. 5. νῦν δὲ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέ-  
 ρᾱς σωτηριά̄ς ὁ ἀγών ἐστιν. 6. καὶ γείτων εἰμὶ τῆς  
 Ἑλλάδος. 7. ἦν δὲ οἶνος ἐν κρᾶτήρσιν. 8. ὥστε  
 ἔξ-εστιν ἰδεῖν τὸν ἀγῶνα. 9. χρῆ μέντοι δια-βαίνεω *yet,*  
 τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν. 10. δεῖ οὖν Κλέαρχον πείθειν *πειθε*  
 τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 11. καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατη-  
 γοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλίτᾱς ἀγαγεῖν. 12. ὁ δ' ἔφη εἶναι  
 αὐτοῖς χώρᾱν καλὴν καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 13. ἔτυχε γὰρ ἔτι *again*  
 προσ-ελαύνων. 14. οἱ δ' ἡγεμόνες ὡς ἔχομεν οὐ φᾶσιν *not believe*  
 εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν.

II. 1. It is not possible to obtain<sup>2</sup> provisions. 2. These  
 are brave leaders. 3. The Greeks must cross the Euphra-  
 tes river. 4. It behooves the captains to be brave.

<sup>1</sup> § 156. 1. a.

<sup>2</sup> = take.



FIG. 11. — Κρημῆς.

## XXI

PRONOUNS (*Continued*). THE INTERROGATIVE τίς. THE INDEFINITE τις. THE INDEFINITE RELATIVE ὅστις, THE PREDICATE GENITIVE. INFINITIVE WITH ἀνάγκη AND ὄρα

THE INTERROGATIVE τίς, τι, *who? which? what?*

226. The interrogative never changes its acute accent to the grave.

	MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.
Sing. N.	τίς		τί
G.		τίνος, τοῦ	
D.		τινί, τῷ	
A.	τίνα		τί
Dual N. A.		τίνε	
G. D.		τινοῖν	
Plur. N.	τίνες		τίνα
G.		τινῶν	
D.		τισίν(ν)	
A.	τίνας		τίνα

THE INDEFINITE τις, τι, *any, some, anybody, somebody, anything, something; a certain*

227. The indefinite is always enclitic (§§ 21, 103, 104).

	MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.
Sing. N.	τις		τι
G.		τινός, του	
D.		τινί, τῷ	
A.	τινά		τι
Dual N. A.		τινέ	
G. D.		τινοῖν	
Plur. N.	τινές		τινά
G.		τινῶν	
D.		τισίν(ν)	
A.	τινάς		τινά

THE INDEFINITE RELATIVE *ὅστις, ἥτις, ὃ τι, whoever OR whichever, whatever*

228. The indefinite relative is formed of the relative *ὅς, ἥ, ὃ* (§ 125), and the indefinite *τις, τι* (§ 227), both parts being declined. The combination is treated as *two words* with reference to accent. So the circumflex appears to rest on the antepenult of *οὐτινος*, which is accented as if *οὐ̄ τινος*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὃ τι (or ὃ,τι)
G.	οὐ̄τινος, ὅτου	ἡ̄στινος	οὐ̄τινος, ὅτου
D.	ὧ̄τινι, ὅτῳ	ἧ̄τινι	ὧ̄τινι, ὅτῳ
A.	ὅτινα	ἧ̄τινα	ὃ τι (or ὃ,τι)
Dual N. A.	ὅτινε	ἧ̄τινε	ὅτινε
G. D.	οἰ̄ντινοιϛ	οἰ̄ντινοιϛ	οἰ̄ντινοιϛ
Plur. N.	οἵ̄τινες	αἱ̄τινες	ἃ̄τινα
G.	ὧ̄ντινων	ἧ̄ντινων	ὧ̄ντινων
D.	οἰ̄στισι(ν)	αἰ̄στισι(ν)	οἰ̄στισι(ν)
A.	ὅσ̄τινας	ἧ̄στινας	ἃ̄τινα

229. **Predicate genitive.** — The genitive in any of its relations (possessive, partitive, etc.) may stand after the verb, as a part of the predicate :

*αἱ δὲ κῶμαι Κύρου ἦσαν* the villages belonged to Cyrus (poss. gen.) ;  
*ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Πρόξενος* and among them was Proxenus (part. gen.).

230. With *ἀνάγκη* [*ἔστί(ν)*] *it is necessary*, *ὥρᾶ* [*ἔστί(ν)*] *it is the proper time*, and similar expressions, the **infinitive** is used to complete the meaning. The brackets indicate that *ἔστί(ν)* may be omitted :

*ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς* (or *αὐτοῦς*) *λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια* it is necessary for them to get provisions ;

*ὥρᾶ αὐτοῖς ἔκειν* it is high time for them to arrive.

## 231.

## VOCABULARY XXI

Ἀθηναῖος, ἄ, ον: *Athenian*.

ἀνάγκη, ης, ἡ: *necessity*. With or without ἐστίν(ν): *it is necessary*.

γυμνής, ἦτος, ὄ: *light-armed warrior*, javelin-hurler, bowman, or slinger.

δὲ, postpositive particle, emphasizing the preceding word. δὲ is difficult to render adequately, but is sometimes translated by *now, then, accordingly, very, in truth, indeed*.

εἰς-ἦλθον, 2 aor.: *I or they came in, entered*. Inf. εἰς-ελθεῖν, partic. εἰς-ελθόν.

καίω or κῆω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα: *burn, light, kindle*. Caustic.

νεανίσκος, ου, ὄ: *young man*.

ὅστις, ἣτις, ὃ τι (or ὃ,τι): *whoever or whichever, whatever; who, which, what*; often with conditional force, *if anybody* (= εἰ τις), *if anything* (= εἰ τι); see § 228.

σφενδόνη, ης, ἡ: *sling*. See p. 112, Fig. 13.

τίς, τί: *who? which? what? see § 226*. τί: *what? often as adv. why?*

τις, τι: *any, some, anybody, somebody, anything, something; a certain*; see § 227.

χῆλος, οῦ, ὄ: *grass, green fodder*.

χρήσιμος, η, ον, and οε, ον: *useful*.

ἔρα, ἄε, ἡ: *season, hour, fit or proper time*. See § 230. Lat. *hora*.

νεανίσκος

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

232. I. 1. ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ στρατηγὸς Ἀθηναῖος. 2. τίνας δὲ χρῆ φύλακας εἶναι; 3. οὔτοι δὲ ἔκῃον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι<sup>1</sup> ἄλλο χρησίμου ἦν. 4. εἰς-ἦλθον δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινές. 5. καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες ἀπέθανον τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 6. τίνες ἐστέ; 7. τί οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς πελταστὰς; 8. οἱ γὰρ γυμνήτες ἔλαβόν τινας τῶν κλωπῶν. 9. τίνες ἔχουσι σφενδόνας; 10. ταῦτα τὰ ἔργα ἐστὶν ἀπόρων<sup>2</sup> οἷτινες ἐθέλουσι πράττειν κακόν

<sup>1</sup> εἴ τι (= *whatsoever*) might be replaced by ὃ τι, as in sentence 14.

<sup>2</sup> characteristic of men without resources, predicate gen. akin to possessive.

τε II. ἔτυχε δὲ ἐφ' ἵππου<sup>1</sup> ἐλαύνων. 12. νεανίσκος. δέ τις τῶν παρόντων συν-εβούλευσε τάδε. 13. οὐχ ὥρᾱ ἐστὶ μέλλειν.<sup>2</sup> 14. ἀνάγκη δὲ Προξένῳ συμβουλεύσαι αὐτοῖς ὃ τι καλόν ἐστίν. 15. τὰ γὰρ ὄπλα Κῆρου ἦν.

II. 1. Who was riding on his horse? 2. Some of the arms belong to Cyrus. 3. He must do whatever is<sup>3</sup> honorable. 4. Proxenus came in with some of his friends.

*Κινδυνεύω*

---

## XXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (PRESENT AND AORIST) ACTIVE OF Ω-VERBS. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE: MORE VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS. WARNING FUTURE CONDITIONS. PURPOSE CLAUSES. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

233. The thematic vowel of the subjunctive is *ω* before *μ* and *ν*, otherwise *η*. This is also the present tense suffix of *λύω* and similar verbs. The first aorist tense suffix is *σω* before *μ* and *ν*, otherwise *ση*. The primary personal endings, as seen in the present indicative, are used in *all* subjunctive tenses.

234. The imperfect tense belongs only to the indicative mood. And there is no future tense in the subjunctive.

### 235. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF *λύω*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λύ-ω		λύ-ω-μεν
2.	λύ-ης	λύ-η-τον	λύ-η-τε
3.	λύ-η	λύ-η-τον	λύ-ω-σι(ν)

<sup>1</sup> on horseback.

<sup>2</sup> In sense of *delay*.

<sup>3</sup> Use pres. indic.



## FIRST AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λήσω		λήσωμεν
2.	λήσησθε	λήσητον	λήσητε
3.	λήσῃ	λήσητον	λήσωσι(ν)

a. The aorist subjunctive is not augmented. Augment belongs to the secondary tenses of the indicative only (§ 77).

236. Like the present subjunctive of λύω are inflected the present subjunctives of all the other ω-verbs hitherto studied. In the formation of the first aorist subjunctive of verbs with mute themes, however, the same euphonic changes are observed at the end of the theme as in the first aorist indicative (§ 164). Thus the first aorist subjunctive of πέμπω is πέμψω, πέμψης, etc.; of ἀρπάζω: ἀρπάσω, ἀρπάσης, etc.; of πείθω: πείσω, πείσης, etc.

237. Verbs like ἄγω and λείπω, which have no first aorist indicative, have no first aorist subjunctive. But they have a second aorist subjunctive which does not differ in time or use from the first aorist. The inflection is the same as that of the present subjunctive.

## 238. SECOND AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF λείπω

(Cp. the second aorist indicative ἔλιπον, § 85)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λείπω		λείπωμεν
2.	λείπησθε	λείπητον	λείπητε
3.	λείπῃ	λείπητον	λείπωσι(ν)

239. The second aorist subjunctive of ἄγω is ἀγάγω, ἀγάγῃ, ἀγάγῃς, etc.

240. Tenses of the subjunctive. — While the subjunctive has no future tense, both the present and the aorist may

refer to future time, as will be evident from a study of the constructions in the following lessons. The difference between the two tenses is this: the present denotes continued or repeated action; the aorist denotes a simple occurrence of an action.

**241. More vivid future conditions.** — εἰάν (or ἦν or ἄν) εἰ if may introduce the subjunctive (present or aorist) to express a vivid future condition. The conclusion is expressed by the future indicative, or by the imperative, or by any other forms that may imply future time, such as χρή, ἔξεστι(ν), etc. : *Gr attitude toward future.*

εἰάν ὁ στρατηγὸς κελεύῃ, ἔξει if the general orders, he will come.

a. The negative of the protasis is always μή; of the apodosis, οὐ. Cp. § 106. a and b.

**242.** To express something unpleasant, like a warning or a threat, the protasis may have εἰ and the future indicative:

εἰ κλέψῃς τι, πράγματα ἔξεις if you steal anything, you will have trouble.

Observe that εἰ cannot introduce the subjunctive. Nor can εἰάν introduce the indicative.

**243. Purpose clauses.** — ἵνα, ὅπως, and ὡς, all meaning in order that, may introduce the subjunctive (present or aorist) to express a purpose. The subjunctive is the regular construction when the verb of the main clause, on which the purpose depends, is a primary tense (§ 39). The construction after secondary tenses will be stated later (§ 268). The negative is μή: *purpose*

ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔκει, ἵνα πείσῃ τοὺς στρατιώταις the general has come that he may (*i.e.* to) persuade the soldiers.

**244. Hortatory subjunctive.** — The subjunctive is used alone to express an exhortation in the first person. The negative is μή:

καλῶς ἀπο-θνήσκωμεν let us die honorably.

## 245.

## VOCABULARY XXII

ἄν (εἰ + ἄν) = ἴάν: if, conj. with subjv.

δαρικός, οὐ, δ: *daric*, a Persian gold coin, worth about \$5.40.

ἴάν (εἰ + ἄν), conj. with subjv.: *if.*

ἕκαστος, η, ον: *each*; used in predicate position to modify a noun with the article; used also without the article.

ἴδω: subjv. of ἴδωμι.

ἦν (εἰ + ἄν) = ἴάν: if, conj. with subjv.

ἴδω: subjv. of εἶδω.

ἵνα, conj. expressing purpose: in order that, that, § 243.

καλῶς, adv. (cp. καλός): beautifully, nobly, honorably.

μᾶλλον, comp. adv.: more, better, rather.

οἰκαδέ, adv.: homeward, home.

Cp. οἰκία.

ὅπως, conj.: in order that, that, with purpose clause (§ 243).

πάσχω, fut. to be learned later,

2 aor. ἔπαθον: suffer. πάσχω τι (§ 181): suffer something, euphemism for be hurt or be killed. Sym-pathy (συν-).

πράγμα, ατος, τό: something done (cp. πράττω), business, deed, matter, difficulty; pl. sometimes circumstances, often trouble.

Pragmatic.

ταχύ, adv.: quickly.

ὡς, rel. adv.: as, as if, with causal partic. (§ 213. a); conj.: in order that, that, with purpose clause (§ 243).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

246. I. 1. μὴ μέλλωμεν. 2. ἦν δέ τι μὴ πάθωμεν, ἔστιν οἰκαδὲ ἤκειν. 3. ἄν τινα ἴδωμεν, οὐκ ἔστιν αὐτῷ ἀποφυγεῖν. 4. πράγματα δ' ἔξομεν, ἔαν κατὰ θάλατταν ἔλθωμεν. 5. ἀλλὰ κάωμεν τὴν χώραν. 6. δεῖ οὖν ἔχειν φύλακὰς τινας ἵνα μὴ οἱ πολέμοιοι ἔλθωσι τῆς νυκτός. 7. ἄξω στρατιώτῃς καὶ ἵππους ὅπως, ἄν τινα τῶν πολεμίων ἴδωμεν, μὴ ἀποφύγη. 8. ἵνα δὲ μᾶλλον

θαυμάσητε, πέμψω δᾶρεικὸν μισθὸν<sup>1</sup> ἐκάστῳ στρατιώτῃ. 9. ταχὺ γάρ, ἂν ἐθέλης, ἤξω. 10. εἰ καύσεις *warning* τὴν χώρᾱν, πράγματα ἔξεις. 11. ἐὰν οἱ ἡμέτεροι παῖδες καλῶς ἀποθνήσκωσιν ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, χρὴ χάριν ἔχειν τοῖς θεοῖς. 12. ὁ δ' ἤκει ὡς καύση τὴν χώρᾱν ὡς<sup>2</sup> πολεμίᾱν οὔσαν.

II. 1. He will have trouble, if he leads his soldiers down the steep road. 2. Let us not take provisions from the hostile country. 3. He will pursue the enemy quickly in order that they may not escape.

<sup>1</sup> as pay.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. § 213. a.



FIG. 12. — Κράτηρ.

## XXIII

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF εἶμι. USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*). CONDITIONAL RELATIVE SENTENCES: MORE VIVID FUTURE

## 247. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF εἶμι I am

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ᾶ		ᾶμεν
2.	ῆς	ῆτον	ῆτε
3.	ῆ	ῆτον	ᾶσι(ν)

## 248. More vivid future conditional relative sentences. —

1. In place of  $\epsilon\dot{\iota} + \acute{\alpha}\nu$  (i.e.  $\epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu$ ) a relative pronoun like  $\delta\varsigma$ ,  $\delta\sigma\tau\iota\varsigma$ , *whoever*, or a relative adverb like  $\delta\pi\omicron\upsilon$  *wherever*, always with  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$ , may introduce the subjunctive (present or aorist). This use of the subjunctive is known as a *conditional relative protasis*. The future indicative or an equivalent is used in the conclusion. Thus  $\delta\sigma\tau\iota\varsigma \acute{\alpha}\nu = \epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu \tau\iota\varsigma$  *if anybody*;  $\delta\pi\omicron\upsilon \acute{\alpha}\nu = \epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu \pi\omicron\upsilon$  *if anywhere*;  $\delta\pi\omicron\iota \acute{\alpha}\nu = \epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu \pi\omicron\iota$  *if anywhere*.

$\pi\rho\acute{\alpha}\xi\omega \acute{\alpha}\tau\iota\upsilon\alpha \acute{\alpha}\nu \sigma\upsilon\mu\text{-}\beta\omicron\upsilon\lambda\epsilon\upsilon\sigma\eta\varsigma$  I will do whatever you advise (or shall advise);

$\acute{\alpha}\xi\epsilon\iota \sigma\tau\rho\acute{\alpha}\tau\epsilon\upsilon\mu\alpha \delta\pi\omicron\iota \acute{\alpha}\nu \epsilon\theta\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\eta$  he will lead an army whithersoever he pleases.

a. In this use the antecedent of the relative is always indefinite. The relative with a definite antecedent has the construction of an independent sentence, — commonly the indicative, as already has been illustrated (§§ 138. I. 4, 145. I. 8, etc.). But not all relatives with the indicative have definite antecedents (cp. § 232. I. 14).

2.  $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota$ ,  $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\eta}$ ,  $\delta\tau\epsilon$  (all meaning *when*), and similar words, when they introduce future time, take the subjunctive with  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$ .

*Γενεσθησεται (ταυτου) future*

ΕΠΑΝ  
ΕΠΙΣΗΜ

a. It is to be noted that  $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota + \acute{\alpha}\nu = \epsilon\pi\acute{\eta}\nu$  or  $\epsilon\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu$  (*when*);  $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\eta} + \acute{\alpha}\nu = \epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\alpha}\nu$  (*when*);  $\delta\tau\epsilon + \acute{\alpha}\nu = \delta\tau\acute{\alpha}\nu$  (*when*); of these words,  $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\alpha}\nu$  (or  $\epsilon\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu$ ) meaning *when* or *after*, when used with the aorist subjunctive, may introduce completed future time:

$\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\alpha}\nu$  ἔλθῃ τὰ πλοῖα, τότε ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια when the boats arrive (*or after the boats have arrived*), then we shall have provisions.

240. NOTE ON  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$ . — The particle  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  has no adequate equivalent in English. Its uses in Greek, however, are most important. It appeared in this book first in §§ 241, 245, as a part of the word  $\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\alpha}\nu$  or  $\acute{\eta}\nu$  or  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$ . It makes no difference whatsoever in the *translation* of a subjunctive, which it accompanies in a protasis. Its force with other moods will be studied later.

The particle  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  must not be confused with the conjunction  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  if (=  $\epsilon\iota + \acute{\alpha}\nu$ , i.e.  $\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\alpha}\nu$ ). Notice the difference in the quantity of the *alpha*.

250.

VOCABULARY XXIII

$\delta\epsilon\eta$ , subjv. of  $\delta\epsilon\iota$ , impers. verb: *it is necessary*. Cp. § 224.

$\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\alpha}\nu$  ( $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\eta} + \acute{\alpha}\nu$ ), conj. with subjv.: *when, after*.

$\theta\upsilon\sigma\iota\alpha$ ,  $\theta\upsilon\sigma\iota\alpha$ : *sacrifice, offer*.

$\delta\pi\alpha\iota$ , rel. adv.: *whithersoever, whither, where*.

$\delta\pi\omicron\upsilon$ , rel. adv.: *wherever, where*.

$\pi\acute{\epsilon}\rho\alpha\upsilon$ , adv.: *across, on the other*

*side, with the gen. ἐν τῷ πέρην: on the other side or bank.*

$\pi\rho\acute{\omega}\tau\omicron\varsigma$ , η, ον: *first*. Adv.  $\pi\rho\acute{\omega}\tau\omicron\nu$ : *first*.

$\tau\acute{\alpha}\lambda\alpha\upsilon\tau\omicron\nu$ , ου, τό: *talent*, an amount of money = about \$1080.

$\tau\rho\acute{\epsilon}\chi\omega$ , 2 aor. ἔβραμον (Vocabulary XI): *run*.

εἰ  
οποι  
δτιου

εἰσω

6

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

251. I. 1. ἦν ἀνάγκη ἧ, στράτευμα ἄξομεν εἰς τὴν πολεμῖαν χώραν. 2. τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ θύσομεν ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς καλὸν πεδῖον ἤκωμεν. 3. Χειρίσοφος δὲ κελεύει τοὺς πελταστὰς πράττειν ὅ τι ἂν ὁ λοχαγὸς

ἐθέλη. 4. ἐπειδὴν δὲ δράμωσιν οἱ πολέμοι, δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους στρατιώτας δια-βαίνειν τὸν ποταμόν. 5. ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ᾗ, οὗτος ἔξει μισθὸν τάλαντον. 6. δεῖ δὲ τρέχειν, ἐπειδὴν ὁ στρατηγὸς κελεύσῃ. 7. τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τούτους φυλάξομεν, ὅπως ἡγεμόνες ὦσιν ὅποι ἂν δέῃ ἐλθεῖν. 8. ἀνάγκη δὲ πράξαι ἅ<sup>1</sup> ἂν συμβουλεύσῃς. 9. τούτῳ παρα-σχήσετε ὅτι ἂν ἄγητε.

II. 1. When you come home, you shall have a talent as pay. 2. Whoever is first on the other bank shall lead the soldiers. 3. We shall do whatever the general commands.

<sup>1</sup> Cognate obj. (§ 181); the antecedent ταῦτα is understood.



FIG. 13. — Slinger (σφενδοστής).

## XXIV

THE OPTATIVE (PRESENT, FUTURE, AND AORIST)  
ACTIVE OF Ω-VERBS. TENSES OF THE OPTATIVE.  
SIMPLE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE  
AFTER VERBS THAT TAKE *ὅτι* OR *ὡς* *that*

252. The thematic vowel (§ 41) in the present and second aorist optative is *ο* in all numbers and persons. The tense sign of the future optative is *σο*; of the first aorist, *σα*. There is added to these vowels, in each tense, the mood sign of the optative,<sup>1</sup> which is *ι*; in the third person plural the mood sign is *ιε*. Then follow the personal endings, which are mostly the same as in the imperfect indicative (secondary endings). But the first person singular ends in *-μι*.

253. Final *-οι* and *-αι* are long in the optative (cp. § 23).

## 254. PRESENT OPTATIVE ACTIVE OF λβω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λβ-οι-μι		λβ-οι-μεν
2.	λβ-οι-ς	λβ-οι-τον	λβ-οι-τε
3.	λβ-οι	λβ-οι-την	λβ-οι-ν

## FUTURE OPTATIVE ACTIVE

1.	λβ-σοι-μι		λβ-σοι-μεν
2.	λβ-σοι-ς	λβ-σοι-τον	λβ-σοι-τε
3.	λβ-σοι	λβ-σοι-την	λβ-σοι-ν

## FIRST AORIST OPTATIVE ACTIVE

1.	λβ-σαι-μι		λβ-σαι-μεν
2.	λβ-σαι-ς, /σαις <sup>2</sup>	λβ-σαι-τον	λβ-σαι-τε
3.	λβ-σαι, /σαι(ν) <sup>2</sup>	λβ-σαι-την	λβ-σαι-ν, -σαιεν <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> No account is made here of the sign *ιη*, which will be seen later in the book.

<sup>2</sup> The regular Attic Greek ending.




**255.** Like the present optative of *λῶω* are inflected the present optatives of all the other *ω*-verbs hitherto studied. In the formation of the future and first aorist optative of verbs with mute themes, however, the same euphonic laws are observed as in the future and first aorist indicative (§§ 153, 164):

*πέμψοιμι* (fut. opt. of *πέμπω*), *πέμψαιμι* (aor. opt.);  
*λείψοιμι* (fut. opt. of *λείπω*);  
*ἄξοιμι* (fut. opt. of *ἄγω*);  
*πείσοιμι* (fut. opt. of *πέιθω*), *πείσοιμι* (aor. opt.);  
*ἄρπάσοιμι* (fut. opt. of *ἄρπάζω*), *ἄρπάσοιμι* (aor. opt.).

**256.** Verbs like *ἄγω* and *λείπω*, which have no first aorist indicative or subjunctive, have no first aorist optative (cp. §§ 237, 238); but they have a second aorist optative which does not differ in time or use from the first aorist. The inflection is the same as that of the present optative. <sup>α</sup>

**257. SECOND AORIST OPTATIVE ACTIVE OF *λείπω***

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	<i>λίπ-οι-μι</i>		<i>λίπ-οι-μεν</i>
2.	<i>λίπ-οι-ς</i>		<i>λίπ-οι-τε</i>
3.	<i>λίπ-οι</i>		<i>λίπ-οι-ν</i>

**258.** The second aorist optative active of *ἄγω* is *ἄγάγοιμι*, *ἄγάγοις*, etc.

**259. Tenses of the optative.** — The distinction between the present and aorist optative (when not in indirect discourse) is not one of time, which is determined by the context. It is rather this: the present denotes continued or repeated action, while the aorist denotes a simple occurrence of an action. Compare the distinction between the present and aorist subjunctive (§ 240).

a. The tenses of the optative in indirect discourse, however, denote exact time, *i.e.* present, past, or future.

b. The future optative is regularly found only in indirect discourse, when it represents the future indicative of direct discourse.

SIMPLE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE AFTER VERBS  
THAT TAKE *ὅτι* *that* OR *ὡς* *that*

260. While *φησὶ*, *ἔφη*, and the other forms of this verb (*φημί*) are followed by the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 110), the common verb *λέγω* *say* takes *ὅτι* or *ὡς* *that* and a finite mood. The original mood and tense of the quoted verb are always retained after a primary tense (§ 39) of *λέγω*; but after a secondary tense of *λέγω* the mood of the quoted verb may be changed to the optative. The tense is regularly kept unchanged.

a. The imperfect indicative is usually retained.

261. When direct statements are made indirect, necessary changes in *person* are made as in English. The negative of the direct discourse is retained.

262. Like *λέγω* *say* are used *εἶπον*, 2 aor., *I said*, *ἀκούω* *hear*, *μανθάνω* *learn* (and several other frequent verbs that will be introduced later).

a. *ἀκούω* *hear* permits more than one construction; for example, it takes the infinitive also (cp. § 203. I. 10).

EXAMPLES

1. *Original statement*: οὐκ ἔχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια we have no provisions.

*Quoted statement in primary sequence*: λέγουσιν ὅτι (or ὡς) οὐκ ἔχουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια they say that they have no provisions.

λεγο λέγω  
ὅτι finite  
ὡς  
ὅς

λέγω - εἶπον

*Quoted statement in secondary sequence:* ἔλεγον ὅτι (or ὡς) οὐκ ἔχουεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια they said that they had no provisions.

The original mood and tense ἔχουσι might have been retained.

2. *Original statement:* κατ-εἶδομεν σκηνάς we observed tents.

*Quoted statement:* ἔλεγον ὅτι κατ-εἶδουεν σκηνάς they said that they (had) observed tents. *tense of direct statement.*

The original mood and tense κατ-εἶδον might have been retained.

3. *Original statement:* αὐτὸς ταῦτα πράξω I myself will do this.

*Quoted statement:* εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτὸς ταῦτα πράξει he said that he himself would do this.

The original mood and tense πράξει might have been retained.

## 263.

## VOCABULARY XXIV

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα: *write.*

Graphic.

δι-ἄλθον, 2 aor.: *I or they went through; spread* with λόγος (*word or report*) as subject; subjv. δι-ἄλθε, opt. δι-ἄλθοιμι, inf. δι-ἄλθειν, partic. δι-ἄλθόν.

εἶπον, 2 aor.: *I or they said;* subjv. εἶπω, opt. εἶποιμι, inf. εἶπειν, partic. εἶπών.

ἔθεν, rel. adv.: *whence, from which, where.*

Καρδοῦχοι, ὠν, οἱ: *the Carduchi, a mountain people on the left bank of the Tigris.*

κατ-εἶδον, 2 aor.: *I or they looked down on, descried, observed;* subjv. κατ-ἴδω, opt. κατ-ἴδοιμι, inf. κατ-ἴδειν, partic. κατ-ἴδόν.

λέγω, λέξω, εἶξα: *say* (to be distinguished from -λέγω of συλλέγω *collect*).

μαθάνω (theme μαθ-; on the formation of the present cp. λαμβάνω and τυγχάνω, § 218), fut. to be learned later, 2 aor. ἔμαθον: *learn.*

ξύλον, οὐ, τό: *wood; pl. hewn or split wood; timbers.* Ξυλόφωνο (φωνή *voice*). ΧΥΛΕΜΑ

ἐπι conj., introducing a quotation: *that.*

Πέρσης, οὐ, ὅ: *a Persian.*

Περσικός, ἡ, ὄν (Πέρσης): *Persian.*

σατράπης, οὐ, ὅ: *satrap, Persian name for a provincial governor appointed by the king.*

τότε, adv. of time: *then, at that time.*

ὑποψία, ἄς, ἡ: *suspicion.*

ὡς, conj., introducing a quotation: *that.* Cp. also Vocabulary XXII.

XXII.

ἡ ὑποψία

ΕΡΘΕΙ

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

264. I. 1. ἔλεγον ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν. 2. ὑποψία ἦν<sup>1</sup> ὅτι Κῦρος ἄγοι πρὸς Ἀρταξέρξην. 3. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. 4. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν ξύλα συλλέγοντες. 5. ἔλεγον ὡς κατῆδοιεν παῖδας καὶ νεανίσκους. 6. ὁ δὲ Πέρσης ἀκούσας ὅτι Χειρίσοφος πάλιν ἤξοι ἦλθεν εἰς τὴν κώμην. 7. ὁ δ' εἶπεν ὅτι ἀκούοι τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι.<sup>2</sup> 8. διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κῦρος. 9. οἱ δ' εἶπον ὅτι ὁ σατράπης ἀπέχει παρασάγγην. 10. ὁ δὲ γράφει ἐπιστολὴν ὅτι ἤξει. 11. ἔμαθεν ὅτι Ἀρταξέρξης ἔχοι τὸ μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. 12. ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι ἤκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἱ αὐτοὺς ἄξουσιν ἐνθεν ἔξουσιν τὰ ἐπιτηδεῖα.

II. 1. They said they would come into the village. 2. On the next day a man came saying that he had observed the tents of the enemy. 3. They heard that<sup>3</sup> the enemy were<sup>3</sup> at the Euphrates river.

<sup>1</sup> there was a suspicion.<sup>2</sup> § 110. a.<sup>3</sup> Use the inf.

FIG. 14. — Shield (πέλιτη) carried by the πελταστής (cp. Fig. 4).

2-8-10-5  
10-12-4  
7

## XXV

PRESENT OPTATIVE OF εἶμι. USES OF THE OPTATIVE (*Continued*). POTENTIAL OPTATIVE. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS. PURPOSE CLAUSES IN THE SECONDARY SEQUENCE

## 265. PRESENT OPTATIVE OF εἶμι / am

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	εἶην		εἶμεν or εἶμεν
2.	εἶης	εἶητον or εἶτον	εἶητε or εἶτε
3.	εἶη	εἶητην or εἶτην	εἶησαν or εἶεν

Several of these forms show the longer optative mood sign *η*. Cp. § 252.

266. Potential optative. — The present or aorist optative is used with ἄν (an untranslatable particle, § 249) to indicate that something may or might happen. The degree of probability varies according to the context. The negative is οὐ :

τοῦτο οὐκ ἄν εἴη ἀγαθόν this would not be a good thing.

a. The adverb ἄν never stands first in its sentence or clause, but follows an emphatic word, especially a negative or a verb.

267. Less vivid future conditions. — εἰ if may introduce the optative (present or aorist) to express a less vivid (cp. § 241) future condition. The conclusion is expressed by the optative with ἄν. The negative of the protasis is μή ; of the apodosis, οὐ :

εἰ ἴδομι αὐτούς, ἔλθομι ἄν πρὸς αὐτούς if I should see them, I should go to them.

268. Purpose clauses in the secondary sequence. — *ἵνα*, *ὅπως*, and *ὥς*, all meaning *in order that*, may introduce the optative (present or aorist) to express a purpose. The optative is found only when the verb of the main clause is secondary in tense; and even then the subjunctive (§ 243) is sometimes found. The negative is *μή*:

Κῦρος ἦλθεν ἵνα ἴδοι τοὺς στρατιώτῃς Cyrus came in order that he might (*i.e.* to) see his soldiers.

## 269.

## VOCABULARY XXV

Ἄριαϊος, ου, ὁ: *Ariaeus*, a Persian.

δικαίος, ἄ, ον (cp. δίκη): *just*.

δικαίως, adv.: *justly*.

ἔξ-ἦλθον, 2 aor.: *I or they went forth*. Cp. δι-ἦλθον, § 263.

κενός, ἄ, ὄν: *empty; vain, ground-*

*less*. *Ceno-taph* (τάφος *burial-place*).

Μένων, ωνος, ὁ: *Menon*.

οὐ-ποτε: *never*.

ταχέως, adv.: *quickly, swiftly, rapidly; = ταχύ.*

κενός.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

270. I. 1. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Ἄριαϊος ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ<sup>1</sup> εἶη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων. 2. ἦγε ταχέως ὥστε δῆλον ἦν<sup>2</sup> ὅτι πράγματα εἶη. 3. ἔμαθον δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενός ὁ φόβος εἶη. 4. οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἂν τις εἶποι. 5. χάρις αὐτοῖς ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. 6. οὐκ ἂν θαυμάζοιμι εἰ οἱ πολέμοι φεύγοιεν. 7. τί ἂν πάσχοιεν οἱ ἄνθρωποι; 8. τίς αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν εἶναι; 9. Μένων δ' ἤθελεν ἄρχειν ὅπως χρήματα λαμβάνοι. 10. τὴν δὲ χώραν δι-αρπάσαι οὐποτε ἂν ἐθέλοισιν. 11. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἑλλησι ἡγεμόνα ἐπεμψεν, ἵνα διὰ τῆς

<sup>1</sup> halting place.

<sup>2</sup> it was evident.

πολεμίας χώρας ἄγιοι αὐτοῦς. 12. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξ-ἦλθεν ὅπως μάθοι τὰ<sup>1</sup> περὶ Προξένου.

II. 1. If Menon should seize the possessions, I should not be surprised. 2. It was evident that Cyrus was<sup>2</sup> his friend. 3. Cyrus marched rapidly, in order to take the enemy while they were<sup>3</sup> unguarded.

---

## XXVI

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). STEMS ENDING IN SIGMA. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS WITH STEMS IN -εσ. POTENTIAL OPTATIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. GENITIVE OF MEASURE. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

### STEMS ENDING IN SIGMA

271. The nominative singular of stems ending in  $\sigma$  is the mere stem, without any case-ending. Neuter stems in -εσ change  $\epsilon$  to  $o$  in forming this nominative. Thus ὄρεσ- forms the nominative singular ὄρος. In cases where  $\sigma$  comes between two vowels, it is dropped and contraction occurs. One  $\sigma$  of the dative plural -εσ + σι is also dropped. In the following paradigms the original forms are given in brackets.'

a.

#### RULES OF CONTRACTION

$$\epsilon + \alpha = \eta$$

$$\epsilon + o = ou$$

$$\epsilon + \epsilon = ei$$

$$\epsilon + oi = oi$$

$$\epsilon + i = ei$$

$$\epsilon + \omega = \omega$$

b. The syllable resulting from contraction receives an accent if either one of the component syllables, in the

<sup>1</sup> the fate of Proxenus (§ 70. b).

<sup>2</sup> In dir. disc. is.

<sup>3</sup> Say being.

uncontracted form, had an accent; it receives a circumflex if the *first* vowel had the acute (but it receives an acute if the *second* vowel had the acute).

**272.**

Sing. N. A. V.	ὄρος, τό, <i>mountain</i> (stem ὄρεσ-)
G.	ὄρους [ὄρεσ-ος]
D.	ὄρει [ὄρεσ-ι]
Dual N. A. V.	ὄρει [ὄρεσ-ε]
G. D.	ὄροιν [ὄρέσ-ου]
Plur. N. A. V.	ὄρη [ὄρεσ-α]
G.	ὄρων or ὄρῶν [ὄρέσ-ων]
D.	ὄρεσι(ν) [ὄρεσ-σι(ν)]

**273.** DECLENSION OF Σωκράτης (STEM Σωκρατεσ-)

Sing. N.	Σωκράτης, ὁ, <i>Socrates</i>
G.	Σωκράτους [Σωκράτεσ-ος]
D.	Σωκράτει [Σωκράτεσ-ι]
A.	Σωκράτη [Σωκράτεσ-α]
V.	Σώκρατες

*a.* For the accusative Σωκράτη, a form Σωκράτην after the analogy of the  $\bar{\alpha}$ -declension is often found.

*b.* Xenophon declines Τισσαφέρνης: gen. Τισσαφέρνους, dat. Τισσαφέρνει, acc. Τισσαφέρνην (cp. Σωκράτην), voc. Τισσαφέρνη.

*c.* In the nominative singular final -εσ of the stem of these nouns is changed to -ης.

**274.** So too the nominative singular of τριήρης is formed from the stem τριηρεσ-.

DECLENSION OF τριήρης (STEM τριηρεσ-)

Sing. N.	τριήρης, ἡ, <i>trireme</i>
G.	τριήρους [τριηρεσ-ος]
D.	τριήρει [τριηρεσ-ι]
A.	τριήρη [τριηρεσ-α]
V.	τριήρες



Dual N. A. V.	τριήρει [τριήρεσ-ε]
G. D.	τριήρων [τριηρέσ-ων]
Plur. N. V.	τριήρεις [τριήρεσ-ες]
G.	τριήρων [τριηρέσ-ων]
D.	τριήρεσι(ν) [τριήρεσ-σι(ν)]
A.	τριήρεις

a. The accusative plural copies the nominative plural form.

b. *τριήρων* and *τριήρων* have recessive accent (§ 44).

#### DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS WITH STEMS IN -εσ

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
275. Sing. N.	ἀσφαλής <i>safe</i>	ἀσφαλές
G.	ἀσφαλοθς [-έσ-ος]	
D.	ἀσφαλει [-έσ-ι]	
A.	ἀσφαλῆ [-έσ-α]	ἀσφαλές
V.	ἀσφαλές	
Dual N. A. V.	ἀσφαλει [-έσ-ε]	
G. D.	ἀσφαλοῖν [-έσ-οιν]	
Plur. N. V.	ἀσφαλεῖς [-έσ-ες]	ἀσφαλῆ [-έσ-α]
G.	ἀσφαλῶν [-έσ-ων]	
D.	ἀσφαλεσι(ν) [-έσ-σι(ν)]	
A.	ἀσφαλεῖς	ἀσφαλῆ [-έσ-α]

a. It is to be observed that the masculine and feminine *ἀσφαλής* is declined exactly like *τριήρης* except as regards the accent. The neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative singular is the mere stem. The neuter nominative and accusative plural *ἀσφαλῆ* (for *ἀσφαλέσ-α*) is formed like *ὄρη* (for *ὄρεσ-α*).

## POTENTIAL OPTATIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**276.** When a potential optative (§ 266) is quoted after a verb that takes *ὅτι* or *ὡς* (§§ 260, 262), it is unchanged, except possibly in person; and *ἄν* is retained:

*Original form*: *ἔλοιμ ἄν αὐτούς* I should capture them.

*Quoted after ὅτι*: *οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτοὺς ἄν ἔλοι* this man said to Cyrus that he should capture them.

**277.** When a potential optative is quoted after a verb that requires the infinitive (§ 110. a), the optative is changed to the same tense of the infinitive, and *ἄν* is retained. If the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the leading verb, it must be expressed (in the accusative); but it is not expressed if it is the same (review also § 110. c, d, e):

*Original form*: *ἔλθοιμ ἄν τριήρεις ἔχων* I should come with triremes.

*Quoted form*: *νομίζω ἐλθεῖν ἄν [οἱ νομίζω ἄν ἐλθεῖν] τριήρεις ἔχων*  
I think I should come with triremes.

**278.** The genitive modifying a noun may express **measure**:

*τείχος δέκα ποδῶν* a wall of ten feet.

**279.** The accusative may express a **specification** (*in respect to* something):

*ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πέντε σταδίων* thence he marches to the river, which is (*lit.* being) of five stades in width (= five stades wide).

*σταδίων* is a predicate genitive (§ 229) of measure limiting *ποταμόν*; while *τὸ εὖρος*, accusative of specification, limits *πέντε σταδίων*.

## 280.

## VOCABULARY XXVI

ἀνά (elided, ἀν'), prep. with acc. only: *up, up along, up through.*

(In composition also *back.*)

Ἀνα-tomy (τομή *a cutting*).

ἀνα-βαίνω (other tenses except impf. ἀν-έβαινον to be learned later): *go up; go inland* ("up" from the coast). Cp. δια-βαίνω.

ἀσφαλές, ἐς: *secure, safe.* ἐν ἀσφαλει: *in safety.*

ἀφανής, ἐς: *invisible, out of sight.*

Ἀχαιός, οἶ, ὄ: an *Achaean*, inhabitant of Achaea.

εἴκοσι (ν), indecl.: *twenty.*

ἔλθον, 2 aor.: *I or they took, seized;* subjv. ἔλω, opt. ἔλοιμ, inf. ἔλθω, partic. ἔλόν.

εὖρος, οὐς, τό: *breadth, width.*

καθ-ήκω (κατά + ἤκω, cp. § 31): *come down, reach down, extend.*

κατα-λείπω (cp. λείπω): *leave behind, leave, abandon.*

ὄρος, οὐς, τό: *mountain.*

παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα: *make to stop, stop* (trans.), *put an end to.* Pause.

πρόσθεν, adv.: *forward* (of space); *before, former* (of time). Cp.

πρός. ἡ πρόσθεν (§ 70) νύξ: *the night before.*

Σωκράτης, οὐς, ὄ: *Socrates.*

τείχος, οὐς, τό: *wall; fortress.*

Τισσαφέρνης, οὐς, ὄ: *Tissaphernes*, a Persian satrap. See § 273. b.

τριήρης, οὐς, ἡ: *trireme.*

ὡς, adv., introducing a comparison: *as*; with numerals: *about.*

See also Vocabularies XXII and XXIV.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

281. I. 1. Κῦρος οὖν ἀν-έβαινε ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. <sup>ΜΑΤ.</sup> 2. ἦν δὲ πάροδος στενὴ μεταξύ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος.<sup>1</sup> 3. τὴν δὲ πρόσθεν νύκτα<sup>2</sup> ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους. 4. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, δι-ἠλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσιν. 5. καὶ τὰ τεῖχη ἦν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθ-ήκουτα.<sup>3</sup> 6. ἀνα-βαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς<sup>4</sup> φίλον. 7. ὁ Ἄρταξέρξης δὴ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους<sup>5</sup> τὸν Κῦρου στό-

<sup>1</sup> Abstract nouns may have the article.

<sup>2</sup> § 142.

<sup>3</sup> § 53. i.

<sup>4</sup> as.

<sup>5</sup> from *Tissaphernes*, gen. of source, § 201.

λον. 8. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχᾶγοὶ ἦσαν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ. 9. ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον. 10. ἔφη δ' ἂν παῦσαι ταύτας τὰς ὑποψίας. 11. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη ἐξ-αγαγεῖν αὐτούς. 12. ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὔποτε ἂν καταλείποι αὐτούς. 13. καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιοῦν, ξένον ὄντα,<sup>1</sup> ἐκέλευσεν ἐλθεῖν. 14. τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν κείναι τὰς κώμας τὰς<sup>2</sup> ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη.

*Athalam*

II. 1. Thence he marched to a river ten stades in width. 2. I think it would be safe<sup>3</sup> to cross. 3. He thought he should never come home. 4. We heard from Tissaphernes of the expedition of Cyrus.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by a relative clause.

<sup>2</sup> Use neuter adj., § 223. a.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. § 67.

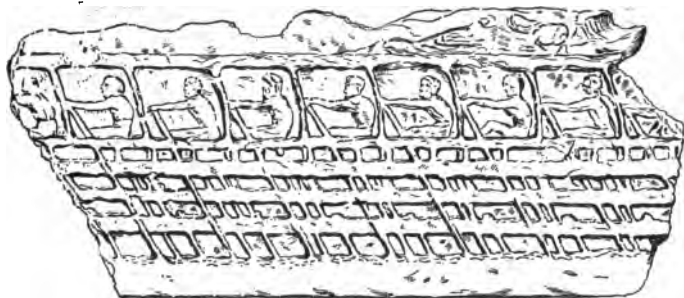


FIG. 15. — Waist of a War Ship (τριήρης), from a Relief found at Athens.

## XXVII

DECLENSION OF STEMS ENDING IN *IOTA* OR *UPSILON*  
 (INCLUDED UNDER THE CONSONANT DECLENSION).  
 ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE. ATTRACTION OF THE  
 RELATIVE

STEMS ENDING IN *ι* OR *υ*

282. Stems in *ι* or *υ* present several irregularities, of which the explanations can best be sought in the grammars, if the instructor thinks such explanations desirable at the outset. It is to be observed that the accusative singular ends in *-ν*, and not in *-α*; and the accusative plural follows the nominative plural.

Sing. N.	πόλι-ς, ἡ, <i>city</i>	πῆχυ-ς, ὁ, <i>forearm, cubit</i>
G.	πόλε-ως	πήχε-ως
D.	πόλει [for πόλε-ι]	πήχει [for πήχε-ι]
A.	πόλι-ν	πῆχυ-ν
V.	πόλι	πῆχυ
Dual N. A. V.	πόλει [for πόλε-ε]	πήχει [for πήχε-ε]
G. D.	πολέ-οιν	πηχέ-οιν
Plur. N. V.	πόλεις [for πόλε-ες]	πήχεις [for πήχε-ες]
G.	πόλε-ων	πήχε-ων
D.	πόλε-σι(ν)	πήχε-σι(ν)
A.	πόλεις	πήχεις
Sing. N. A. V.	ἄστυ, τό, <i>town</i>	
G.	ἄστε-ως	
D.	ἄστει [for ἄστε-ι]	
Dual N. A. V.	ἄστει [for ἄστε-ε]	
G. D.	ἀστέ-οιν	
Plur. N. A. V.	ἄστη [for ἄστε-α]	
G.	ἄστε-ων	
D.	ἄστε-σι(ν)	

a. The accent of the preceding nouns (πόλις, πῆχυς, and ἄστυ) is irregular in the genitive, singular and plural (§ 17. 1)

283.	Sing. N.	ἰχθῆ-ς, ὅ, <i>fish</i>
	G.	ἰχθῆ-ος
	D.	ἰχθῆ-ι
	A.	ἰχθῆ-ν
	V.	ἰχθῆ
Dual N. A. V.		ἰχθῆ-ε
	G. D.	ἰχθῆ-οιν
Plur. N. V.		ἰχθῆ-ες
	G.	ἰχθῆ-ων
	D.	ἰχθῆ-σι (ν)
	A.	ἰχθῆς

284. Adverbial accusative. — The accusative in some expressions has the force of an adverb:

πρῶτον at first, first (§ 250); τί why (§ 231)? τέλος finally; τὸ λοιπὸν thereafter, in the future.

285. Attraction of the relative to the case of its antecedent. — The relative pronoun may be attracted from the accusative case to the case of its antecedent, if this is a genitive or dative:

ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἧς [for ἧν] οὔτοι παρ-εἶχον from the market which these supplied;

σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις οἷς [for ᾧ] ἔχομεν with the arms which we have.

## 286.

## VOCABULARY XXVII

ἀθροίζω (theme ἀθροιδ-; cp. ἀρχαῖος, ἄ, ον (ἀρχή *beginning*): *primitive, old, of old, ancient.* ἀρπάξω), ἀθροίσα, ἄθροισα: τὸ ἀρχαῖον (adv. acc.): *of old, gather together, collect, assemble* (trans.). ἔχομεν *formerly. Archaic.*

Adverbial Accusative

✕ ἄστυ, εως, τό: <i>town</i> .	πήχυς, εως, ό: <i>forearm; cubit</i> , 1½ Greek feet.
δασμός, ου, ό: <i>tribute, tax</i> .	πλήθρον, ου, τό: <i>plethrum</i> , 100 Greek feet.
✕ δύναμις, εως, ή: <i>force, strength</i> . Dynamic, dynamite.	πλήρης, ες: <i>full</i> . Cp. Lat. <i>plē-nus</i> .
✕ Ἑλληνικός, ή, όν (Ἑλλην): <i>Hel- lenic, Greek</i> .	✕ πόλις, εως, ή: <i>city</i> . Politic, polity, etc.
ἰχθύς, ύος, ό: <i>fish</i> . Ichthyo-logy (λόγος <i>account</i> ).	✕ πρέσβεις, εων, οι: <i>ambassadors</i> . The nom. sing. is πρεσβευτής, ου, ό.
Ἴωνικός, ή, όν (Ἴωνία): <i>of Ionia, Ionian</i> .	Σάρδεις, εων, αι: <i>Sardis</i> , a city in Lydia.
Λακεδαιμών, ονος, ή: <i>Lacedaemon</i> .	τέλος, ους, τό: <i>end</i> . As adv. acc.: ✕ finally.
λοιπός, ή, όν (cp. λείπ-ω): <i>left, rest of, remaining</i> . τό λοιπόν (adv. acc.): <i>thereafter, in the future</i> .	✕ Χάλος, ου, ό: <i>Chalus</i> , a river in Syria.
πεντε-καί-δεκα indecl.: <i>five and ten, fifteen</i> .	

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

287. I. 1. Ξενιάς δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων<sup>1</sup> λαβὼν  
παρ-ἦν εἰς Σάρδεις. 2. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν  
ἤθροιζεν. 3. ἦν δὲ τεῖχος ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων<sup>2</sup> τὸ  
εὖρος. 4. τί δεῖ λύειν αὐτοὺς τὴν γέφυραν; 5. καὶ  
γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἴωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους<sup>3</sup> τὸ ἀρχαῖον.  
6. οἱ δ' ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεως<sup>4</sup> εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἦλθον. 7. εἰς  
Λακεδαιμόνα ἔπεμπον πρέσβεις. 8. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει  
σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς πόλιν εὐ-  
δαιμόνα. 9. Κύρος δ' ἀπ-έπεμπε τοὺς δασμοὺς ἐκ τῶν  
πόλεων ὧν<sup>5</sup> ἐτύχανεν ἔχων. 10. τέλος δ' ἀπ-ἦλθον.  
11. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ Κλέαρχος ἦρχεν. 12. ἐξ-ελαύνει  
ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου,<sup>6</sup> πλήρη  
δ' ἰχθύων.

<sup>1</sup> § 70. a.<sup>2</sup> § 278.<sup>3</sup> § 229.<sup>4</sup> § 70. a.<sup>5</sup> For 2e, § 285.<sup>6</sup> §§ 278, 279.

II. 1. The cities are prosperous. 2. And thereafter Cyrus sent the tributes from the cities to his brother. 3. We bought provisions from the market which the barbarians supplied. 4. The river is full of beautiful fish.

## XXVIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE CONSONANT DECLENSION AND  $\bar{A}$ -DECLENSION COMBINED. DECLENSION OF ἡδύς AND πᾶς. NOUNS WITH STEMS IN -ευ OR -ου. OMISSION OF THE COPULA. βασιλεύς WITHOUT THE ARTICLE. πᾶς IN PREDICATE POSITION, ETC.

DECLENSION OF ἡδύς *sweet*

288. Compare the masculine ἡδύς with πῆχυς (§ 282) and observe that the *endings* differ in the genitive singular only. Compare the neuter ἡδύ with ἄστυ (§ 282) and observe that the endings differ in the genitive singular and the nominative (= accusative and vocative) plural. The feminine ἡδεῖα is declined like γέφυρα, except as regards the accent.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
G.	ἡδέος	ἡδεῖας	ἡδέος
D.	ἡδέτ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδέτ
A.	ἡδέον	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
V.	ἡδέ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
Dual N. A. V.	ἡδέτ	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέτ
G. D.	ἡδέοιν	ἡδεῖαιν	ἡδέοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἡδέεσ	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
G.	ἡδέων	ἡδεῖων	ἡδέων
D.	ἡδέσσι(ν)	ἡδεῖαις	ἡδέσσι(ν)
A.	ἡδέεσ	ἡδεῖας	ἡδέα



DECLENSION OF *πᾶς* *all, every*

**289.** Compare this paradigm with ἀκούσᾶς (§ 209). The accent of the genitive plural πάντων and dative plural πᾶσι(ν) is irregular (cp. § 189).

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
G.	παντός	πάσης	παντός
D.	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
A.	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
Plur. N. V.	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
G.	πάντων	πᾶσῶν	πάντων
D.	πᾶσι(ν)	πᾶσαις	πᾶσι(ν)
A.	πάντας	πᾶσᾶς	πάντα

NOUNS WITH STEMS ENDING IN A DIPHTHONG *-ευ* OR *-ου*

	1	2
<b>290.</b> Sing. N.	βασιλεύ-ς, ὁ, <i>king</i>	βοῦ-ς, ὁ, ἡ, <i>ox, cow</i>
G.	βασιλέ-ως	βο-ός
D.	βασιλεῖ	βο-ῖ
A.	βασιλέ-α	βοῦ-ν
V.	βασιλεῦ	βοῦ
Dual N. A. V.	βασιλεῖ	βό-ε
G. D.	βασιλέ-οιν	βο-οῖν
Plur. N. V.	βασιλεῖς (older -ῆς)	βό-ες
G.	βασιλέ-ων	βο-ῶν
D.	βασιλεῦ-σι(ν)	βου-σί(ν)
A.	βασιλέ-α	βού-ς

For the accent of the monosyllable βούς see § 189.

**291.** The verb ἔστί (and pl. εἰσί), commonly known as the *copula*, may be omitted where it can be readily supplied, as in proverbial expressions. See also § 230.

ἀγαθὸς ὁ θεός God is good ;

ἀγαθοὶ οἱ θεοὶ the gods are good.

292. The article is commonly omitted with βασιλεύς when this word means *the king* of Persia, the great king.

293. πᾶς, when modifying a noun, usually has the predicate position (§§ 68, 69). The difference in meaning between the predicate and attributive use is as follows:

*Predicate*: πᾶσα ἡ πόλις all the city.

*Attributive*: ἡ πᾶσα πόλις the whole city.

Sometimes the article is wanting:

πᾶσα πόλις every city;

πάντες ἄνθρωποι all men.

Compare ὄλος (Vocabulary XVII), which is similarly used.

## 294.

## VOCABULARY XXVIII

- ἅ-πᾶς, ἅσα, ἅν: *all together, all.*
- βασιλεύς, ἕως, ὁ: *king.* Basil.
- βοῦς, βοός, ὁ, ἡ: *ox, cow.* Cp. Lat. *bōs.*
- δασύς, εἶα, ὅ: *thickly grown, thickly wooded;* with dat. (instrumental). Cp. Lat. *dēnsus.*
- δένδρον, οὐ, τό: *tree.* Dat. pl. δένδροις and δένδρεσι (from τὸ δένδρον). Rhodo-dendron (ρόδον rose).
- ἢ, conj.: *or; than* (after comparative ideas). ἢ . . . ἢ: *either . . . or.*
- ἡδύς, εἶα, ὅ: *sweet.*
- ἡμισυς, εἶα, υ: *half.* τὸ ἡμισυ (with στρατεύματος): *the half.* ἡμισυς takes the gender and the number of its part. gen. Cp. Lat. *semi-*, Eng. *hemi-*.
- ἵππεύς, ἕως, ὁ (ἵππος): *horseman; pl. cavalry.*
- λάθρα, adv.: *secretly.* With gen.: *without the knowledge of.*
- πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: *every* (in sing.), *all, whole.* See § 293. Panhellenic (Ἑλλην).
- παχύς, εἶα, ὅ: *thick* in diameter. Pachy-derm (δέρμα *hide*).
- πυκνός, ἡ, ὄν: *closely set, closely standing, closely planted.*
- σκότος, οὐς, τό: *darkness.* Also ὁ σκότος, gen. οὐ.
- σύμ-μαχος, οὐ, ὁ (μάχη): *fellow-fighter, ally.*
- ὥς, prep. with acc.: *to;* used only with names of persons and βασιλιά *king* of Persia. Cp. Vocabularies XXII, XXIV, XXVI.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

295. I. 1. πάντας δ' ἀπ'έπεμπεν. 2. οἱ δ' αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλοι ἦσαν ἢ βασιλεῖ. 3. φᾶσιν οὖν δασέα τὰ ὄρη ταῦτα εἶναι. 4. οἶνον ἠδὺν εἶχεν. 5. ὁ Χειρίσοφος διέβαινεν ἔχων τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος.<sup>1</sup> 6. ἦν δὲ οὗτος ὁ λόφος δασὺς δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὐ,<sup>2</sup> πυκνοῖς δέ. 7. οὐδὲ ἰππέᾳ σύμμαχον<sup>3</sup> ἔχομεν. 8. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἶδον ἰππέας πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 9. ἔθυσαν δὲ ἢ βούς ἢ ἵππους. 10. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν Κῦρος λάθρα ἠθροίζεν, ὅπως ἀφύλακτον λάβοι βασιλεῶ. 11. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ἦλθεν ὡς βασιλεῶ, ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. 12. πᾶσα ἡ ὁδὸς διὰ σκότους ἐστίν. 13. πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς ἄπορος.<sup>4</sup> 14. αἰ σπονδαί εἰσιν ἅσπιν.

II. 1. On the following day they all came to a river full of fish. 2. He says that this river is thickly grown with trees. 3. All the satraps sent sweet wine to the king.

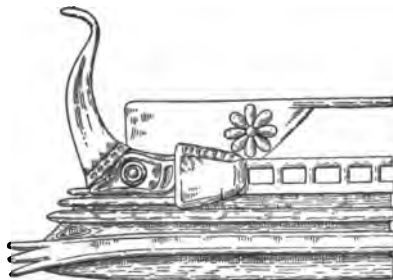
<sup>1</sup> § 179.<sup>2</sup> § 99.<sup>3</sup> § 53. j.<sup>4</sup> Supply ἐστίν.

FIG. 16. — Prow of a War Ship.

XXIX

THE IMPERATIVE ACTIVE OF Ω-VERBS. IMPERATIVE OF *εἶμι*. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE. DECLENSION OF *ἐγώ* AND *σύ*. USES OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS. ACCENT OF SUCCESSIVE ENCLITICS. PREDICATE POSITION OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS. PROHIBITIONS. *ἐπεὶ* AND *ὅτι* CAUSAL

296. The thematic vowel (§ 41) and tense suffix of the present imperative and the tense suffix (*σα*) of the first aorist imperative are the same as in the indicative mood. The imperative has special personal endings, however; and the second person singular of the first aorist has a peculiar ending, *-σον*.

297. PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE OF *λύω*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
2.	<i>λύ-ε loose</i>	<i>λύ-ε-τον</i>	<i>λύ-ε-τε loose</i>
3.	<i>λύ-ε-τω let him loose</i>	<i>λύ-ε-των</i>	<i>λύ-ε-ντων let them loose</i>

*λύόντων*

FIRST AORIST IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

2.	<i>λύ-σον loose</i>	<i>λύ-σα-τον</i>	<i>λύ-σα-τε loose</i>
3.	<i>λύ-σά-τω let him loose</i>	<i>λύ-σά-των</i>	<i>λύ-σά-ντων let them loose</i>

298. Like the present imperative of *λύω* are inflected the present imperatives of all the other ω-verbs hitherto studied.

299. In the formation of the first aorist imperative of verbs with mute themes, the same euphonic laws are observed as in the first aorist indicative, subjunctive, and

optative (§§ 153, 164). Thus πέμψον (πέμπω), πείσον (πειθω), ἄρπασον (ἄρπάζω), φύλαξον (φυλάττω).

300. Verbs which, like λείπω, lack a first aorist indicative, also lack a first aorist imperative (and all other first aorist forms). They have, instead, a second aorist imperative, with the inflection of the present.

### 301. SECOND AORIST IMPERATIVE ACTIVE OF λείπω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
2.	λίπ-ε <i>leave</i>	λίπ-ε-τον	λίπ-ε-τε <i>leave</i>
3.	λίπ-έ-τω <i>let him leave</i>	λίπ-έ-των	λίπ-έ-ντων <i>let them leave</i>

a. Some second aorist imperatives are irregularly accented on the ultima (instead of the penult) in the second person singular: thus εἰπέ *say*.<sup>1</sup>

### 302. PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF εἶμι I am

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
2.	ἔσ-θι <i>be thou</i>	ἔσ-τον	ἔσ-τε <i>be ye</i>
3.	ἔσ-τω <i>let him be</i>	ἔσ-των	ἔσ-των <sup>2</sup> <i>let them be</i>

303. Tenses of the imperative. — The distinction between the present and aorist imperative is the same as that between the present and aorist subjunctive (§ 240). The present denotes a continued or repeated act; the aorist a single act.

a. The aorist imperative refers to future time, and is therefore regarded as a primary tense.

### DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS ἐγώ I AND σὺ you

304.	Sing. N.	ἐγώ I	N. V.	σὺ you (thou)
	G.	ἐμοῦ, μου		σοῦ, σου
	D.	ἐμοί, μοι		σοί, σοι
	A.	ἐμέ, με		σέ, σε

<sup>1</sup> So, too, εἰθέ *come*, εὕρε *find* (εὕρισκω), ἰδέ *see, behold*, λαβέ *seize*.

<sup>2</sup> Also ἔσ-τω-σαν and ἔστων.

Dual N. A.	νό	σφέ
G. D.	νῶν	σφῶν
Plur. N.	ἡμεῖς <i>we</i>	N. V. ὑμεῖς <i>you</i>
G.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν
D.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν
A.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς

a. Enclitic forms (§ 21) are *μου, μοι, με, σου, σοι, σε*; emphatic forms, not enclitic, are *ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ, σοῦ, σοί, σέ*. After prepositions the accented forms are regularly used.

Review the rules about enclitics (§§ 103–105).

305. If two or more enclitics occur in succession, each has an acute accent except the last, which remains unaccented:

*εἴ τις τί μοί φησιν* if anybody says anything to me.

306. A personal pronoun as subject nominative is expressed only for emphasis:

*ταῦτα ἤκουσα ἐγώ* it was I who heard this.

307. The personal pronoun of the third person is *αὐτοῦ* of him, *αὐτῆς* of her, *αὐτοῦ* of it (§ 123. 3). The nominative, when required to be expressed, may be *ὁ δέ* (§ 99), *ἡ δέ* (§ 99), *ἐκεῖνος, οὗτος, ὅδε* (§§ 175–177).

308. *αὐτοῦ, μου, σου*, etc., when denoting possession, have the predicate position (cp. § 127):

*ὁ ἀδελφός μου* my brother (cp. § 126).

309. A prohibition is expressed by:

1. *μή* with the present imperative (§ 303):

*μὴ θαυμάζετε* don't wonder (*i.e.* keep from wondering or cease to wonder).

2. *μή* with the second person of the aorist subjunctive (§ 240):

*μὴ θαυμάσῃτε* don't be astonished (*for once*).

310. ἐπεὶ and ὅτι causal, *since*, are followed by tenses of the indicative. The negative is οὐ. Other causal conjunctions take the same construction:

πέμψατε Πρόξενον, ἐπεὶ στρατηγός ἐστιν send Proxenus, since he is a general.

## 311.

## VOCABULARY XXIX

- ἄ-βατος, ον (ἀ-priv. and stem βα-, cp. δια-βαίνω): not to be trodden on, *impassable*.
- ἔγε, inv. of ἔγω used as an interjection: *come!* ἔγε (or ἔγετε) δῆ: *come now!*
- βλέπω, fut. to be learned later, ἔβλεψα: *look*.
- γνώμη, ης, ἡ: *opinion, judgment; plan, proposition; understanding. Gnome*.
- ἐγώ: *I*, § 304. Lat. *ego*.
- ἐπεὶ, conj.: *since*. Strengthened, ἐπεὶ-περ: *since indeed*. Cp. Vocabulary XIV.
- ὁσ-περ, ἡ-περ, ὅ-περ (strengthened ὅς): *the very one which, the very thing which*.
- ὄταν = ὅτε + ἄν (§ 248. 2), conj. with subjv.: *when*.
- πατρίς, ἰδος, ἡ: *fatherland*.
- πρός, prep.: with GEN. *from the side of, from; toward; πρὸς (τῶν) θεῶν: before the gods, in the sight of the gods; with DAT. near, beside, in addition to; with ACC. to, toward, against*. Cp. Vocabulary II.
- στρατό-πεδον, ου, τό: *camp*. Cp. στρατεύμα, στρατιᾶ.
- σύ: *you* (sing.), § 304.
- σύνθημα, ατος, τό: *agreement; watchword*.
- ὑπέρ, prep.: with GEN. *over, above; on behalf of; with ACC. over, beyond*. Hyper-bolē (βολή *a throw*).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

312. I. 1. ἦκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἄγετε. 2. ἀπό-πεμπε δὲ ἡ ἡμᾶς ἡ αὐτούς. 3. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ<sup>1</sup> εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους. 4. ἀκούσατε οὖν μου πρὸς θεῶν. 5. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ<sup>2</sup> κωμῶν. 6. σὺ δέ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐλθὼν<sup>3</sup> εἰπέ ὅτι

<sup>1</sup> § 119.<sup>2</sup> § 70.<sup>3</sup> Freely: *go and say*.

ἐγὼ κελεύω αὐτοὺς κατα-λιπεῖν τὰ ὄπλα. 7. ὅταν δὲ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις ἔχητε, μὴ ἀπ-έλθητε. 8. ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Ἀριαίε, ἐπεὶπερ ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶν ὑμῖν<sup>1</sup> καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπὲ τὴν σὴν γνώμην. 9. λέξον δὲ πᾶσι, ὦ Πρόξενε, ἅπερ ἔλεξας καὶ<sup>2</sup> πρὸς ἡμᾶς. 10. βλέψον πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς<sup>3</sup> ἄβατα πάντα ἐστίν. 11. εἰ δέ τις ἄλλος πάρ-εστι, λεξάτω. 12. συμ-πέμψατε μέντοι μοί τινας, οἵτινες καὶ<sup>4</sup> λέξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ καὶ πράξουσιν. 13. παρ-έστω δ' ἡμῖν καὶ<sup>2</sup> ὁ κῆρυξ. 14. τοῦτο ἔστω τὸ σύνθημα.

πρὸς

- II. 1. But do you<sup>5</sup> send others to the mountains.  
 2. Do not take<sup>6</sup> supplies from the villages in the plain.  
 3. Let the herald attend me, when I come<sup>7</sup> to the camp.

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.* you and your followers.

<sup>2</sup> *also.*

<sup>3</sup> *how.*

<sup>4</sup> *both.*

<sup>5</sup> Sing.

<sup>6</sup> Single act.

<sup>7</sup> Aor. subjv.

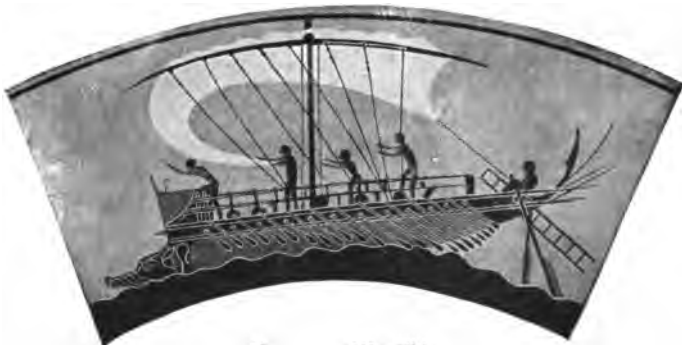


FIG. 17. — War Ship.



## XXX

THE PRESENT MIDDLE SYSTEM OF Ω-VERBS. MEANINGS OF THE MIDDLE VOICE. DEPONENT VERBS. DATIVE OF ASSOCIATION

313. In the inflection of the present and imperfect middle (§ 37) there are to be seen the same thematic vowel, mood signs, and augment (in the imperfect indicative) as in the corresponding active tenses. Only a new series of personal endings has to be learned. The primary endings are seen in the present indicative and the subjunctive; the secondary endings, in the imperfect indicative and the optative. The ending of the second person singular, primary *-σαι* and secondary *-σο*, does not, however, appear intact in any of these forms.

## 314. PRESENT MIDDLE SYSTEM OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	λύ-ο-μαι <i>I loose for myself, I ransom</i>		λύ-ό-μεθα
2.	λύ-η or λύ-ει	λύ-ε-σθον	λύ-ε-σθε
3.	λύ-ε-ται	λύ-ε-σθον	λύ-ο-νται
Subjv. 1.	λύ-ω-μαι		λύ-ώ-μεθα
2.	λύ-η	λύ-η-σθον	λύ-η-σθε
3.	λύ-η-ται	λύ-η-σθον	λύ-ω-νται
Opt. 1.	λύ-οι-μην		λύ-οι-μεθα
2.	λύ-οι-ο	λύ-οι-σθον	λύ-οι-σθε
3.	λύ-οι-το	λύ-οι-σθην	λύ-οι-ντο
Imv. 2.	λύ-ου	λύ-ε-σθον	λύ-ε-σθε
3.	λύ-έ-σθω	λύ-έ-σθων	λύ-έ-σθων
Inf.	λύ-ε-σθαι		
Partic.	λύ-ό-μενος, η, ον (declined like ἀγαθός, but with accent like πολέμιος, §§ 116, 117)		

5-

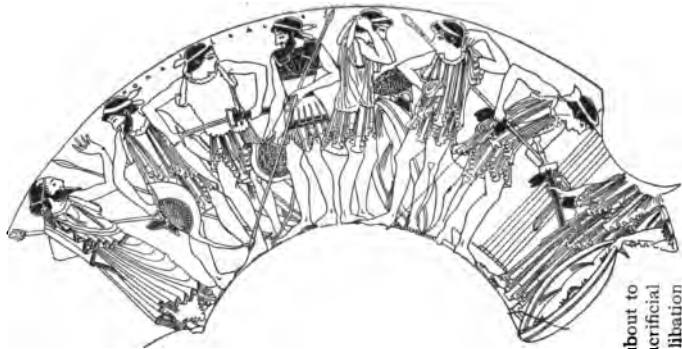


FIG. 18. — Warriors arming.  
The central picture shows a soldier ( $\sigma\pi\lambda\iota\tau\eta\varsigma$ ) about to depart for battle. A woman pours wine into a sacrificial bowl ( $\phi\acute{\alpha}\lambda\alpha\varsigma$ ) which he holds, that he may make libation to the gods. (A vase-painting by Duris.)

767

The imperfect indicative belongs to the present system :

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Impf. 1.	ἔ-λυ-ό-μην <i>I loosed for myself, I ransomed</i>		ἔ-λυ-ό-μεθα
Indic. 2.	ἔ-λυ-ου	ἔ-λυ-ε-σθον	ἔ-λυ-ε-σθε
3.	ἔ-λυ-ε-το	ἔ-λυ-ε-σθην	ἔ-λυ-ο-ντο

Review the present active system of λύω, *i.e.* the present and imperfect indicative, the present subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 45, 81, 206. a, 235, 254, 297).

#### MEANINGS OF THE MIDDLE VOICE

315. The middle voice of the Greek verb represents the subject

I. As acting directly on himself (*direct middle*):

οἱ Ἕλληνες παρασκευάζοντο the Greeks made themselves ready ;  
 πορεύονται they make themselves go, they proceed ;  
 ἀθροίζονται they gather themselves together, they muster ;  
 φυλάττονται they guard themselves, they are on their guard [against] ;  
 σώζονται they save themselves.

II. As acting for himself or for his own interests in some way (*indirect middle*):

τὰς ἀμάξας παρασκευάζεται he prepares the wagons *for himself* ;  
 Κῦρον μεταπέμπεται he sends for Cyrus *to come to himself* ;

It is often impossible to translate the middle, in this use, differently from the active.

a. There is also a *reciprocal* use of the middle voice, which represents the subjects as acting mutually. Thus διαλέγονται *they converse*, μάχονται (μάχη) *they fight*, ἀγωνίζονται (ἀγών) *they struggle*.

316. Many verbs are found in the middle voice only, either in some or in all of their tenses. They are commonly known as **deponent verbs**. Thus οἴχομαι *be gone*.

317. *Converse with* and *fight with* somebody are expressed by the dative without a preposition. The dative so used with these and similar verbs is included under the **dative of association** :

δια-λέγονται τοῖς στρατηγοῖς they converse with the generals.

318.

## VOCABULARY XXX

ἀθροίζομαι, mid. of ἀθροίζω (Vocabulary XXVII) : *gather* (intr.), *muster*, with *els* and *acc.*

βούλομαι : *wish*.

δια-λέγομαι (cp. λέγω *say*) : *converse*, with *dat.* Dialect.

ἑρμηνεύς, ἑως, ὁ : *interpreter*. Hermeneutics.

ἔρχομαι, 2 aor. ἦλθον (Vocabulary XVIII) : *come*, *go*.

μετα-πέμπομαι (cp. πέμπω) : *send after to come to oneself*, *summon*.

εἶχομαι : *be gone*, *have gone* (pres. with pf. meaning). Often with supplementary partic. ; cp. § 215.

παρα-σκευάζω (theme σκευαδ-),

παρα-σκευάσω, παρ-εσκεύασα : *prepare*, *equip* ; MID. *make oneself ready*, *prepare oneself* ; *prepare* something for oneself.

πορεύομαι : *go*, *proceed*. Cp.

ἡ-πορος.

προ-πέμπω (cp. πέμπω) : *send forward* or *ahead*.

σφίζω (themes σφδ- and σω-) : σώσω, ἴσωσα : *save* ; MID. *save oneself*.

φυλάττομαι, mid. of φυλάττω (Vocabulary XV) : *guard oneself*, *be on one's guard* (*against*, with *acc.*).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

319. I. 1. ὁ δὲ Δᾶρειός ἐβούλετο τοὺς παῖδας παρ-εῖναι. 2. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. 3. Ἀρίστιππος ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον. 4. πορεύεται δὲ ὡς βασιλέᾳ. 5. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξ-ἦλθον φυλαττόμενοι στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 6. δεῖ δὲ ἡμᾶς παρα-σκευάζεσθαι ὅπως σφίζόμεθα. 7. οἱ δὲ ἦθρονον τὰς τριήρεις, ὡς ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι σφίζοντο. 8. εἰ δὲ ἐθέλεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. 9. παρα-σχίσω αὐτῷ ὃ τι ἂν

βούληται. 10. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἔλεγον ὡς ὁ λοχαγὸς οἴχοιτο. 11. καὶ προ-πέμψας ἑρμηνεᾶ εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιο δια-λέγεσθαι τοῖς ἄρχουσιν. 12. ὁ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπεν ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. 13. Κύρος δὲ μετ-επέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον. 14. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, παρ-εσκευάζετο. 15. καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν<sup>1</sup> οἴχονται διώκοντες.

II. 1. Cyrus summoned the generals (to come to him). 2. The leaders said that they wished to converse with us. 3. Guarding ourselves, we proceeded through the night. 4. Take whatever you wish.

---

XXXI

SYNCOPATED NOUNS. DATIVE OF RESPECT

320. Some frequently occurring nouns of the consonant declension, with stems in *ερ-*, drop *ε* before *ρ* in the genitive and dative singular and the dative plural: πατήρ (πατερ-) *father*, μήτηρ (μητερ-) *mother*, θυγάτηρ (θυγατερ-) *daughter*. One noun, ἀνὴρ (ἀνερ-) *man*, drops *ε* before *ρ* in all its cases except the nominative and vocative singular; *δ* is inserted where *ε* is dropped from forms of ἀνὴρ. The dative plural of all these nouns has the auxiliary sound *α* added to the stem before the case ending.

The accent is to be carefully noted. It is recessive in the vocative singular.

---

<sup>1</sup> to the front.

<b>321.</b>	Sing. N.	πατήρ, ὁ, <i>father</i>	μήτηρ, ἡ, <i>mother</i>
	G.	πατρ-ός [for πατέρ-ος]	μητρ-ός [for μητέρ-ος]
	D.	πατρ-ί [for πατέρ-ι]	μητρ-ί [for μητέρ-ι]
	A.	πατέρ-α	μητέρ-α
	V.	πάτερ	μήτερ
	Dual N. A. V.	πατέρ-ε	μητέρ-ε
	G. D.	πατέρ-οιν	μητέρ-οιν
	Plur. N. V.	πατέρ-ες	μητέρ-ες
	G.	πατέρ-ων	μητέρ-ων
	D.	πατρά-σι (ν)	μητρά-σι (ν)
	A.	πατέρ-ας	μητέρ-ας
	Sing. N.	θυγάτηρ, ἡ, <i>daughter</i>	άνήρ, ὁ, <i>man</i>
	G.	θυγατρ-ός	άνδρ-ός [for άνέρ-ος]
	D.	θυγατρ-ί	άνδρ-ί etc.
	A.	θυγατέρ-α	άνδρ-α
	V.	θύγατερ	άνερ
	Dual N. A. V.	θυγατέρ-ε	άνδρ-ε
	G. D.	θυγατέρ-οιν	άνδρ-οιν
	Plur. N. V.	θυγατέρ-ες	άνδρ-ες
	G.	θυγατέρ-ων	άνδρ-ών
	D.	θυγατρά-σι (ν)	άνδρά-σι (ν)
	A.	θυγατέρ-ας	άνδρ-ας

*Pl lengthened*  
*άνήρ, άνδρ-ος*  
*άνδρ-ος*

**322. Dative of respect.**—The instrumental dative (§ 141) may indicate *in respect to what* an expression is used :

γένει προσ-ήκων βασιλεῖ in respect to birth related to the king.

a. The accusative of specification (§ 279) is far more commonly used.

**323.**

**VOCABULARY XXXI**

Ἄβροκόμῃς, ε (Doric gen., for ου), ves) : *fellow soldiers* (or ὁ: *Abrocomas*. Greeks).  
 άνήρ, άνδρός, ὁ: *man; husband*. γένος, ος, τό: *kinship, family, birth*. Lat. *genus, gēns*.  
 ὧ άνδρες στρατιώται (or Ἕλλη-

δώδεκα (δύο + δέκα), indecl. :  
 / *twelve*. Dodeca-gon (γωνία  
*angle*).

ἐχθρός, ἄ, ὄν: *hostile*. ἐχθρός  
 (subst.) οὐ, ὄ: *personal enemy*.  
 To be distinguished from  
 πόλεμος and οἱ πολέμοι *the*  
*enemy* in war.

θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός, ἡ: *daughter*.

μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ: *mother*. Lat.  
*māter*.

Ὀρόντας, ἄ (Doric gen., for ου), ὄ:  
*Oronias*.

Παρύσατις, ἰδος, ἡ: *Parysatis*,  
 wife of Darius II, king of Per-

sia, and mother of Artaxerxes II  
 and Cyrus the Younger.

πατήρ, πατρός, ὄ: *father*. Lat.  
*pater*.

προσ-ήκω: *come to, reach to, per-*  
*tain to*; pres. partic. *related*,  
 with dat.

στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα:  
*make an expedition*; dep. MID.  
*take the field, serve in war*. Cp.  
 στρατεύ-μα, etc.

συ-στρατεύω (σύν + στρατεύω, § 133-  
 4), usually dep. MID. συ-στρα-  
 τεύομαι: *take the field with, serve*  
*in war with*, with dat.

#### EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

324. I. 1. ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, γείτων εἰμὶ τῇ  
 Ἑλλάδι. 2. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄνδρες περὶ σπονδῶν  
 ἤκοιεν. 3. ἀγαθοὶ δὴ φίλοι εἰσὶ χρήσιμοι ἀνδρῶν.<sup>1</sup>  
 4. Κύρος οὖν ἀναβαίνει παρὰ τὸν πατέρα. 5. οἱ δὲ  
 στρατιῶται κατέλιπον πατέρας καὶ μητέρας ἐπεὶ συν-  
 εστρατεύοντο Κύρῳ. 6. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὰς  
 Παρυσάτιδος κώμας τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός.  
 7. Ὀρόντας δ' ἤγετο<sup>2</sup> τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν<sup>3</sup> βασιλέως.  
 8. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρ-  
 χήν. 9. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς λοχαγούς λαμβάνειν<sup>4</sup> ἀνδρας.  
 10. ἔλεξε γὰρ ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμαν, ἐχθρὸν ἀνδρα,  
 ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα στα-  
 θμούς. 11. πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι στρα-

<sup>1</sup> § 111.

<sup>2</sup> §§ 67, 69.

<sup>3</sup> ἔγω in mid. sometimes means *marry*.

<sup>4</sup> *take* = *enlist*.

τεύεσθαι. 12. Ὀρόντᾱς δέ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, γέει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ,<sup>1</sup> ἐπι-βουλεύει Κύρῳ.

II. 1. I advise you to abandon this man. 2. Men have come<sup>2</sup> with reference to<sup>3</sup> a truce. 3. The father summoned his daughters (to his side).<sup>4</sup> 4. Cyrus ordered his generals to enlist men, in order that they might take the field with him against the king.

---

## XXXII

THE SECOND AORIST MIDDLE AND THE FUTURE MIDDLE SYSTEMS OF Ω-VERBS. FUTURE SYSTEM OF εἶμι. FUTURE PARTICIPLE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. ὡς WITH FUTURE PARTICIPLE. INFINITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES OF *FITNESS* AND *ABILITY*

**325.** The second aorist middle of *λείπω* and similar verbs (§§ 83-88) differs from the second aorist active in the personal endings only. The second aorist indicative is inflected with the endings of the imperfect; while the second aorist subjunctive, optative, and imperative have the endings of the present tense in these moods.

The second person singular of the second aorist middle imperative in -οῦ always has the circumflex on the ultima; and the second aorist middle infinitive is always accented on the penult.

---

<sup>1</sup> § III.

<sup>2</sup> ἦκε.

<sup>3</sup> about.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.



### 326. SECOND AORIST SYSTEM OF *λείπω* IN THE MIDDLE VOICE

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic.	1. ἐ-λίπ-ό-μην		ἐ-λίπ-ό-μεθα
	2. ἐ-λίπ-ου	ἐ-λίπ-ε-σθον	ἐ-λίπ-ε-σθε
	3. ἐ-λίπ-ε-το	ἐ-λίπ-έ-σθην	ἐ-λίπ-ο-ντο
Subjv.	1. λίπ-ω-μαι		λίπ-ό-μεθα
	2. λίπ-ῃ	λίπ-ῃ-σθον	λίπ-ῃ-σθε
	3. λίπ-ῃ-ται	λίπ-ῃ-σθον	λίπ-ω-νται
Opt.	1. λίπ-οί-μην		λίπ-οί-μεθα
	2. λίπ-οι-ο	λίπ-οι-σθον	λίπ-οι-σθε
	3. λίπ-οι-το	λίπ-οι-σθην	λίπ-οι-ντο
Imv.	2. λίπ-οῦ	λίπ-ε-σθον	λίπ-ε-σθε
	3. λίπ-έ-σθω	λίπ-έ-σθων	λίπ-έ-σθων
Inf.	λίπ-έ-σθαι		
Partic.	λίπ-ό-μενος, ῆ, ον		

Review the second aorist active system of *λείπω*, *i.e.* the second aorist indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 85, 208, 238, 257, 301).

327. The future middle differs from the future active in personal endings only. The subjunctive and imperative have no future tense in any voice.

328. The future middle of mute themes is formed with the same euphonic changes at the end of the theme as the future active (§ 153). Thus *μετα-πέμφομαι συμμαχον*, fut. *μετα-πέμφομαι*, *δέχομαι receive*, fut. *δέξομαι*, *ἀρπάζω plunder*, fut. mid. *ἀρπάσομαι*.

### 329. FUTURE SYSTEM OF *λύω* IN THE MIDDLE VOICE

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic.	1. λύ-σο-μαι	<i>I shall loose for myself</i> <i>I shall ransom</i>	λύ-σό-μεθα
	2. λύ-ση, λύ-σει		λύ-σε-σθε
	3. λύ-σει-ται	λύ-σε-σθον	λύ-σο-νται

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Opt. 1.	λυ-σοί-μην		λυ-σοί-μεθα
2.	λύ-σοι-ο	λύ-σοι-σθον	λύ-σοι-σθε
3.	λύ-σοι-το	λύ-σοι-σθην	λύ-σοι-ντο
Inf.	λύ-σε-σθαι		
Partic.	λύ-σά-μενος, η, ον		

Review the future active system of λύω, *i.e.* the future indicative, optative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 151, 207, 254).

#### FUTURE SYSTEM OF εἶμι *I am*

330. The future of εἶμι is ἔσομαι *I shall be*, inflected like λύ-σο-μαι except in the third person singular of the indicative, which irregularly lacks the thematic vowel (ε).

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	ἔσομαι		ἔσόμεθα
2.	ἔσῃ, ἔσει	ἔσεισθον	ἔσεισθε
3.	ἔσται	ἔσεισθον	ἔσονται
Opt. 1.	ἔσοίμην		ἔσοίμεθα
2.	ἔσοιο	ἔσοισθον	ἔσοισθε
3.	ἔσοιτο	ἔσοίσθην	ἔσοιντο
Inf.	ἔσεισθαι		
Partic.	ἔσόμενος, η, ον		

331. The circumstantial participle may be used in the future to express a purpose (cp. § 213):

ἄνδρα πέμπει κελεύοντα κτλ. he sends a man to command, etc.

332. ὡς often accompanies the participle of purpose as well as the causal participle (§ 213. a). It sometimes means *as, as if*, etc., and sometimes it can hardly be translated:

κελεύει τοὺς πελταστὰς πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ὡς δια-βησομένους<sup>1</sup>  
 he orders the peltasts to proceed into the river as if to cross  
 (*i.e.* as if with the purpose of crossing);  
 καὶ ὑμεῖς παρα-σκευάζεσθε ὡς ἀνα-βησόμενοι<sup>2</sup> and do you make yourselves ready in order to go inland.

<sup>1</sup> Fut. of δια-βαίνω, § 144.

<sup>2</sup> Fut. of ἀνα-βαίνω, § 280.

333. The infinitive is used to complete the meaning of certain adjectives, especially such as denote *fitness, ability,* and the like :

ικανοὶ τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν sufficient [troops] to guard the citadels ;

ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἱκανὸς ἦν he was able to govern honorable and brave men.

## 334.

## VOCABULARY XXXII

ἀκρό-πολις, εως, ἡ : high part of a city, *citadel*. Acropolis.

ἄκρος, ᾤ, ον : *top of, highest point of*; τὸ ἄκρον (subst.) : *the height*. Cp. Lat. *acus, acutus, acies*.

Βαβυλῶν, ὄνος, ἡ : *Babylon*.

βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα : *plan, devise*; but the simple verb is commonly dep. mid.

βουλεύομαι : *take counsel with oneself, plan*. Cp. ἐπι-βουλεύω and συμ-βουλεύω.

γίγνομαι (for γι-γεν-ο-μαι, theme γεν-), fut. γενήσομαι (the increase of the theme to γενη- is to be noted), 2 aor. ἐγενόμην : *become, be born, be; happen, arise, take place, turn out*. Cp. γένος. Genesis.

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, aor. to be learned later : *receive, accept*.

δια-βήσομαι, fut. of δια-βαίνω (Vocabulary XI), theme βα- : *shall go across, shall cross*.

ἔλαβον, 2 aor. mid. of εἶλον (Vocabulary XXVI) : *I took for*

*myself, I chose*. Subjv. ἄλωμαι, opt. ἄλοιμην, inv. ἄλῃ, inf. ἄλῃσθαι, partic. ἄλόμενος, ἡ, ον.

εἶπον (Vocabulary XXIV), meaning *commanded, proposed, urged*, is followed by the inf. Cp. § 98.

ἱκανός, ἡ, ὄν : *sufficient, able*.

κατα-λαμβάνω (cp. λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἄλαβον) : *seize, occurry, overtake, come upon*, with acc.

λήψομαι (theme ληβ-), fut. of λαμβάνω (Vocabulary V) : *shall take or receive*.

παρα-γίγνομαι (cp. γίγνομαι) : *come (to); be at hand, be present*. Cp. παρά-εμι.

παύομαι, mid. of παύω (Vocabulary XXVI) : *stop oneself, cease*.

πέσομαι : either (1) fut. of πάσχω *suffer* (Vocabulary XXII), or (2) fut. mid. of πείθω (Vocabulary I) in mid. meaning *obey* (with dat.).

πηγή, ἡς, ἡ : *spring of water*; generally pl. *source*.

ῥᾶδιος, ᾤ, ον : *easy*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

335. I. 1. ἦν δὲ φύγη, ἡμεῖς πρὸς<sup>1</sup> ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. 2. καὶ Κῦρος ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλεῆα εἰς Βαβυλῶνα. 3. Δαρείου<sup>2</sup> καὶ Παρυσάτιδος<sup>2</sup> γίνονται παῖδες δύο. 4. τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἦν βούλωνται, δια-βήσονται. 5. οὐκ ἔφη παύσεσθαι. 6. ἔλεγε δ' ὅτι μισθὸν τάλαντον λήψουσι. 7. ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον ἔσται, ἦν βουλόμεθα. 8. οἱ Ἕλληνες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς δεξόμενοι βασιλεῆα. 9. πάντες οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολέμοι ἡμῖν ἔσονται. 10. οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει σχεῖν<sup>3</sup> τοὺς ἀνδρας. 11. Πρόξενον δὲ ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἀνδρας παραγενέσθαι, ὡς<sup>4</sup> εἰς Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι. 12. Ξενίας δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις. 13. ἐνόμισεν εἶναι ἱκανὸς<sup>5</sup> ἄρχειν. 14. σὺν ὑμῖν ὅτι ἂν δέη πείσομαι.<sup>6</sup> 15. τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι.<sup>7</sup> 16. στρατιώτης δέ τις εἶπεν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους στρατηγούς, καὶ πέμψαι ἀνδρας καταληψομένους<sup>8</sup> τὰ ἄκρα.

II. 1. Clearchus proposed to choose leaders, and to send them with soldiers to occupy the mountains. 2. He will not be able to control<sup>9</sup> bad men.

<sup>1</sup> with reference to.

<sup>2</sup> In sense of *restrain*, § 88.

<sup>3</sup> § 110. *d.*

<sup>7</sup> Fut. mid. of *πέιθω*.

<sup>2</sup> from gen., § 201.

<sup>4</sup> § 213. *a.*

<sup>6</sup> Fut. of *πέσχω*.

<sup>9</sup> ἄρχειν.

<sup>8</sup> § 331.

## XXXIII

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). SOME IMPORTANT IRREGULAR NOUNS. μέγας AND πολλός

## 336.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS

- |    |                |   |    |                        |
|----|----------------|---|----|------------------------|
| 1. | Sing. N.       | γυνή, ἡ, <i>woman</i>                   | 2. | χείρ, ἡ, <i>hand</i>   |
|    | G.             | γυναικ-ός                               |    | χειρ-ός                |
|    | D.             | γυναικ-ί                                |    | χειρ-ί                 |
|    | A.             | γυναικ-α                                |    | χειρ-α                 |
|    | V.             | γύναι                                   |    | χείρ                   |
|    | Dual N. A. V.  | γυναικ-ε                                |    | χείρ-ε                 |
|    | G. D.          | γυναικ-οῖν                              |    | χειρ-οῖν and χειρ-οῖν  |
|    | Plur. N. V.    | γυναικ-ες                               |    | χείρ-ες                |
|    | G.             | γυναικ-ῶν                               |    | χειρ-ῶν                |
|    | D.             | γυναιξί(ν)                              |    | χειρ-σί(ν)             |
|    | A.             | γυναικ-ας                               |    | χείρ-ας                |
| 3. | Sing. N. A. V. | πῦρ, τό, <i>fire</i>                    | 4. | ὔδωρ, τό, <i>water</i> |
|    | G.             | πυρ-ός                                  |    | ὔδατ-ος                |
|    | D.             | πυρ-ί                                   |    | ὔδατ-ι                 |
|    | Plur. N. A. V. | πυρ-ά, τά (o-decl.), <i>watch fires</i> |    | ὔδατ-α                 |
|    | G.             | πυρ-ῶν                                  |    | ὔδατ-ων                |
|    | D.             | πυρ-οῖς                                 |    | ὔδα-σι(ν)              |
| 5. | Sing. N. A. V. | δόρυ, τό, <i>spear</i>                  | 6. | γόνυ, τό, <i>knee</i>  |
|    | G.             | δόρατ-ος                                |    | γόνατ-ος               |
|    | D.             | δόρατ-ι                                 |    | γόνατ-ι                |
|    | Dual N. A. V.  | δόρατ-ε                                 |    | γόνατ-ε                |
|    | G. D.          | δοράτ-οιν                               |    | γονάτ-οιν              |
|    | Plur. N. A. V. | δόρατ-α                                 |    | γόνατ-α                |
|    | G.             | δοράτ-ων                                |    | γονάτ-ων               |
|    | D.             | δόρα-σι(ν)                              |    | γόνα-σι(ν)             |

337. TWO IMPORTANT IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
1.	Sing. N. μέγας <i>great</i> ✓	μεγάλη	μέγα ✓
	G. μέγλου	μεγάλης	μέγλου
	D. μέγλω	μεγάλη	μέγλω
	A. μέγαν ✓	μεγάλην	μέγα ✓
	Plur. N. μέγλοι	μεγάλοι	μέγλα
	G. μέγλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
	D. μέγλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
	A. μέγλους	μεγάλαις	μέγλα
2.	Sing. N. πολύς <i>much</i> ✓	πολλή	πολύ ✓
	G. πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
	D. πολλῶ	πολλῆ	πολλῶ
	A. πολύν ✓	πολλήν	πολύ ✓
	Plur. N. πολλοί	πολλοί	πολλά
	G. πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
	D. πολλοῖς	πολλοῖς	πολλοῖς
	A. πολλοῦς	πολλῶς	πολλά

338.

VOCABULARY XXXIII

ἀπο-λαμβάνω (cp. λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον): *take or receive back; take off, cut off.*

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: *knee.* Lat. *genū.*

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: *woman, wife.*

δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: *spear.*

ἤδη, adv.: *now, already, straight-way.*

Κελαίναί, ὦν, αἱ: *Celaenae, a city in Phrygia.*

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: *great, large.* Mega-phone (φωνή *voice*).

νύκτωρ, adv. (cp. νύξ): *by night.*

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: *much, many; extensive, large.* οἱ πολλοί: *the many, the most.* οἱ πολλοί τῶν

Ἑλλήνων: *the most of the Greeks.* τὸ πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος: *the most of the army.* Poly-, poly-gon (γωνία *angle*), poly-technic (τέχνη *art*), etc.

πῦρ, πυρός, τό: *fire.* πυρά, τά: *watch fires.* Cp. πυτε, πυρο-technic (τέχνη *art*), etc.

Ταρσοί, ὦν, οἱ: *Tarsus, the chief city of Cilicia.*

τόξον, ου, τό: *bow.* Cp. τοξότης, τόξουμα.

χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: *hand.* Chirography (γράφω).

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: *water; rain.* Hydro-, hydro-phobia (φόβος), etc.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

339. I. 1. ἔστι δὲ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς. 2. ἦν γὰρ πολὺς σῖτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. 3. μεγάλα δὲ τὰ τόξα τὰ Περσικά<sup>1</sup> ἔστιν. 4. οἱ δ' ἀπολήφονται καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας. 5. ἐν τῇ χειρὶ Κλέαρχος εἶχε τὸ δόρυ. 6. ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ κατ-έλαβον φυλακὴν τῆς νυκτός.<sup>2</sup> 7. ἔλεγόν τινες ὅτι κατ-ίδοιεν νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρά. 8. καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν.<sup>3</sup> 9. εἶχον δὲ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων.<sup>4</sup> 10. τῷ δὲ δόρατι<sup>5</sup> παίει αὐτὸν κατὰ τὸ γόνυ. 11. διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας δύο καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοῦς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 12. οὗτος δ' ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ.<sup>6</sup> κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ἦσαν. 13. Τισσαφέρης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλείας γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς ἤδη παρήσαν. 14. εὐθύς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας.

II. 1. The wife of the king of Cilicia arrived<sup>7</sup> at<sup>8</sup> the camp. 2. On coming up<sup>9</sup> they kindled a fire. 3. The general marched five days' journey to Celaenae, a large and prosperous city. 4. The most of the barbarians had spears in their hands.

<sup>1</sup> §§ 67, 69.<sup>2</sup> § 155.<sup>3</sup> there was.<sup>4</sup> §§ 278, 282.<sup>5</sup> § 141.<sup>6</sup> § 99.<sup>7</sup> Use proper tense of παρα-γίνομαι.<sup>8</sup> eis.<sup>9</sup> Use aor. partic. and omit *on*.

FIG. 19. — Greek Spears.

## XXXIV

THE FIRST AORIST MIDDLE SYSTEM OF Ω-VERBS.  
INDIRECT QUESTIONS INTRODUCED BY THE INTERROGATIVE *τίς*, THE INDEFINITE RELATIVE *ὅστις*, AND OTHER INTERROGATIVE WORDS

340. The first aorist middle differs from the first aorist active (§ 160) only in the personal endings. The personal endings of the first aorist indicative middle are the same as in the imperfect middle; in the second person singular of the first aorist indicative, *-σα + [σ]ο* contracts to *-σω*. The other moods have in the first aorist middle the same personal endings as in the present middle. But the second person singular of the middle imperative in *-σαι (λύσαι)* is peculiar in form, as is the second person singular of the active imperative in *-σον (λύσον)*.

341. A verb of three syllables naturally has recessive accent in the second person singular of the first aorist middle imperative. Thus *συμβούλευσαι consult*. From this form must be carefully distinguished the first aorist infinitive active *συμβουλεύσαι to advise* (§ 166); and the third person singular of the first aorist optative active *συμβουλεύσαι (or -σειε)*, final *-αι* being long in the optative mood (§ 253).

## 342. FIRST AORIST MIDDLE SYSTEM OF ΛΩ

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	ἐλύσα-μην <i>I loosed for myself, I ransomed</i>		ἐλύσα-μεθα
2.	ἐλύ-σω	ἐλύ-σα-σθον	ἐλύ-σα-σθε
3.	ἐλύ-σα-το	ἐλύ-σά-σθην	ἐλύ-σα-ντο



	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Subjv. 1.	λύ-σω-μαι		λύ-σά-μεθα
2.	λύ-ση	λύ-ση-σθον	λύ-ση-σθε
3.	λύ-ση-ται	λύ-ση-σθον	λύ-σω-νται
Opt. 1.	λύ-σαι-μην		λύ-σαι-μεθα
2.	λύ-σαι-ο	λύ-σαι-σθον	λύ-σαι-σθε
3.	λύ-σαι-το	λύ-σαι-σθην	λύ-σαι-ντο
Imv. 2.	λύ-σαι	λύ-σα-σθον	λύ-σα-σθε
3.	λύ-σά-σθω	λύ-σά-σθων	λύ-σά-σθων
Inf.	λύ-σα-σθαι		
Partic.	λύ-σά-μενος, η, ον		

Review the first aorist active system of λύω, *i.e.* the first aorist indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 162, 209. *b*, 235, 254, 297).

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**343.** The same words that introduce direct questions may also introduce indirect questions. Thus *τίς who? τί what (ποῦ where? etc.)*. Or the corresponding indefinite relative pronoun (or adverb) may be used. Thus *ὅστις* for *τίς* (and *ὅπου* for *ποῦ*, etc.). Examples are provided under §§ 344, 345.

*a. εἰ* after an interrogative verb may mean *whether*.

**344.** An indirect question after a primary tense of the verb of *asking* keeps its original mood and tense unchanged: *δια-λέγου καὶ μάθε* (§ 303. *a*) *τίνες εἰσὶν* [or *οἱ τινές εἰσιν*] *converse* (with them) and learn who they are.

**345.** After a secondary tense of the verb of *asking* the verb of the indirect question may be changed to the optative. The tense used in the direct question must be retained, but the change of mood is optional:

*ἤρето ὁ τι* [or *τί*] *εἶη τὸ σύνθημα* he asked what the watchword was.  
*In the direct form: τί ἐστι τὸ σύνθημα; what is the watchword?*

The original verb *ἐστί* might have been retained in the indirect question.

## 346.

## VOCABULARY XXXIV

ἀληθής, ἐς: *true*.

ἄρχομαι, ἄρξομαι, ἤρξάμην (mid. of ἄρχω, Vocabulary VIII): *begin*, with gen. or inf.

δια-πράττομαι (cp. πράττω), δια-πράξομαι, δι' ἐπραξάμην: *carry through to the end, bring about, accomplish, effect* (for oneself); *manage that* (with acc. and inf.).

δυνατός, ἡ, ὄν: *able, strong*. Cp. δύναμις.

εἰ, after an interr. verb: *whether*. ἤρῳμην, 2 aor.: *I asked* (a question) or *inquired*; subjv. ἔρωμαι, opt. ἐροίμην, imv. ἐροῦ, inf. ἐρῶσθαι, partic. ἐρόμενος.

θύομαι, θύσομαι, ἐθύσάμην (mid. of θύω, Vocabulary XXIII): *sacrifice, offer* for oneself or from one's own resources.

κατα-βαίνω, κατα-βήσομαι: *go down, descend*. Cp. ἀνα-βαίνω (Vocabulary XXVI).

σκέπτομαι, σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, dep. mid.: *view, observe, consider*. The pres. and impf. are rare in Attic. **Skeptic**.

συ-σκευάζω (σύν + σκευάζω, cp. παρα-σκευάζω), συ-σκευάσω, συ-σκευάσα: *make ready* (by getting things together, συν-), *pack up*, with acc.; MID. *pack up one's own baggage, pack up*.

χαρίζομαι (theme χαριδ-), fut. to be learned later, ἐχαρισάμην, dep. mid.: *show a favor* to somebody (dat.), *gratify, grant* something (acc.) to somebody (dat.) *as a favor*. Cp. χάρις. χιάν, ὄνος, ἡ: *snow*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

347. I. 1. Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετ-επέμψατο, ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος. 2. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. 3. ἐπὶ τούτοις<sup>1</sup> ἐθύσαντο. 4. τούτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἶη τὸ κωλύον.<sup>2</sup> 5. ἤρξαντο δὲ κατα-βαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους. 6. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οὐκ ἐδέξαντο αὐτούς. 7. αὐτὸς δὲ δυνατὸς<sup>3</sup> ἦν παρα-σκευάσασθαι

<sup>1</sup> upon this, thereupon.

<sup>2</sup> the hindrance (§ 212).

<sup>3</sup> § 333.

χιλόν. 8. λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,<sup>1</sup> ἔαν αὐτῷ ταῦτα τὰ ὄπλα χαρίσωνται. 9. συν-έλεξα ὑμᾶς ὄπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὃ τι χρή πράττειν. 10. συ-σκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθύς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς, ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς. 11. καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας, ἃς παρ-εσκευάσατο Κῦρος, οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ δι-ήρπασαν. 12. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος δι-επράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς ἤκειν, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς. 13. ταῦτα δὲ δια-πράξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἤκον ἐπὶ λόφον. 14. ἤρετο τὸν ἄνθρωπον εἰ ἀληθῆ ταῦτ' εἶη.

II. 1. Cyrus wondered what the watchword was. 2. We asked why they had taken the field against the king. 3. The barbarians plundered all the wagons, full of wine and grain, which Cyrus had prepared.

<sup>1</sup> § 119.

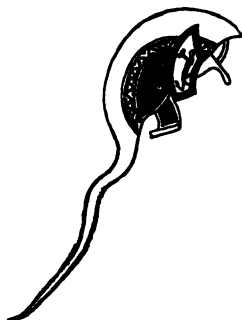


FIG. 20.—Helmet with Movable Cheek Pieces.

## XXXV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES IN *-ων*. GENITIVE OF COMPARISON. ACCUSATIVE OF THE *WAY BY WHICH*. SUPERLATIVE TRANSLATED BY *VERY*

348. The comparative degree of an adjective in *-ος* is commonly formed by adding *-τερος* to the stem of the adjective as seen in the positive degree. Thus *δίκαιος just*; comparative *δικαιό-τερος (ᾶ, ον) more just*. Similarly the superlative degree is commonly formed by the suffix *-τατος*. Thus *δικαιό-τατος (η, ον) most just*. *satire*

a. All comparatives and superlatives have recessive accent.

349. If the penult of the adjective is short in the positive degree, the *ο* of the stem is lengthened to *ω* before the comparative and superlative suffixes. Thus *ἄξιος worthy*, comparative *ἀξιό-τερος*, superlative *ἀξιό-τατος*.

350. A penult is counted long, although its vowel is short, if its vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant (§ 6). Thus the penult of *πιστός faithful* is long, and the comparative and superlative are therefore *πιστό-τερος*, *πιστό-τατος*.

## 351. AN ILLUSTRATIVE LIST OF ADJECTIVES COMPARED

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
a. δίκαιος, ᾶ, ον, <i>just</i>	δικαιότερος, ᾶ, ον	δικαιότατος, η, ον
ισχυρός, ᾶ, ὄν, <i>strong</i>	ισχυρότερος, ᾶ, ον	ισχυρότατος, η, ον
μακρός, ᾶ, ὄν, <i>long</i>	μακρότερος, ᾶ, ον	μακρότατος, η, ον
πιστός, ῆ, ὄν, <i>faithful</i>	πιστότερος, ᾶ, ον	πιστότατος, η, ον

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
b.	ἄξιος, α, ον, <i>worthy</i>	ἀξιότερος, α, ον	ἀξιότατος, η, ον
	φοβερός, α, ον, <i>fearful</i>	φοβρώτερος, α, ον	φοβερότατος, η, ον
	χαλεπός, ή, όν, <i>hard,</i> <i>difficult, harsh, severe</i>	χαλεπώτερος, α, ον	χαλεπότατος, η, ον

Similarly are compared :

c.	βραχύς, εια, ύ, <i>short</i> [πρόσβυς, poetic, <i>old</i> <sup>1</sup> ]	βραχύτερος, α, ον πρεσβύτερος, α, ον, <i>older, elder</i>	βραχύτατος, η, ον πρεσβότατος, η, ον
d.	ἀληθής, ές, <i>true</i> ἀσφαλής, ές, <i>safe</i>	ἀληθέ-τερος, α, ον ἀσφαλέ-τερος, α, ον	ἀληθέ-τατος, η, ον ἀσφαλέ-τατος, η, ον
e.	εὐδαίμων, ον, <i>prosperous</i>	εὐδαιμον-έ-τερος, α, ον	εὐδαιμον-έ-τατος, η, ον

352. The following are compared by the suffixes *-ίων*, *comparative*, and *-ιστος, η, ον*, superlative :

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
z.	ἡδύς, εια, ύ, <i>sweet</i> <u>ταχύς, εια, ύ, <i>swift,</i></u> <u><i>quick</i></u>	ἡδίων, ἡδίων [ταχ-ίων = <del>θάρτων,</del> θάρτων	ἡδιστος, η, ον <u>τάχιστος, η, ον</u>
β.	αἰσχρός, α, ον, <i>shameful</i> ἐχθρός, α, ον, <i>hostile</i>	αἰσχίων, αἰσχίον ἐχθίων, ἐχθίον	αἰσχιστος, η, ον ἐχθιστος, η, ον

These drop *-ρός* and add *-ίων, -ιστος*.

#### DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES IN *-ων*, GENITIVE *-ωνος*

353. Comparatives in *-ων*, neut. *-ων*, gen. *-ωνος*, are declined like *εὐδαίμων* (§ 222), with these exceptions: the accusative singular masculine and feminine and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, masculine and feminine, may contract. The contracted accusative plural masculine and feminine copies the nominative plural. The nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural may be similarly contracted.

<sup>1</sup>Cp. pl. πρόσβυς, Vocabulary XXVII.

a. The contracted forms come from stems in -οσ, as ἡδίστοσ-α, ἡδίστοσ-ες; *sigma* dropping between two vowels, ο + α = ω, and ο + ε = ου.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
354. Sing. N.	ἡδίστων <i>sweetest</i>	ἡδίστων
G.	ἡδίστωνος	
D.	ἡδίστωνι	
A.	ἡδίστονα or ἡδίστω	ἡδίστων
V.	ἡδίστων	
Dual N. A. V.	ἡδίστονε	
G. D.	ἡδισίωνοιν	
Plur. N. V.	ἡδίστωνες or ἡδίστους	ἡδίστονα or ἡδίστω
G.	ἡδισίωνων	
D.	ἡδίστοσι(ν)	
A.	ἡδίστονας or ἡδίστους	ἡδίστονα or ἡδίστω

355. Genitive of comparison. — The genitive case follows a comparative when ἢ *than* is omitted. This is the *from* use of the genitive. (Similarly in Latin the ablative follows a comparative when *quam*, “than,” is omitted.)

αἶνος τούτου ἡδίστων wine sweeter than this.

356. Akin to the cognate accusative (§ 181) is the accusative of the *way by which* found with a verb of *motion*:

ὁδὸν πορεύεσθαι to travel a road.

357. The superlative degree may be sometimes translated by *very*. Thus ἡδίστος *sweetest* or *very sweet*.

### 358. VOCABULARY XXXV

Learn the adjectives in §§ 351, 352. They are not repeated in the following list.

Ἄρταπάτης, ου, ὁ: *Artapates*, a βασιλευς): *kinglike, fit to be*  
 friend of Cyrus. king; *royal*.  
 βασιλικός, ἡ, ὄν (cp. βασιλεύς and εἰσ-έγω (cp. ἄγω): *lead in*.

ἐπι-τυγχάνω, ἐπι-τεύξομαι (dep. fut.), ἐπι-τύχων: *chance upon, happen upon, find*, with dat.

νέος, ἄ, ον: *new, fresh, young*.

Comp. νεότερος, sup. νεώτατος.

Cp. Lat. *novus*. Neo-lithic (λίθος *stone*).

οὐ-πω, adv.: *not yet, never yet*.

ὄχλος, ου, ὁ: *crowd, throng; annoyance, bother*.

ὡς: adv. with sup. to express the very highest degree. Cp. Lat. *quam* with sup. Thus ὡς μακρότατος: *as long as possible*. See also previous Vocabularies (XXII, XXIV, XXVI, XXVIII).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

359. I. 1. Δᾶρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. 2. χαλεπώτατος δὲ ἐχθρός<sup>1</sup> ἐστίν. 3. πάντες οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. 4. οἴνω τούτου ἡδίονι οὐπω ἐπι-τύχων ἐγώ. 5. τοὺς δὲ ισχυροτάτους τῶν πελταστῶν ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον. 6. ἐπορεύοντο δὲ μακροτέρῳ ὁδόν. 7. οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες αἰσχίους εἰσὶ τῶν πρόσθεν.<sup>2</sup> 8. δεῖ ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι δέκα σταθμοὺς ὡς μακροτάτους. 9. φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν ἢ ἡμῖν. 10. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν.<sup>3</sup> 11. ὁ Ἀριαῖος φίλος ἐστὶ τοῖς Κύρου ἐχθίστοις.<sup>4</sup> 12. μετὰ ταῦτα εἰσ-ἦγον Ὀρόντων εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηπὴν, τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου φίλων. 13. Κῦρος δὲ ἦδη ἦν βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχεω ἀξιώτατος. 14. πᾶς δὲ ὄχλος φοβερώτατος.

<sup>1</sup> The noun, § 323.

<sup>2</sup> Supply *men*, § 70. b.

<sup>3</sup> §§ 284, 356.

<sup>4</sup> Used as noun: *most bitter enemies*.

II. 1. They proceeded home by the quickest way. 2. It is necessary for a soldier to be as faithful as possible if he is about to do guard duty.<sup>1</sup> 3. I think that road is safer than this.<sup>2</sup>

---

Read in last file

### XXXVI

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*). IRREGULAR COMPARISON. DOUBLE QUESTIONS

360. The following common adjectives show irregularities of comparison :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1. ἀγαθός, ἡ, ὄν, <i>good</i> , etc. (morally <i>better</i> ) ( <i>stronger, better</i> )	ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον, <i>braver, better</i> βελτίων, βέλτιον κρείττων, κρείττον	ἄριστος, ἡ, ον βελτιστος, ἡ, ον κράτιστος, ἡ, ον
2. κακός, ἡ, ὄν, <i>bad, cowardly</i> , etc.	κακίων, κάκιον χείρων, χειρον ἥττων, ἥττον	κάκιστος, ἡ, ον χείριστος, ἡ, ον ἥκιστα, adv., <i>least of all, by no means</i>
3. καλός, ἡ, ὄν, <i>beautiful, noble</i> , etc.	καλλίων, κάλλιον	κάλλιστος, ἡ, ον
4. μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, <i>big</i>	μεῖζων, μεῖζον	μέγιστος, ἡ, ον
5. μικρός, ἄ, ὄν, <i>small</i>	μικρότερος, ἄ, ον μείων, μείον, <i>smaller, fewer</i> (in pl.)	μικρότατος, ἡ, ον
6. ὀλίγος, ἡ, ον, <i>little, few</i> (The comparative and superlative may be given with μικρός also.)	ελάττων, ελαττον	ελάχιστος, ἡ, ον
7. πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, <i>much, many</i>	πλείων, πλείον and πλείον	πλείστος, ἡ, ον
8. ῥαδῖος, ἄ, ον, <i>easy</i>	ῥάων, ῥῶον	ῥᾶστος, ἡ, ον

<sup>1</sup> §§ 156. 2, 181.

<sup>2</sup> Be careful about the gender.



For the declension of the comparatives in *-ων, -ου*, cp. *ἡδίων*, § 354.

361. The following lack the positive :

πρότερος, ἄ, ον, *former*  
 ὕστερος, ἄ, ον, *later*

πρώτος, ἦ, ον, *first*  
 ὕστατος, ἦ, ον, *latest*

a. ἔσχατος, ἦ, ον, *last, extreme*, is found in the superlative only.

362. A double question, direct or indirect, may be introduced by *πότερον* (or *πότερα*) . . . ἢ *whether* . . . or. In the double indirect question the same rules apply as in single indirect questions (§§ 344, 345).

*πότερον οἱ στρατηγοὶ βούλονται πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν*; do the generals wish to proceed or to delay?

*ἤρετο πότερον οἱ στρατηγοὶ βούλοιντο πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν* he asked whether the generals wished to proceed or to delay.

The original verb *βούλονται* might have been retained in the indirect question.

363. The double *indirect* question may also be introduced by *εἰ* . . . ἢ *whether* . . . or :

*ἤρετο εἰ οἱ στρατηγοὶ βούλοιντο πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν* he asked whether the generals wished to proceed or to delay.

## 364.

## VOCABULARY XXXVI

Learn the meanings of all the adjectives in §§ 360, 361. They are not repeated in the following list

ἔπειτα, adv. : *thereupon, then, next.*

~~πότερον (πότερα)~~ ἢ, introducing a double question, direct or indirect : *whether* . . . or.

προσ-έρχομαι (cp. ἔρχομαι) : *go to, come to, come up*; may take dat. of pers. or εἰς and acc.

πρόβατον, ον, τό : *cattle, sheep.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

365. I. 1. ὥστε ὦρᾱ λέγειν ὃ τι τις νομίζει ἄριστον εἶναι. 2. δεῖ δὲ ἡμᾶς μὴ κακτοὺς εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν.<sup>1</sup> 3. κακτοὺς εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. 4. ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσᾱς τοὺς κρατίστους κἀεὺ τὰς ἀμάξᾱς. 5. ἤρετο δὲ εἰ οἱ πλείστοι τῶν ἰππέων εἶεν Θρᾶκες ἢ οὐ. 6. ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσ-ερχόμενος. 7. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντᾱς γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾱ ὅτι ἤξει ἔχων ἰππέᾱς ὡς πλείστους. 8. ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, νομίζων ὑμᾶς ἀμείνους καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο συμμαχοὺς ὑμᾶς ἄγω. 9. οὗτοι οἱ ἵπποι μείονές εἰσι τῶν Περσικῶν ἵππων. 10. ῥᾶόν ἐστι πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν; 11. Πρόξενος δ' οὐκ ἤρετο πότερον βέλτιον εἶη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν. 12. ἀλλ' ὑμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις λέγετε ὅτι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε.<sup>2</sup> 13. ἦσαν δὲ τάφροι, αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐλάττους· αἱ δὲ ἔσχαται ἦσαν μικρόταται. 14. εἰ βούλοιο τῷ<sup>3</sup> φίλος εἶναι, ὡς μέγιστος φίλος ἂν εἴης. 15. χρὴ τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς ὡς ἐλάχιστα πρόβατα ἀρπάσαι.

II. 1. There were very many<sup>4</sup> horses in the plain. 2. This grain was very abundant<sup>5</sup> in the land. 3. If there is any other, better way, speak out.<sup>6</sup> 4. He commanded his generals to enlist as many and as brave men as possible.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 359. I. 7.<sup>2</sup> *consider.*<sup>3</sup> § 227.<sup>4</sup> § 357.<sup>5</sup> Sup. of πολὺς.<sup>6</sup> Omit *out.*

## XXXVII

## FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. IRREGULAR ADVERBS. GENITIVE AFTER ADVERBS OF PLACE

366. The positive degree of an adverb is commonly formed from any adjective in the positive degree by changing final *ν* of the genitive plural neuter to *ς*. The accent of the adjective is retained in the adverb. Thus

GENITIVE PLURAL NEUTER ADJECTIVE	CORRESPONDING ADVERB
δικαίων (from δίκαιος)	δικαίως <i>justly</i>
ισχυρῶν (from ισχυρός)	ισχυρῶς <i>strongly, exceedingly,</i> <i>harshly</i>
ἀσφαλῶν (from ἀσφαλής)	ἀσφαλῶς <i>safely</i>
ἡδέων (from ἡδύς)	ἡδέως <i>gladly</i>

367. Not infrequently the neuter singular accusative (adverbial accusative, § 284) of the adjective in the positive degree is used for the corresponding adverb. Thus *ταχύ quickly*.

368. The *neuter singular accusative* of the comparative degree of an adjective is used for the comparative degree of the adverb; and the *neuter plural accusative* of the superlative degree of an adjective is used for the superlative degree of the adverb.

## EXAMPLES OF COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
δικαίως <i>justly</i>	δικαιότερον	δικαιότατα
ισχυρῶς <i>strongly, exceedingly,</i> <i>harshly</i>	ισχυρότερον	ισχυρότατα

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
φοβῶς <i>fearfully</i>	φοβρώτερον	φοβρότατα
ἀσφαλῶς <i>safely</i>	ἀσφαλίστερον	ἀσφαλίστατα
ταχῶς or irregular τάχα	θᾶπτον	τάχιστα
κακῶς <i>badly</i>	κάκιον <i>worse</i>	κάκιστα
καλῶς <i>beautifully</i>	κάλλιον	κάλλιστα
ἡδίως <i>gladly</i>	ἡδιον	ἡδιστα

} *swiftly,*  
} *quickly*

↓

## 369. A LIST OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1. ἄνω <i>up</i>	ἀνωτέρω <i>higher</i>	ἀνωτάτω <i>highest</i>
2. ἐγγύς <i>near</i>	ἐγγύτερον ἐγγυτέρω	ἐγγύτατα ἐγγυτάτω
3. εὖ <i>well</i> (adv. of ἀγαθός)	ἄμεινον <i>better</i>	ἄριστα <i>best</i>
	βέλτιον κρείττον	βέλτιστα κράτιστα
4. μάλα <i>very</i>	μᾶλλον <i>more</i>	μάλιστα <i>most</i>

370. Adjectives may be compared by using μᾶλλον and μάλιστα with the positive degree. Thus μᾶλλον φίλοι *more friendly*.

371. Various other adverbial endings may be best learned with the words themselves, as οἴκαδε *homeward*.

372. An adverb of place is followed by the genitive case:

ἐγγυς τοῦ χωρίου near the stronghold.

Under this head comes also πέραν (Vocabulary XXIII).

373. Note ὡς (or ὅτι) τάχιστα (cp. § 358) *as quickly as possible*; ὡς μάλιστα *as much as possible*.

## 374.

## VOCABULARY XXXVII

Learn the adverbs in §§ 366-369. Except *ἄνω*, they are not repeated in this list.

*ἄνω*, adv. : *up* ; up from the sea, inland, into the interior. Cp. *ἀνά*.

*ἀ-παράσκευος, ον* : *unprepared*. Cp. *παρα-σκευάζω*.

*ἀρετή, ἡς, ἡ* (cp. *ἄριστος*) : *fitness, excellence, bravery ; virtue, noble-mindedness, magnanimity*.

*δέοι*, pres. opt. of *δεῖ* : *it is necessary* (Vocabulary XX).

*κολάζω* (theme *κολαδ-*), *κολάσω, ἐκόλασα* : *chastise, punish*.

*μάχομαι* (cp. *μάχη*), fut. to be learned later, *ἐμαχεσάμην* (aor. with lengthened theme) : *fight*. The enemy is expressed by the dat. or *πρός* (*against*) and acc.<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 317.

*ὄνομα, ατος, τό* : *name*. Synonym (*ὄνυ*).

*ὅσος, ἡ, ον*, rel. pron. : *as great as, as much as, as many as, all that ;*

*how great, how much, how many. ὅσα* : *as many things as, all that*.

*ὅτι*, as adv., strengthens a superlative, like *ὡς* (Vocabulary XXXV). Thus *ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατος* : *as unprepared as possible*.

*οὕτω* and *οὕτως* (cp. *οὗτος*), adv. : *thus, in this way* (usually with reference to what goes before), *so*.

*πόλεμος, ου, ὁ* (cp. *πολέμιος*) : *war*. *πολύ*, adv. (cp. *πολύς*) : *much, by far*. See § 367.

*προθύμως* (adv. of *προθύμος* *ready, eager*) : *readily, eagerly, zealously*. Comp. *προθυμότερον*, sup. *προθυμότατα*.

*πρὸ πρόσθεν* (adv. acc.) : *before, formerly*. Cp. Vocabulary XXVI.

*συμ-πορεύομαι* : *proceed with, accompany*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

375. I. 1. *Κῦρος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπορεύοντο ἄνω*.  
2. *κάκιον δὲ ἐπράξαν*.<sup>2</sup> 3. *ἄλλος δὲ εἶπε*<sup>3</sup> *στρατηγούς ἐλέσθαι ὡς τάχιστα*. 4. *οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἀκούσαντες τὴν Κῦρου ἀρετήν, ἡδίων καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο*. 5. *ἔτρεχον γὰρ πολὺ θᾶπτον τῶν ἵππων*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *μάχεσθαι σὺν τινι*, on the other hand, means to *fight with the aid of somebody*, who is an ally, not an enemy.

<sup>2</sup> *did = fared*.

<sup>3</sup> § 334.

<sup>4</sup> § 355.

6. ἥδιστα ἂν ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα τούτου τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ ὅσα ἔπραξεν. 7. εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω<sup>1</sup> κώμας ἦκεν ἔχων τοὺς πρῶτους.<sup>2</sup> 8. δικαίως ἂν μοι χαρίζοιτο. 9. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐκόλαζεν ἰσχυρῶς. 10. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι μᾶλλον φίλοι Κῦρω ἦσαν ἢ βασιλεῖ. 11. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος θάττον ἐπορεύετο, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλεύᾳ. 12. οὕτως πορευοίμεθα ἂν ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δεοί, ὡς κράτιστα ἂν μαχοίμεθα. 13. ἦσαν γὰρ ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ οὔτε πόλεις οὔτε κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. 14. ἐξ-ήλαυνον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πολὺ ἔτι προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. 15. λέγει ὅτι κάλλιστα διελέγοντο περὶ ἀρετῆς.

II. 1. The king collected his army quickly, in order that he might fight with the enemy while they were<sup>3</sup> as unprepared as possible. 2. The enemy ran more swiftly than before. 3. We marched as quickly as possible that we might be first on the other side of the river.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 70.

<sup>2</sup> *the van.*

<sup>3</sup> Omit *while they were.*

## XXXVIII

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN.  
THE INDIRECT REFLEXIVE οἱ. ATTRIBUTIVE  
POSITION OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE OF RE-  
FLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Review the paradigms of personal pronouns (§ 304) and of αὐτός (§ 122). For ἐαυτοῦ cp. also § 378.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, AND ἑαυτοῦ

376. The reflexive pronouns are made up, in the singular, from the stems of the personal pronouns and the forms of αὐτός in the oblique (§ 123. 3) cases.

		MASC.		FEM.	
1.	Sing. G.	ἐμαυτοῦ <i>of myself</i>		ἐμαυτῆς	
	D.	ἐμαυτῶ		ἐμαυτῇ	
	A.	ἐμαυτόν		ἐμαυτήν	
	Plur. G.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν <i>of ourselves</i>			
	D.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς		ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	
	A.	ἡμᾶς αὐτοῖς		ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς	
2.	Sing. G.	σεαυτοῦ <sup>1</sup> <i>of yourself</i>		σεαυτῆς	
	D.	σεαυτῶ		σεαυτῇ	
	A.	σεαυτόν		σεαυτήν	
	Plur. G.	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν <i>of yourselves</i>			
	D.	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς		ὑμῖν αὐταῖς	
	A.	ὑμᾶς αὐτοῖς		ὑμᾶς αὐταῖς	
3.		MASC.		FEM.	NEUT.
	Sing. G.	ἑαυτοῦ <sup>2</sup> <i>of himself</i>		ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ
	D.	ἑαυτῶ		ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῶ
	A.	ἑαυτόν		ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό

<sup>1</sup> Or, contracted, σεαυτοῦ, σεαυτῆς, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Or, contracted, αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, αὐτοῦ, etc.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Plur. G.	ἑαυτῶν <sup>1</sup> of themselves	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
D.	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς
A.	ἑαυτοῦς	ἑαυτές	ἑαυτά
Plur. also: G.	σφῶν αὐτῶν of themselves		
D.	σφίσιν αὐτοῖς	σφίσιν αὐταῖς	
A.	σφᾶς αὐτοῦς	σφᾶς αὐτές	

THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN, *one another*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
377. Dual G. D.	ἑλλητῶν	ἑλλητῶν	ἑλλητῶν
A.	ἑλλητῶ	ἑλλητῆε	ἑλλητῶ
Plur. G.	ἑλλήλων	ἑλλήλων	ἑλλήλων
D.	ἑλλήλοισ	ἑλλήλαις	ἑλλήλοισ
A.	ἑλλήλους	ἑλλήλας	ἑλληλα

## THE INDIRECT REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON

378. Sing. G.	[οῦ], [οῦ] <sup>2</sup>	Plur. N.	σφεῖς
D.	οἱ, οἱ, to or for himself or herself	G.	σφῶν
A.	[ἦ], [ἦ]	D.	σφίσι(ν)
		A.	σφᾶς

a. This pronoun is an *indirect* reflexive in Attic Greek; that is, used in a subordinate clause, it refers to the subject of the *main* clause:

ἔκελευον αὐτὸν πέμπειν σφίσι πλοῖα they ordered him to send boats to them.

379. The *genitive* of the reflexive pronoun, when denoting possession, has the attributive (§ 67) position:

συν-έλεξε τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτῶς he collected his own soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> Or, contracted, αὐτῶν, αὐτῶν, αὐτῶν, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Enclitic forms are [οῦ], οἱ, [ἦ]. Bracketed forms are very rare in Attic prose.



a. It will be recalled that the possessive genitive of the *personal* pronoun has the predicate position (§§ 127, 308).

380. In such expressions as that just described, the noun is often understood (cp. § 70. *δ*):

οἱ ἑαυτοῦ (supply στρατιῶται) his own soldiers; τὰ ἑαυτῶν their own affairs *or* their own possessions.

## 381.

## VOCABULARY XXXVIII

For ἀλλήλων, ἑμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ and σαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ and αὐτοῦ, and οὗ see the preceding paradigms.

αἰσθάνομαι (theme αἰσθ-, pres. tense suffix αν%), fut. αἰσθήσομαι (with lengthened theme), 2 aor. ἤσθόμην, subjv. αἰσθώμαι, etc.: *perceive*. An-aesthetic (ἀν- privative).

εἰσ-ελαύνω (cp. ἐλαύνω): *drive in, ride or march in*, with εἰς and acc.

ἐκκλησίᾳ, αἴ, ἡ: *assembly*. [In a later age, *church*.] Ecclesiastic.

ἐπι-βουλή, ἡς, ἡ: *plot* (against). Cp. ἐπι-βουλεύω.

ἔτοιμος, η, ον, or ἔτοιμος, ον: *ready, prepared*.

οἶομαι (often οἶμαι), fut. οἰήσομαι (with lengthened theme): *think, suppose*.

Συέννεσις, ἰος (non-Attic gen.), δ: *Syennesis, king of Cilicia*.

τάξις (ταγ + σι + s), εως, ἡ: *order, arrangement; military line, column, division*. Cp. τάττω.

τάττω (theme ταγ-, pres. tense suffix γ%), cp. φυλάττω, § 182, NOTE).

τάξω, ἔταξα: *arrange, draw up, marshal troops*. Tactics, etc.

χωρίς, adv.: *apart*; prep. with gen.: *apart from*.

ὥδε, adv. (cp. ὅδε): *thus, as follows*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

382. I. 1. πρῶτον<sup>1</sup> γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον<sup>1</sup> οἱ θεῶν ὄρκοι<sup>2</sup> κωλύουσιν ἡμᾶς πολεμίους εἶναι<sup>3</sup> ἀλλήλοις. 2. ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλήν οὐκ ἤσθάνετο. 3. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτῆν. 4. Κύρος

<sup>1</sup> § 284.

<sup>2</sup> oaths by the gods.

<sup>3</sup> hinder us from being, etc.

re  
i).

in

m

id

re-  
):

ó:

er.  
al-

ix  
e).  
ph.  
c.  
ith

us.

24<sup>2</sup>

rré

ro.

nos

—



FIG. 21. — Monument of Dexileos, an Athenian Knight (ἵππεύς).

δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσ-ήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετ-επέμψατο τὸν Σύνευσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν. 5. Κλέαρχος δὲ συν-ήγαγεν ἐκκλησιᾶν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. 6. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συν-αγαγὼν τοὺς θ<sup>1</sup> ἑαυτοῦ στρατιωτῆς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων<sup>2</sup> τὸν βουλόμενον,<sup>3</sup> ἔλεξεν ὧδε. 7. αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἤδη ἔταξεν. 8. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἀπ-ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος. 9. Ὀρόντᾶς δὲ νομίσᾶς ἐτοιμοὺς εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾳ. 10. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντᾶς ᾤετο τὸν ἄνδρα πιστόν οἱ εἶναι. 11. ἤξω δ' αὐτὸς ἐπὶ τὴν ἑμαυτοῦ ἀρχήν. 12. τότε ἔμαθες τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν. 13. ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ. 14. Μένων συν-έλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων.

II. 1. Cyrus commanded each general to draw up his own men. 2. Clearchus wished his own soldiers to proceed first.<sup>4</sup> 3. The king's wife rode past in her own carriage.

<sup>1</sup> For τ' = τε (§ 31).

<sup>2</sup> § 179.

<sup>3</sup> § 212.

<sup>4</sup> Put *first* in pred. position.

## XXXIX

THE PASSIVE VOICE OF Ω-VERBS. FIRST AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM. EUPHONIC LAWS OF MUTES BEFORE MUTES. DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES IN -εῖς. DEPONENT PASSIVES. AGENT EXPRESSED BY ὑπό AND GENITIVE. CONSTRUCTION AFTER PASSIVE OF λέγω *say*

383. The present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses are the same in form as the corresponding tenses of the middle voice. The perfect tenses will be studied later (§§ 452 ff.). Only the aorist passive and the future passive have forms distinct from the middle. The sign of the first aorist passive and of the first future passive is  $\theta\eta$  or  $\theta\epsilon$ . This sign is added to the verb theme before the usual suffixes.

*first  
Aorist  
future*

## THE FIRST AORIST PASSIVE

384. The aorist passive uses the active personal endings throughout. In the aorist indicative, imperative, and infinitive the endings are added directly to the passive sign  $\theta\eta$ .<sup>1</sup> In the other moods  $\theta\epsilon$  is the form of the passive sign. The aorist subjunctive, as usual, has the long thematic vowel  $\omega/\eta$  as its mood sign, before which  $\epsilon$  (of  $\theta\epsilon$ ) is absorbed. The aorist optative has the mood sign  $\iota\eta$  (after  $\theta\epsilon$ ) in the singular, but regularly (in classical Greek) the short mood sign  $\iota$  in the dual and plural. As before noted (§ 252), the sign in the third person plural is  $\iota\epsilon$ .

---

<sup>1</sup>  $\theta\epsilon$  in 3 pl. imperative.

385. FIRST AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	ἔλυθ-ην I was loosed		ἔλυθ-η-μεν
2.	ἔλυθ-ης	ἔλυθ-η-τον	ἔλυθ-η-τε
3.	ἔλυθ-η	ἔλυθ-η-την	ἔλυθ-η-σαν
Subjv. 1.	λυθῶ [for λυθέ-ω]		λυθῶ-μεν
2.	λυθῆς [for λυθέ-ης]	λυθ-η-τον	λυθ-η-τε
3.	λυθῆ [for λυθέ-η]	λυθ-η-σαν	λυθῶ-σι (ν)
Opt. 1.	λυθείη-ν		λυθεί-μεν
2.	λυθείη-ς	λυθεί-τον	λυθεί-τε
3.	λυθείη	λυθεί-την	λυθείε-ν
			<del>λυθείη-μεν</del>
			<del>λυθείη-τε</del>
			<del>λυθείη-σαν</del>
			<del>λυθ-η-τε</del>
			<del>λυθ-ε-ντων</del>
Imv. 2.	λύθ-η-τι <sup>1</sup>	λύθ-η-τον	
3.	λυθ-η-τω	λυθ-η-των	
Inf.	λυθ-η-ναι <sup>2</sup>		
Partic.	λυθείς, εἶσα, ἐν		

386. The first aorist passive formation ἔλυθ-ην is typical of all vowel themes. But mute themes suffer euphonic changes before the passive suffix θη (θε).

## MUTES BEFORE MUTES

387. 1. A labial mute (π β φ) or a palatal mute (κ γ χ) before a lingual mute (τ δ θ) must be of the same order (§ 28); i.e. smooth before smooth, middle before middle, and rough before rough. The class of the mute remains unchanged:

$$\pi + \theta = \phi\theta$$

$$\beta + \theta = \phi\theta$$

$$\kappa + \theta = \chi\theta$$

$$\gamma + \theta = \chi\theta$$

$$\pi + \tau = \pi\tau$$

$$\gamma + \tau = \kappa\tau$$

<sup>1</sup> For λυθ-η-τι: -θι, the imv. suffix, is changed to τ (smooth) to avoid repetition of the rough mute θ at the beginning of successive syllables.

<sup>2</sup> All infinitives in -ναι are accented on the penult.

ἐπεμπ-θην (I aor. pass. of πέμπω) becomes ἐπέμφθην.

ἐλειπ-θην (λείπω) becomes ἐλείφθην.

ἐληβ-θην (λαμβάνω, themes λαβ- and ληβ-) becomes ἐλήφθην.

ἐφυ-λακ-θην (φυλάττω, theme φυλακ-) becomes ἐφύ-λάχθην.

ἐλεγ-θην (λέγω say) becomes ἐλέχθην.

ἐπραῖ-θην (πράττω, theme प्राγ-) becomes ἐπράχθην.

ἐταγ-θην (τάττω, theme ταγ-) becomes ἐτάχθην.

2. A lingual mute (τ δ θ) before another lingual mute is changed to *sigma*.

ἐπειθ-θην (I aor. pass. of πείθω) becomes ἐπέισθην.

ἤρπαδ-θην (ἀρπάζω, theme ἀρπαδ-) becomes ἤρπασθην.

#### DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES IN -εις, -είσα, -έν

λυθείς (STEM λυθεντ-) *having been loosed*, I AOR. PASS. PARTIC.  
OF ΛΥΩ

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
388. Sing. N. V.	<del>λυθείς</del>	<del>λυθείσα</del>	<del>λυθέν</del>
	λυθέντος	λυθείσης	λυθέντος
	λυθέντι	λυθείση	λυθέντι
	A. λυθέντα	λυθείσαν	λυθέν
Dual N. A. V.	<del>λυθείσα</del>	<del>λυθείσῃ</del>	<del>λυθείσε</del>
	λυθέντων	λυθείσων	λυθέντων
Plur. N. V.	λυθέντες	λυθείσαι	λυθέντα
	λυθέντων	λυθεισῶν	λυθέντων
	λυθείσι(ν)	λυθείσαις	λυθείσι(ν)
	λυθέντας	λυθείσας	λυθέντα

a. In the nominative singular masculine and dative plural masculine and neuter, ε preceding ντ is lengthened to ει in compensation for the loss of ντ before σ (cp. § 200).

389. Certain deponent verbs (§ 316) lack the aorist middle, and have, instead, the aorist passive in the depo-

nent use. For this reason they are commonly called deponent passive verbs. Thus βούλομαι, aor. ἐβουλήθην *I wished*; δια-λέγομαι, aor. δι-ελέχθην *I conversed*; οἶομαι, aor. ᾤθην *I thought*; πορεύομαι, aor. ἐπορεύθην *I proceeded*.

Take care never to write the aorist of πορεύομαι as ἐπορευσάμην. The future is πορεύσομαι (middle).

**390.** The agent, with a passive verb, is expressed by ὑπό ὃν with the genitive.

ὑπό

**391.** The passive of λέγω *say* is followed by the infinitive in indirect discourse (cp. § 110). This passive has both a *personal* and an *impersonal* use:

ἐλέγετο ἐλθεῖν he was said to have come (personal use);

ἐλέγετο αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν it was said that he came (impersonal use);

ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Σύννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων and Syennesis, too, was said to be on the heights.

## 392.

## VOCABULARY XXXIX

ἀν-άγω (ἀνά + ἄγω): *lead up*;  
lead "up" from the coast.

ἀν-οδος, ου, ἡ (ἀνά + ὁδός): *road up, way up*.

τὸ Ἑλληνικόν (cp. Ἑλληνικός, Vocabulary XXVII): *the Greek force* (neut. subst.).

κατα-πέμπω (cp. πέμπω): *send down*, especially to the sea.

Λυδία, ἄς, ἡ; *Lydia*, a district of Western Asia Minor, of which Sardis was the chief city.

νόμος, ου, ὁ: *custom, law*. Deuteronomy (δέυτερος second).

ὀκτά, indecl.: *eight*. Cp. Lat. octō.

ὅπως, rel. adv.: *how, in what way* (cp. Vocabulary XXII).

πάνυ, adv. (cp. πᾶς): *wholly, altogether, very*.

πειθω, in mid. and pass.: *obey* (be persuaded or convinced by somebody), with dat. Cp. Vocabulary I.

πυνθάνομαι (theme πυνθ-, pres. tense suffix αν%, cp. λαμβάνω, τυγχάνω, § 218), fut. πύσομαι (for πυνθ-, a longer form of the theme, + σομαι), 2 aor. ἐπυνθόμην: *inquire, ask; learn, perceive*.

τιμή, ἡς, ἡ: *honor*.

τοι-γαρ-οὖν: *therefore* (a strong particle of inference).

ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὁ: *servant, helper, supporter*.



ὑπό (also ὑπ before smooth breathing, and ὑφ' before rough breathing, § 31), prep.: with GEN. *from under, by* (with pass. verb), *because of, from*; with DAT. *under, beneath* (with

verbs of rest); with ACC. *under* (with verbs of motion). *Hypodermic* (δέρμα *skin*), etc.  
 χρόνος, ου, ὁ: *time*. *Chrono-meter* (μέτρον *measure*), *chrono-logy* (λόγος *account*).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

393. Give the meaning of the following passive forms :  
 λείπεται, ἐλείποντο, τάττονται, λυθῆναι, λέγεται, λεγόμενος, ἤγγετο, ἀρπάζεται, πεμπόμενος, κολάζονται, ἄρχεσθαι.

394. I. 1. ὁ ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, ἐν μεγάλῃ τῆμῃ ἔσεσθε. 2. εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκητὴν εἰσ-ήχθη. 3. Κῦρος δ' οὐποτε ἐξ-ήχθη<sup>1</sup> διώκειν.<sup>2</sup> 4. πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατ-ελείφθησαν. 5. κατ-επέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατραπίης<sup>3</sup> Λυδίας. 6. τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρεταὶ Κῦρω ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι. 7. οὕτως οὖν ἠβροίσθη Κῦρω τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. 8. ταῦτα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη. 9. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνας, ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς ἦν εἰς<sup>4</sup> μάχην, οὕτω ταχθῆναι. 10. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας ὀκτώ. 11. ὁ δὲ Ξειῆς ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα<sup>5</sup> πορευθεῖν. 12. πρὸς<sup>6</sup> ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι πολὺν χρόνον<sup>7</sup> δια-λεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις ἀπ-ήλθον. 13. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀν-ήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέᾳ. 14. πορευθεῖς δὲ τὰ πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη<sup>8</sup> ἰδεῖν.

<sup>1</sup> From ἐξ-άγω in sense of *induce*.

<sup>2</sup> Complementary infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> as *satrap*, in apposition to the subject, § 53. j.

<sup>4</sup> *for*.

<sup>5</sup> *most successfully*.

<sup>6</sup> *with reference to*.

<sup>7</sup> § 142.

<sup>8</sup> § 156. i. a.

II. 1. Cyrus ordered the soldiers to be marshaled for<sup>1</sup> battle. 2. The general inquired in what way he should travel,<sup>2</sup> in order to reach home safely.<sup>3</sup> 3. The very<sup>4</sup> timbers had been plundered<sup>5</sup> from<sup>6</sup> the houses by the king's army.

## XL

THE FIRST FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM. PRESENT GENERAL CONDITIONS. CONDITIONAL RELATIVE PROTASIS IN PRESENT TIME. GENITIVE ABSOLUTE. GENITIVE OF VALUE. DATIVE OF CAUSE

395. The first future passive indicative is formed from the verb theme as it appears in the first aorist passive, plus the first passive suffix  $\theta\eta$  (§ 383), plus the future tense sign  $\sigma\%$ , plus the passive personal endings, which are the same as the middle. The optative has its usual mood sign.

Observe that the first future passive is exactly like the future middle with the insertion of  $\theta\eta$  before the future tense sign.

396. FIRST FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM OF  $\lambda\theta\omega$ 

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$ <i>I shall be loosed</i>		$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\acute{\omicron}\text{-}\mu\epsilon\theta\alpha$
2.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\eta\ \text{or}\ \sigma\epsilon\iota$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\epsilon\text{-}\sigma\theta\omicron\nu$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\epsilon\text{-}\sigma\theta\epsilon$
3.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\epsilon\text{-}\sigma\alpha\iota$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\epsilon\text{-}\sigma\theta\omicron\nu$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\text{-}\nu\tau\alpha\iota$
Opt. 1.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\mu\eta\nu$		$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\mu\epsilon\theta\alpha$
2.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\omicron$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\sigma\theta\omicron\nu$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\sigma\theta\epsilon$
3.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\tau\omicron$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\sigma\theta\eta\nu$	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\omicron\iota\text{-}\nu\tau\omicron$
Inf.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\epsilon\text{-}\sigma\theta\alpha\iota$		
Partic.	$\lambda\upsilon\text{-}\theta\eta\text{-}\sigma\acute{\omicron}\text{-}\mu\epsilon\nu\omicron\varsigma, \eta, \omicron\nu$		

<sup>1</sup> εἰς.<sup>2</sup> Cp. I. II.<sup>3</sup> Say *be saved homeward*.<sup>4</sup> Say *the timbers themselves*, § 123. I.<sup>5</sup> Use aor. pass. <sup>6</sup> ἀπό.

397. Like *λυθήσομαι* are inflected: *πεμφθήσομαι* (*πέμπω*), *πεισθήσομαι* (*πείθω*), *λειφθήσομαι* (*λείπω*), *ἀχθήσομαι* (*ἄγω*), *ἄρπασθήσομαι* (*ἄρπάζω*); *ληφθήσομαι* (*λαμβάνω*); *πᾶχθήσομαι* (*πράττω*); *σωθήσομαι* (*σώζω*).

For the euphonic changes in the mutes before the passive suffix *θη* compare the first aorist passive and § 387.

#### GENERAL CONDITIONS

398. The conditions studied thus far have been particular; that is, they have referred to definite and usually single acts. But when the *if* clause (protasis) refers to a repeated act, or to any one of a number of acts, the condition is called *general*.

Thus *if he says this, he speaks the truth* is a particular condition in present time, for in the protasis a single present act is indicated: *εἰ ταῦτα λέγει, ἀληθῆ λέγει* (cp. § 106). But *if ever he says anything* (or *whenever he says anything*), *he speaks the truth* is a general condition in present time, for the protasis and apodosis indicate a repeated act or any one of a number of acts.

While the Greek makes no distinction between particular and general conditions in future time, so far as form is concerned, it does make a most important distinction between such conditions in present time and in past time.

399. **Present general conditions.** — *εἰάν* (or *ἤν* or *ἄν*) introduces the subjunctive in the protasis of a present general condition; the apodosis has the present indicative or its equivalent to express continued or repeated action in present time. This form of condition differs from the more vivid future (§ 241) in the apodosis only.

*εἰάν τι λέγῃ, ἀληθῆ λέγει* if ever he says anything, he speaks the truth.

**400. The conditional relative protasis in present time. —**

In place of *ἐάν* (or *ἤν* or *ἄν*) with the subjunctive the protasis of a present general condition is often introduced by a relative or temporal word plus *ἄν*, exactly like the protasis of a more vivid future condition (§ 248):

*ὅταν τι λέγῃ, ἀληθῆ λέγει* whenever he says anything, he speaks the truth;

*ἅ τινα ἂν λέγῃ, ἀληθῆ λέγει* whatever he says, he speaks the truth.

**401. ~~Genitive absolute.~~** A circumstantial participle (generally present or aorist) and its subject may stand together in the genitive case in a construction grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. This construction corresponds to the Latin *ablative absolute*.

*Gen absolute*

*ἐξ-ῆλανον τῶν πολεμίων οὐ κωλύόντων* they marched forth without hindrance from the enemy (*lit.* the enemy not hindering).

*a.* The genitive absolute may express any of the relations (time, cause, etc.) of the circumstantial participle.

*b.* *ὡς* sometimes accompanies the participle in the genitive absolute. For its force compare § 213. *a.*

*Κῦρος συν-έλεξε στρατεύμα, ὡς ἐπι-βουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρους ταῖς πόλεσιν* Cyrus collected an army on the ground that Tissaphernes was plotting against his cities (*cause*).

**402. The genitive is used to denote value or price. This construction is regular with *ἄξιος*.**

*φίλος πολλοῦ ἄξιος* a friend worth much (*i.e.* valuable).

**403. The instrumental dative may denote cause:**

*ἀνάγκη λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια* from necessity (on account of necessity) we take provisions.

## 404.

## VOCABULARY XL

ἀκων, ουσια, ον: *unwilling*. Declined like λῦον (cp. § 206. a). Used like a partic. in the gen. abs. const.

κίνδυνος, ου, ό: *danger*. κινδυνός ἐστι(ν): *there is danger*. Cp. κινδυνεύω.

ὅπη, rel. adv.: *where, wherever; how, in what way*. Cp. πη Vocabulary XVII.

στρατοπεδεύω (στρατόπεδον) and mid. dep. στρατοπεδεύομαι, aor. ἐστρατοπεδευσάμην: *encamp*. φίλια, ἄς, ή (φίλος): *friendship*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

405. I. 1. οὗτος συλ-ληφθήσεται, εἰ παῖσει<sup>1</sup> τὸν στρατώτην. 2. καὶ ἐνόμισαν συλ-ληφθήσεσθαι. 3. οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν<sup>2</sup> ὅστις<sup>3</sup> ἀνθρώπων σωθήσεται. 4. παρ-ἦν δὲ ὁ σατράπης βουλόμενος μαθεῖν τί πρᾶχθήσεται. 5. ἀγαθοὶ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ πράττοντες<sup>4</sup> ὅτι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. 6. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος φίλος ἐστὶν ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾗ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾗ. 7. ὅποι δ' ἂν ἐλθόντες ἀγορὰν μὴ ἔχωμεν, ἀνάγκη λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 8. οὐ κολασθήσεται ὑπὸ Κῦρου διὰ φιλιᾶν. 9. τοῦτο τὸ πεδίου κάλλιστον τρέχειν,<sup>5</sup> ὅπου ἂν τις βούληται. 10. νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξ-εστιν πορεύεσθαι ὅπη ἂν ἔλησθε. 11. οὐκ ἂν βουλοίμην ἀπ-ελθεῖν Κῦρου ἄκοντος. 12. εἰς Πισιδᾶς Κῦρος ἐβούλετο στρατεῦεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα<sup>6</sup> παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα. 13. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς χιῶν πολλή. 14. κίνδυνος οὖν ἐστὶν, ἣν πορεύησθε ἐπὶ<sup>7</sup> τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

<sup>1</sup> § 242.<sup>2</sup> § 102.<sup>3</sup> *there is not who = nobody*.<sup>4</sup> § 212.<sup>5</sup> *for running*, § 333.<sup>6</sup> *πράγματα παρ-έχω: cause trouble*.<sup>7</sup> *after*.

II. 1. They thought they should be abandoned by the other soldiers. 2. They will be led up to the king. 3. If ever the barbarians do not provide a market, we take provisions ourselves, from necessity. 4. Wherever the Greeks go, they plunder the land.

## XLI

## THE SECOND AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM. DATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

406. Some verbs have aorists and futures in the passive voice formed without the letter  $\theta$  of the first passive suffix (§ 383). Otherwise they are like the first aorist and the first future passive, and do not usually differ in meaning. Mute themes naturally suffer no euphonic change before the suffix, which is  $\eta$  (or  $\epsilon$ ).  $\lambdaύω$  has no second aorist or second future passive.

## THE SECOND AORIST PASSIVE

407. The second aorist passive adds the second passive sign  $\eta$  to the theme in the indicative, imperative,<sup>1</sup> and infinitive; and the second passive sign  $\epsilon$  to the theme in other moods. The inflection is like the first aorist.

408. SECOND AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM OF  $\betaλάπτω$  (THEME  $\betaλαβ-$ ) *hurt*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	$\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta\nu$ <i>I was hurt</i>		$\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta\mu\epsilon\nu$
2.	$\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta\varsigma$	$\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta\tau\omicron\nu$	$\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta\tau\epsilon$
3.	$\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta$	$\epsilon\beta\lambda\alpha\beta\acute{\eta}\tau\eta\nu$	$\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta\sigma\alpha\nu$

<sup>1</sup> Except the 3 pl. *imv.*, which has  $\epsilon$ .

	SING.		DUAL		PLUR.
Subjv. 1.	βλαβ-ῶ [for βλαβ-έ-ω]				βλαβ-ῶ-μεν
2.	βλαβ-ῆς etc.		βλαβ-ῆ-τον		βλαβ-ῆ-τε
3.	βλαβ-ῆ		βλαβ-ῆ-τον		βλαβ-ῶ-σι(ν)
Opt. 1.	βλαβ-είη-ν				βλαβ-εί-μεν
2.	βλαβ-είη-ς		βλαβ-εί-τον		βλαβ-εί-τε
3.	βλαβ-είη		βλαβ-εί-την		βλαβ-εί-ν
		Less common	{ 1. βλαβ-είη-τον 2. βλαβ-είη-την		βλαβ-είη-μεν βλαβ-είη-τε βλαβ-είη-σαν
Imv. 2.	βλάβ-η-θι		βλάβ-η-τον		βλάβ-η-τε
3.	βλαβ-ή-τω		βλαβ-ή-των		βλαβ-έ-ντων
Inf.	βλαβ-ῆ-ναι				
Partic.	βλαβ-είς, είσα, έν <sup>1</sup>				

409. Similarly are inflected :

συν-ε-λέγ-η-ν) (σουλ-λέγω collect)	έ-κόπ-η-ν (κόπτω cut <sup>8</sup> )
έ-τράπ-η-ν <sup>2</sup> (τρέπω turn)	έ-γράφ-η-ν (γράφω write)
έ-τράφ-η-ν (τρέφω nourish)	έ-στράφ-η-ν <sup>2</sup> (στρέφω turn)

410. The instrumental dative (§ 141) is used to denote the **degree of difference** (corresponding to the Latin ablative):

πέντε ἡμέραις πρότερον earlier by five days, five days before ;  
 πολλῶ ὕστερον much later (*lit.* later by much).

a. But πολύ (adv. acc., § 284) is more common than the dative πολλῶ in this sense.

<sup>1</sup> For the declension cp. λυθείς, § 388.

<sup>2</sup> Used commonly in intr. or mid. sense: *turned*.

<sup>8</sup> κόπτω *cut* is formed by adding τ% to the theme κοπ- in the pres. system. The τ does not appear outside of the pres. system. The fut. is κόψω, aor. ἔκοψα, 2 aor. pass. ἐκόπην.

## 411.

## VOCABULARY XLI

ἀνα-στρέφω: *turn back, turn about* (intr.); PASS. in mid. sense, *turn about, face about, rally.*

ἀπο-κόπτω: *cut off.* See § 409.

βλάπτω (theme βλαβ-),<sup>1</sup> fut.

βλάψω, aor. ἔβλαψα, 1 aor.

pass. ἐβλάφθην, 2 aor. pass.

ἐβλάβην: *hurt, harm.*

δια-κόπτω: *cut through, cut in pieces, break through.* See § 409.

ἐκ-πλήττω (πλήττω *strike*, theme

πληγ- or πλαγ-, πλήξω, ἐπληξα,

2 aor. pass. ἐπλήγην), with 2 aor.

pass. ἐξ-επλάγην: *strike out of one's wits, terrify utterly, bewilder.*

ἔνδον, adv.: *within.* οἱ ἔνδον:

*those within.*

ἔξω, adv.: *without, outside,* sometimes with gen. οἱ ἔξω: *those without.*

ἔφ-οδος, ου, ἡ (ἐπί + ὁδός): *way to, approach.*

κατα-κόπτω: *cut down.* See § 409.

Κιλιεῖ, ικος, ὁ: *Cilician, a native of Cilicia.*

στρέφω (themes στρεφ-, στραφ-),

στρήψω, ἱστρεψα, 2 aor. pass.

(intr.) ἑστράφην: *turn; wheel*

*about.* Cp. τρίπω.

τρέφω (themes τρεφ-, τραφ-, for

θρεφ-, etc.), fut. θρέψω, aor.

ἔθρεψα, 2 aor. pass. ἐτρέφην:

*feed, support, rear.*

ἕσπερ, rel. adv.: *just as, as, as if,*

*like.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

412. I. 1. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλ-λεγέντες ἐβουλευόντο.  
2. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐτράπησαν εἰς φυγήν. 3. οὐκ ἂν  
σωθεῖμεν, εἰ δια-κοπεῖη ἡμῶν ἡ φάλαγξ. 4. ἐβλάβητε  
ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων. 5. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες στραφέντες  
παρ-εσκευάζοντο ὡς δεξόμενοι βασιλεῆ. 6. οὐ πολλῶ  
δὲ ὕστερον οἱ τ' ἔνδον συν-ελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατ-  
εκόπησαν. 7. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης λόφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ  
ἀν-εστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλεῆ. 8. ἐξ-επλάγη δὲ  
βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ<sup>2</sup> τοῦ στρατεύματος. 9. καὶ λέγει  
ὡς ἀπ-εκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου. 10. ἐν ταύταις ταῖς  
πόλεσιν ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε. 11. ἀλλ' ἐτρά-

<sup>1</sup> Cp. κόπτω (theme κοπ-) for the formation of the pres. stem.

<sup>2</sup> § 403.



φησαν τοῖς προβάτοις<sup>1</sup> ἃ ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων ἔλαβον.  
 12. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὗτοι ἔφυγον, ἐτράπησαν δὴ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι.  
 13. ἔφασαν τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπήναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικῶν. 14. ἔστι δ' ὅστις<sup>2</sup> καταλήφθη ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ὥσπερ ὑπὸ τῶν ἰππέων ἐκπλαγείς.

II. 1. The Greeks rallied, and received<sup>3</sup> (the attack of)<sup>4</sup> the enemy. 2. We admire the cities in which the Greeks were born and reared. 3. The Cilician woman came to these cities five days before<sup>5</sup> Cyrus.<sup>6</sup>

---

## XLII

THE SECOND FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM. PAST GENERAL CONDITIONS. CONDITIONAL RELATIVE PROTASIS IN PAST TIME. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE IN PROTASIS OF PAST GENERAL RELATIVE CONDITION

413. Verbs that have a second aorist passive, like ἐβλάβην, ἐκόπην, συν-ελέγην, and ἐγράφην, usually form a second future passive by adding the future suffix σ% and the personal endings of the middle voice to the second passive stem, which consists of the theme plus η. The inflection is like that of the first future passive, and the meanings are identical.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dat. of means, § 141.

<sup>2</sup> *there is who* = *somebody*.

<sup>3</sup> The aor. of δέχομαι is ἰδεξάμην.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>5</sup> Use the feminine προτέρᾱ in agreement with the subject.

<sup>6</sup> § 355.

**414. SECOND FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM OF βλέπω**  
(THEME βλαβ-) *hurt*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	βλαβ-ή-σο-μαι <i>I shall be hurt</i>		βλαβ-η-σό-μεθα
2.	βλαβ-ή-ση or -σει	βλαβ-ή-σι-σθον	βλαβ-ή-σι-σθε
3.	βλαβ-ή-σι-ται	βλαβ-ή-σι-σθον	βλαβ-ή-σο-νται
Opt. 1.	βλαβ-η-σοί-μην		βλαβ-η-σοί-μεθο
2.	βλαβ-ή-σοι-ο	βλαβ-ή-σοι-σθον	βλαβ-ή-σοι-σθε
3.	βλαβ-ή-σοι-το	βλαβ-η-σοί-σθην	βλαβ-ή-σοι-ντο
Inf.	βλαβ-ή-σι-σθαι		
Partic.	βλαβ-η-σό-μενος, η, ον		

**415.** Similarly are inflected :

γραφ-ή-σο-μαι, 2 fut. pass. of γράφω *write*.

συλ-λεγ-ή-σο-μαι, 2 fut. pass. of συλλέγω *collect*.

**416. Past general conditions.** — *εἰ* introduces the optative in the protasis of a past general condition; the apodosis has the imperfect indicative (or an equivalent) to express repeated action in past time.

This form of condition differs from the less vivid future (§ 267) in the apodosis only :

*εἰ τι λέγοι, ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν* if he [ever] said anything, he [always] spoke the truth.

**417. The conditional relative protasis in past time.** — In place of *εἰ* with the optative, the protasis of a past general condition is often introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb (cp. § 400):

*ὅποτε τι λέγοι, ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν* whenever he said anything, he spoke the truth ;

*ἃ τινα λέγοι, ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν* whatever he said [at any time], he spoke the truth.

γράφω  
συλλέγω

418. Not uncommonly the **imperfect indicative** introduced by a *relative* is used for the optative in the protasis of a past general condition. The following sentence shows both uses combined :

ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα (where βουλόμεθα might also be used), ἣν μὲν χώρᾶν ἐθέλομεν δι-αρπάζοντες, ἣν δ' ἐθέλομεν κάοντες we proceeded through this country whither-soever we would, sacking whatever land we wished, and burning whatever we wished.

a. The negative of the protasis, as always, is μή.

## 419.

## VOCABULARY XLII

- ἀεί, adv.: *always, continually, in succession.*
- ἀπο-λείπω (cp. λείπω): *leave behind, desert, abandon.*
- γυμνάσιον (theme γυμναδ-), γυμνάσω, etc. (like ἀρπάξιον): *exercise.* Cp. γυμνήσις. *Gymnastic.*
- δεινός, ἡ, ὄν: *fearful, terrible, frightful; skillful.* τὸ δεινόν (subst.): *danger.*
- ἔπομαι (for στέπομαι), ἔψομαι, 2 aor. ἐσπόμην, impf. with irreg. aug. εἰσπόμην (cp. εἶχον): *follow, with dat. of association (§ 317).* Cp. Lat. *sequor.*
- θηρεύω, θηρεύσω, etc.: *hunt; catch (by hunting).* Cp. θηρίον.
- θηρίον, ον, τό: *wild beast.*
- κατ-άγω (cp. ἄγω), *lead down; bring a ship (especially a captured one) into harbor; restore exiles.*
- ὅσος, η, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: *as many as; how great, (pl.) how many.* Cp. ὅσος.
- ὅποτε, rel. adv.: *when, whenever, as often as; since.* Cp. ὅτε.
- παρ-έρχομαι (cp. ἔρχομαι), 2 aor. παρ-ἦλθον: *go by, go past.*
- πολλάκις, adv. (πολύς): *often.*
- σπεύδω (theme σπευδ-), σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα: *urge on, hasten.*
- τέκνον, ον, τό: *child.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

420. I. 1. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται πάντες συλ-λεγήσονται.  
2. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ἐπιστολῇ γραφήσεται τάδε. 3. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς τῷ ἄρχοντι τῆς κόμης ταύτης ἔλεξεν ὅτι

Σελίδες  
186

οὐ βλαβήσοιτο. 4. καὶ εἰ δέοι γέφυραν δια-βαίνειν, ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος, βουλόμενος δια-βαίνειν πρῶτος. 5. Κῦρος δὲ ἐθήρευε θηρία ἀφ' ἵππου,<sup>1</sup> ὅποτε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. 6. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπεν οἶνον πρὸς τοὺς φίλους πολλάκις, ὅποτε πάνυ ἠδὺν λάβοι. 7. σταθμούς δὲ πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὅποτε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο ἐλθεῖν ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. 8. ἐλάμβανε δὲ ὃ τι βούλοιτο. 9. ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν φίλων ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ αὐτὸν ἐλάμβανεν. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρ-έλλοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνες, οἱ βάρβαροι εἶποντο αὐτοῖς. 11. τοιγαροῦν πολλοὶ ἤθελον κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἶοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι. 12. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐλάμβανον, ὅπου τις αὐτοῖς ἐπι-τυγχάνοι. 13. ὅποσα λαμβάνοι πλοῖα, κατ-ἤγεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 14. ἀπ-έλειπον τὸν στρατηγὸν πάντες ὅσοι συνεπορεύοντο, ὅτε<sup>2</sup> ἔξω<sup>3</sup> τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιτο.

II. 1. He will be hurt, if he goes<sup>4</sup> into this danger.  
2. Whenever they had to cross a river, all hastened.  
3. Cyrus used to hunt wild animals on horseback whenever he went to the mountains.

<sup>1</sup> from horseback = on horseback, the attention being directed away from the horse while a man is hunting.

<sup>2</sup> whenever.

<sup>3</sup> out of.

<sup>4</sup> Use the proper form of πορεύομαι.

ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος  
et dicitur f...

δεινός

σπεύσω  
σπεύτω

ἔσπευδεν

ειπε αν  
μασττι

## XLIII

## NUMERALS. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS. ARTICLE WITH "ROUND" NUMBERS. EMPHATIC NEGATIONS

421. Commit to memory the numerals from 1 to 21 (inclusive); the others are to be memorized as they are needed. Some, as *ἐκατόν* and *χίλιοι*, have already occurred in the special vocabularies.

1	εἷς, μία, ἓν		
2	δύο		
3	τρεῖς, τρία		
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα		
5	πέντε		
6	ἕξ		
7	ἑπτὰ		
8	ὀκτώ		
9	ἐννέα		
10	δέκα		
11	ἑνδεκά	εὐ δέκα	
12	δώδεκα		
13	τρεῖς (τρία) καὶ δέκα ἢ τρισκαίδεκα		
14	τέτταρες καὶ δέκα ἢ τετταρεσκαίδεκα		
15	πεντεκαίδεκα		
16	ἑκκαίδεκα		
17	ἑπτακαίδεκα		
18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα		
		εἴκοσι	19 ἑννεκαίδεκα
			20 εἴκοσι (ν)
			21 εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι (ν) ἢ εἴκοσι (καὶ) εἷς
			30 τριάκοντα
			40 τετραράκοντα
			50 πενήκοντα
			60 ἑξήκοντα
			70 ἑβδομήκοντα
			80 ὀγδοήκοντα
			90 ἑννήκοντα
			100 ἑκατόν
			200 διακόσιοι, αἰ, α
			300 τριακόσιοι, αἰ, α
			400 τετρακόσιοι, αἰ, α
			500 πεντακόσιοι, αἰ, α
			600 ἑξακόσιοι, αἰ, α
			700 ἑπτακόσιοι, αἰ, α
			800 ὀκτακόσιοι, αἰ, α
			900 ἑνακόσιοι, αἰ, α

1,000 χίλιοι, αἰ, α

2,000 δισχίλιοι, αἰ, α (δὶς twice)

3,000 τρισχίλιοι, αἰ, α (τρὶς three times)

4,000 τετρακισχίλιοι, αἰ, α (τετράκις four times)

5,000 πεντακισχίλιοι, αἰ, α (πεντάκις five times)

6,000 ἑξακισχίλιοι, αἰ, α (ἑξάκις six times)

7,000 ἑπτακισχίλιοι, αἰ, α (ἑπτάκις seven times)

- 8,000 ὀκτακισχίλιοι, αι, α (ὀκτάκις *eight times*)  
 9,000 ἐνακισχίλιοι, αι, α (ἐνάκις *nine times*)  
 10,000 μύριοι, αι, α, or μυριάς (gen. ἄδος) *myriad*  
 20,000 δισμύριοι, αι, α, or δύο μυριάδες (gen. -ων)  
 30,000 τρισμύριοι, αι, α, or τρεῖς μυριάδες  
 etc.

422.

DECLENSION OF εἷς *one*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	<u>εἷς</u>	<u>μία</u>	<u>ἓν</u>
G.	ἑνός	<u>μιάς</u>	<u>ἑνός</u>
D.	ἐνί	μιά	ἐνί
A.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἓν

423. δύο *two* sometimes is declined :

N. A. δύο

G. D. δυοῖν

a. Often it is used as indeclinable.

424. DECLENSION OF τρεῖς  
*three*

MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
N. τρεῖς	τρία
G. τριῶν	
D. τρισί(ν)	
A. τρεῖς	τρία

425. DECLENSION OF τέτταρες  
*four*

MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
τέτταρες	τέτταρα
	τεττάρων
	τέτταρσι(ν)
τέτταρες	τέτταρα

426.

DECLENSION OF οὐδείς *nobody*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.
Sing. N.	<u>οὐδείς</u>	<u>οὐδεμία</u>	<u>οὐδέν</u> <i>nothing</i>	Plur. N.	οὐδένας
G.	<u>οὐδενός</u>	<u>οὐδεμίας</u>	<u>οὐδενός</u>	G.	οὐδένων
D.	<u>οὐδενί</u>	<u>οὐδεμιά</u>	<u>οὐδενί</u>	D.	οὐδέσι(ν)
A.	<u>οὐδένα</u>	<u>οὐδεμίαν</u>	<u>οὐδέν</u>	A.	οὐδένας

a. μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, *nobody, nothing*, is similarly declined. μηδείς is used wherever μή is the appropriate negative.

427. The article often accompanies "round" numbers. It is not to be translated:

ἄμφι τοὺς ἑκατόν about one hundred.

428. **Emphatic negations.** — If a simple or a compound negative is followed by one or several *compound* negatives in the same clause, the negation is made more emphatic. The negatives must be of the same sort (*i.e.* all οὐ and its compounds, or all μή and its compounds):

οὐδ' ἄλλος ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν nor did anybody else suffer any injury.

429.

VOCABULARY XLIII

Numerals are not repeated (from § 421) in this Vocabulary and the following vocabularies.

δῶρον, ου, τό: <i>gift</i> . Cp. Lat. <i>dōnum</i> .	οὐδ-εις, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν (οὐδέ + εις): <i>nobody, no one, no, nothing</i> .
μη-δέ: <i>and not, nor, not even</i> . Used like μή. Cp. οὐδέ.	Πᾶσιον, ὄνος, ὄ: <i>Pasion</i> . Σοφαινετος, ου, ὄ: <i>Sophaenetus</i> .
μηδ-εις, μηδε-μία, μηδ-έν: <i>nobody, no one, no, nothing</i> .	σύν-πᾶς, πᾶσα, παν (σύν + πᾶς): <i>all together, all, whole</i> . Cp. <u>δ-πᾶς</u> .
μή-τε . . . μή-τε: <i>neither . . . nor</i> . Used like μή. Cp. <u>οὔτε</u> . . . οὔτε.	συν-έρχομαι (cp. ἔρχομαι), 2 aor. Τ συν-ήλθον: <i>go or come together, assemble</i> .

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

430. 1. I. καὶ ἤγαγον αὐτοὺς ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν. 2. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀν-έβαιεν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος. 3. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε παρέσχε<sup>1</sup> Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. 4. καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ἔχων ὀπλίτᾶς χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θραῆκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότᾶς διακοσίους. 5. καὶ ἐγένοντο<sup>2</sup> οἱ σύμπαντες<sup>3</sup> ὀπλίται<sup>4</sup> μὲν μῆριοι καὶ χίλιοι,

<sup>1</sup> From παρ-έχω.

<sup>2</sup> amounted to.

<sup>3</sup> Subj.

<sup>4</sup> Pred. nom.

πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους. 6. καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ συν-ελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. 7. καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ Κλέαρχον παθεῖν ἔφασαν. 8. μηδὲ σὺ δια-λέγου<sup>1</sup> μηδενί, μήτε στρατηγῶ μήτε ἄλλῳ ἄρχοντι. 9. παρ' οὐδενὸς οὔτε δῶρα οὔτε μισθὸν δέχομαι. 10. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβῶν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις, ὀπλίτᾱς εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρ-ἦν ἔχων ὀπλίτᾱς μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὀπλίτᾱς ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὀπλίτᾱς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πᾶσιων δὲ τριᾶκοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτᾱς, τριᾶκοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο.

II. 1. The general arrived with three hundred hoplites and a thousand bowmen. 2. There were two thousand and five hundred peltasts, and about ten thousand light-armed troops of the barbarians. 3. Then the Greeks came to the Harpasus<sup>2</sup> river, which was<sup>3</sup> four plethra wide.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 309.

<sup>2</sup> Ἄρπασος, ου, ὄ.

<sup>3</sup> Say being.

<sup>4</sup> § 279.



## XLIV

THE FIRST PERFECT AND FIRST PLUPERFECT IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. REDUPLICATION. DECLENSION OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE. OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF *FEARING*. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE AFTER VERBS OF *BEGINNING*, ETC.; AFTER VERBS OF *PERCEPTION*. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**431.** The perfect active tense stem consists of the reduplicated theme, to which is added the perfect active tense suffix.

The first perfect active tense suffix is *κα* in the perfect indicative (which becomes *κε* in the third person singular). Its forms in the pluperfect indicative (*κε*) and elsewhere may best be learned by inspection of the paradigms.

**432.** Reduplication is a sign of all perfect tenses (including the pluperfect and future perfect) throughout the moods.

*a.* Verbs that begin with a single consonant reduplicate the theme by prefixing its initial consonant followed by *ε*:

*λέ-λυ-κα*, perfect active of *λύω*; *βέ-βη-κα*, perfect of *βαίνω* (theme *βα-* or *βη-*).

*b.* Verbs that begin with a rough mute prefix the smooth mute of the same class (§§ 27, 28) in reduplicating the theme:

*τέ-θη-κα*, perfect of *θύω*; *τέ-θη-κα*, perfect of *θηήσκω* (cp. § 137).

*c.* Verbs that begin with two or more consonants or a double consonant (§ 6) or the letter *ρ* have *syllabic*

augment (§ 77. 1) throughout the perfect in place of reduplication:

ἐ-στράτευ-κα, perfect of στρατεύω.

d. But verbs that begin with a mute and a liquid (§ 27) generally reduplicate in the regular way:

τέθνη-κα, perfect of θνήσκω.

e. Verbs that begin with a vowel (or diphthong) have the *temporal* augment (§ 77. 2) throughout the perfect in place of reduplication:

ἤρπα-κα, perfect of ἀρπάζω (theme ἀρπαθ-).

f. A lingual mute (τ δ θ) at the end of the theme is dropped before the perfect suffix κα:

ἤρπα-κα for ἤρπαθ-κα; πέπει-κα for πεπειθ-κα (from πείθω).

g. The accent can never recede back of the reduplication or augment (cp. § 131). Compound verbs are reduplicated, as they are augmented, after the prefix (§ 130):

δια-βέβηκα, perfect of δια-βαίνω.

433. The pluperfect, like the imperfect (§ 234), belongs only to the indicative mood. It has syllabic augment, too, in addition to reduplication, if the theme begins with a consonant:

ἐ-λε-λύ-κη, pluperfect active of λύω.

#### 434. PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF λύω

##### SING.

- Pf. Indic. 1. λέ-λυ-κα I have loosed  
 2. λέ-λυ-κα-ς you have loosed  
 3. λέ-λυ-κει(ν) he has loosed

##### DUAL

2. λε-λύ-κα-τον.  
 3. λε-λύ-κα-τον

λέλυκα

## PLUR.

1. λε-λύ-κα-μεν *we have loosed*
  2. λε-λύ-κα-τε *you have loosed*
  3. λε-λύ-κα-σι(ν)<sup>1</sup> *they have loosed*
- Inf. λε-λυ-κέ-ναι<sup>2</sup> *to have loosed*

Partic. λε-λυ-κός,<sup>3</sup> -κυία, -κός, *having loosed*

## SING.

- Plup. Indic. 1. ἐ-λε-λύ-κη *I had loosed*
2. ἐ-λε-λύ-κη-ς *you had loosed*
  3. ἐ-λε-λύ-κει(ν) *he had loosed*

## DUAL

2. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-τον
3. ἐ-λε-λυ-κέ-την

## PLUR.

1. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-μεν *we had loosed*
2. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-τε *you had loosed*
3. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-σαν *they had loosed*

## 435. DECLENSION OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	λελυκός <i>having loosed</i>	λελυκυία	λελυκόσ
G.	λελυκότος	λελυκυίας	λελυκότος
D.	λελυκότι	λελυκυίᾳ	λελυκότι
A.	λελυκότα	λελυκυίαν	λελυκόσ
Dual N. A. V.	λελυκότε	λελυκυίᾱ	λελυκότε
G. D.	λελυκότοιιν	λελυκυίαιν	λελυκότοιιν
Plur. N. V.	λελυκότες	λελυκυίαι	λελυκότα
G.	λελυκότων	λελυκυίων	λελυκότων
D.	λελυκόσι(ν)	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι(ν)
A.	λελυκότας	λελυκυίᾱς	λελυκότε

*a. Having loosed, having heard, etc., are more frequently expressed in Greek by the aorist than by the perfect participle.*

<sup>1</sup> For λε-λυ-κα-σι(ν).

<sup>2</sup> For accent see § 385, footnote 2.

<sup>3</sup> All perfect active participles, like second aorist active participles, are accented on the ultima.

436. Periphrastic forms of the perfect subjunctive and optative, made up of the perfect active participle and the proper forms of *εἶμι* (subjunctive, § 247; optative, § 265), are more common than the simple forms, which are purposely omitted from this lesson.

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Subjv. 1.	λελυκῶς ᾧ		λελυκότες ᾄμεν
2.	λελυκῶς ᾗς	λελυκότε ᾗτον	λελυκότες ᾗτε
3.	λελυκῶς ᾗ	λελυκότε ᾗτον	λελυκότες ᾧσι (ν)
Pf. Opt. 1.	λελυκῶς εἶην		λελυκότες εἶμεν
2.	λελυκῶς εἶης	λελυκότε εἶητον	λελυκότες εἶητε
3.	λελυκῶς εἶη	λελυκότε εἶητην	λελυκότες εἶησαν

a. The shorter forms *εἶπον*, *εἶμεν*, etc., also occur.

437. The perfect imperative active almost never occurs.

438. Object clauses after verbs of fearing. — After a verb of fearing in a primary tense (§ 39) *μή lest* introduces the subjunctive (present or aorist) to express the object of fear (provided this is future). *Lest not* is expressed by *μή οὐ*:

*δέδοικα μή κακῶς πράξωσιν* I fear lest they do (= fare) ill;

*δέδοικα μή οὐκ ἔχω* (pres. subjv.) *ἱκανοὺς φίλους* I fear lest I shall not have enough friends.

κακῶς  
πρᾶξις

a. After a secondary tense *μή lest* may introduce the optative (or subjunctive, cp. § 268):

*ἐδεδοίκη μή κακῶς πράξειαν* (or *πράξωσιν*) I feared lest they should fare ill.

439. The supplementary participle (§ 215) is used in agreement with the subject of verbs meaning *begin, continue, cease, be pleased*, etc.:

*ἤδομαι, ᾧ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου δικαίους λόγους* I am pleased, Clearchus, to hear just words from you.

ἤδομαι

**440.** The **supplementary participle** is used in agreement with the object of verbs of *perception* (of the mind or senses):

εἶδε Κλέαρχον ἐλαίνοντα he saw Clearchus riding.

**441.** **Supplementary participle in indirect discourse.** — In the use of § 440 the participle often represents a finite verb of the main clause of a quotation; and if so, the participle is said to be in the construction of indirect discourse. The tenses of the participle in indirect discourse are used in exactly the same way as the tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§§ 110. *a, b*; 156. 1; 277). That is, the present participle represents the present tense (and imperfect tense) of the finite verb; the perfect, aorist, and future participles represent respectively the perfect, aorist, and future tenses of the finite verb. If ἄν accompanied the finite verb (*e.g.* in the potential optative), it is retained with the equivalent participle in indirect discourse:

πυνθάνεται (or αἰσθάνεται) Κῦρον προσ-ελαίνοντα he learns (or he perceives) that Cyrus is drawing near;

*Direct form:* Κῦρος προσ-ελαίνει Cyrus is drawing near.

εἶδον ῥαδίως<sup>1</sup> ἄν τὸ τεῖχος ληφθέν they saw that the wall might be easily taken;

*Direct form:* ῥαδίως ἄν τὸ τεῖχος ληφθείη the wall may be easily taken.

For an example of the perfect participle, see § 442. *a*.

**442.** Verbs of *perception* commonly admit the construction with *ὅτι* as well:

πυνθάνεται (or αἰσθάνεται) ὅτι Κῦρος προσ-ελαίνει he learns (or he perceives) that Cyrus is drawing near.

Πυνθάνεται

<sup>1</sup> Adv. of ῥαδίως, § 360. 8.

a. ἀκούω *hear* allows either a *ἔτι* clause (§ 262) or the infinitive (§ 262. a) or the participle in indirect discourse:

ἤκουσαν Κῦρον τεθνηκότα they heard that Cyrus was dead;

*Direct form*: Κῦρος τέθνηκεν Cyrus is dead.

Examples of the other constructions have already occurred (§§ 203. I. 10; 264. I. 6).

## 443.

## VOCABULARY XLIV

δέδοικα

δέδοικα, pf. with pres. meaning (from δέιδω): *fear*; 1 aor. ~~ἔδωκα~~. Cp. δεινός.

ἔνθα, rel. adv.: *where*; dem.: *there*; of time, ἔνθα δὴ: *then indeed*.

εὐρίσκω, fut. εὐρήσω, 2 aor. ἤυρον, pf. act. ἤυρηκα, pf. mid. to be learned later, aor. pass. ἠύρηθη: *find*. Eureka.

ἡδομαι (theme ἡδ-): *be pleased*; ἡσθήσομαι: *shall be pleased*; ἡσθη: *was pleased*; with something (dat. § 403). See § 439. Cp. ἡδός.

καιρός, οὐ, ὅ: *the right measure, right time, right place*; *proper time*; *opportunity, crisis*.

κράτος, ους, τό: *strength, might*.

ἄνὰ κράτος: *to the limit of strength, at full speed*.

λανθάνω (themes λαθ-, ληθ-, cp. λαμβάνω, τυγχάνω, § 218), fut. λήσω, 2 aor. ἔλαθον (other parts to be learned later): *lie hid, escape notice of*; with supplementary partic., in construction like τυγχάνω (§ 215): thus ἔλαθεν ἔλθόν *he went secretly, lit. he escaped notice going*.

μή, conj.: *lest*, after verbs of fearing. μή οὐ: *lest not*. See § 438.

Μιθραδάτης, ου, ὅ: *Mithradātes*. ~~πέθηκα~~, pf. of θνήσκω: *be dead, be slain*. Cp. ἀπο-θνήσκω (§ 137).

The simple verb is common in the perfect.

ὑπερβολή, ἡς, ἡ: *passing over, pass*. Hyperbole.

χαράδρα, ας, ἡ: *ravine*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

444. I. 1. καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν.<sup>1</sup> 2. πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἠρπάκαμεν. 3. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο αὐτοὺς διαβεβηκότας, ἦσθη. 4. Κῦρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν ἐκ<sup>2</sup> τῶν

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 121. I. 7.

<sup>2</sup> inspired by.

Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδῶν. 5. ἀλλὰ δέδοικα μὴ οὐχ εὐρωμεν τὴν οἰκάδε ὁδόν. 6. καὶ ἐδεδοίκη μὴ οὐχ ἦδοιτο τῷ ἵππῳ.<sup>1</sup> 7. Ἀβροκόμας ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα. 8. νῦν οὖν καιρὸς ἐστὶν φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν, ἵνα μὴ κολασθῶμεν. 9. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος τέθνηκεν. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπείχον τῆς χαράδρᾶς ὅσον<sup>2</sup> ὀκτῶ σταδίοις, ἔνθα δὴ διέβαινε καὶ<sup>3</sup> ὁ Μιθραδάτης. 11. τοῦτο τὸ στράτευμα ἐλάνθανε τρεφόμενον αὐτῷ.<sup>4</sup> 12. δεῖσαντες μὴ ἀποληφθείησαν ἔφευγον ἀνὰ κράτος. 13. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος. 14. ὁ δὲ Ξενίᾶς πέπεικε τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον λέγειν ὧδε.

II. 1. We were glad to see the army of Cyrus. 2. We heard that the soldiers had crossed<sup>5</sup> the ravine. 3. A man came riding at full speed and said that Cyrus was dead. 4. Our soldiers captured the height unobserved.<sup>6</sup> 5. He fears that<sup>7</sup> the enemy will come secretly<sup>8</sup> in the night.

<sup>1</sup> § 403.

<sup>3</sup> also.

<sup>6</sup> Use all possible constructions.

<sup>7</sup> lest.

<sup>2</sup> Adv. acc., as far as, about.

<sup>4</sup> § 53. d.

<sup>6</sup> Say escaped notice taking, etc.

<sup>8</sup> Say escape notice coming.

## XLV

THE SECOND PERFECT AND THE SECOND PLUPERFECT ACTIVE. ATTIC REDUPLICATION. REDUPLICATION WITH *ει*. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE WITH *δηλός ἐστιν*, ETC.

445. There is a second form of the perfect and pluperfect active made with the suffix *α* (also *ε*) instead of *κα* (*κε*). It is like the first perfect except for the want of the letter *κ*. This second perfect belongs only to certain verbs: some with themes ending in a mute and some with themes ending in a liquid. The theme itself often undergoes modification of its vowel sound; and a smooth mute (*π*, *κ*) or middle mute (*β*, *γ*, cp. § 28) before the suffix *α* (or *ε*) is usually (but not always) changed to the corresponding rough.

πέ-πομφ-α (πέμπ-ω) I have sent;

πέ-ποιθ-α (πειθ-ω) I trust;

πέ-πονθ-α (πάσχω, themes παθ-, πενθ-) I have suffered;

πέ-φευγ-α (φεύγ-ω) I have fled;

λέ-λοιπ-α (λείπ-ω) I have left;

ἤχ-α (ἄγ-ω) I have led;

γέ-γον-α (γίγνομαι, theme γεν-) I have been born, become, I am;

γέ-γραφ-α (γράφ-ω) I have written.

πέπομφα

πέπειθα

πέπονθα

πέφευγα

a. Some verbs like *πειθω* have both perfects, but with different meanings:

*πέ-πει-κα* means I have persuaded (*πέποιθα*, second perfect, I trust).



446. SECOND PERFECT SYSTEM OF *λείπω*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.	
Pf. Indic. 1.	λέλοιπα <i>I have left</i>		λε-λοιπα-μεν	<i>we have left</i>
2.	λέλοιπα-ς <i>you have left</i>	λε-λοιπα-τον	λε-λοιπα-τε	<i>you have left</i>
3.	λέλοιπε <i>he has left</i>	λε-λοιπα-τον	λε-λοιπα-σι(ν)	<i>they have left</i>
Subjv. 1.	λε-λοιπ-ᾶς ᾶ (cp. § 436), etc.			
Opt. 1.	λε-λοιπ-ᾶς εἶην (cp. § 436), etc.			
Imv.	Almost never occurs in the perfect active (§ 437)			
Inf.	λε-λοιπ-έναι <i>to have left</i>			
Partic.	λε-λοιπ-ᾶς, -ῶσα, -ῶς, <i>having left</i> (Cp. § 435)			
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἔλε-λοιπη <i>I had left</i>		ἔλε-λοιπη-μεν	<i>we had left</i>
2.	ἔλε-λοιπη-ς <i>you had left</i>	ἔλε-λοιπη-τον	ἔλε-λοιπη-τε	<i>you had left</i>
3.	ἔλε-λοιπει(ν) <i>he had left</i>	ἔλε-λοιπη-την	ἔλε-λοιπη-σαν	<i>they had left</i>

447. Attic reduplication. — Some verbs beginning with a short vowel followed by a consonant prefix the first two letters and lengthen the initial vowel of the theme :

ἐλ-ήλυθ-α [2 pf. from theme ἐλυθ-, of which a shorter form is seen in ἤλθον (ἐλθ-)] *I have come*<sup>1</sup>;

ἐλ-ήλα-κα [1 pf. from theme ἐλα- (ἐλαύνω)] *I have driven or marched.*

448. A few verbs have εἰ- prefixed to the theme for reduplication :

εἰ-ληφ-α (2 pf. of λαμβάνω, themes ληβ-, λαβ-) *I have taken* ;

συν-εί-λοχ-α (2 pf. of συλ-λέγω, theme λεγ-) *I have collected* ;

εἰ-ρη-κα (1 pf. from theme ῥη-) *I have said.*

<sup>1</sup> This verb supplies the 2 pf. of ἔρχομαι. But ἦκω (§ 137) is commonly used for the *simple* ἐλήλυθα.

449. The supplementary participle in indirect discourse is common in agreement with the subject of *δήλός ἐστι(ν)* *he is evident* and similar expressions, such as :

φανερὸς ἐστι(ν)  
and φανερὸς γέγονε(ν) } he is evident.

δήλος ἦν Κύρος σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν Cyrus was clearly hastening (*lit.* was evident hastening) all the way.

a. The construction *δήλόν (ἐστίν) ὅτι it is evident that* also occurs (§ 270. I. 2).

ΕΝ 101-α1-α

## 450.

## VOCABULARY XLV

ἄγγελος, ου, ὁ: messenger. Angel.  
εἶρηκα, pf<sup>1</sup>: I have said, I have mentioned.

ἔνιοι, αι, α: some.

ἱερός, ᾧ, ὄν: sacred, holy. Hierarchy (ἔρχω).

προ-έρχομαι (cp. ἔρχομαι), 2 aor.

προ-ἦλθον, 2 pf. προ-ελήλυθα (§ 447): go before, go forward, proceed.

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο (declined like οὔτος, § 171), dem. pron.: so much, so great, so many; often followed by correlative word like ὅσος as. The neut. is also τοσοῦτον as well as τοσοῦτο. Cp. Lat. tantus.

φανερὸς, ᾧ, ὄν: visible, clear, evident.

ἴσος

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

Τ Ο Σ Ο Ὑ Τ Ο Σ

451. I. 1. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ κακὰ πεπόνθασιν. 2. πέπομφᾶσι δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πρέσβεις ἐπ'<sup>2</sup> ἄλλην στρατιάν. 3. ἀπο-λελοιπᾶσιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πᾶσιων. 4. νῦν δ' ἐπι-βουλευὼν μοι φανερὸς γέγονας. 5. οὔτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Ἀριαῖος πεφευγὼς εἶη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων. 6. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Σύννεσις τὰ ἄκρα. 7. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ Τισσαφέρηνς ἐνίους συν-ειλήφασιν ἡμῶν. 8. ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι<sup>3</sup> ὄντες ὅσοι<sup>4</sup> νῦν συν-εληλύθατε μέγιστον

<sup>1</sup> Supplies the pf. act. of λέγω say.

<sup>2</sup> *io felt*, after.

<sup>3</sup> *so many*.

<sup>4</sup> *as*.

ἔχετε καιρόν. 9. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προ-εληλυθότων αὐτῶν<sup>1</sup> ἦκε πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης. 10. καὶ κατ-ειληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ὁδόν. 11. καὶ τοῦτον τὸν λόφον παρεληλύθεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 12. συν-εληλυθότες δ' ἦσαν ἐνταῦθα καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ πρόβατα πολλά. 13. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν ὁ λοχαγὸς πεφευγώς. 14. Μένων δὲ δῆλος ἦν ἐπι-βουλεύων τῷ φίλῳ. 15. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἔχων οὐς<sup>2</sup> εἴρηκα ἐξ-ἦλθεν ἐκ τοῦ ἱεροῦ χωρίου.

II. 1. It has become clear that Cyrus is<sup>3</sup> plotting against his brother. 2. You have evidently come together<sup>4</sup> in order to advise us. 3. They have seized our generals and captains.

---

## XLVI

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE OF VOWEL THEMES. INFINITIVE WITH μέμνημαι *remember how*, ETC. DATIVE OF AGENT

**452.** The middle and passive voices have identical forms in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses as well as in the present and imperfect (cp. § 383).

**453.** The perfect middle (passive) tenses reduplicate the theme in the same way as the perfect active tenses, and have augment for reduplication under similar circumstances (§§ 432, 447, 448).

---

<sup>1</sup> § 401.

<sup>2</sup> Supply τούτους as antecedent.

<sup>3</sup> Say Cyrus has become clear.

<sup>4</sup> you are evident having come together (cp. I. 12).

454. In the perfect middle indicative (and pluperfect), imperative, infinitive, and participle, the endings are added directly to the theme without any connecting vowels. The perfect subjunctive and optative are periphrastic forms, made up of the perfect middle (passive) participle and the proper forms of *εἰμί* (cp. the perfect subjunctive and optative active, § 436).

a. There are no second perfect or second pluperfect tenses in the middle and passive voices.

#### 455. PERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE SYSTEM OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	λέ-λυ-μαι	<i>I have ransomed</i> (Pass. <i>I have been loosed</i> )	λε-λύ-μεθα
2.	λέ-λυ-σαι		λέ-λυ-σθε
3.	λέ-λυ-ται		λέ-λυ-νται
Imv. 2.	λέ-λυ-σο	λέ-λυ-σθον	λέ-λυ-σθε
3.	λε-λύ-σθω	λε-λύ-σθων	λε-λύ-σθων
Inf.	λε-λύ-σθαι <sup>1</sup>		
Partic.	λε-λυ-μένος, <sup>2</sup> η, ον		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἔ-λε-λύ-μην	<i>I had ransomed</i> (Pass. <i>I had been loosed</i> )	ἔ-λε-λύ-μεθα
2.	ἔ-λέ-λυ-σο		ἔ-λέ-λυ-σθε
3.	ἔ-λέ-λυ-το		ἔ-λε-λύ-σθην

#### PERIPHRASTIC FORMS

Pf. Subjv. 1.	λε-λυ-μένος ᾧ		λε-λυ-μένοι ᾧμεν
2.	λε-λυ-μένος ἧς	λε-λυ-μένω ἦτον	λε-λυ-μένοι ἦτε
3.	λε-λυ-μένος ἧ	λε-λυ-μένω ἦτον	λε-λυ-μένοι ᾧσι(ν)
Opt. 1.	λε-λυ-μένος εἴην		λε-λυ-μένοι εἴμεν
2.	λε-λυ-μένος εἴης	λε-λυ-μένω εἴητον	λε-λυ-μένοι εἴητε
3.	λε-λυ-μένος εἴη	λε-λυ-μένω εἴητην	λε-λυ-μένοι εἴησαν

a. The shorter forms *εἶτον*, *εἴμεν*, etc., also occur.

<sup>1</sup> The pf. mid. (pass.) inf. is always accented on the penult.

<sup>2</sup> The pf. mid. (pass.) partic. is always accented on the penult.

456. The perfect middle of γίγνομαι is γε-γέν-η-μαι (cp. the fut. γεν-ή-σο-μαι for the lengthened theme).

The perfect middle of στρατοπεδεύω is ἐ-στρατοπέδευ-μαι (§ 432. c).

457. The infinitive is used with verbs of *remembering*, *learning*, etc., when they mean *remember how*, *learn how*: εἰδὸς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι straightway from boyhood they learn how to rule and to be ruled.

a. Such verbs take a ὅτι clause or a participle in indirect discourse in the sense *remember that*, *learn that*, as has already been described (§§ 441, 442).

458. Dative of agent. — The dative case may be used to express the agent with the perfect and pluperfect passive: ἡ γέφυρα λέλυται Κύρῳ the bridge has been destroyed by Cyrus.

## 459.

## VOCABULARY XLVI

ἄ-δικος, ον (ἀ- priv. and δίκη; cp. δίκαιος): *unjust*.

εἶσω, adv.: *within*, with gen.

κατα-κλείω: *shut up, confine, in-close*.

κλείω, fut. κλείσω, 1 aor. ἐκλείσα, 1 pf. κέκλεικα, pf. mid. κέκλειμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐκλείσθην (σ is irregularly inserted): *shut*.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ: *Cretan*, a native of Crete.

κωμ-ἄρχης, ον, ὁ (κώμη + ἄρχω): *ruler or head man of a village, village chief*.

μύμνημαι: *remember*, a pf. with pres. meaning; fut. to be learned later; aor. ἐμνήσθην (σ is irregularly inserted).

The pres. act. is μ-μνή-σκω

*remind*, which form is made up of the reduplication μν- plus the theme μνη- (long form of μνα-) plus the pres. suffix ισκ%; fut. μνήσω, 1 aor. ἐμνησα. Lat. *memini*. Mnemonic.

πύλη, ης, ἡ: *gate*. Cp. Θερμοπύλαι, lit. "Hot Gates."

τιτρώσκω (theme τρω-, reduplicated in pres. τι-τρω-, and with the pres. suffix ισκ%), fut. τρώσω, 1 aor. ἐτρώσα, pf. mid. τέτρωμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐτρώσθην: *wound*.

ι-ξέω (cp. τόξον), fut. τοξέσομαι, 1 aor. ἐτόξευσα, pf. pass. τετόξευμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐτοξέσθην: *shoot* with bow and arrow.

ψιλός, ἡ, ὄν: *bare, unprotected; light-armed*

ψιλός

κωμ-ἄρχης

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

460. I. 1. ἀκούων δὲ οὐ μέμνησαι. 2. ἦγε δ' αὐτοὺς ὁ κομάρχης λελυμένος<sup>1</sup> διὰ χιόνος. 3. καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. 4. ὁ δὲ τοξότης ἦκε φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν χεῖρα. 5. πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι. 6. αἱ δὲ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο. 7. φησὶν οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι. 8. ἐτύγχανε γὰρ Ἀριαῖος ἐφ' ἀμάξης πορευόμενος ὅτι<sup>2</sup> ἐτέρωτο. 9. μετὰ ταῦτα μετ-επέμψαντο Τισσαφέρην οἱ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος, ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσι. 10. λελυμένος<sup>3</sup> δὲ τῆς γεφύρας οὐχ ἔξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 11. ἐγώ, ὦ Τισσαφέρην, μέμνημαι ἡμῖν<sup>4</sup> ὄρκους γεγενημένους.<sup>5</sup> 12. μεμνήσθω ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ εἶναι.<sup>6</sup> 13. μεμνήσθω ὅτι ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ ἐστίν. 14. μεμνήσθω ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ ὢν.<sup>7</sup> 15. οἱ γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα<sup>8</sup> τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξενον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὀπλιτῶν κατ-εκέκλειντο.

II. 1. The barbarians had encamped near the Greeks. 2. The village chief has been loosed (from shackles)<sup>9</sup> by Cheirisophus. 3. The crowd (of camp followers)<sup>9</sup> has been shut up within the (ranks of)<sup>9</sup> hoplites. 4. Let him remember that Cyrus is a brave man.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> loosed from shackles.

<sup>2</sup> § 310.

<sup>3</sup> broken down, destroyed.

<sup>4</sup> § 458.

<sup>5</sup> = have been made (§§ 440, 441).

<sup>6</sup> § 457.

<sup>7</sup> When the subject of the participle in indirect discourse (§ 441) is the same as that of the verb on which the participle depends, it agrees in case.—Sentences 13 and 14 mean the same thing.

<sup>8</sup> a shorter distance (§ 351. c).

<sup>9</sup> Omit.

<sup>10</sup> Express in two ways.

## XLVII

## PERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE OF MUTE THEMES.

EUPHONIC RULES: MUTES BEFORE  $\mu$ . *SIGMA*  
DROPPED BETWEEN TWO CONSONANTS.

**461.** Themes that end in a mute (§§ 27, 28) naturally suffer euphonic changes in the perfect and pluperfect middle before the personal endings, which are added directly to the theme.

The following rules of euphony therefore must be added to those already learned (§§ 153, 387):

MUTES BEFORE  $\mu$ 

**462.** 1. A labial mute ( $\pi \beta \phi$ ) before  $\mu$  becomes  $\mu$ :

$\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\text{-}\lambda\epsilon\iota\mu\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$  for  $\lambda\epsilon\text{-}\lambda\epsilon\iota\pi\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$  ( $\lambda\epsilon\acute{\iota}\pi\omega$ ).

2. A palatal mute ( $\kappa \chi$ ) before  $\mu$  becomes  $\gamma$ :

$\pi\epsilon\text{-}\phi\acute{\upsilon}\lambda\alpha\gamma\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$  for  $\pi\epsilon\text{-}\phi\upsilon\lambda\alpha\kappa\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$  ( $\phi\upsilon\lambda\acute{\alpha}\tau\tau\omega$ , theme  $\phi\upsilon\lambda\alpha\kappa\text{-}$ ).

a.  $\gamma$  before  $\mu$  is naturally kept unchanged:

$\tau\acute{\epsilon}\text{-}\tau\alpha\gamma\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$  (pf. mid. of  $\tau\acute{\alpha}\tau\tau\omega$ , theme  $\tau\alpha\gamma\text{-}$ ).

3. A lingual mute ( $\tau \delta \theta$ ) before  $\mu$  becomes  $\sigma$ :

$\pi\acute{\epsilon}\text{-}\pi\epsilon\iota\sigma\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$  for  $\pi\epsilon\text{-}\pi\epsilon\iota\theta\text{-}\mu\alpha\iota$  ( $\pi\epsilon\acute{\iota}\theta\omega$ ).

**463.** Sigma coming between two consonants is dropped:

$\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\text{-}\lambda\epsilon\iota\phi\text{-}\theta\epsilon$  for  $\lambda\epsilon\text{-}\lambda\epsilon\iota\pi\text{-}\sigma\theta\epsilon$ .

**464.** The third person plural of the perfect and pluperfect indicative middle of mute themes is a periphrastic form made up of the perfect participle and  $\epsilon\acute{\iota}\sigma\iota(\nu)$  (perfect) or  $\eta\sigma\alpha\nu$  (pluperfect).

a. With a neuter plural subject  $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\tau\iota(\nu)$  and  $\eta\nu$  are used for  $\epsilon\acute{\iota}\sigma\iota(\nu)$  and  $\eta\sigma\alpha\nu$  respectively; or the regularly formed third person singular of the verb is used.

465. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE OF λείπω (THEME λειπ-)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	λέλειμ-μαι <sup>1</sup> (Pass.) <i>I have been left</i>		λε-λείμ-μεθα <sup>1</sup>
2.	λέλειψαι <sup>2</sup>	λέλειφ-θον <sup>4</sup>	λέλειφ-θε <sup>4</sup>
3.	λέλειπ-ται <sup>3</sup>	λέλειφ-θον <sup>4</sup>	λε-λείμ-μένοι <sup>1</sup> εἰσὶ(ν)
Subjv. 1.	λε-λείμ-μένος <sup>1</sup> ᾧ		
2.	λε-λείμ-μένος <sup>1</sup> ᾗς, etc.		
Opt. 1.	λε-λείμ-μένος <sup>1</sup> εἴην		
2.	λε-λείμ-μένος <sup>1</sup> εἴης, etc.		
Impv. 2.	λέλειψο <sup>2</sup>	λέλειφ-θον <sup>4</sup>	λέλειφ-θε <sup>4</sup>
3.	λε-λείφ-θω <sup>4</sup>	λε-λείφ-θων <sup>4</sup>	λε-λείφ-θων <sup>4</sup>
Inf.	λε-λείφ-θαι <sup>4</sup>		
Partic.	λε-λείμ-μένος <sup>1</sup>		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἔλε-λείμ-μην <sup>1</sup>		ἔλε-λείμ-μεθα <sup>1</sup>
2.	ἔλέ-λειψο <sup>2</sup>	ἔλέ-λειφ-θον <sup>4</sup>	ἔλέ-λειφ-θε <sup>4</sup>
3.	ἔλέ-λειπ-το <sup>3</sup>	ἔλε-λείφ-θην <sup>4</sup>	λε-λείμ-μένοι <sup>1</sup> ἦσαν

a. All other labial mute (π β φ) themes are inflected on the model of λέ-λείμ-μαι:

γέ-γραμ-μαι, pf. mid. of γράφω (theme γραφ-);  
 συν-είλημ-μαι, pf. mid. of συλ-λαμβάνω (themes λαβ-, ληβ-).

b. But πέμπω (theme πεμπ-) forms the pf. mid. or pass. πε-πεμμ-μαι (§ 462. 1); and one μ of the unpronounceable combination is dropped (πέ-πεμ-μαι):

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	πέ-πεμ-μαι (Pass.) <i>I have been sent</i>		πε-πέμ-μεθα
2.	πέ-πεμψαι	πέ-πεμφ-θον	πέ-πεμφ-θε
3.	πέ-πεμπ-ται	πέ-πεμφ-θον	πε-πεμ-μένοι εἰσὶ(ν)

<sup>1</sup> § 462. 1.

<sup>2</sup> § 153. 1.

<sup>3</sup> § 387. 1.

<sup>4</sup> §§ 463; 387. 1.



**466. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE**  
OF τάττω *arrange* (THEME ταγ-)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	τέταγμαι <sup>1</sup> (Pass.) <i>I have been arranged or marshaled</i>		τετάγμεθα <sup>1</sup>
2.	τέταξαι <sup>2</sup>	τέταχ-θον <sup>4</sup>	τέταχ-θε <sup>4</sup>
3.	τέτακ-ται <sup>3</sup>	τέταχ-θον <sup>4</sup>	τεταγμένοι <sup>1</sup> εἰσι(ν)
Subjv. 1.	τεταγ-μένος <sup>1</sup> ᾧ		
2.	τεταγ-μένος <sup>1</sup> ᾗς, etc.		
Opt. 1.	τεταγ-μένος <sup>1</sup> εἴην		
2.	τεταγ-μένος <sup>1</sup> εἴης, etc.		
Imv. 2.	τέταξο <sup>2</sup>	τέταχ-θον <sup>4</sup>	τέταχ-θε <sup>4</sup>
3.	τετάχ-θω <sup>4</sup>	τετάχ-θων <sup>4</sup>	τετάχ-θων <sup>4</sup>
Inf.	τετάχ-θαι <sup>4</sup>		
Partic.	τεταγ-μένος <sup>1</sup> η, ον		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἔτετάγμην <sup>1</sup>		ἔτετάγμεθα <sup>1</sup>
2.	ἔτέταξο <sup>2</sup>	ἔτεταχ-θον <sup>4</sup>	ἔτεταχ-θε <sup>4</sup>
3.	ἔτέτακτο <sup>3</sup>	ἔτετάχ-θην <sup>4</sup>	τεταγμένοι <sup>1</sup> ἦσαν

*a.* Like τέταγμαί are inflected all other verbs with themes ending in a palatal mute (κ γ χ):

ἤγαμαι, pf. mid. of ἄγω (theme ἀγ-);

ἔκπέπληγαμαι, pf. mid. of ἐκπλήττω (theme πληγ-);

πέπραγαμαι, pf. mid. of πράττω (theme πρᾶγ-).

**467. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE**  
OF πείθω (THEME πειθ-)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	πέπεισμαι <sup>5</sup> (Pass.) <i>I have been persuaded</i>		πεπεισμεθα <sup>5</sup>
2.	πέπεισαι <sup>6</sup>	πέπεισθον <sup>6</sup>	πέπεισθε <sup>6</sup>
3.	πέπεισται <sup>7</sup>	πέπεισθον <sup>6</sup>	πεπεισμένοι <sup>5</sup> εἰσι(ν)

<sup>1</sup> § 462. 2. *a.*

<sup>2</sup> § 153. 2.

<sup>3</sup> § 387. 1.

<sup>4</sup> §§ 463; 387. 1.

<sup>5</sup> § 462. 3.

<sup>6</sup> § 153. 3.

<sup>7</sup> § 387. 2.

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Subjv. 1.	πε-πεισ-μένος <sup>1</sup> ᾶ		
2.	πε-πεισ-μένος <sup>1</sup> ᾶς, etc.		
Opt. 1.	πε-πεισ-μένος <sup>1</sup> εἴην		
2.	πε-πεισ-μένος <sup>1</sup> εἴης, etc.		
Imv. 2.	πέ-πει-σο <sup>2</sup>	πέ-πει-σθον <sup>2</sup>	πέ-πει-σθε <sup>2</sup>
3.	πε-πέ-σθω <sup>2</sup>	πε-πέ-σθων <sup>2</sup>	πε-πέ-σθων <sup>2</sup>
Inf.	πε-πέ-σθαι <sup>2</sup>		
Partic.	πε-πεισ-μένος <sup>1</sup>		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἔ-πε-πεισ-μην <sup>1</sup>		ἔ-πε-πεισ-μεθα <sup>1</sup>
2.	ἔ-πέ-πει-σο <sup>2</sup>	ἔ-πέ-πει-σθον <sup>2</sup>	ἔ-πέ-πει-σθε <sup>2</sup>
3.	ἔ-πέ-πεισ-το <sup>2</sup>	ἔ-πε-πέ-σθην <sup>2</sup>	πε-πεισ-μένοι <sup>1</sup> ἦσαν

a. Like *πέ-πεισ-μαι* are inflected all other verbs with themes ending in a lingual mute (τ δ θ):

ἦρπασ-μαι, pf. mid. of ἀρπάζω (theme ἀρπαδ-);

παρ-εσκεύασ-μαι, pf. mid. of παρα-σκευάζω (theme σκευαδ-).

468.

VOCABULARY XLVII

ἄλλῃ, adv. (dat. fem. of ἄλλος, with ἄλλῃ or ἄλλοις understood): *elsewhere, in another place or direction.*

ἀ-πορίᾱ, ᾶς, ἡ (cp. ἀ-πορος, πο-ρεύομαι): *lack of way out, embarrassment, difficulty.*

ἔμ-προσθεν, adv. (ἐν + πρόσθεν): *in front, before.* It may take the gen.

ἐν-τυγχάνω (cp. τυγχάνω): *chance upon, happen upon, come upon by chance, encounter,* with dat.

ἐπι-τάττω (cp. τάττω): *enjoin something (acc.) on somebody (dat.), direct, command.*

κατά-βασις, εως, ἡ (κατα-βαίνω):

*descent, way down* a mountain side; the *descent* from the interior to the sea.

μόνος, η, ον: *alone, only.* Mon-archy (ἄρχω), mono-gamy (γάμος marriage), etc.

ὅποιοις, ᾶ, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: *of what sort, what sort of.*

ποτόν, οὔ, τό: *drink.*

που, indef. adv., enclitic: *somewhere, anywhere.*

προ-κατα-λαμβάνω (cp. κατα-λαμβάνω, Vocabulary XXXII): *seize or occupy beforehand.*

στῖλον, ου, τό (diminutive of σῖτος): *grain, food.*

α λ λ η γ  
μόνος

Π Ο Ο

<sup>1</sup> § 462. 3.

<sup>2</sup> § 153. 3.

<sup>3</sup> § 387. 2.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

469. I. 1. βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. 2. οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο οὐδὲ τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις. 3. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι<sup>1</sup> σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν. 4. διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ<sup>2</sup> αὐτὰ<sup>3</sup> τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα.<sup>4</sup> 5. καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγύς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις ᾧ ἐπετέτακτο<sup>5</sup> ταῦτα πράττειν. 6. καὶ ἐγὼ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας τεταγμένων οὐκ ἔφυγον. 7. τὸ στρατεύμα πολὺ ἦν, ὥστε τὸν Πέρσῃν ἐκπεπλήχθαι. 8. καὶ ὁποίοις λόγοις Κλέαρχος ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλη γέγραπται.<sup>6</sup> 9. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἑλληνες. 10. μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν, οὐδὲ ἰππέα οὐδένα<sup>7</sup> σύμμαχον ἔχοντες. 11. προκατείληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν<sup>8</sup> ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως λόφος. 12. Χειρίσοφος δὲ εἶδε προκατειλημμένην τὴν ἀκρόπολιν. 13. καλὸν τι<sup>9</sup> πρὸς τοὺς ἐν Σάρδεσι βαρβάρους ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν.<sup>10</sup> 14. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.

II. 1. Cyrus, prepared for battle, advanced against the enemy. 2. Most of the possessions had been plundered by the king's army. 3. These soldiers have been led up to the king.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 232. I. 3.<sup>2</sup> even.<sup>3</sup> very, § 123. I; cp. § 394. II. 3.<sup>4</sup> Subject of διήρπαστο.<sup>5</sup> it had been directed.<sup>6</sup> it has been written.<sup>7</sup> § 428.<sup>8</sup> § 53. d.<sup>9</sup> a noble deed (cp. § 232. I. 10).<sup>10</sup> § 458.

XLVIII

THE FUTURE PERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE. MEANING OF FUTURE PERFECT. VERBAL ADJECTIVES IN -τός AND -τέος. DATIVE OF AGENT WITH VERBALS IN -τέος

470. There is but one form for the future perfect middle and passive (§ 383); the meaning is generally passive; but the form is uncommon in either the middle or passive use.

471. The future perfect passive (middle) is formed from the reduplicated (perfect) theme, plus the future suffix σ%, to which the endings of person (indicative) or mood and person (optative) are added. The middle endings are used. The forms are like the future middle, with reduplication of the theme.

472. FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE (MIDDLE) OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	λε-λύ-σο-μαι <i>I shall have been loosed</i>		λε-λύ-σά-μεθα
2.	λε-λύ-ση, -σαι	λε-λύ-σε-σθον	λε-λύ-σε-σθε
3.	λε-λύ-σεται	λε-λύ-σε-σθον	λε-λύ-σονται
Opt. 1.	λε-λύ-σοί-μην		λε-λύ-σοί-μεθα
2.	λε-λύ-σοι-ο	λε-λύ-σοι-σθον	λε-λύ-σοι-σθε
3.	λε-λύ-σοι-το	λε-λύ-σοι-σθην	λε-λύ-σοι-ντο
Inf.	λε-λύ-σε-σθαι		
Partic.	λε-λύ-σά-μενος, η, ον		

473. Like λε-λύ-σο-μαι are inflected :

λε-λείψο-μαι (λείπω) I shall have been left ;  
 κε-κόψο-μαι (κόπτω) I shall have been cut ;  
 με-μνήσο-μαι (μémνημαι) I shall remember (see Vocabulary XLVI).

**474.** The future perfect passive may be used to denote a future act as *sure to occur*. It is then an emphatic future :

κατα-κεκόψονται they shall be surely cut down ;

λελείψεται he will be left.

#### VERBAL ADJECTIVES

**475.** Their form. — Verbal adjectives end in -τός, ή, όν,<sup>1</sup> and -τέος, α̃, ου. These endings are generally added to that form of the verb theme which is used in the first aorist passive (without the augment). If the theme ends in a mute, the necessary euphonic changes must be made (§ 387. 1 and 2).

**476.** Their meaning. — The adjective with the suffix -τός may denote (1) a completed act like the Latin perfect passive participle ; or (2) a possible act, like Latin adjectives in *-bilis*, English *-able* :

λυ-τός that may be loosed, looseable ;

ἀ-βα-τος that may not be trodden on, impassable (ἐ-βά-θην, from βαίνω) ;

ἀ-διά-βα-τος not to be crossed, impassable (δι-ε-βά-θην) ;

ἀ-φύλακ-τος unguarded (ἐ-φυλάχ-θην).

**477.** The adjective with the suffix -τέος denotes a necessity, like the Latin gerundive :

διωκτέος (necessary) to be pursued (ἐ-διώχ-θην was pursued) ;

δια-βατέος (necessary) to be crossed (δι-ε-βά-θην was crossed) ;

πρακτέος (necessary) to be done (ἐ-πράχ-θην was done).

---

<sup>1</sup> Compound verbals in -τός have recessive accent and two endings: -τός (masc. and fem.), -τον (neut.). But prepositional compounds denoting *possibility* are usually of three endings and accented like simple verbals. Thus δια-βατός, ή, όν, *able to be crossed, fordable* (of a river).

Such verbal adjectives may be used :

1. *Personally*: ποταμὸς δια-βατέος ἐστίν *a river must be crossed.*

2. *Impersonally*<sup>1</sup>: πειστέον (πειθομαι obey) ἐστίν *it must be obeyed, obedience must be rendered* (with dat.); πορευτέον (πορεύομαι) ἐστίν *it must be proceeded, one must proceed*; σκεπτέον (σκέπτομαι consider) ἐστίν *it must be considered.*  
ἐστ(ν) may be omitted (§ 291).

478. With the verbal in -τέος the agent is regularly expressed by the dative (cp. § 458):

ταῦτα πράκτέα μοι this must be done by me.

479. It must be observed that *necessity* is far more commonly expressed by δεῖ and the infinitive (§ 223) with subject accusative, and by similar expressions, than by the verbal adjective in -τέος.

480.

VOCABULARY XLVIII

βαθύς, εἰα, ὑ: *deep.*

δеспότης, ου, ό: *master. Despot.*

δια-βατός, α, ον (verbal adj. of διαβαίνω): *necessary to be crossed.*

δια-βατός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of διαβαίνω): *able to be crossed, fordable* (of a river). Cp. ἀδιάβατος (§ 108).

διωκτός, α, ον (verbal adj. of διώκω): *necessary to be pursued.*

θαυμαστός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of θαυμάζω): *admirable, wonderful, strange.*

μετά-πεμπτος, ον (verbal adj. of μεταπέμπομαι): *sent after, summoned.*

πειστέον (verbal adj. of πειθομαι), impers.: *one must obey, with dat.*

πορευτός, α, ον (verbal adj. of πορεύομαι): *necessary to be passed over, to be traversed*; neut. impers.: *one must proceed.*

σκεπτέον (verbal adj. of σκέπτομαι), impers.: *it must be considered, one must consider.*

τραπτός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of τιτρώσκω): *able to be wounded, vulnerable.*

ὑπο-ζύγιον, ου, τό (ζυγόν yoke): *something under the yoke, beast of burden.*

<sup>1</sup> The impersonal verbal may even take an object. Thus διωκτέον ἐστὶ τὰ θηρία *one must pursue the wild beasts.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

481. I. 1. ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηται τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαι σέ φασιν. 2. ὥστε φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς λελείψεται. 3. νῦν δὲ διωκτέον ἐστίν. 4. ἔαν γὰρ ἀλλήλοις μαχέσθησθε, νομίζετε<sup>1</sup> ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατα-κεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἔμοῦ ὕστερον. 5. πορευτέον ἐστὶν ὅτι τάχιστα. 6. ὁ δὲ λοχᾶγός ἔμαθεν ὅτι ἀφύλακτον εἶη τὸ ἱερὸν χωρίον. 7. καὶ πειστέον ἐστὶ τῷ δεσπότῃ. 8. παρ-ἦν δὲ καὶ<sup>2</sup> Χειρίσοφος, μετά-πεμπτος ὑπὸ Κῦρου. 9. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῶν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς<sup>3</sup> ὡς μακροτάτους. 10. ποταμὸς δὲ βαθὺς ἡμῖν ἐστὶ δια-βατέος. 11. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι τρωτοὶ εἰσι μᾶλλον ἡμῶν. 12. εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀγαθὸς ἐστω, οὐδὲν<sup>4</sup> θαυμαστόν.<sup>5</sup> 13. σκεπτέον ἐστὶν ὅπως ὡς πλείστα ὑποζύγια ἀρπάσωμεν. 14. κατὰ γὰρ μέσον<sup>6</sup> τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον ποταμὸν ἡδύρον<sup>7</sup> διαβατόν.

II. 1. The horses will certainly<sup>8</sup> be loosed. 2. We must proceed five days' journey to Celaenae, that large and prosperous city. 3. If he should not be brave, it would not be at all<sup>9</sup> strange. 4. A messenger reported<sup>10</sup> that the river was impassable.

<sup>1</sup> Imv.<sup>2</sup> also.<sup>3</sup> § 181.<sup>4</sup> in no respect (§ 284).<sup>5</sup> § 291.<sup>6</sup> § 192.<sup>7</sup> § 443.<sup>8</sup> § 474.<sup>9</sup> not at all = οὐδὲν (§ 284).<sup>10</sup> ἔφη.

XLIX

SYNOPSIS OF THE Ω-VERB. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF TYPICAL VERBS. SOME COMMON SUFFIXES OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

482. SYNOPSIS OF λύω *loose*; THEME { λῦ-  
λυ-

ACTIVE

	INDIC.	Subjn.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC.
Pres.	λύω	λύω	λύοιμι	λύε	λύειν	λύων
Impf.	ἔλυον					
Fut.	λύσω		λύσοιμι		λύσειν	λύσων
Aor.	ἔλυσα	λύσω	λύσαιμι	λύσον	λύσαι	λύσας
Pf.	ἔλυκα	§ 436	§ 436		<u>λελυκέναι</u>	<u>λελυκός</u>
Plup.	ἔλελύκη					

λελυκέναι

MIDDLE

	INDIC.	Subjn.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC.
Pres.	λύομαι	λύομαι	λύοίμην	λύου	λύεσθαι	<u>λύόμενος</u>
Impf.	ἔλυόμην					
Fut.	λύσομαι		λύσοίμην		λύσεσθαι	<u>λύσόμενος</u>
Aor.	ἔλυόμην	λύσομαι	λύσαιμην	λύσαι	λύσασθαι	<u>λύόμενος</u>
Pf.	ἔλυμαι	<u>λελυμένος</u> ᾧ	λελυμένος	ἔλην	ἔλυσο	<u>λελυμένος</u>
Plup.	ἔλελύμην					
Fut. Pf.	ἔλυσομαι		<u>λελύσοίμην</u>		<u>λελύσεσθαι</u>	<u>λελύσόμενος</u>

λελύομαι  
λελυμένος ᾧ  
ἔλην



## PASSIVE

	INDIC.	Subjv.	Opt.	Imv.	INF.	PARTIC.
Pres.	} like the	Middle				
Impf.						
Fut.	<u>λυθήσομαι</u>		<u>λυθήσομαιν</u>		<u>λυθήσεται</u>	<u>λυθησόμενος</u>
Aor.	<u>ἐλύθην</u>	<u>λυθῶ</u>	<u>λυθείην</u>	<u>λύθητι</u>	<u>λυθῆναι</u>	<u>λυθείς</u>
Pf.						
Plup.	} like the	Middle				
Fut. Pf.						

~~ΕΝΤΟΣ  
ΕΙΣΗΣ  
ΕΝΤΟΣ~~

λυθεις  
λυθεισα  
λυθεν

483. SYNOPSIS OF λείπω *leave* IN THE SECOND AORIST AND SECOND PERFECT; THEMES

λειπ-, λειπ-, λειπ-

## ACTIVE

	INDIC.	Subjv.	Opt.	Imv.	INF.	PARTIC.
2 Aor.	<u>λείπον</u>	<u>λείπω</u>	<u>λείποιμι</u>	<u>λείπε</u>	<u>λείπειν</u>	<u>λείπών</u>
2 Pf.	<u>ἔλειπον</u>	§ 446	§ 446		<u>ἔλειπέναι</u>	<u>ἔλειπώς</u>
2 Plup.	<u>ἔλειπόμην</u>					

## MIDDLE

	INDIC.	Subjv.	Opt.	Imv.	INF.	PARTIC.
2 Aor.	<u>λείπομαι</u>	<u>λείπωμαι</u>	<u>λείποιμην</u>	<u>λείποθι</u>	<u>λείπείσθαι</u>	<u>λείπόμενος</u>

**484.** SYNOPSIS OF **βλάπτω hurt** IN THE SECOND AORIST PASSIVE AND SECOND FUTURE PASSIVE; THEME **βλαβ-**

PASSIVE

	INDIC.	Subjv.	OPT.	Imv.	INF.	PARTIC.
2 Fut.	βλαβήσομαι		βλαβησοίμην		βλαβήσισθαι	βλαβησόμενος
2 Aor.	ἐβλάβην	βλαβῶ	βλαβείην	βλάβηθι	βλαβήναι	βλαβείς

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

**485.** The following tense systems have now been studied — all the tense systems of the ordinary Greek verb :

1. Present (including imperfect): Active, Middle (Passive).
2. Future: Active, Middle.
3. First Aorist: Active, Middle.
4. Second Aorist: Active, Middle.
5. First Perfect (including first pluperfect): Active.
6. Second Perfect (including second pluperfect): Active.
7. Perfect Middle (including pluperfect and future perfect).
8. First Passive (first aorist and first future passive).
9. Second Passive (second aorist and second future passive).

a. If one knows the first form in each of these systems (the first person singular of the indicative mood), he can by the rules already mastered produce the complete inflection of the ω-verb. Therefore the first forms in these systems are together known as the **principal parts of the verb**.



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

PRES.	MEANING	THEME	FUT.	1 AOR.	2 AOR.	1 PR. ACT.	2 PR. ACT.	PR. MID.	1 AOR. PASS.	2 AOR. PASS.
ἔγω	<del>lead</del>	ἀγ-	ἔξω	ἤγαγα	ἤγαγον	ἤρακα	ἤραξα	ἤγαμαι	ἤχθη	ἤχθησαν
ἀρπάξω	<del>seize</del>	ἀρπαδ-	ἀρπάξω	ἤρασα	ἤρασαν	ἤρακα	ἤραξα	ἤραμαι	ἤρπασθη	ἤρπασθησαν
βλάπτω	<del>hurt</del>	βλαβ-	βλάψω	ἔβλαψα	ἔβλαψον	ἔβλαψα	ἔβλαψα	βέβλαμαι	ἐβλάβεθη	ἐβλάβεθησαν
ἔχω	<del>have</del>	[σ] εχ-	ἔξω		ἔχον	ἔχικα	ἔχικα	ἔσχηναι		
θύω	<del>sacrifice</del>	σχιθ-	θύσω	θύσα		θύκα	θύκα	θύομαι	θύσθη	θύσθησαν
λαμβάνω	<del>take</del>	λαβ-	λήψωμαι	ἔλαβον	ἔλαβον	ἔλαβον	ἔλαβον	ἐλάθημαι	ἐλήφθη	ἐλήφθησαν
λείπω	<del>leave</del>	λειπ-	λείψω	ἔλειπον	ἔλειπον	ἔλειπον	ἔλειπον	ἔλειμαι	ἐλείφη	ἐλείφησαν
λέγω	<del>pose</del>	λοιπ-	λέσω	ἔλεσα		ἔλεσα	ἔλεσα	ἔλεμαι	ἐλέσθη	ἐλέσθησαν
πειθω	<del>persuade</del>	πειθ-	πέισω	ἔπεισα	ἔπεισα	ἔπεικα	ἔπεικα	πέπειμαι	ἐπέισθη	ἐπέισθησαν
πέμπω	<del>send</del>	πεμπ-	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	ἔπεμψα	ἔπεμψα	ἔπεμψα	πέπεμαι	ἐπέμφθη	ἐπέμφθησαν
στέλλω	<del>hire</del>	στρεφ-	στρέψω	ἔστρεψα	ἔστρεψα	ἔστρεψα	ἔστρεψα	ἔστρεμαι		ἔστρέφη
συν-λέγω	<del>collect</del>	συν-λεγ-	συν-λέξω	συν-ἔλεξα	συν-ἔλεξα	συν-ἔλεξα	συν-ἔλεξα	συν-ἔλεγμα	συν-ἔλεχθη	συν-ἔλεχθησαν

στέλλω

συν-λέγω = gather of these

στέλλω

## 492. Indicating QUALITY OF AN ABSTRACT IDEA :

-ια : σωτηρία (σωτήρ *savior*) *safety* ;  
 υποψία (ὑπ-όψομαι *I shall suspect*) *sus-*  
*picion* ;  
 φιλία (φίλος *friend*) *friendship*.

## 493. Indicating ACTION :

∇ I  
 = action  
 -σι : κατάβασις (καταβαίνω *descend*) *descent* ;  
 τάξις (τάττω *arrange*) *arrangement*  
 (cp. § 381).

## 494. Indicating RESULT of action :

-ματ : πράγμα, gen. πράγματος (πράττω *do*), *deed*,  
 etc. ;  
 στράτευμα (στρατεύω *make an expedition*)  
*expedition, army*.

## 495. Indicating SMALLNESS, etc., although the diminutive idea is not always preserved :

-ιο : χρῦσιον (χρῦσός *gold*) *piece of gold* ;  
 παιδιον (παῖς *child*) *little child* ;  
 χωριον (χῶρος *place*) *place, stronghold*

## ADJECTIVES

496. -ιο : πολέμιος (πόλεμος *war*) *hostile* ;  
 — Λακεδαιμόνιος (Λακεδαίμων *Lacedaemon*)  
*Lacedaemonian* ;  
 δίκαιος (δίκη *justice*) *just* ;  
 ἀρχαῖος (ἀρχή *beginning*) *ancient*.  
 -ικο : βασιλικός (βασιλεύς *king*) *kinglike* ;  
 — Ἑλληνικός (Ἕλλην *a Greek*) *Greek* ;  
 πολυμικός (πόλεμος *war*) *warlike*.

L

CONTRACT NOUNS OF THE  $\bar{a}$ -DECLENSION AND OF THE O-DECLENSION. CONTRACT ADJECTIVES. THE INFINITIVE WITH THE ARTICLE USED AS A NOUN

497. Learn the declension of  $\gamma\eta$  *earth*,  $\mu\nu\bar{a}$  *mina* (§ 594);  $\nu\acute{o}\upsilon\varsigma$  *mind* (§ 596);  $\chi\rho\acute{\upsilon}\varsigma\omicron\upsilon\varsigma$ ,  $\eta$ ,  $\omicron\upsilon\nu$ , *golden*,  $\acute{\alpha}\rho\gamma\upsilon\rho\omicron\upsilon\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\alpha}$ ,  $\omicron\upsilon\nu$ , *silver*,  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\lambda\omicron\upsilon\varsigma$ ,  $\eta$ ,  $\omicron\upsilon\nu$ , *simple* (§ 609);  $\epsilon\ddot{\upsilon}\nu\omicron\upsilon\varsigma$ ,  $\omicron\upsilon\nu$ , *well-disposed* (§ 610).

498. RULES OF CONTRACTION

$\epsilon + \omicron = \omicron\upsilon$

$\omicron + \omicron = \omicron\upsilon$

Any short vowel before a long vowel (or diphthong) or before  $\alpha$  is absorbed.

*But*, in the singular of the  $\bar{a}$ -declension,

$\epsilon + \bar{a} = \eta$  ( $\bar{a}$  after  $\rho$ ).

*a.* The syllable resulting from contraction is always long, — a long vowel or a diphthong.

*b.* Contract nouns and adjectives are regularly circumflexed on the ultima throughout. But forms of the o-declension have the acute accent (*not* the circumflex) on the ultima of the nominative, accusative, and vocative dual, when the ultima is accented.

499. Compounds of  $\nu\acute{o}\upsilon\varsigma$  *mind* and  $\pi\lambda\omicron\upsilon\varsigma$  *voyage* keep the accent throughout on the same syllable as in the nominative singular. Thus  $\epsilon\ddot{\upsilon}\nu\omega\nu$ , genitive plural (for  $\epsilon\ddot{\upsilon}\nu\acute{\omicron}\omega\nu$ ). Such compounds also do not contract in the neuter plural nominative and accusative. Thus  $\epsilon\ddot{\upsilon}\nu\omicron\alpha$ .

500. The infinitive preceded by a neuter article (τό, τοῦ, τῷ) may be used as a noun, in the various constructions of a noun :

τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν (nom. or acc.) death ;

φόβος τοῦ στρατεύσαι fear of taking the field ;

ἰκάλυπεν αὐτοὺς τοῦ κάειν (gen. of separation) τὴν χώραν he hindered them from burning the land.

a. This construction of the infinitive is common after prepositions. Frequent is διὰ τό followed by an infinitive :

διὰ τὸ στενήν εἶναι τὴν ὁδόν on account of the fact that the road was narrow.

## 501.

## VOCABULARY L

ἀπλοῦς, ἡ, οὖν : *simple, sincere.*

ἀργύριον, ου, τό : *silver, money.*

ἀργυροῦς, ἄ, οὖν : *of silver, silver.*

γῆ, ἡς, ἡ : *earth, land. Geom-etry (μέτρον measure).*

ἑκ-βασίς, εως, ἡ (ἑκ-βαίνω) : *pas-sage out, mountain pass.*

εὖ-νοος, ουν : *well-disposed.*

μνᾶ, ἄς, ἡ : *mina, one sixtieth of a talent ; i.e. about \$18.*

νοῦς, οὔ, ὁ : *mind.*

πλοῦς, οὔ, ὁ : *voyage ; a sailing, sailing weather. Cp. πλοῖον.*

ποτέ, enclitic adv. of time : *ever, at any time, at some time, once on a time.*

προσ-έχω, with τὸν νοῦν : *direct the mind to, with dat.*

Τίγρης, ἡτος, ὁ : *Tigris, a great river of western Asia.*

τόπος, ου, ὁ : *place. Topic.*

χρῦσοῦς, ἡ, οὖν : *golden, of gold, gold.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

502. I. 1. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν ἡ γῆ πεδίων ἅπαν ὡσπερ θάλαττα. 2. καὶ λέγεται<sup>1</sup> ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 3. ἦρξαν τοῦ διαβαίνειν τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. 4. οἱ πολέμιοι ἐθαύμαζον τί οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐν νῶ ἔχοιεν.<sup>2</sup> 5. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἦγε πρὸς τὴν φανεράν

<sup>1</sup> Imperis.

<sup>2</sup> § 345.

ἐκβασω ὅπως ταύτη τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν. 6. ἐξήλουν ὡς τάχιστα διὰ τὸ ἀνάγκην εἶναι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 7. νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξεστι πορεύεσθαι, ὅπῃ ἂν ἔλησθε,<sup>1</sup> καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. 8. ἐπεμψε δὲ σάλπιγγά τε ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκηνην ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν.<sup>2</sup> 9. φίλους δὲ ἀπλοῦς τε καὶ εὐνοῦς Κύρος εἶχεν. 10. οἱ καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ εὐνοὶ αὐτῷ ἦσαν. 11. φόβον βασιλεὺς παρέσχε<sup>3</sup> τοῦ στρατεύσαί ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν. 12. ἐκώλυσε τοὺς ἰππέας τοῦ διαρπάζειν τὴν χῶρᾶν.

II. 13. δυνατὸς ἦν χιλὸν παρασκευάζεσθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας. 14. καὶ ὑμεῖς παρασκευάζεσθε<sup>4</sup> ὡς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀναξόμενοι,<sup>5</sup> ἔαν πλοῦς ᾖ. 15. βασιλεῖα δ' ἔφασαν ἔχειν θῶρακα χρυσοῦν καὶ ἀσπίδα χρυσοῦν. 16. ὁ δ' εἶχε δέκα μνᾶς ἀργυρίου.<sup>6</sup> 17. ὁ δὲ κωμάρχης τὰς πύλας ἔκλεισε διὰ τὸ μὴ ἐθέλειν δέχεσθαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας.

III. 1. What have you in mind? 2. They had fear<sup>7</sup> of marching against the king. 3. All the soldiers were well-disposed to Cyrus.

<sup>1</sup> § 248. I or § 400.

<sup>2</sup> § 402.

<sup>3</sup> caused.

<sup>4</sup> Inv.

<sup>5</sup> ἀν-άγομαι sometimes, as here, means *put to sea*; for the construction

see §§ 331, 332.

<sup>6</sup> Of gen. (§ 53. f), denoting material.

<sup>7</sup> Use the noun.



## LI

CONTRACT VERBS. PRESENT SYSTEM OF ποιέω. DIS-SYLLABIC VERBS IN -έω. TWO ACCUSATIVES AFTER VERBS OF MAKING, APPOINTING; ASKING, DEPRIVING. CONSTRUCTION OF δοκέω

503. The inflection of contract verbs differs from that of regular ω-verbs in the present system only. In all other systems these verbs, if regular, are inflected like the corresponding tenses of λύω.

504. The syllable resulting from contraction receives an accent if either one of the component syllables, in the uncontracted form, had an accent; it receives a circumflex, if the *first* vowel had the acute; but it receives an acute, if the *second* vowel had the acute.

505. Examples of accentuation of contract verbs :

ποιέω	contracts to	ποιῶ	ἐποίεον	contracts to	ἐποίουν
ποιέομεν	"	" ποιούμεν	ἐποίηε	"	" ἐποίηει
ἔσταώς	"	" ἔστῶς			

## PRESENT SYSTEM OF ποιέω

506. Learn the inflection in the present system of the active and middle (= passive) voices of ποιέω *do, make* (§ 643).

a. Similarly are inflected αἰρέω *take, mid. choose*; ἀφικνέομαι *arrive*; ἡγέομαι *lead* (with gen. or dat.) or *think*.

## 507. RULES OF CONTRACTION

$\epsilon + \epsilon = \epsilon\iota$

$\epsilon + \omicron = \omicron\upsilon$

$\epsilon$  before a long vowel or diphthong is absorbed.

508. Verbs in -έω of two syllables, like πλέω *sail*, contract only when ει results; otherwise they are uncontracted:

πλέω, πλείς, πλεί, πλέομεν, πλείτε, πλέουσι;  
δέη, subjv. of δεῖ (it is necessary).

509. Outside of the present system the final ε of the theme is regularly lengthened to η:

ποιῶ (-έω), ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην.

Exceptions must be learned as they occur. Thus ἤρέθη *I was chosen*, not ἤρήθην (from αἰρέω).

510. Verbs of *making*, *appointing*, and similar meanings may take **two accusatives**, one of which stands in a predicate relation to the other:

σατράπην αὐτὸν ἐποίησεν he made him satrap;  
εὖνον αὐτὸν ἐνόμισεν he thought him well-disposed.

511. Verbs of *asking* and *depriving* may take **two accusatives**, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*:

αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν μισθὸν he asks him for pay;  
ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν to deprive the Greeks of their land.

512. Δοκῶ (-έω) *seem* is commonly used personally (cp. § 391) with the infinitive in indirect discourse:

δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι παύεσθαι it seems not to be an hour for resting  
(*lit.* the hour seems not, etc.);

ἐδόκουν ταχὺ ποιεῖν ταῦτα they seemed to do this quickly.

a. There is also a less common but nevertheless frequent use of δοκεῖ as an impersonal verb, in the meaning *it seems good* or *best*. The accompanying infinitive is the subject of the impersonal verb:

ἐδόκει αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἄνω it seemed best to him to proceed inland.

b. Δοκῶ (-έω) sometimes means *I think* like νομίζω:

ἐδόκει βασιλεῖα ἔξειν he thought the king would come.

## 513.

## VOCABULARY LI

αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, εἶλον, ἤρηκα, ἤρημαι, ἤρθηθην: *take, capture, seize*; MID. *choose*. See Vocabularies XXVI, XXXII. Heresy.

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ἤτησα, ἤτηκα, ἤτημαι, ἤτήθηθην: *ask a favor, beg, ask for something from somebody (two accusatives)*; MID. *ask for oneself*.

ἀπο-πλέω: *sail away*.

ἀφ-αίρέομαι (mid. of αἰρέω): *take away for oneself, deprive, rob somebody of something (two accusatives)*.

ἀφ-ικ-νέ-ομαι (theme ικ-; νε- appears only in pres. system), ἀφ-ίζομαι, ἀφ-ικόμην, ἀφ-ιγμαι: *arrive, come*.

ἰοκέω (theme δοκ-, but δοκε- in pres. system), δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην: *seem, be reputed; seem best; think*. Dogma.

ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγήσάμην, ἡγήμαι: *lead, guide (with gen. or dat.)*; *think, believe*. Cp. ἡγεμών.

ῥέω, θεύσομαι: *run*.

ὅθεν, rel. adv.: *whence, from which place, from what source*.

πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευμαι (σ is irregularly inserted): *sail*. Cp. πλοῖον, πλοῦς.

ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην: *do, make*; the mid. is translated like the act., but implies *in* or *for one's own interest*. Poet (ποιητής).

πολεμικός, ή, όν (πόλεμος): *suited to war, warlike; hostile*.

πό-ποτε, adv. of time: *ever yet, ever*.

πῶς, interr. adv.: *how? in what way?* Cp. ὅπως.

στρατεία, ας, ή (στρατεύω): *expedition*.

τρόπος, ου, ό (τρέπω): *turn, manner, method, character*. Tropic.

φοβέω (φόβος), φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην: *frighten*; MID. with dep. aor. pass, *be afraid, fear*. The mid. forms are common (φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην).

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

514. I. I. καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ<sup>1</sup> τοῦτον τὸν λόφον αἰροῦσιν. 2. αἰροῦνται αὐτὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς στρατείας. 3. ἐδόκει δὲ δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι αἰρήσονται αὐτὸν στρατηγόν. 4. εἰς δὲ εἶπε<sup>2</sup> Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν.

<sup>1</sup> § 141.

<sup>2</sup> proposed (§ 334).

5. Κλέαρχος δὴ ἐδόκει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ πολεμικός. 6. ὁ λοχᾶγὸς ἐβουλευέτο τί χρῆ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ ἄνω στρατεύεσθαι. 7. πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ πλεῖν οἴκαδε. 8. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι. 9. καὶ στρατηγὸς αἰροῦνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα. 10. τοὺς δ' ἀνθρώπους τὰ χρήματα ἀφαιροῦνται. 11. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται ἡ Συνενέσιος γυνὴ παρὰ Κῦρον. 12. συνεβουλευέτο<sup>1</sup> πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο. 13. οὗτοι δὲ ἐφοβούντο αὐτόν. 14. οὐδένα πρόποτε τὴν χώρᾶν Κῦρος ἀφείλετο.

II. 15. ἠγείτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ κωμάρχης λελυμένος<sup>2</sup> διὰ χιόνος. 16. καὶ<sup>8</sup> πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. 17. φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἠγεμόνι ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγη ὅθεν<sup>4</sup> οὐκ ἔσται<sup>5</sup> ἐξελθεῖν. 18. καὶ ἠγείσθαι ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν ὅπου τὸν δρόμον<sup>6</sup> πεποιηκὼς εἶη.<sup>7</sup> 19. αἰρήσομαι δ' σὺν ὑμᾶς, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὃ τι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. 20. τούτους ἄρχοντας ἐποίησε τῆς χώρᾶς.

III. 1. We chose him general of the expedition. 2. I should fear to ask<sup>8</sup> him for pay. 3. Cyrus was reputed to have been<sup>9</sup> a kingly man.

<sup>1</sup> Mid. *he consulted*.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. § 460. I. 2.

<sup>8</sup> *also*.

<sup>4</sup> To a place *from which*.

<sup>5</sup> *it will not be possible*.

<sup>6</sup> *race course*.

<sup>7</sup> The optative is due to implied indirect discourse, the direct form being ὅπου . . . πεποίηκας.

<sup>8</sup> Cp. sentence 17 above.

<sup>9</sup> *γενέσθαι*.

## LII

PRESENT SYSTEM OF *τιμάω*. IRREGULAR CONTRACT VERBS IN *-άω*. INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS OF PROMISING, HOPING, AND SWEARING. CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY CONJUNCTIONS MEANING *WHILE*, *UNTIL*, AND *BEFORE*

**515.** Learn the inflection in the present system of the active and middle (= passive) voices of *τιμάω honor* (§ 643).

*a.* Similarly are inflected *έρωτάω ask*, impf. *ήρώτων*; *έάω permit*, impf. *είων* (with irregular augment); *πειράομαι try*.

**516. RULES OF CONTRACTION**

*a* + an *ε*-sound (*ε, η, ει, η*) = *ā* (or *α*).

*a* + an *ο*-sound (*ο, ω, οι, ου*) = *ω* (or *φ*).

*ι* in the uncontracted form is *subscript* in the contracted form.

**517.** Some verbs, including *χράομαι use*, and *ζάω live*, irregularly have *η* wherever *ā* would naturally occur in the contracted forms; they likewise have *η* for *α*:

*χρήσθαι* (pres. inf.), not *χρᾶσθαι*;

*ζήν* (pres. inf.), not *ζᾶν*;

*ζῆ* (3 sing. pres. indic.), not *ζᾶ*.

**518.** Outside of the present system the final *α* of the theme is regularly lengthened to *η*:

*τιμῶ* (*τιμάω*), *τιμήσω*, *έτιμησα*, *τετίμηκα*, *τετίμημαι*, *έτιμήθην*.

*a.* But after *ε, ι, or ρ* (cp. §§ 114, 139) the final *α* of the theme is retained in its long form, outside of the present system:

ἔω (ἔάω), ἔάσω, εἶασα,<sup>1</sup> εἶακα, εἶαμαι, εἶάθην;  
πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, etc.

χράομαι, however, has χρήσομαι, etc.

**519.** The **infinitive** (commonly future) is used after verbs of *promising, hoping, and swearing*:

περὶ τούτων ὑπέσχετο βουλεύεσθαι about these matters he promised to take counsel.

*a.* The future infinitive used as above represents the future indicative of direct discourse:

περὶ τούτων βουλεύσομαι about these matters I will take counsel.

*b.* The negative used with this infinitive is μή, although οὐ was used in direct discourse (cp. § 110. *e*):

ὑπέσχετο μὴ παύσεσθαι he promised not to stop (*direct*: οὐ παύσομαι).

**520.** The **supplementary participle** in indirect discourse (§ 441) is especially common after forms of ὁρῶ (ὁράω) *see*:

ἰρῶ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι I see there are horses in the army (*direct*: ἵπποι εἰσίν).

**521.** Besides the temporal conjunctions meaning *when* (§§ 168, 202), there are other conjunctions of time meaning *so long as, while, until*: ἔστε, ἕως, μέχρι (*until*); and meaning *until or before*: πρὶν.

**522.** ἔστε, ἕως, and μέχρι (§ 521) take the same constructions as ἐπεὶ *when* (§§ 167, 248. 2 and *a*, 400, 417). That is to say:

---

<sup>1</sup> The augment is irregular.

1. When they introduce a definite past act, they take a past tense of the indicative (negative οὐ):

τί οὐκ ἐποίησεν, ἔστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; what did he not do, until<sup>1</sup> he obtained a truce?

ἔως πόλεμος ἦν, ἡδόμεν so long as<sup>1</sup> there was war, I rejoiced.

2. When they introduce a future or a repeated act, they take the subjunctive (with ἄν) after a primary tense or the optative after a secondary tense:

ταῦτα ποιεῖτε ἔστ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω do this until<sup>1</sup> I come;

ἔστε δ' ἂν πολεμῆτε, ὑπισχνούμαι ὑμῖν τὸν μισθόν and so long as<sup>1</sup> you are at war, I promise you your pay.

523. πρὶν *until* when following a negative clause usually takes:

1. The indicative of a definite past act:

οὐκ ἐπορεύετο πρὶν Σωκράτει συνεβουλεύσατο he did not proceed until he had consulted Socrates;

οὐκ ἐλθεῖν ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισεν he did not wish to come, until his wife persuaded him.

2. The subjunctive (with ἄν) of a future act:

μὴ ἀπέλθῃτε πρὶν ἂν ἀκούσῃτε, κτλ. do not go away until you hear, etc.

524. πρὶν *before* depending on an affirmative clause takes the infinitive alone or with subject accusative:

ἔφυγον πρὶν ἡμῶς ἐλθεῖν they fled before we arrived.

---

<sup>1</sup> The context must determine between *while* (*so long as*) and *until* as translations of ἔστε and ἔως.

525.

VOCABULARY LII

ἔῶ, ἔῶσα, εἶῶσα, εἶᾶκα, εἶᾶμαι, εἶᾶ-  
θην: *permit, allow, let*. For  
impf. εἶων, etc., see §§ 515. a,  
518. a.

ἐπι-θύμῶ, ἐπι-θύμησω, ἐπ-εθύμησα:  
*have one's heart set on, yearn,  
desire*, with inf. or gen.

ἑρωτάω, ἑρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα, ἠρώ-  
τηκα, ἠρώτημαι, ἠρωτήθην: *ask*  
a question, *inquire*. To be  
distinguished from αἰτέω (Vo-  
cabulary LI). Cp. ἠρόμην  
(Vocabulary XXXIV), which  
is often used for ἠρώτησα.  
See also §§ 343-345.

ἕστε, temporal conj.: *while, so long  
as, until*.

ἕως, temporal conj.: *while, so long  
as, until*.

ζῶ, ζήσω: *live*.

θεᾶμαι, θεᾶσομαι, ἰθεᾶσάμην, τε-  
θεᾶμαι: *look on, gaze at, see*.  
Theater.

μέχρι, temporal conj.: *until*.

νικάω (νίκη), νικήσω, ἐνίκησα, νενί-  
κηκα, νενίκημαι, ἐνίκηθην: *con-  
quer, surpass*.

ὄραω (impf. ἴρων<sup>1</sup>), fut. ὄσομαι,  
2 aor. εἶδον (Vocabulary XIX),  
ἴωρακα or ἴωρακα, ἴωραμαι or  
ἴωμαι, ἴωθην: *see, behold*.

πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, ἐπειράσάμην,  
πεπειράμαι, and ἐπειράθην: *try,  
attempt*. Pirate.

πολεμέω (πόλεμος), πολεμήσω, ἐπο-  
λέμησα, πεπολέμηκα, πεπολέμη-  
μαι, ἐπολεμήθην: *wage war,  
make war on*, with dat. (§ 317),  
or πρὸς and acc.

πρὶν, temporal conj.: *before, until*.  
πρόσθεν (Vocabulary XXVI)  
. . . πρὶν = Lat. *prius* . . .  
*quam*: *earlier than, before*.

τιμᾶω (τιμή), τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα,  
τετίμηκα, τετίμημαι, ἐτίμηθην:  
*honor*.

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι (ἰσχω, strong form  
of ἔχω, with pres. suffix νε-),  
ὑπο-σχίσσομαι, ὑπο-σχόμην, ὑπ-  
έσχημαι: *undertake, promise*.

χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέ-  
χρημαι, with pass. aor. ἐχρή-  
σθην: *use*, with dat. of means:  
cp. Lat. *utor* with abl.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

526. I. 1. ἕως<sup>2</sup> ἂν παρῆ τις, χρώμαι αὐτῷ. 2. καὶ  
ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν, μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο. 3. οἱ δὲ βάρβα-  
ροι φεύγουσι πρὶν ὄραν τὰς τάξεις τὰς τῶν πολεμίων.

<sup>1</sup> This imperfect is irregular in having *double* augment, both syllabic ἰ- and  
temporal -ω-; cp. also pf. ἴωρακα and ἴωραμαι.

<sup>2</sup> *while*.



4. καὶ ὑπίσχεῖτο μὴ κακὸς ἔσεσθαι. 5. πειράσομαι δὲ τοῖς πολεμίοις πολεμεῖν ἔστ' <sup>1</sup> ἂν δοκῇ αὐτοῖς πολέμον<sup>2</sup> παύσασθαι. 6. Μένων δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθυμῶν τιμᾶσθαι. 7. ὅστις ζῆν ἐπιθυμῶ, πειράσθω νικᾶν. 8. Κύρος εἶα τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 9. ταύτην τὴν γέφυραν ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 10. τὰ ὄπλα ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν<sup>3</sup> καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι. 11. ὑπίσχεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσιν. 12. εἰ δὲ τινα ὀρήῃ ἀγαθὸν ὄντα, οὐδένα τὴν χώρᾱν πώποτε ἀφηρεῖτο. 13. κἂν<sup>4</sup> ὑμᾶς ὀρώσιν ὄντας κακοὺς, πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται. 14. ἡρώτων δ' αὐτὸν τί χρῆ ποιεῖν.

II. 15. οἱ γὰρ πολέμιοι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπολέμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγούς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον. 16. βασιλεὺς δ' ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους<sup>5</sup> ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶεν τὸ καθ' αὐτούς.<sup>6</sup> 17. οὗς ἐώρᾱ ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους<sup>7</sup> ἄρχοντας τῆς χώρᾱς ἐποίει καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμᾱ. 18. θεῶνται οἱ παῖδές τινας τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως. 19. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνίκων τοὺς Πέρσᾱς καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.

III. 1. Before they advanced ten stadia, the Greeks tried to cross this river. 2. While there was war, we kept using the provisions of both friends and enemies. 3. We saw that the soldiers were honoring Cyrus.

<sup>1</sup> *until.*

<sup>2</sup> § 201. '.

<sup>3</sup> With the inf. (§ 277).

<sup>4</sup> § 30.

<sup>5</sup> Gen. of source (§ 201).

<sup>6</sup> *the division opposite themselves.*

<sup>7</sup> Antecedent of οὗς at the beginning: *those whom.*

LIII

PRESENT SYSTEM OF δηλώω. COMPLEX SENTENCES  
IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

527. Learn the inflection in the present system of the active and middle (= passive) voices of δηλώω *show* (§ 643).

a. Similarly are inflected ἀξιώω *demand*, σκηνώω (a parallel form of σκηνάω) *encamp*.

528. RULES OF CONTRACTION

ο + ε or ο or ου = ου.

ο + η or ω = ω.

ο + a diphthong containing ι (ει, οι, η) = οι.

529. Outside of the present system the final ο of the theme is regularly lengthened to ω:

δηλώω (δηλόω), δηλώσω, εδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, εδηλώθην.

COMPLEX SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

530. When a complex sentence is quoted, whether after a verb that requires *ὄτι*, or after a verb that requires the infinitive or the participle, the verb of the main clause of the quotation comes under the rules already explained (§§ 110, 260, 276, 277, 441, 519).

The only new principle involved concerns the verb of the *subordinate* clause. This verb is retained in the original mood and tense after a primary tense of the introductory verb of *saying* or *thinking*; but it may be changed to the same tense of the optative after a secondary tense of the introductory verb; *except* that, even in the secondary

sequence, dependent secondary tenses of the indicative (*i.e.* imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect) are regularly kept unchanged.

*a.* Dependent optative clauses of the direct discourse are of course retained in the indirect discourse after both primary and secondary tenses. *ἄν* with the optative in direct discourse is retained in indirect discourse.

*b.* The verb of a dependent clause can not be changed to the infinitive.

*c.* Changes of person are made as the sense requires.

*d.* The negative of the direct discourse is, as usual, retained in the indirect.

#### EXAMPLES

1. *Sentence quoted after primary tense*: *ἄν δὲ εὖ γένηται τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαι σέ φᾶσιν* (*direct*: οὐ μεμνήσῃ) and if anything turns out successfully, they say you will not remember. (Here the dependent clause *ἄν . . . γένηται* is retained unchanged, since the introductory verb is *φᾶσίν*.)
2. *Sentence quoted after secondary tense*:
  - a. Original sentence*: *εἰ μὴ τις προκαταλήψεται τὸ ἄκρον, οὐκ ἔσται δυνατόν παρελθεῖν* unless somebody shall seize the height in advance, it will not be possible to go past.
  - b. Quoted sentence*: *ἔφη εἰ μὴ τις προκαταλήψοιτο τὸ ἄκρον, οὐκ ἔσσεσθαι δυνατόν παρελθεῖν* he said that unless somebody should seize the height in advance, it would not be possible to go past. (In the dependent clause, *προκαταλήψεται* might be retained.)
3. *Dependent secondary tenses of indicative retained*: *ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα ἐπεὶ ἦσθεο . . . καὶ ὅτι ἦκουε, κτλ.* a messenger came saying that Syenesis had left the heights since he had perceived . . . and because he heard, etc. (Here *λελοιπῶς εἶη* represents the original *λέλοιπε* *has left* of the messenger's

language ; but neither ἦσθετο nor ἦκουε could be changed to the optative, since in the direct discourse they were *dependent secondary* tenses of the indicative. The tense that determines the sequence is seen in ἦκεν.)

**531.** When a subjunctive introduced by εἰάν or ἐπάν, or ὅστις ἄν, or similar words, is changed to the optative after a secondary tense of the introductory verb of *saying* or *thinking*, ἄν is omitted ; that is, εἰάν becomes εἰ, ἐπάν becomes ἐπεί, ὅστις ἄν becomes ὅστις, etc. :

- a. *Original sentence* : οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβήσονται εἰάν (or ἐπάν) μηδεὶς κωλύσῃ the Greeks will cross if (or when) nobody hinders.  
 b. *Quoted sentence in secondary sequence* : ἔφη τοὺς Ἕλληνας διαβήσεσθαι εἰ (or ἐπεὶ) μηδεὶς κωλύσειεν he said the Greeks would cross if (or when) nobody should hinder.

Of course the original subjunctive introduced by εἰάν or ἐπάν might have been retained in the last sentence.

## 532.

## VOCABULARY LIII

ἀξιώ (ἄξιος), ἀξιώσω, ἠξίωσα, ἠξι- ωκα, ἠξιῶμαι, ἠξιώθην: <i>deem</i> <i>worthy; claim as one's right,</i> <i>demand, ask.</i>	πλήθος, οὐς, τό: <i>crowd, throng,</i> <i>host, multitude.</i>
δηλώ (δῆλος), δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, ἐδηλώθην: <i>show, make evident.</i>	σκηνώ (σκηνή), ἐσκήνωσα, ἐσκή- νωκα: <i>stay in a tent, camp.</i>
ἔρημος, η, ον, and ἔρημος, ον: <i>de-</i> <i>serted.</i> σταθμοὶ ἔρημοι: <i>marches</i> <i>through the desert.</i> Eremita.	τελευτάω (τελευτή <i>end</i> ), τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, τετελεύτηκα, ἐτελευ- τήθην: <i>end, finish, die.</i>
	τοίνυν, inferential particle, post- positive: <i>therefore, then.</i>

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

**533.** I. 1. ταῦτ' οὖν οὐκ ἀξιούμεν. 2. τιμᾶσθαι δ'  
ἠξίου. 3. ὡς ὁράτε, σκηνοῦμεν ἐν τῇ τάξει.<sup>1</sup> 4. ἄλλοι

<sup>1</sup> in our order.

δέ τινες ἔλεξαν ὅτι εἰ βασιλεὺς ἐθέλοι ἐπὶ τὴν Κιλικίαν στρατεύειν, πορεύοιτο ἄν σὺν αὐτῷ.<sup>1</sup> 5. καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐσκήνου. 6. καὶ ἔχων τὰ χωρία πειράται σκηνοῦν. 7. εἶπε δὲ Κῦρος ὅτι ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα<sup>2</sup> παύσεται τῆς στρατείας,<sup>3</sup> εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει τὸν στρατηγόν. 8. καὶ νῦν τοίνυν ἐπεὶ πόλεμός ἐστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τοῦ πλήθους<sup>4</sup> εἶναι. 9. ἀκούομεν ἡμᾶς σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις. 10. καὶ ἡξιοῦν αὐτοὺς τὰ βέλτιστα συμβουλεύειν. 11. εἶπε δ' ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ γένηται.<sup>5</sup> 12. εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε Κῦρος πορεύοιτο, καὶ πλείστοι<sup>6</sup> μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι,<sup>7</sup> μετεπέμπετο τοὺς φίλους, ὡς δηλοῖ ὅς τιμῶ.

II. 13. καὶ σοὶ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω. 14. καὶ ὡς<sup>8</sup> ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ<sup>9</sup> δεδήλωται. 15. ἐντεύθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους δέκα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται κακῶς σκηνοῦσιν. 16. δηλοῖ δὲ τοῖς φύλαξι πέντε μνᾶς ἀργυρίου καὶ θῶρακα χρυσοῦν. 17. ἔλεξεν ὅτι οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν μισθὸν λάβοιεν ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Σάρδεις.

III. 1. Cyrus promised<sup>10</sup> to provide<sup>11</sup> a market as soon as<sup>12</sup> he should arrive at Sardis. 2. He kept demanding that these gifts should be sent<sup>13</sup> to the king.

<sup>1</sup> Note that λέγουσιν might be used for ἔλεξαν without affecting the following construction (§ 530. a).

<sup>2</sup> ἐπειδὴ (ἐπειδὴν) τάχιστα = as soon as.      <sup>3</sup> § 201.      <sup>4</sup> § 355.

<sup>5</sup> The dependent clause might also read ὃς . . . γένοιτο (without ἂν).

<sup>6</sup> very many men.      <sup>7</sup> § 156. 2.      <sup>8</sup> how.      <sup>9</sup> the previous account.

<sup>10</sup> Always compose complicated indirect discourse in the direct form first.

<sup>11</sup> Cp. § 526. I. 11 for construction after ὑπισχνέομαι.

<sup>12</sup> Cp. sentence 7 above.      <sup>13</sup> Use acc. with inf. : these gifts to be sent.

LIV

DECLENSION OF CONTRACT PARTICIPLES. ὅπως WITH FUTURE INDICATIVE. VARIOUS IDIOMS

534. Learn the declension of ποιῶν, τιμῶν, δηλῶν (§ 622 and a).

a. Similarly are declined ζῶν *living*, νικῶν *conquering*, ὁρῶν *seeing*, etc.

535. Object clauses introduced by ὅπως. — Verbs signifying *to strive for*, *to care for*, or *to effect*, may be followed by ὅπως (meaning *how*) with the future indicative, which is almost always retained even after a secondary tense. The negative is μή:

βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἐτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ he plans how he shall never again be in the power of his brother.

a. But such verbs are often followed by ὅπως or ὡς with the present or aorist subjunctive or (after a secondary tense) optative, like ordinary purpose clauses (§§ 243, 268): διεπράξατο ὅπως εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσέλθοι he contrived how to enter into the fortification (*i.e.* that he might enter).

536. Worthy of special attention is the construction of ἔχω with an adverb:

καλῶς ἔχειν to be handsome *or* well;  
 κακῶς ἔχειν to be bad;  
 οὕτως ἔχειν to be thus *or* so;  
 ἄλλως ἔχειν to be otherwise.

537. Also noteworthy are the expressions: κακῶς ποιεῖν *to do ill to*, *to injure*, with the accusative; and its passive

κακῶς πάσχειν ὑπό τινος *to be injured by anybody*. Other adverbs like εὖ *well* may be similarly used with ποιεῖν and πάσχειν: εὖ πάσχειν ὑπό τινος = *to be treated kindly by anybody*.

ικανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν *he will be most competent both to benefit and to injure you*.

538. Used in a different sense are:

κακῶς πράττειν *to fare badly* (cp. examples, § 438);  
εὖ οἱ καλῶς πράττειν *to fare well*.

## 539.

## VOCABULARY LIV

ἐθυμία, ἄε, ἦ: *discouragement, despondency*.

ἄλλως (adv. of ἄλλος): *otherwise*.

ἀπ-άγω: *lead away, lead back*.

γε, enclitic particle, regularly following the emphatic word: *certainly, surely, at least*.

ἐξ-απατάω (ἀπατάω *deceive*, ἀπατήσω, ἠπάτησα, ἠπάτηκα, ἠπάτημαι, ἠπατήθην): *utterly deceive, cheat*.

ἐπι-μελέομαι, ἐπι-μελήσομαι, ἐπι-μεμλημαι, ἐπ-εμελήθην, dep. pass.: *take care of, care for*, with gen.

ἡττάομαι (ἡττων), ἡττήσομαι, ἡττήμαι, ἡττήθην: *be inferior, be conquered*. Used as pass. of νικάω.

μή-ποτε: *never*; used like μή *not*.

Ξενοφῶν, ὦντος, ὄ: *Xenophon*.

The word is declined like τριμῶν (§ 622) in the masc. sing.

οἶος, ἄ, ον, rel. pron.: *of what sort, what sort of, (such) as*. οἶός τε: *able*; οἶόν τ' ἔστιν: *it is possible*. Lat. *qualis*.

ὅπως, conj.: *how*, introducing an obj. clause, § 535. Cp. Vocabularies XXII, XXXIX.

ποιητέος, ἄ, ον (verbal adj. of ποίω, with ἐστί or εἰστί expressed or understood): *necessary to be done, must be done*.

τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο (declined like οὔτος, § 171), dem. pron.: *of such a sort, such*; often understood or expressed as antecedent of οἶος. τοιοῦτος οἶος = *such as*. The neut. is also τοιοῦτον as well as τοιοῦτο. Lat. *tālis*.

φωνή, ἡς, ἡ (cp. φωνή, φωνή): *voice*. Mega-phone.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

540. I. 1. βασιλεὺς νικῶν τυγχάνει. 2. οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες ταῦτα ἐθαύμαζον. 3. οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες<sup>1</sup> ὃ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. 4. ἡμᾶς, τοὺς Ξενοφῶντος φίλους, κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. 5. οἱ δ' ἀπήγαγον τὸν ἄνδρα διὰ τῆς ἀγορᾶς μάλα μεγάλη τῇ φωνῇ δηλοῦντα οἶα<sup>2</sup> ἔπασχεν. 6. σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν. 7. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθῦμιά ἦν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, ὀρώσι<sup>3</sup> μὲν τὸ εὖρος τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὀρώσι<sup>3</sup> δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν κωλύσοντας.<sup>4</sup> 8. ἐφοβούμεν μὴ Κῦρος ἐξαπατῶῃ ἡμᾶς· καὶ εἶχεν<sup>5</sup> οὕτως. 9. εἰ οὖν τις ἄλλο βέλτιον ὄρα, ἄλλως ἐχέτω. 10. ἡμῶν γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα<sup>6</sup> ὡς μήποτε ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα. 11. κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων<sup>7</sup> ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὄρατε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῶν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων.<sup>8</sup> 12. εὖ ἐπάθομεν ὑπ' ἐκείνου.

II. 13. τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ βαρβάρων Κῦρος ἐπεμελείτο ὡς πολεμῆν<sup>9</sup> ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν. 14. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὐχ οἶόν τ' εἶη διώκειν τοὺς πολεμίους. 15. τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων<sup>10</sup> ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν<sup>11</sup> σφίζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν. 16. οἱ δ' ἤρπαζον τὸ στρατόπεδον ὡς ἤδη πάντα νικῶντες. 17. ἀλλὰ δεῖ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως καλῶς νικῶντες σφιζώμεθα. 18. ὅτω<sup>12</sup> οὖν ταῦτα

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 405. I. 5.

<sup>2</sup> The antecedent is **τοιαῦτα** understood: *such things as, what sort of things.*

<sup>3</sup> A participle.

<sup>4</sup> § 212.

<sup>5</sup> Impers.

<sup>6</sup> § 477.

<sup>7</sup> *our affairs.*

<sup>8</sup> §§ 212, 355.

<sup>9</sup> § 333.

<sup>10</sup> *it is the right of, etc.,* § 229.

<sup>11</sup> § 380.

<sup>12</sup> § 228.



δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, λεξάτω ὡς τάχιστα. 19. τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων<sup>1</sup> πάντα ποιητέα ὅπως μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα.

III. 1. They evidently honor us. 2. They have been treated kindly by us. 3. We planned never, while living, to fall<sup>2</sup> into the power of the enemy.

---

 LV

THE FUTURE AND AORIST OF LIQUID THEMES. SOME OTHER VERBS THAT CONTRACT IN THE FUTURE, INCLUDING VERBS IN -ίζω. UNREAL SUPPOSITIONS

541. Verbs whose themes end in a liquid (§ 27), like φαίνω *show* and μένω *remain*, use for the future tense suffix €% and not σ%. As contraction results, the future of these verbs is like the present indicative, optative, infinitive, and participle of verbs in -έω. Learn the inflection of the future active and middle of φαίνω (§ 644), theme φαν- :

φανῶ, φανοίην, φανείν, φανῶν; φανοῦμαι, φανοίμην, φανείσθαι, φανούμενος.

φανῶν is declined like ποιῶν (§ 622).

542. Verbs with liquid themes form the first aorist with the suffix α instead of σα. At the same time they lengthen the theme vowel: α becomes η<sup>3</sup>; ε becomes ει; ι becomes ἰ; υ becomes ῦ:

φαίνω (theme φαν-), first aorist active ἔφηνα;  
 μένω (theme μεν-), first aorist ἔμεινα.

This first aorist is inflected like ἔλυσα.

---

<sup>1</sup> Quae cum ita sint.

<sup>2</sup> become in the power of.

<sup>3</sup> But α becomes α̅ in the first aorist after ι or ρ.

Learn the inflection in the first aorist active and middle of φαίνω (§ 645):

ἔφηναι, φήνω, φήναμι, φήνον, φήναι, φήνᾱς, -ᾱσα, -αν (declined like ἀκούσᾱς, § 209); ἐφηνάμην, φήνωμαι, φηναίμην, φήναι, φήνασθαι, φηνάμενος.

543. Verbs in -ίζω of more than two syllables form their futures in -ιέω, -ιέεις, etc., with resulting contraction: -ιῶ, -ιέῖς, etc. These future forms are contracted like the futures of liquid themes (§ 644) or the presents of verbs in -έω (§ 643):

νομιῶ, νομοίην, νομιεῖν, νομιῶν; νομοῦμαι, νομοίμην, νομεισθαι, νομούμενος; futures of νομίζω *think*.  
ἀγωνιούμεθα, future of ἀγωνίζομαι *contend*.

544. Some verbs drop σ of the future suffix between two vowels and then contract. Thus the future of καλέω *call* is καλῶ (*i.e.* καλέω for καλέσω), which is inflected like ποιῶ (ποιέω, § 643). This means that the future indicative, optative, infinitive, and participle of καλέω are like the present of this same verb in the corresponding moods. Similarly the future of μάχομαι *fight* is μαχοῦμαι (*i.e.* μαχέομαι for μαχέσομαι), μαχοίμην, μαχεῖσθαι, μαχοῦμενος.

*a.* The future of ἐλαίνω *drive, ride* is ἐλῶ (*i.e.* ἐλάω for ἐλάσω), which is inflected like τῖμάω (§ 643).

545. Unreal (or contrary to fact) suppositions. — εἰ is used with the imperfect indicative to express an unreal supposition in *present* time; with the aorist indicative to express an unreal supposition in *past* time; the verb of the conclusion (apodosis) may be either the imperfect indicative with ἄν, representing *present* time, or the aorist indicative with ἄν, representing *past* time.

Therefore these conditions may be distinguished, in form, from simple present and past suppositions by the single fact that *ἄν* accompanies the conclusion :

*εἰ ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἦσαν, κακῶς ἂν ἔπασχον* if they were in the power of the enemy, they would be suffering harm ;

*εἰ ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο, κακῶς ἂν ἔπαθον* if they had got into the power of the enemy, they would have suffered harm ;

*εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλεῷ* if you had not come, we should now be proceeding against the king.

546. When a supposition contrary to fact occurs in indirect discourse, neither the verb of the protasis nor that of the apodosis may be changed to the optative, even after a secondary tense. But the verb of the main clause (apodosis) must be changed to the infinitive or participle if the introductory verb requires the infinitive or participle ; *ἄν* is always retained :

*ἐνόμισαν εἰ ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο, κακῶς ἂν παθεῖν* they supposed that if they had got into the power of the enemy, they would have suffered harm.

## 547.

## VOCABULARY LV

*ἀγγέλλω* (for *ἀγγελ* + *γω*, theme *ἀγγελ-*), *ἀγγελῶ*, *ἠγγεῖλα*, *ἠγγεῖλα*, *ἠγγεῖμαι*, *ἠγγέλθην* : *announce, report*, with *ἔτι* or partic. in indir. disc. Cp. *ἄγγελος*.

*ἀγωνίζομαι* (theme *ἀγωνιδ-*), *ἀγωνιούμαι*, *ἠγωνισάμην*, *ἠγωνίσμαι* : *contend* as in games, *struggle*. Cp. *ἀγών*. Agonize.

*ἀδικέω* (cp. *ἄδικος*), *ἀδικήσω*, *ἠδίκησα*, *ἠδίκηκα*, *ἠδίκημαι*, *ἠδίκηθην* : *do wrong to, injure, be in the wrong*.

*ἀπ-αγγέλλω* : *bring back a message, report*.

*ἀπο-κρίνομαι* (mid. of *ἀπο-κρίνω*, see *κρίνω*) : *give one's decision, answer, reply*, with *ἔτι* clause.

*ἀπο-κτείνω* (for *κτεν* + *γω*, theme *κτεν-*), *-κτενῶ*, *-έκτεινα*, *-έκτονα* : *put to death, slay, kill*. The pass. is supplied by *ἀποθνήσκω*.

*γινώσκω* (reduplicated pres. from theme *γνω-*, with pres. suffix *σκ%*), *γνώσομαι*, 2 aor. to be learned later, *ἔγνωκα*, *ἔγνωσμαι*,<sup>1</sup> *ἔγνώσθην*<sup>1</sup> : *learn, know*, with *ἔτι* or partic. in indir. disc. Cp. Lat. (*g*)*nōscō*, *t-gnōtus*, Eng. know.

<sup>1</sup> With *sigma* irregularly inserted.

ἐπι-σιτίζομαι (theme σίτιδ-), -σι-  
τιοῦμαι, -εσιτισάμην: *get pro-  
visions for oneself.* Cp. σίτος.  
καλέω, καλώ (fut.), ἐκάλεσα (with  
the final short vowel of the  
theme retained before the tense  
suffix), κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλή-  
θην: *call, summon, invite.* Cp.  
ἐκ-κλησιᾶ.  
κρίνω (for κρίν + γω, theme κρίν-),  
κρινῶ, ἔκρινα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι,  
ἐκρίθην: *separate, judge, decide.*  
Cp. Lat. *cernō*. Critic.  
μένω (themes μιν-, μινη-), μινῶ,  
ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα: *remain, wait  
for.* Cp. Lat. *maneo*.

παρ-αγγέλλω: *give directions to,  
direct, command,* with dat. of  
pers. or acc. of pers. and inf.  
συν-καλέω (σύν + καλέω): *call to-  
gether.*  
φαίνω (for φαν + γω, theme φαν-),  
φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα (*have  
appeared*), πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην  
(*was shown*) and ἐφάνην (*ap-  
peared*): *bring to light, show*;  
MID. and PASS. usually *appear*.  
In mid. and pass. the verb may  
take a supplementary partic.  
like δηλός ἐστι (§ 449). Phe-  
nomenon.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

548. I. 1. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ. 2. καὶ  
ἕως<sup>1</sup> μένομεν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ τόπῳ, σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ  
εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλέςτατα μενοῦμεν. 3. Κλέαρχος  
ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἶει σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν  
ἀδελφόν; 4. καὶ Κῦρος λέγεται ἀποκτείνειν αὐτὸς τῇ  
ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ<sup>2</sup> τὸν ἄρχοντα. 5. ὁ δὲ συλλαμβάνει  
Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν.<sup>3</sup> 6. ταῦτα δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν.  
7. παρήγγειλε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν  
ἄνδρας.<sup>4</sup> 8. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμαν,  
ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα, ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι. 9. χρη-  
στὴν ὑμᾶς διαβαίνειν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὃ τι οἱ ἄλλοι  
Ἕλληγες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κῦρῳ. 10. τότε ἔφηναν οἱ α<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *while*, with present indicative of a definite present act.

<sup>2</sup> § 141.

<sup>3</sup> §§ 331, 332.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. § 324. I. 9.

<sup>5</sup> The antecedent is τοιαῦτα understood.

περὶ ὑμῶν ἐγίγνωσκον. 11. εἰ δὲ ἡγεμῶν μηδεὶς ἡμῶν φανεῖται,<sup>1</sup> ἐρωτήσομεν αὐτοὶ ἥτις ἢ πάροδος ἐστίν. 12. οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησεν ὁ λοχαγὸς ταῦτα, εἰ μὴ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσα. 13. ὥρᾱ<sup>2</sup> δὲ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. 14. ἐκάλεσέ τις αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν.

II. 15. ἔπειτα συγκαλοῦμεν<sup>3</sup> τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιῶτας. 16. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἔκρινε τὸν Μένωνος στρατιῶτην ἀδικεῖν. 17. ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς πώποτε παρέξει ἡμῖν, οὐδὲ ὄθεν<sup>4</sup> ἐπισιτιούμεθα. 18. καὶ ἡμῖν<sup>5</sup> γ' ἂν ἡδέως ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἐώρᾱ ἡμᾶς μένῃ παρασκευαζομένους. 19. Κλέαρχος, ἐπεὶ ἐφάνη τὰς σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην. 20. ἡγγειλεν οὖν ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς μενεῖ.

III. 1. He will call the soldiers together<sup>6</sup> if no guides shall appear.<sup>7</sup> 2. We should have gone back if the guide had not shown<sup>8</sup> us this road.

---

## LVI

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS: ἵστημι, ἐπιράμην, ἔβην,  
ἀπ-ἐδράν

**549.** By "mi-verbs" are meant those whose present indicative, first person, singular, ends in -μι. Thus ἵστημι *I set or place*; τίθημι *I put*; δίδωμι *I give*; and δείκνυμι *I show*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 242.

<sup>4</sup> A place *from which*.

<sup>7</sup> Cp. I. 11.

<sup>2</sup> § 230.

<sup>5</sup> *for us*.

<sup>8</sup> Use φαίνο.

<sup>3</sup> Fut.

<sup>6</sup> Cp. II. 15.

The essential difference between  $\mu$ -verbs and  $\omega$ -verbs is that  $\mu$ -verbs lack the thematic vowel  $\omega$  used by  $\omega$ -verbs before the personal endings in the present and second aorist tense systems. The thematic vowel  $\omega/\eta$  is retained in the subjunctive, however. In other tense systems<sup>1</sup>  $\mu$ -verbs and  $\omega$ -verbs are inflected alike.

**550.** Learn the inflection of  $\lambda\sigma\tau\eta\mu$  in the present system active and middle (= passive), in the second aorist active (§ 646), and in the second perfect active (§ 647). No second aorist middle of  $\lambda\sigma\tau\eta\mu$  exists; and in its stead the second aorist  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\rho\iota\acute{\alpha}\mu\eta\nu$  (which has no present) *I bought* should be learned (§ 646).

**551.**  $\lambda\sigma\tau\eta\mu$  is a reduplicated present, built on the theme  $\sigma\tau\alpha$ - thus:  $\sigma\iota\text{-}\sigma\tau\eta\text{-}\mu$ . The initial *sigma* is dropped, and is represented by the rough breathing. The vowel of the theme is long ( $\eta$ ) in the active voice in the following places: in the singular of the present and imperfect indicative; in the second person singular of the present imperative; and throughout the second aorist indicative, imperative (except the third person plural), and infinitive. In all other active forms of these tenses (present and second aorist), and in *all* middle forms of these tenses the theme vowel is short ( $\alpha$ ).

**552.** In the subjunctive  $\alpha$  contracts with the thematic vowel  $\omega/\eta$ :

$$\alpha + \omega = \omega.$$

$$\alpha + \eta = \eta.$$

$$\alpha + \eta = \eta.$$

---

<sup>1</sup> Except a few second perfects and pluperfects of the  $\mu$ -form, like  $\lambda\sigma\tau\alpha\tau\omicron\nu$  *they (two) stand*,  $\lambda\sigma\tau\alpha\sigma\alpha\nu$  *they stood*.

553. Some  $\omega$ -verbs have second aorists that are inflected like those of  $\mu$ -verbs :

$\xiβην$  I went (from  $βαίνω$ ); subjv.  $βῶ$ ; opt.  $βαίην$ ; imv.  $βῆθι$ ; inf.  $βῆναι$ ; partic.  $βάς, βᾶσα, βάν$ .  
 $\acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\acute{\epsilon}\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\nu$  I ran away *by stealth*,  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\acute{\epsilon}\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\varsigma, \acute{\alpha}\pi\acute{\epsilon}\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}$ , etc. (from  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\delta\acute{\iota}\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\sigma\kappa\omega$ ); subjv.  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\delta\rho\delta\rho\acute{\omega}, \acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\delta\rho\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\varsigma, \acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\delta\rho\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}$ , etc.; opt.  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\delta\rho\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\iota\eta\eta$ ; imv. wanting; inf.  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\delta\rho\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\nu\alpha\iota$ ; partic.  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\text{-}\delta\rho\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\varsigma, \acute{\alpha}\nu\sigma\alpha, \acute{\alpha}\nu$ .

554. Learn the declension of  $\iota\sigma\tau\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$  and  $\sigma\tau\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$ , which are declined alike (§ 617). Cp.  $\acute{\alpha}\kappa\acute{o}\upsilon\sigma\alpha\acute{\iota}\varsigma$  (§ 209). Learn the declension of  $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\tau\acute{\omega}\varsigma$  (§ 624).

555. MEANINGS OF THE TENSES AND VOICES OF  $\iota\sigma\tau\eta\mu\iota$   
*set OR place OR stand*

	TRANSITIVE			INTRANSITIVE
	ACT.	MID.	PASS.	
Pres.	$\iota\sigma\tau\eta\mu\iota$ I set	$\iota\sigma\tau\alpha\mu\iota$ I set for myself	$\iota\sigma\tau\alpha\mu\iota$ I am set or placed	$\iota\sigma\tau\alpha\mu\iota$ I take my place
Fut.	$\sigma\tau\acute{\eta}\sigma\omega$ I shall set	$\sigma\tau\acute{\eta}\sigma\omicron\mu\iota$ I shall set for myself	$\sigma\tau\alpha\theta\acute{\eta}\sigma\omicron\mu\iota$ I shall be set or placed	$\sigma\tau\acute{\eta}\sigma\omicron\mu\iota$ I shall take my place
Aor.	$\iota\sigma\tau\eta\sigma\alpha$ I set or placed	$\iota\sigma\tau\eta\sigma\acute{\alpha}\mu\eta\eta$ I set or placed for myself	$\iota\sigma\tau\acute{\alpha}\theta\eta\eta$ I was set or placed	$\iota\sigma\tau\eta\eta$ I stood
Pf.				$\iota\sigma\tau\eta\kappa\alpha$ I stand
Plup.				$\epsilon\iota\sigma\tau\eta\kappa\eta$ I stood
Fut. Pf.				$\iota\sigma\tau\acute{\eta}\xi\omega$ I shall stand

a. The transitive and intransitive tenses of compounds of  $\iota\sigma\tau\eta\mu\iota$  are similarly distinguished.

## 556.

## VOCABULARY LVI

ἀναγκάσω (theme ἀναγκαδ-, cp. ἀνάγκη), ἀναγκάσω, ἠνάγκασα, ἠνάγκασα, ἠνάγκασμαι, ἠναγκάσθη: *compel, force*.

ἄνευ, prep. with gen. only: *without*.

ἀν-ίστημι: *make stand up, start up*; (intr.) *stand up*. For intr. tenses see § 555.

ἀντί, prep. with gen. only: *instead of, for*. In comp.: *against*. Anti-dote, etc.

ἀπο-διδράσκω (δι-δρά-σκω, δρᾶσσομαι, ἔδραν, δέδρακα): *run away by stealth; run away from, with acc.*

ἄρμα, ατος, τό: *chariot for use in battle*. See p. 252, Fig. 22.

βασιλεία, ας, ἡ (βασιλεύω): *kingdom*. Do not confuse this word with βασιλεια, τά, *royal buildings, palace* (§ 217).

δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἔδυνήθην (or ἡδυνήθην), dep. pass.:

*be able*. Cp. δύναμις. *Dynast, dynamite*.

ἐπί-σταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθη, dep. pass.: *understand*.

ἐπριάμην (2 aor.): *I bought*. No pres. from this verb.

ἵππικός, ἡ, ὄν (ἵππος): *of horse, of cavalry*.

ἵστημι, στήσω, ἕστησα and ἕστην, ἕστηκα and ἕστατον, ἐστάθην: *set, place, make stand, halt*; intr. tenses: *stand, stand still, stop*. See § 555. Cp. Lat. *stō*, Eng. *stand*.

καθ-ίστημι: *set or place down, station*; intr. tenses: *be placed, stationed, or established; station oneself, take one's place*. For intr. tenses cp. ἵστημι, § 555. κεφαλή, ἡς, ἡ: *head*. Cp. Lat. *caput*.

Λύδιος, α, ον (Λυδία): *Lydian*.

ὄνος, ου, ὄ: *ass*. Lat. *asinus*.

Φρυγία, ας, ἡ: *Phrygia*.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

557. I. 1. ἔνταῦθα ἕστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 2. καὶ οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου<sup>1</sup> οὐκέτι ἴστανται. 3. καὶ ἀνίστασαν τοὺς στρατιώτας. 4. φύλακας δὲ καθίστασαν. 5. Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. 6. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος βουλευέται ὅπως μήποτε ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἦν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. 7. ἐπειρῶντο δ' ἀποδρᾶναι· καὶ οὗτος ἀποδρᾶς ὄχετο.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Ariacus and his men*.

<sup>2</sup> § 318.



8. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐφοβείτο μὴ οὐ δύναίτο<sup>1</sup> ἐκ τῆς χώρᾱς ἐξελεῖν τῆς βασιλέως. 9. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος. 10. τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν διαβάς ἐξελαίνει διὰ Φρυγίᾱς. 11. ὥστε ἠναγκάσθη ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε. 12. ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασεν, ἔστησε τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης.<sup>2</sup> 13. καὶ πρίασθαι τὸν σῆτον οὐκ ἦν<sup>3</sup> εἰ μὴ<sup>4</sup> ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ. 14. καὶ οἱ ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι,<sup>5</sup> ἐπὶ πολὺ<sup>6</sup> δραμόντες ἔστασαν.

II. 15. καὶ ἔμεινε πολὺν χρόνον ἑστῶς. 16. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ἄρταξέρξης κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν, μετεπέμψατο Κῦρον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφόν. 17. ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης ποταμός ἐστιν, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι. 18. τὰς δὲ ὄρνιθας ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῆ,<sup>7</sup> ἔστι<sup>8</sup> λαμβάνειν. 19. ἔχει δὲ Κῦρος δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἵππικὴν, ἣν πάντες ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα.

III. 1. The soldiers cannot cross<sup>9</sup> this river without boats. 2. Cyrus after halting<sup>10</sup> his chariot took his place in the battle.

<sup>1</sup> § 438. a.

<sup>2</sup> § 192.

<sup>3</sup> *it was not possible.*

<sup>4</sup> *except.*

<sup>6</sup> § 417.

<sup>6</sup> *for a long distance.*

<sup>7</sup> § 399.

<sup>8</sup> § 102.

<sup>9</sup> 2 aor.

<sup>10</sup> *having halted.*

## LVII

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS (*Continued*): τίθημι, ἵημι.  
 DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. ACCUSATIVE ABSOLUTE

558. Learn the inflection of τίθημι in the present system active and middle (= passive), and in the second aorist, active and middle (§ 646).

559. τίθημι is a reduplicated present, built on the theme θε- (cp. § 551) thus: τί-θη-μι. The vowel of the theme is long (η) in the singular of the present indicative active, and in the first person singular of the imperfect indicative active. The second and third persons singular of the imperfect indicative active are formed like the corresponding persons of contract verbs in -έω thus: ἐτίθεις, ἐτίθει. Similarly the second person singular of the present imperative active is τίθει.

560. The second aorist indicative active of τίθημι is wanting in the singular number; its place is supplied by first aorist forms with the irregular suffix -κα, -κας, -κε. So the inflection of the aorist indicative active is as follows :

τίθηκα	}	1 Aor.		τίθειμι	}	2 Aor.
τίθηκας				τίθειτον		
τίθηκε(ν)				τίθειτην		

561. Learn the inflection of ἵημι (§ 649), which is nearly like τίθημι. This is also a reduplicated present, from the theme ἱ-. The theme when augmented becomes εἰ-, which is its form in the second aorist (but see the paradigm below, § 562) and perfect tenses.

562. The second aorist indicative active, like that of *τίθημι*, is wanting in the singular; and these forms are supplied by an irregular first aorist in *-κα*, etc., as follows:

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \etaκα \\ \etaκας \\ \etaκα(ν) \end{array} \right\} 1 \text{ Aor.}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} ειπον \\ ειτην \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} ειμαν \\ ειτε \\ εισαν \end{array} \right\} 2 \text{ Aor.}$
--	---	--

563. Learn the declension of *τιθείς* and *θείς*, which are declined alike (§ 620). Similarly are declined *ἰείς* and *εἶς*. Cp. *λυθείς* (§ 388).

564. **Deliberative subjunctive.** — The subjunctive of the first person may be used in a deliberative question. The negative is *μή*.

*ποῖ φύγω*; whither shall I flee?

*τί μὴ μένω τὸ τέλος*; why shall I not wait for the end?

565. Such a subjunctive, in an indirect question, is retained after a primary tense of the verb of *asking*; but the subjunctive may be changed to the same tense of the optative if the sequence is secondary:

*ἤρετο τὸν παῖδα εἰ παύσειεν αὐτόν* he asked the boy whether he should strike him.

The direct question was *παύσω* (aor. subjv.) *αὐτόν*; *shall I strike him?*

566. **Accusative absolute.** — The participles of impersonal verbs may be used in the accusative singular neuter in an absolute construction (cp. the genitive absolute, § 401). The use is generally concessive (*although*):

*ἐξὸν τοῖς βαρβάροις φίλους εἶναι, τοὺς Ἕλληνας αἰρήσονται* though it is possible (*lit.* it being possible, cp. *ἔξι-εσσι*) for them to be friends to the barbarians, they will choose the Greeks.

## 567.

## VOCABULARY LVII

ἀνδράποδον, ου, τό (ἀνήρ and πούς):  
slave taken in war.

ἀφ-ίημι: let go away, dismiss.

βάλλω (for βαλ + ω, themes βαλ-,  
βλη-), βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα,  
βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην: throw, hurl,  
pelt. Often with acc. of pers.  
and dat. of means.

εἰρήνη, ης, ἡ: peace. Irene.

ἐπι-τίθημι: put or place upon; put  
or inflict punishment (δίκην)  
on somebody (τινί); MID. set  
oneself upon, attack, with dat.

ἔημι, ἤσω, ἤκα and εἶπον, εἶκα, εἶμαι,  
εἶθην: send, hurl (with some-  
thing, in dat.); MID. hurl one-  
self, hasten.

λίθος, ου, ὁ: stone. Litho-graphy  
(γράφω).

ποι; interr. adv.: whither? where?

συν-τίθημι: place or set together;  
MID. place oneself in agree-  
ment with somebody, agree  
with somebody (dat.), make a  
compact. May be followed by  
inf. of indir. disc.

τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα and θέτον, τέ-  
θηκα, ἐτέθην: put, set. τιθε-  
σθαι τὰ ὄπλα: set down one's  
arms, rest one's arms on the  
ground; therefore (1) take a  
military position, take one's  
post; (2) halt.

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

568. I. 1. τοὺς δ' ὀπλίτας θέσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὰ ὄπλα.  
2. οἱ δ' ὀπλίται ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα. 3. καὶ ἵενται πολλοὶ  
εἴσω καὶ νικῶσι τοὺς πολεμίους. 4. ἐπεὶ δ' εἶδον  
ἀλλήλους, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἵεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 5. καὶ  
ἀφίεσαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 6. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς τῶν  
Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε πάντα τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ  
ἀφείναι. 7. ὁ δὲ συντίθεται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίων<sup>1</sup>  
παρέσεσθαι<sup>2</sup> ἔχων σιτία καὶ ποτά. 8. Κῦρος ἔφη  
ἐθέλειν<sup>3</sup> ἐπιθεῖναι τὴν<sup>4</sup> δίκην Ἀβροκόμῳ. 9. οὐκ ἐθέλω  
ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτόν, δεδιώς<sup>5</sup> μὴ λαβῶν με δίκην μοι  
ἐπιθῆ. 10. καὶ Ἀριαῖος κελεύει ὑμᾶς φυλάττεσθαι

<sup>1</sup> on the morrow.

<sup>2</sup> In dir. disc. παρέσομαι (§ 110. a and c).

<sup>3</sup> § 110. a and c.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. § 281. I. 2, footnote 1.

<sup>5</sup> fearing; from δέδια = δέδοικα, and declined like ἰστώς (§ 624).

μη ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς<sup>1</sup> οἱ βάρβαροι. 11. καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο αὐτοῖς οὐδεὶς οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν οὐδεὶς ἦλθεν. 12. ποῖ φύγωμεν; 13. οὐχ ἔξουσιν ὅποι φύγωσιν. 14. ἔξὸν εἰρήνην ἔχειν Κλέαρχος αἰρεῖται πολεμεῖν.

II. 15. ἔξὸν δὲ χρήματα ἔχειν, Κλέαρχος αἰρεῖται τούτοις εἰς<sup>2</sup> πόλεμον χρῆσθαι. 16. οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιθεῖντο αὐτοῖς. 17. δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἀξιοῦν Κῦρον ἀφιέναι ἡμᾶς. 18. πέμπωμεν ἄνδρας τινὰς ἢ πάντας; 19. ἐβουλευόντο δὲ εἰ πέμποιεν ἄνδρας τινὰς ἢ πάντας. 20. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων βάρβαροι ἔβαλλον λίθοις τοὺς ἐπιτιθεμένους.

III. 1. Although it is possible for the general to inflict punishment on the slaves, he wishes to let them go. 2. The soldiers used to hurl their spears<sup>3</sup> a long way.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 155.

<sup>2</sup> *for*, i.e. to spend this on.

<sup>3</sup> §§ 141; 336. 5.

<sup>4</sup> μακρᾶν (§ 142) agreeing with ὁδόν understood.



FIG. 22. — αἵμα.

## LVIII

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS (*Continued*): δίδωμι,  
 ἔάλων OR ἤλων, ἔγνων

569. Learn the inflection of δίδωμι *give* in the present system active and middle (= passive) and in the second aorist, active and middle (§ 646).

570. δίδωμι is a reduplicated present, like ἵστημι and τίθημι, built on the theme δο- thus: δι-δο-μι. The vowel of the theme is long (ω) in the singular of the present indicative active. The singular of the imperfect indicative active is formed like the corresponding singular of a contract verb in -ώ thus: ἐδίδουν, ἐδίδους, ἐδίδου. Similarly the second person singular of the present imperative active is δίδου.

571. The second aorist indicative active of δίδωμι is wanting in the singular number; its place is supplied by first aorist forms with the irregular suffix -κα, -κας, -κε (cp. ἔθηκα and ἤκα). So the inflection of the aorist indicative active is as follows:

ἔδωκα	}	1 Aor.		ἔδοτον	}	2 Aor.
ἔδωκας				ἔδοτε		
ἔδωκε(ν)				ἔδοσαν		

572. It is convenient to group together four irregular forms of the second aorist active imperative, in the second person singular: θές (τίθημι, § 646), ἔς (τίημι, § 649), δός (δίδωμι, § 646), and σχές (ἔχω, 2 aor. ἔσχου). The last named resembles the other forms only in using -ς for -θι as the personal ending.

**573.** As mentioned before (§ 553), some  $\omega$ -verbs have second aorists inflected like those of  $\mu$ -verbs. Here are included the second aorists of *ἀλίσκομαι* *be captured*, and *γιγνώσκω* *know*. Following are the synopses :

a. Indic.	ἄλων or ἦλον	δ. ἔγνω
Subjv.	ἄλω	γῶ
Opt.	ἄλοιην	γούην
Imv.	wanting	γῶθι
Inf.	ἄλῶναι	γῶναι
Partic.	ἄλούς, ἄλοῦσα, ἄλόν	γούς, γούσα, γόν
G.	ἄλόντος, ἄλούσης, ἄλόντος etc.	γόντος, γούσης, γόντος etc.

**574.** These two verbs (*ἀλίσκομαι* and *γιγνώσκω*), differing from *δίδωμι*, retain  $\omega$  throughout the second aorist indicative, imperative (except the third person plural), and infinitive (cp., on the contrary, *ἔδοσαν*, *δότω*, etc.):

#### SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE OF *γιγνώσκω*

1. ἔγνω		ἔγνωμεν
2. ἔγνως	ἔγνωτον	ἔγνωτε
3. ἔγνω	ἔγνώτην	ἔγνωσαν

#### IMPERATIVE

2. γῶθι	γῶτον	γῶτε
3. γῶτω	γῶτων	γῶντων

The subjunctive and optative are inflected like *δῶ* and *δοίην*.

**575.** Learn the declension of *διδούς* and *δούς*, which are declined alike (§ 621). Similarly are declined *ἄλούς* and *γούς*.

## 576.

## VOCABULARY LVIII

ἀλ-ίσκομαι (themes ἀλ- and ἀλο-),  
ἀλάσσομαι, ἔαλων or ἤλων, ἔαλωκα  
or ἤλωκα: *be taken, be captured.*  
Used as pass. of αἰρῶ.

ἀπο-σφίξω: *save from something;*  
*bring safely back.*

βαρβαρικός, ἢ, ὄν (βάρβαρος): *for-*  
*eign, barbarian, not Greek. Bar-*  
*baric.*

δεξιός, ἄ, ὄν: *right, on the right*  
*hand or side. δεξιᾶ, ἄς, ἡ (sup-*  
*ply χεῖρ): the right hand, as a*  
*pledge. Lat. dexter.*

εἰα-βάλλω: *accuse falsely, slander.*  
*Diabolic (δια-βολικός).*

δια-δίδομι: *give from hand to*  
*hand, distribute.*

δίδομι, δώσω, ἔδωκα and ἔδοτον,  
δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην: *give;*  
*sometimes offer (in pres. and*  
*impf.). δίκην διδόναι: give*  
*satisfaction. suffer punishment.*  
*Cp. δῶρον. Lat. dō,*  
*dōnum.*

ἐκ-λείπω: *leave out, abandon;*  
*(intr.) leave off, fail. Eclipse.*

λόγχη, ἡς. ἡ: *spear point, spear.*

παρα-δίδομι: *give over, surrender;*  
*pass along (a watchword: σύν-*  
*θημα).*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

577. I. 1. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ ἕξ μηνῶν<sup>1</sup> μισθόν. 2. καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι διὰ φιλιᾶν χρήματα πολλά. 3. φίλος τε ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστον δυναμένοις,<sup>2</sup> ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην. 4. συμβουλευῶ ὑμῖν μὴ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα. 5. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος οὐκ ἔδωκε πιστά, Τισσαφέρηνς διαβάλλει αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν. 6. ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἶη. 7. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἔαλω. 8. Κλέαρχος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ τῶν νικῶντων<sup>3</sup> εἶη τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι. 9. ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου. 10. φοβοίμην

<sup>1</sup> § 278.

<sup>2</sup> the most powerful.

<sup>3</sup> the part of, etc.; cp. §§ 229, 232. I. 10, 540. II. 15.



δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ἔπεσθαι φ<sup>1</sup> Κῦρος δοίη.<sup>2</sup> 11. ἐντεῦθεν διδοῶσιν οἱ μὲν Πέρσαι βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν. 12. ἔαν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα τὰ πλοῖα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτῶμεν<sup>3</sup> Κῦρον.

II. 13. Σύνενοις ἔδωκε Κύρω χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς<sup>4</sup> τὴν στρατιάν. 14. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχη ἐδίδουσαν λαμβάνειν<sup>5</sup> ὃ τι βούλοιο. 15. ταῦτα δὲ γνούς ἤτοῦμην βασιλέᾳ δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι<sup>6</sup> ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 16. καὶ Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλείως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς δεξιᾶς ἔδουσαν τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς. 17. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ οὐχ ἤλω ἐν τῇ κόμῃ. 18. καὶ μισθὸν οὐκ ἐδίδου ὁ σατράπης. 19. ἀνέστησαν οἱ Ἑλληνες καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὦρᾱ<sup>7</sup> φύλακας καθιστάναι καὶ σύνθημα παραδιδόναι.

III. 1. Then the generals knew<sup>8</sup> that it was not safe to remain. 2. We gave pledges to the captains of the Greeks. 3. I should fear to embark<sup>9</sup> on the boats which Cyrus might give us.

<sup>1</sup> § 285.

<sup>2</sup> This relative clause has the construction of the protasis of a less vivid future condition (§ 267), the conclusion being expressed by φοβούμεν ἂν. In this sentence φ<sup>2</sup>, attracted from ἂν to the case of its antecedent ἡγεμόνι, is equivalent to εἴ τινα. The less vivid future type of the conditional relative protasis (introduced by ὅς, ὅτε, ἐπεὶ, etc.) is comparatively rare.

<sup>3</sup> § 244.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. § 568. II. 15.

<sup>5</sup> permission to take.

<sup>6</sup> permission to bring you safely back.

<sup>7</sup> § 230.

<sup>8</sup> 2 aor.

<sup>9</sup> ἐμ-βαίνειν with εἰς and acc.



FIG. 23. — λόγχη.

## LIX

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS (*Continued*): δεικνύμι,  
ἔδυν, κείμαι. WISHES

578. Learn the inflection of δεικνύμι *show* in the present system active and middle (= passive), § 648.

579. The final vowel of the theme is long (ῠ) in the singular of the present and imperfect indicative active, and in the second person singular of the present imperative active.

580. This verb has a regular first aorist (ἔδειξα), but no second aorist. A second aorist of the μ-form, however, is seen in ἔδυν from δύω *enter, set, sink* (used of the sun). Its second aorist synopsis is as follows:

Indic. ἔδυν; subjv. δύω; opt. wanting; imv. δῦθι; inf. δύναι; partic. δύς, δύσα, δύν (gen. δύντος, δύσης, δύντος).

Learn the inflection of this second aorist (§ 648).

581. The subjunctive and optative of verbs in -νμι are formed exactly like the corresponding moods of ω-verbs, without contraction. And even in the other moods thematic forms (*i.e.* ω-forms) also occur. Thus δεικνύει is found along with δεικνύσι; ἔδεικνε with ἔδεικνῦ; and δεικνύων as well as δεικνύς.

582. Learn the declension of δεικνύς and δύς, which are declined alike (§ 619).

583. Learn the inflection of κείμαι *lie, be placed, be situated* (§ 654). This verb and its compounds are used as perfect passives of τίθημι *place* and its compounds.

**584. Possible wishes.** — Wishes that refer to future time are expressed by the present or aorist optative *without* ἄν. This optative is sometimes introduced by εἴθε or εἰ γάρ *if only, would that*. The negative is μή:

μή οἱ θεοὶ ταῦτα δοῖεν may the gods not grant this.  
σώζοισθε or εἴθε σώζοισθε may you be saved.

**585 Impossible wishes.** — Wishes that cannot be realized refer to present or past time. They may be expressed by the imperfect indicative (of *present* time) or the aorist indicative (of *past* time); these tenses must be introduced by εἴθε or εἰ γάρ. The negative is μή:

εἴθε οἱ θεοὶ ταῦτα μὴ ἔδοσαν would that the gods had not granted this.

**586.** A wish that cannot be realized may also be expressed by ὄφελον, ες, ε (2 aor. of ὀφείλω owe), *I, you, or he ought* with the present or aorist infinitive:

ὄφελε Κῦρος ζῆν would that Cyrus were alive (*lit.* Cyrus ought to be living).

## 587.

## VOCABULARY LIX

ἀνα-παύω : *make cease*; MID. *rest*.

ἀπ-όλλυμι (όλλυμι for όλ-νύ-μι, themes όλ-, όλε-; όλω, όλεσα, όλώλεκα [§ 447] and 2 pf. όλωλα, όλόμην): *destroy, lose*; MID. and 2 pf. act., *perish, be lost*.

αὐτοῦ (cp. αὐτός), adv.: *in the very place, here, there*.

δείκνυμι (and δεικνύω, theme δεικ-), δείξα, δείξα, δείξεια, δείξειμαι, δείχθην: *show, point out*.

δέομαι, δεήσομαι, δεδέμαι, ἐδεήθην, dep. pass.: *want, need; desire, ask, beg*. Often with gen. or

with gen. of pers. and inf. Cp. δεῖ.

δύω (and δύνω), δύσω, δύσασα (trans.), δύων (intr.), δέδωκα, δέδωμαι, ἐδύθην: *enter, set* (used of the sun).

ἐπι-δείκνυμι: *show, point out*; mid. in sense of act. and also *distinguish oneself*.

ἐπι-κειμαι: *lie upon, attack*, with dat.

ἥλιος, ου, ό: *sun*. Helio-trope (τρέπω turn).

κατά-κειμαι: *lie down*.

κείμαι, κείσομαι: *lie, lie outstretched*  
as the dead on the battlefield.

This verb is used as the pass.  
of the pf. tenses of τίθημι, in  
the meaning *be placed, be set*.

With τὰ ὅπλα κείται cp. the  
act. θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα.

κοινός, ἡ, ὄν: *common, in common,*  
*general.*

Μῆδοι, ὡν, οἱ: the *Medes*.

μήν, postpositive adv.: *in truth,*

*certainly.* γα μήν: *to be sure,*  
*at any rate.*

νεκρός, ὅθ, ὅ: *dead body, corpse.*

Cp. Lat. *necō*. Necro-logy (λό-  
γος *account*).

ὀμ-νύ-μι (and ὀμ-νύω, themes ὀμ-  
ὀμο-), ὀμοῦμαι, ὀμοσα, ὀμόμοκα  
(§ 447), ὀμόμο(σ)μαι, ὀμό-  
(σ)θην: *swear, promise with*  
*an oath, take oath.*

## EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

588. I. 1. ὁ δὲ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν λαβὼν Κύρω δείκνυ-  
σιν. 2. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐδείκνυε πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ χρή-  
ματα. 3. τὰς δὲ κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν ἐπεδείκνυσαν  
τοῖς Ἑλλησιν. 4. ἦν οὖν τῆς ὥρας<sup>1</sup> μικρὸν πρὸ δύντος  
ἡλίου. 5. Κύρος δὲ τὸν θώρακα ἐνέδυν<sup>2</sup> καὶ ἀναβὰς  
ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβεν. 6. ἐν-  
ταῦθα λέγεται ἡ βασιλέως γυνὴ φυγεῖν, ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν  
τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. 7. ὤμνυτε δὲ ἡμῖν  
τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους<sup>3</sup> καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομιεῖν.<sup>4</sup> 8. εἰς γε  
μήν ἀρετὴν ἐπιδείκνυσθαι ἐβούλετο. 9. ἐκ δὲ τούτου<sup>5</sup>  
ἄλλοι ἀνίσταντο ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἶη<sup>6</sup> ἡ ἀπορίᾳ.  
10. μὴ γενοίμεθα ζῶντες ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις. 11. οἱ  
δὲ πολέμιοι εὐθύς ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς. 12. Χειρίσοφος  
ἠγοῖτο. 13. πολλὰ μοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο. 14. ἔκωτο  
δὲ πολλοὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.

II. 15. καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ

<sup>1</sup> the time was, lit. it was of the hour, part. gen. with the following words.

<sup>2</sup> put on, lit. entered, 2 aor. of ἐν-δύω.

<sup>3</sup> the same men as friends.

<sup>5</sup> and thereupon.

<sup>4</sup> § 519.

<sup>6</sup> § 345.

ἀπώλετο. 16. ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειτο. 17. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδείξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῆ. 18. κατακέιμεθα ὡσπερ ἐξόν<sup>1</sup> ἀναπαύεσθαι. 19. ἕως δ' ἂν αὐτοῦ μένωμεν, πάντες δεόμεθα κωῆς σωτηριᾶς· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἀπόλλυνται.

III. 1. We took oaths<sup>2</sup> not<sup>3</sup> to be enemies<sup>4</sup> to one another. 2. Many men lay prostrate on the plain after the battle. 3. They gladly show<sup>5</sup> their possessions to Cygus.

ἔρχομαι  
εἶμι  
ἤλαθον

## LX

IRREGULAR MI-VERBS: εἶμι, φημί, οἶδα, AND εἶμι  
(Completed and Reviewed)

589. Learn the inflection of εἶμι *I am going, I shall go* (§ 651); φημί *I say* (§ 652); and οἶδα *I know* (§ 655).  
Review the inflection of εἶμι *I am* (§ 650).

## 590.

## VOCABULARY LX

ἀ-δύνατος, ον (δύναμαι): <i>impossible</i> .	εἶ-μι, impf. ἦα: <i>go, shall go</i> ; pres. serving as fut. of ἔρχομαι. Lat. <i>eo, ire</i> .
ἀπ-εἶμι (εἶμι): <i>go away; go back, return</i> .	ἔξ-εἶμι (εἶμι): <i>go out, go forth</i> .
δι-δά-σκω (theme διδαχ-), διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαί, ἐδιδάχθην: <i>teach</i> . Didactic.	ἔπ-εἶμι (εἶμι): <i>go or come on, approach</i> .
	θόρυβος, ου, ὅ: <i>noise</i> .

<sup>1</sup> § 566; this use of the acc. absolute is conditional, as is proved by ὡσπερ just as if.

<sup>2</sup> Use impf.

<sup>3</sup> § 519. δ.

<sup>4</sup> Nom. (§ 110. α').

<sup>5</sup> Use δείκνυμι.

3. they have treated us worse than we them.

IRREGULAR MI-VERBS

κάμ-νω (theme καμ-), fut. καμοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔκαμον, pf. κέκηκα: labor, be weary.

κραυγή, ἦς, ἡ: outcry.

οἶδα (2 pf. with pres. meaning), ἦδη (2 plup.) or ἦδεν, εἶσομαι (fut.): know.

φέρω (themes φερ-, εἶ-, ἐνεκ-, ἐνεγκ-),

οἶσω, ἤνεγκα or ἤνεγκον, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγα, ἤνεχθη: bear, carry; carry away, receive (as pay).

Cp. Lat. ferō.

φη-μί (theme φα-), φήσω, ἔφησα: say, declare. οὐ φημι (cp. Lat. negō): deny, say... not (§ 156. 1. a). Cp. Lat. fari.

οἶδε + Corup. scite 4/1

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

Ἰ δίνω pledges

591. I. 1. οἶδα δεξιὰς δεδομένας 2. αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ

es as  
είνω

ἔφη λέγει 3. εὐδοξέειν αὐτοῖς

4. ἀλλὰ ἴου

των, εἰδοῦσθε ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνων.

5. ἦν οὖν ἴητε σὺν ἡμῖν, δᾶρεκόν ἕκαστος ὑμῶν οἷστέ τοῦ μηνός.

not  
-y  
-y

6. σκέπτεον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλεστάτα ἀπιμεν καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτηδεῖα ἔξομεν.

7. ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὃ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρῖνονται Κύρω.

8. καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἔφασαν ἔρχεσθαι ὅποι δέ, οὐκ ἔφασαν εἶδέναι.

9. τὸν δ' οὖν εὐφράτην ἴσμεν ὅτι ἀδυνατοῦ διαβῆναι κωλύόντων πολεμίων.

10. κραυγῆ πολλῇ ἐπίασεν ἡμᾶς εἰδὼς ὅπως δέ εἰδοῦσθε ἀγῶνα ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω.

should  
-y  
-y

11. ὅπως δέ εἰδοῦσθε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω.

12. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μένοιεν ἢ ἀπιθῆεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

II. 13. ταῦτα δέ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε<sup>1</sup> διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος.

14. ὅτω δέ Μένων φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτω δὲ ἄλλος ἐβουλεύετο ἐπιβουλεῖων.

15. τοὺς δ' ἀνθρώπους ἠρώτων εἰ τινα εἰδῆεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανερὰν.

know  
would say  
past say  
relat  
conclude

1 § 441.

2 § 442.

3 each.

4 § 155.

5 §§ 223, 291.

6 §§ 363, 564, 565.

7 § 193.

8 § 417.

know some read other than this

16. Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ <sup>present</sup> παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ <sup>know</sup> ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. 17. ἐγὼ <sup>then</sup> τοῦτο, ὡς ἄνδρες, <sup>know</sup> καμνῶ ἤδη συσκευαζόμενος<sup>1</sup> καὶ τρέχων καὶ τὰ ὄπλα φέρων καὶ ἐν τάξει <sup>Greek</sup> ἰῶν καὶ φυλακῆς<sup>2</sup> φυλάττων καὶ μαχόμενος. 18. ἅμα <sup>at sunset</sup> ἠλῶ δύναται<sup>3</sup> οἱ Ἕλληνες <sup>went</sup> ἐξήσαν ἐκ τῶν <sup>from the</sup> κομῶν. <sup>EB</sup> δύνω = sink

III. 1. Clearchus deliberated whether they should send<sup>4</sup> some men<sup>5</sup> or should all go to the camp. 2. They said they did not know in what direction<sup>6</sup> the barbarians had gone.

<sup>1</sup> § 439.<sup>2</sup> § 181.<sup>3</sup> at sunset (cp. § 157).<sup>4</sup> §§ 362, 564, 565.<sup>5</sup> Omit men.<sup>6</sup> ὅποι.

Κ  
Κλεάρχος εβουλεύετο πότερον  
πέμποιέν τινας ~~αἱ~~ ἢ πάντες  
ῥοιεν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον

Reader 15 x 16





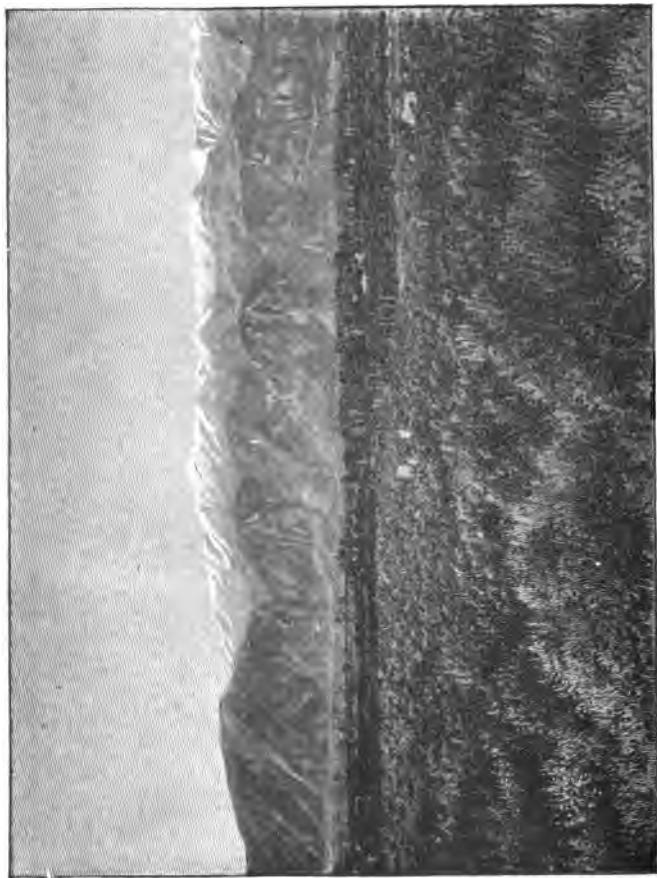


FIG. 24. — Sparta.

## SELECTIONS FROM THE *ANABASIS*

[The following selections are from Xenophon's *Anabasis of Cyrus*. In places they are somewhat simplified, chiefly by the omission of unessential details.]

### THE SUBJECT OF THE *ANABASIS*

Cyrus, a young and ambitious prince of Persia, plotted to wrest the throne from his elder brother Artaxerxes II, the reigning king (401 B.C.). So far as possible, he disguised his real purpose. But information of the plot was nevertheless laid before the Great King by his crafty satrap Tissaphernes.

Cyrus enlisted in his enterprise about thirteen thousand Greek soldiers, who were attracted by the desire to serve under so noble a leader and by the promise of large pay. The larger part of these assembled, under Cyrus's orders, at Sardis; and from this city they set forth in the spring of 401 B.C. Only after they had marched well into the interior were they informed of the real object of the expedition. Cyrus had also a host of Persians, said to have numbered a hundred thousand. They proved utterly unreliable. The leader of this "barbarian" force was the Persian Ariaeus.

The young prince was generous; he had persuasive manners and the enthusiasm of youth. He dazzled the common soldiers with his promises, and he commanded the loyalty of his officers by rich presents and favors. So he was able to win to his cause many really noble spirits among

both Persians and Greeks. Not a few of these, as the sequel showed, were ready to prove their devotion by sacrificing their lives. Of his Greek generals the most prominent was the Spartan Clearchus, a fearless and exceedingly stern disciplinarian. The other Greek generals were faithful and in their way good men, also; but exception must be made of the Thessalian Menon, who was faithless and unprincipled.

By the village of Cunaxa, near Babylon, Cyrus met the royal army, which was commanded by the king in person (late in the summer of 401 B.C.). Cyrus's force was outnumbered eight times over, if reliance may be placed on the figures that are mentioned. Yet the issue of the battle might have been favorable to Cyrus, owing to the valor and success of his Greek mercenaries, if only he had not risked his own life. He was slain. And the Greeks, far from wishing any pretext for staying longer in the Persian empire, had only the desire to get back to Greek lands again.

They accomplished their wearisome and dangerous retreat during the winter of 401-400 B.C., striking through the country northward over mountains and, for the most part, through wild and hostile tribes. But almost at the beginning of their retreat, before they had passed out of the reach of Persia, they lost the leadership of their generals, including the intrepid Clearchus. These were entrapped and put to death through the agency of Tissaphernes.

At this point Xenophon, the Athenian, the author of the history, put himself forward as a leader. He had previously accompanied the expedition merely as a gentleman in search of adventure. He was now elected a general and appointed to the difficult position of commander of the rear guard, while Cheirisophus was chosen

to command the van. And under this leadership the Greeks who have become known in history as "The Ten Thousand" came, with losses, to Trebizond, one of the Greek settlements on the Black Sea. After further adventures they arrived finally in Ionia again (Cheirisophus had meantime died).

Xenophon was the author of several interesting works besides the *Anabasis of Cyrus*. And in addition to his literary interests he was an ardent sportsman, fond of horses, dogs, and hunting. He has left us a description of his pleasant country-place in Elis, where later in life he settled to enjoy his good fortune, surrounded by his family. Here he engaged in the composition of his books and in the delights of country life.

I. *The Greek soldiers and the inducements to join Cyrus's army*

οἱ πλείστοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἦσαν οὐ σπάνει βίου ἐκπεπλευκότες ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφορᾶν, ἀλλὰ τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἀκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ 5 τούτων ἕτεροι ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας,

I. 1. ἦσαν ἐκπεπλευκότες (ἐκ-πλέω): *had sailed off* from their homes.

οὐ σπάνει βίου: *not on account of lack of means, not from lack of livelihood*. σπάνει is dative of cause (§ 403).

2. ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφορᾶν: *after this pay, i.e. to earn money by service in Cyrus's army*.

3. ἀκούοντες: expresses cause (§ 213).

οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δὲ: see § 99; the words are appositives to οἱ πλείστοι.

ἄνδρας ἄγοντες: *bringing men along, i.e. enlisting soldiers with the aid of the money that Cyrus furnished*.

4. προσανηλωκότες: *having spent in addition money of their own; see προσανάλισκω*.

5. τούτων: partitive genitive with ἕτεροι *others*.

οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα καταλιπόντες ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἤξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κῦρῳ πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. (vi. 4. 8.) ὁ δὲ Κῦρος στρατεύματι ἀληθινῶ ἔχρη-  
 10 σατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, οἱ χρημάτων ἔνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνον ἔπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλέωτερον εἶναι Κῦρῳ καλῶς ὑπάρχειν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. (i. 9. 17.)

II. *Cyrus leads his army into the heart of the Persian empire before he meets serious resistance. The king's apparent unwillingness to fight throws the invaders off their guard*

ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα.  
 5 ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ

6. ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἤξοντες πάλιν: *with the purpose of returning again* (§ 332) *after they had gained wealth for them.*

7. τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κῦρῳ: = τοὺς παρὰ Κῦρῳ ἄλλους (§§ 67, 70), subject of πράττειν.

8. πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν (§ 110): *were making great fortunes.*

9. ἀληθινῶ: *trusty.*

ἐχρήσατο: *had the services of.*

11. κερδαλέωτερον εἶναι (§ 110): *it was more profitable.*

12. τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος: *monthly pay.*

II. 2. εἴκοσι ποδῶν: see § 278.

τὸ εὖρος: see § 279.

3. ποιεῖ: *had made.*

ἀντὶ ἐρύματος: *for a defense.*

4. ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται: *when he learned.* The present is frequently used by Xenophon when a past tense is required by good English style. ποιεῖ and πυνθάνεται are illustrations of the so-called "historical present."

προσελαύνοντα: see § 441.

παρῆλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἔμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλᾶνὸν καλέσᾳς τὸν Ἄμπρα-  
 10 κιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δᾶρειακοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ προθυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθείης, ὑπισχνουμαί σοι  
 15 δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρῦσιον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κῦρου στρατεύμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κῦρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέαι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμε-  
 20 λημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος

6. ταύτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ: see § 180.

7. ὑποχωρούντων: *retreating*, agrees with ἵππων and ἀνθρώπων.

8. ἦσαν: the subject is the neuter plural ἰχνη. This deviation from the rule (§ 71) occurs occasionally in the *Anabasis* and in other Greek.

9. Ἄμπρακιώτην: *Ambracian*, from the town Ambracia in Epirus.

11. τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ (§ 180): *on the eleventh day before, i.e. (in our idiom) ten days before*. The Greeks, like the Romans, counted in the days at both ends of the reckoning. With ἀπ' ἐκείνης supply τῆς ἡμέρας.

12. δέκα ἡμερῶν: see § 155.

13. Οὐκ ἄρα κτλ.: the direct quotation is introduced by a capital letter (without quotation marks), § 2.

εἰ . . . οὐ μαχεῖται: this apparently irregular negative (§ 106. *b*) is used because Cyrus quotes the exact words of the soothsayer above (l. 12).

14. ἐὰν ἀληθείης: see § 241.

17. ἐκώλυε . . . διαβαίνειν: see § 382. I. 1.

18. ἔδοξε . . . ἀπ-εγνωκέαι (from ἀπο-γιγνώσκω) τοῦ μάχεσθαι: *he seemed to have abandoned the idea of fighting*.

19. ἡμελημένως μᾶλλον: *more carelessly*.

καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὄπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγετο καὶ ὑποζυγίων. (i. 7. 15–20.)

III. *The battle of Cunaxa, in which Cyrus encounters the Persian king and is slain*

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορᾶν πλήθουσαν καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλθεῖν, ἠνίκα Πατηγύᾳς ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ,  
 5 καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσι οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόᾳ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο. Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσᾳς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θῶράκα ἐνέδῃ καὶ ἀνα-

21. καθήμενος: *sitting*, participle of κάθημαι, which is inflected in § 653.

22. τὸ δὲ πολὺ: supply τοῦ στρατεύματος.

αὐτῷ: *for him*, dative of disadvantage (§ 53. d).

23. The order of the Greek words rearranged for translation is: πολλὰ τῶν ὄπλων ἤγετο (*were carried*) τοῖς στρατιώταις (§ 53. d) ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

III. 1. ἀμφὶ ἀγορᾶν πλήθουσαν: *about the time of full market*, the middle of the forenoon.

2. σταθμὸς: *stopping place or*

*station* (cp. ἵστημι) is the meaning here.

καταλθεῖν: *to unyoke* the pack animals for the rest from the mid-day heat. ἔμελλε takes a present infinitive as well as the future (§ 156. 2).

3. τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν: partitive genitive. Cyrus had a devoted bodyguard.

4. ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ: *with his horse in a sweat*, properly a dative of means (§ 141).

5. βαρβαρικῶς: *in Persian*.

7. ὡς . . . παρεσκευασμένος: *apparently prepared*.

10 βὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ,  
 15 Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τούτου, Μένων δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἐξακόσιοι ἕστησαν κατὰ μέσον τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ, ὀπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κῦρου.  
 20 Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἠνίκα δὲ δεῖλη ἐγένετο, ἐφάνη κοινορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῶ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ  
 25 πολὺ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίνοντο, τάχα δὴ αἱ λόγχοι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ γεροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλῖται σὺν ποδῆρεσι

12. ἕκαστον: *each*, in apposition to the subject of *καθίστασθαι*; *ordered them each to take his place*.

13. τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος (§ 179): *the right wing*. For the declension of *κέρατος* see § 602.

14. πρὸς: *beside*.

15. ἐχόμενος: *next*.

17. ὅσον: *about*.

20. ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν: *with his head unprotected* by a

helmet. But Cyrus doubtless wore the *tiāra*, the usual Persian head-dress, which was a sort of turban.

22. δεῖλη: *early afternoon*.

23. ἐφάνη: *appeared*, 2 aor. pass. of φαίνω.

χρόνῳ (§ 410) συχνῶ ὕστερον: *a considerable time later*.

24. ἐπὶ πολὺ: *over a long distance*.

29. γεροφόροι: *supply ἦσαν*.



30 ξυλίνας ἀσπίσω. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὔτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι·  
ἄλλοι δ' ἰππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ' οὔτοι κατὰ

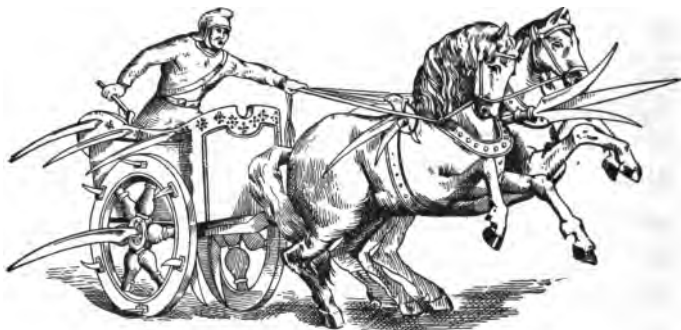


FIG. 25. — δρεπανηφόρον ἄρμα.

ἔθνη ἐπορεύοντο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα  
συχρὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα.  
οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῆσαν.  
35 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι  
τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ  
ἐβόᾳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολε-  
μίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἶη. κἄν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν,  
πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποιήται. ἀλλ' ὁ Κλεάρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν  
40 ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ, φοβού-

31. ἄλλοι: *besides*, lit. *other*.  
Observe the omission of a conjunc-  
tion before the second ἄλλοι; this  
is due to a desire for a vivid and  
concise style at this point.

κατὰ ἔθνη: *nation by nation*.

32. ἄρματα: supply ἦν.

διαλείποντα συχρὸν: *distant a  
considerable space*.

33. τὰ . . . καλούμενα: *the so-  
called scythe-bearing chariots*.

34. ἐν ἴσῳ: *in step*.

37. κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολε-  
μίων: *against the center of the  
enemy*.

38. εἴη: this causal clause in-  
troduced by ὅτι *because* is really a  
subordinate clause in indirect dis-

μενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κῦρῳ ἀπεκρί-  
 νατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ  
 τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς  
 προήει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνε-  
 45 τάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρε-  
 λαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο  
 ἐκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς  
 φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν  
 Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσῃς ὡς συναντήσῃς ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγ-  
 50 γέλλοι. ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσῃς εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε  
 πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλὰ.  
 ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων  
 ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι  
 σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ Κῦρος ἐθαύ-

course, representing the thought of Cyrus; therefore the optative εἶη replaces the indicative (§ 530).

κᾶν . . . νικῶμεν: protasis of the more vivid future condition; the apodosis is emphatically expressed as already accomplished, πεποίηται. πάνθ' is for πάντα (§§ 29, 31). For ἡμῖν see § 458.

41. μὴ κυκλωθείη: see § 438. a.

42. ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι (§ 260) ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι (§ 535. a): *that he was taking care that all should be well*; lit. *that it was a care to him how it should be well*.

44. ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον: *remaining in the same place*; μένον is a pres. partic. neut. agreeing with στράτευμα.

συν-ετάττετο: *was forming in line*.

46. οὐ πάνυ πρὸς: *not very near to*.

49. πελάσῃς ὡς συναντήσῃς: *approaching so as to meet him*.

50. ἐπιστήσῃς: supply τὸν ἵππον.

51. τὰ ἱερὰ: *the usual or ordinary sacrifices*; τὰ σφάγια: *the propitiatory offerings*, an extraordinary service for the occasion. Supply εἶη (§§ 260, 291) in the predicate.

52. θορύβου: object of ἤκουσε, which sometimes takes the *thing heard* in the genitive.

53. εἶη: see § 345.

54. παρέρχεται: might have been changed to what form? § 260.

55 μασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὃ τι εἶη τὸ σύνθημα.  
 ὃ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο Ζεὺς σωτήρ καὶ νίκη. ὃ δὲ Κῦρος  
 ἀκούσᾶς Ἄλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω.  
 ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώρᾶν ἀπήλαυε. καὶ  
 οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τῷ φάλαγγε  
 60 ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἠνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ  
 ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγ-  
 ξαντο πάντες οἷον τῷ Ἐνυάλῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες  
 δὲ ἔθειον. λέγουσι δὲ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς  
 τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις.  
 65 πρὶν δὲ τόξυμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι  
 καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κρά-  
 τος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμφ,  
 ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἐπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ  
 μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλή-  
 70 ῶν κενὰ ἠνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προῖδοιεν, δίσταντο.

56. Ζεὺς σωτήρ καὶ νίκη: *Zeus savior and victory*, the "watchword."

57. Ἄλλὰ δέχομαι: *Well, I accept it.*

58. εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώρᾶν: *to his own place.*

59. στάδια: see § 142.

δι-ειχέτην: *impf. dual 3 pers. of δι-έχω: were separated.*

61. ἤρχοντο: from ἀρχομαι *begin.*

ἀντίοι: *to meet*; *lit. face to face*; this adjective takes a dative.

62. οἷον: *what sort of shout, i.e. the cry which.*

Ἐνυάλῳ: *Enyalios*, a name of Ares, god of war.

63. ταῖς ἀσπίσι: see § 141.

64. τοῖς ἵπποις: see § 53. *d.*

65. πρὶν . . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι: see § 524.

ἐκκλίνουσιν: *historical present.* See note on p. 266, l. 4.

66. κατὰ κράτος: *cp. ἀνὰ κράτος*, § 443.

67. θεῖν δρόμφ (§ 141). *'o charge on the run.*

68. τὰ μὲν . . . τὰ δὲ: § 99.

70. κενὰ ἠνιόχων: *empty of charioteers.*

ἐπεὶ προῖδοιεν: *whenever they saw them in front* (§ 417).

ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναι·  
 75 τις ἐλέγετο. Κύρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἑλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἠδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὃ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν. ἔνθα δὴ Κύρος δείσας μὴ

71. ἔστι δ' ὅστις: *and a man, or and somebody*; lit. *there is who*.

72. οὐδὲν . . . οὐδέ: only one of these negatives can be translated into English (§ 428).

οὐδέ: *not even*.

73. οὐδ' . . . οὐδεὶς οὐδέν: one negative in English (§ 428).

74. τοξευθῆναι: see § 391.

75. ὁρῶν: *although he saw* (§ 213. c).

76. ἠδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος: in the same construction as ὁρῶν.

77. οὐδ' ὡς: *not even so, not even under these circumstances*.

78. διώκειν: complementary infinitive.

συνεσπειραμένην: from *συνεπειράομαι*. The six hundred

horsemen were Cyrus's body-guard.

79. ἐπεμελεῖτο: *watched to see*.

80. ἔχων: *although he occupied* (§ 213. c); the concessive force is clearly indicated by the following ὅμως *nevertheless*.

82. κέρατος: for the construction see § 372.

ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου: *from the opposing line*.

αὐτῷ: see § 317.

83. τοῖς τεταγμένοις: in the same construction as αὐτῷ.

αὐτοῦ: to be taken with ἔμπροσθεν.

84. ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν: *apparently for encircling the army of Cyrus, i.e. for a flank march*.

85 ὄπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψη τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει  
 ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς  
 πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε  
 τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ  
 ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσῃ τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. ὡς  
 90 δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κῆρον ἑξα-  
 κόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι  
 ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι  
 καλούμενοι. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὦν καθορᾷ βασιλεῖα καὶ  
 τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνῳ στίφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο,  
 95 ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρώ ἴετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει  
 κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος.  
 παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῶ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλ-  
 μὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐμάχοντο καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ  
 Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου. Κῦρος δὲ  
 100 αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτῶ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν  
 ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῶ. (i. 8. 1-27.)

85. κατα-κόψη: see § 438. a.

86. ἀντίος: to meet him. Cp. p. 272, l. 61.

88. τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους: the king's own body-guard.

89. ὡς: when.

91. εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες: hastening to the pursuit.

92. σχεδὸν: chiefly.

93. καλούμενοι: so-called.

94. ἠνέσχετο: restrained himself (ἀν-έχω), remarkable for the double augment.

95. Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρώ: direct quotation.

παίει: supply αὐτόν, i.e. the king.

97. ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμόν: the accusative here follows ὑπό because the verb ἀκοντίζει implies motion.

IV. *Discouragement of the soldiers after their generals had been treacherously removed by Tissaphernes. (Xenophon had not yet been elected general)*

ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλῳ δὲ πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμῳ ἦσαν, ἀγορᾶν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρήξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπειχόν δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διείργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προυδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἱππέα 10 οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὐδηλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθεῖη· ταῦτ' ἐννουούμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως

IV. 1. συν-ειλημμένοι ἦσαν: προεδεδώκεσαν. πρό and περί never suffer elision.

3. θύραις: doors, a Persian expression, somewhat like our court. The meaning here is, however, *in the heart of the king's country.*

κύκλῳ: *in a circle, surrounding them* (§ 141).

5. παρήξειν: regular construction with ἔμελλεν (§ 156. 2) *was likely.*

τῆς Ἑλλάδος: genitive of separation (§ 201).

7. τῆς οἴκαδε (§ 70) ὁδοῦ: *the homeward way.*

8. προυδεδώκεσαν: pluperfect of προ-δίδωμι, contracted from

προεδεδώκεσαν. πρό and περί never suffer elision.

οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι: the barbarian troops of Cyrus under the command of Ariaeus fled after the battle of Cunaxa and were no longer allied with the Greeks.

10. σύμμαχον: appositive to ἱππέα.

νικῶντες: conditional participle (§ 213. c), *if they should conquer.*

11. οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν: see § 266.

ἡττηθέντων αὐτῶν: genitive absolute (§ 401) expressing a condition.

12. ἀθύμως ἔχοντες: *being discouraged.*

ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἑσπέρῃαν σίτου ἐγεύσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα  
 15 πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανεν ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεῦδειν ὑπὸ λήπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παιδῶν, οὓς οὐποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. (iii. I. 2-3.)

V. *Under the command of Xenophon and Cheirisophus the survivors of the "Ten Thousand" march on, until, from a mountain in northern Armenia, they get a glimpse of the Euxine (Black) Sea*

ἐντεῦθεν ἦλθον πρὸς πόλῳ μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾳς ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς πολεμίας χώρᾳς ἄγοι αὐτούς. ἐλθὼν  
 5 δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν. καὶ ἀφικνούνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ. ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους, κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. ἀκούσᾳς δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ

13. εἰς τὴν ἑσπέρῃαν: *into the evening, at evening.*

σίτου: partitive genitive with ἐγεύσαντο.

15. ταύτην τὴν νύκτα: see § 142.

16. ὑπὸ λήπης: *from grief.*

17. πόθου πατρίδων κτλ.: *and from desire of fatherlands, etc.* πατρίδων is called an "objective" genitive, for it represents the object of the verbal idea contained in the noun πόθος *desire*.

18. ὄψεσθαι: infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 110. c); see ὄραω.

V. 4. ὅπως . . . ἄγοι: on the purpose clause see § 268; the historical present πέμπει is a secondary tense, because it really refers to past time.

5. πέντε ἡμερῶν: see § 155.

7. τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ: see § 180.

τῷ ὄρει: see § 119.

10 οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾤθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπι-  
 τίθεσθαι πολεμίους· ἐπειδὴ δ' ἡ βοή πλείων τε ἐγί-  
 γνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ βοῶντας καὶ πολλῶ μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἡ  
 βοή, ἐδόκει δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ  
 15 ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἀνα-  
 λαβὼν ἐβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοῶντων τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν Θάλαττα θάλαττα. ἔνθα δὴ ἔθεον πάν-  
 τες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο  
 καὶ οἱ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον,  
 20 ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγούς  
 καὶ λοχαγούς δακρύνοντες. καὶ ἔξαπίνης οἱ στρατιῶ-  
 ται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. (iv.  
 7. 19-25.)

VI. *At the Euxine Sea the Greeks rest and celebrate their safe arrival with athletic games*

Καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν  
 Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ. ἐνταῦθα

10. οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες: supply ἀκούσαντες.

ἄλλους πολεμίους: *other enemies*, for they knew from experience that they had enemies in the rear.

12. αἰεὶ: *continually, in succession*.

13. πολλῶ (§ 410) μείζων: *much louder*.

14. ἐδόκει δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι: *it seemed to be something of more than ordinary importance*.

15. Λύκιον: *Lycius* was the commander of the cavalry.

16. ἀκούουσι . . . τῶν στρατιωτῶν: the genitive of the person is common after the verb of hearing.

17. Θάλαττα θάλαττα: the very words that were shouted.

20. περιέβαλλον: *embraced*. On περί see p. 275, l. 8, πρὸς δώκεσαν.

VI. 1. Τραπεζοῦντα: *modern Trebizond*.



ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱς ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρεί-  
 χον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε  
 5 τοὺς Ἑλληνας καὶ ξένια ἔδοσαν βούς καὶ ἄλφιτα καὶ  
 οἶνον. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἣν εὗξαντο παρε-  
 σκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι  
 τῷ Διὶ σωτήρια καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ  
 τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ εὗξαντο. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα  
 10 γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ ἔσκηνον. εἶλοντο δὲ  
 Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην δρόμου τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ  
 τοῦ ἀγῶνος προστατῆσαι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγέ-  
 νετο, τὰ δέρματα παρέδοσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγεῖ-  
 σθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποιηκῶς εἴη. ὁ δὲ  
 15 δεῖξᾱς οὐπερ ἔστηκότες ἐτύγχανον Οὐτος ὁ λόφος,  
 ἔφη, κάλλιστος τρέχῃ ὅπου ἂν τις βούληται. Πῶς  
 οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ

3. ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα: see § 427.

5. ξένια: as guest gifts (gifts in token of hospitality), appositive to βούς, etc.

6. τὴν θυσίαν ἣν εὗξαντο: the sacrifice which they had vowed. The Greeks had vowed (iii. 2. 9), at the proposal of Xenophon, to make sacrifices to Zeus the Savior as soon as they should arrive in a friendly land; they had also vowed to sacrifice to the other gods according to their ability.

7. ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι: enough oxen to sacrifice in payment (ἀπο-) of their vow.

8. Διί: dative of Zeus (§ 606. 2).  
 σωτήρια: thank-offerings for

safety; ἡγεμόσυνα: thank-offerings for good guidance; with both words supply ἱερά: victims, offerings (lit. sacred things).

Ἡρακλεῖ: for declension see § 603.

11. ἐπιμεληθῆναι: expresses purpose after εἶλοντο chose (§ 334).

13. τὰ δέρματα: these were to serve as prizes for the victors in the contests. Such prizes are alluded to as early as Homer (*Iliad* XXII. 159).

15. ἔστηκότες: see § 215.

16. τρέχειν: limits κάλλιστος: fairest for running (§ 333).

17. ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως: in a place so rough and thickly wooded.

δασεῖ οὕτως; ὁ δ' εἶπε, Μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ  
καταπεσών. ἠγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες μὲν στάδιον τῶν  
20 αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλείστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρήτες πλείους  
ἢ ἐξήκοντα ἔθειον, πάλην δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκρά-  
τιον ἠγωνίζοντο· καὶ καλὴ θεᾶ ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ  
κατέβησαν καὶ ἄτε θεωμένων τῶν ἐταίρων πολλὴ  
φιλονικίᾳ ἐγίνετο. (iv. 8. 22-27.)

18. Μᾶλλον τι κτλ.: *all the more hurt will be the one that falls down.*

19. ἠγωνίζοντο . . . στάδιον: the latter word is cognate accusative (§ 181), *contended [in] the stadium*, a race of six hundred Greek feet.

20. δόλιχον: *long foot-race*, cognate accusative with ἔθειον. This consisted of covering the length of the stadium several times (6, 12, 20, or 24).

21. πάλην κτλ.: cognate accusatives with ἠγωνίζοντο *contended in wrestling and boxing and the pancratium*. The last named was a very severe, rough-and-tumble fight, consisting partly of wrestling and partly of boxing.

23. κατέβησαν: *entered* the competition.

θεωμένων τῶν ἐταίρων: genitive absolute; the *causal* force is distinctly marked by the word ἄτε, which may be rendered *inasmuch as* or *since*.

## SUMMARY OF FORMS

For the use of -v movable see § 32.

### Ā-DECLENSION, OR FIRST DECLENSION

592.

#### FEMININE

Sing. N.	ἀρχή, ἡ, <i>rule</i>	χώρα, ἡ, <i>country</i>	γέφυρα, ἡ, <i>bridge</i>	θάλαττα, ἡ, <i>sea</i>
G.	ἀρχῆς	χωρᾶς	γεφύρας	θαλάττης
D.	ἀρχῆ	χωρᾶ	γεφύρα	θαλάττη
A.	ἀρχήν	χωρᾶν	γεφύραν	θάλατταν
V.	ἀρχή	χωρᾶ	γεφύρα	θάλαττα
Dual N. A. V.	ἀρχᾶ	χωρᾶ	γεφύρα	θαλάττᾶ
G. D.	ἀρχαιν	χωραιν	γεφύραιν	θαλάτταιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀρχαί	χωραι	γεφύραι	θάλατται
G.	ἀρχῶν	χωρῶν	γεφύρων	θαλαττῶν
D.	ἀρχαῖς	χωραῖς	γεφύραις	θαλάτταις
A.	ἀρχᾶς	χωρᾶς	γεφύρας	θαλάττης

593.

#### MASCULINE

Sing. N.	στρατιώτης, ὁ, <i>soldier</i>	νεανίας, ὁ, <i>young man</i>
G.	στρατιώτου	νεανίου
D.	στρατιώτῃ	νεανία
A.	στρατιώτην	νεανίαν
V.	στρατιῶτα	νεανία
Dual N. A. V.	στρατιῶτᾶ	νεανιά
G. D.	στρατιῶταιν	νεανίαιν
Plur. N. V.	στρατιῶται	νεανία
G.	στρατιωτῶν	νεανίων
D.	στρατιώταις	νεανίαις
A.	στρατιῶτας	νεανίας

## 594.

## CONTRACT NOUNS

Sing. N.	(μνάᾱ) μνᾱ, ἡ, <i>mina</i>	(γέα) γῆ, ἡ, <i>land</i>
G.	(μνάᾱς) μνᾱς	(γέας) γῆς
D.	(μνάᾱ) μνᾱ	(γέᾱ) γῆ
A.	(μνάᾱν) μνᾱν	(γέαᾱν) γῆν
V.	(μνάᾱ) μνᾱ	(γέα) γῆ
Dual N. A. V.	(μνάᾱ) μνᾱ	
G. D.	(μνάᾱιν) μνᾱίν	
Plur. N. V.	(μνάᾱι) μνᾱι	
G.	(μνάᾱων) μνᾱών	
D.	(μνάᾱις) μνᾱις	
A.	(μνάᾱς) μνᾱς	

## O-DECLENSION, OR SECOND DECLENSION

## 595.

Sing. N.	ἄνθρωπος, ὁ, <i>man</i>	ὁδός, ἡ, <i>road</i>	πλοῖον, τό, <i>boat</i>
G.	ἀνθρώπου	ὁδοῦ	πλοίου
D.	ἀνθρώπου ←	ὁδοῦ	πλοῖο
A.	ἄνθρωπον	ὁδόν	πλοῖον #
V.	ἄνθρωπε	ὁδί	πλοῖον
Dual N. A. V.	ἀνθρώπου	ὁδοῦ	πλοῖο
G. D.	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδοῖν	πλοῖοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἄνθρωποι	ὁδοί	πλοῖα
G.	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδῶν	πλοίων
D.	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδοῖς	πλοῖοις
A.	ἀνθρώπους	ὁδοῖς	πλοῖα

## 596.

## CONTRACT NOUN

SINGULAR		DUAL		PLURAL	
N.	(νόος) νοῦς, ὁ, <i>mind</i>	N. A. V.	(νόω) νόω	N. V.	(νόοι) νοῖ
G.	(νόου) νοῦ	G. D.	(νόοιν) νοῖν	G.	(νόων) νόων
D.	(νόω) νόω			D.	(νόοις) νοῖς
A.	(νόον) νοῖον			A.	(νόους) νοῖς
V.	(νόε) νοῖ				

## CONSONANT DECLENSION, OR THIRD DECLENSION

597

Sing. N. V.	κήρυξ, ἡ <i>herald</i>	φάλαγξ, ἡ <i>phalanx</i>	διώρυξ, ἡ <i>ditch</i>	κλώψ, ὁ <i>thief</i>
G.	κήρυκος	φάλαγγος	διώρυχος	κλωπός
D.	κήρυκι	φάλαγγι	διώρυχι	κλωπί
A.	κήρυκα	φάλαγγα	διώρυχα	κλώπα
Dual N. A. V.	κήρυκι	φάλαγγι	διώρυχι	κλώπι
G. D.	κήρυκοιν	φάλαγγοιν	διωρύχοιν	κλωποῖν
Plur. N. V.	κήρυκες	φάλαγγες	διώρυχες	κλώπες
G.	κήρυκων	φάλαγγων	διωρύχων	κλωπῶν
D.	κήρυξι	φάλαγγεσσι	διώρυξι	κλωπί κ
A.	κήρυκας	φάλαγγας	διώρυχας	κλώπας

598

Sing. N. V.	ἀσπίς, ἡ <i>shield</i>	πούς, ὁ <i>foot</i>	νύξ, ἡ <i>night</i>	ἄρχων, ὁ <i>ruler</i>
G.	ἀσπίδος	ποδός	νυκτός	ἄρχοντος
D.	ἀσπίδι	ποδί	νυκτί	ἄρχοντι
A.	ἀσπίδα	πόδα	νύκτα	ἄρχοντα
Dual N. A. V.	ἀσπίδα	πόδα	νύκτε	ἄρχοντε
G. D.	ἀσπίδοιν	ποδοῖν	νυκτοῖν	ἀρχόντοι
Plur. N. V.	ἀσπίδες	πόδες	νύκτες	ἄρχοντες
G.	ἀσπίδων	ποδῶν	νυκτῶν	ἀρχόντων
D.	ἀσπίσι	ποσὶ	νυξί	ἄρχουσι
A.	ἀσπίδας	πόδας	νύκτας	ἄρχοντας

Sing. N. V. χάρις, ἡ, *favor*

G. χάριτος

D. χάριτι

A. χάριν

Dual N. A. V. χάριτε

G. D. χαρίτοι

Plur. N. V. χάριτες

G. χαρίτων

D. χάρισι

A. χάριτας

στράτευμα, τό, *army*

στρατεύματος

στρατεύματι

στράτευμα

στρατεύματε

στρατευμάτων

στρατεύματα

στρατευμάτων

στρατεύμασι

στρατεύματα

acc of monosyllable

στρατεύματι

599.

	Sing. N. V.	ἀγών, ὁ, <i>contest</i>	ἡγεμόν, ὁ, <i>guide</i>	μήν, ὁ, <i>month</i>	λιμὴν, ὁ, <i>harbor</i>	} λιμέρες
αγῶνος	G.	ἀγῶνος	ἡγεμόνος	μηρός	λιμένος	
	D.	ἀγῶνι	ἡγεμόνι	μηρί	λιμένι	
	A.	ἀγῶνα	ἡγεμόνα	μήνα	λιμένα	
	Dual N. A. V.	ἀγῶνι	ἡγεμόνε	μήνε	λιμένε	
	G. D.	ἀγῶνοι	ἡγεμόνοι	μηροῖν	λιμένοι	
	Plur. N. V.	ἀγῶνες	ἡγεμόνες	μήνες	λιμένες	
	G.	ἀγῶνων	ἡγεμόνων	μηρῶν	λιμένων	
	D.	ἀγῶσι	ἡγεμόσι	μησί	λιμέσι	
	A.	ἀγῶνας	ἡγεμόνας	μήνας	λιμένες	
	Sing. N.	γείτων, ὁ, <i>neighbor</i>		κραιτῆρ, ὁ, <i>mixing-bowl</i>		
γείτονος	G.	γείτονος		κραιτήρος		
	D.	γείτονι		κραιτήρι		
	A.	γείτονα		κραιτήρα		
	V.	γείτον		κραιτήρ		
	Dual N. A. V.	γείτονι		κραιτήρε		
	G. D.	γείτονοι		κραιτήροι		
	Plur. N. V.	γείτονες		κραιτήρες		
	G.	γείτόνων		κραιτήρων		
	D.	γείτοσι		κραιτήρσι		
	A.	γείτονας		κραιτήρας		

600.

	Sing. N.	πατήρ, ὁ, <i>father</i>	μήτηρ, ἡ, <i>mother</i>	θυγάτηρ, ἡ, <i>daughter</i>	ἀνὴρ, ὁ, <i>man</i>	}
	G.	πατρός	μητρός	θυγατρός	ἀνδρός	
πατέρα	D.	πατρί	μητρί	θυγατρί	ἀνδρί	
	A.	πατέρα	μητέρα	θυγατέρα	ἄνδρα	
	V.	πάτερ	μήτηρ	θύγατερ	ἄνερ	
	Dual N. A. V.	πατέρε	μητέρε	θυγατέρε	ἄνδρε	
	G. D.	πατέροι	μητέροι	θυγατέροι	ἀνδροῖν	
	Plur. N. V.	πατέρες	μητέρες	θυγατέρες	ἄνδρες	
πατέρεις	G.	πατέρων	μητέρων	θυγατέρων	ἀνδρῶν	
	D.	πατέραςι	μητέραςι	θυγατέραςι	ἀνδράσιν	
πατέραςι	A.	πατέρας	μητέρας	θυγατέρας	ἄνδρας	

## 601.

Sing. N.	ὄρος, <sup>1</sup> τό, <i>mountain</i>	τριήρης, <sup>1</sup> ἡ, <i>trireme</i>	
G.	(ὄρε-ος) ὄρους	(τριήρε-ος) τριήρους	
D.	(ὄρε-ϊ) ὄρει	(τριήρε-ϊ) τριήρει	
A.	ὄρος	(τριήρε-α) τριήρη	
V.	ὄρος	τριήρη	
Dual N. A. V.	(ὄρε-ε) ὄρει	(τριήρε-ε) τριήρει	
G. D.	(ὄρέ-οιν) ὄροιν	(τριήρέ-οιν) τριήροιν	
Plur. N. V.	(ὄρε-α) ὄρη	(τριήρε-ες) τριήρεις	
	G. (ὄρέ-ων) ὄρέων or ὄραν	(τριήρέ-ων) τριήρων	
	D.	ὄρεσι	τριήρεσι
	A. (ὄρε-α) ὄρη	τριήρεις	
Sing. N.	Σωκράτης, <sup>1</sup> ὁ, <i>Socrates</i>		
G.	(Σωκράτε-ος) Σωκράτους		
D.	(Σωκράτε-ϊ) Σωκράτει		
A.	(Σωκράτε-α) Σωκράτη		
V.	Σωκράτες		

602. *κέρας*, τό, *horn*, *wing* of an army, has two stems *κερασ-* and *κεράτ-* and a double declension:

	STEM <i>κεράτ-</i>	STEM <i>κερασ-</i>
Sing. N. A.		<i>κέρας</i> , <sup>1</sup> τό, <i>horn</i> , <i>wing</i>
G.	κεράτ-ος	(κέρα-ος) κέρως
D.	κεράτ-ι	(κέρα-ϊ) κέρα
Dual N. A.	κεράτ-ε	(κέρα-ε) κέρα
G. D.	κεράτ-οιν	(κερά-οιν) κέρῳν
Plur. N. A.	κεράτ-α	(κέρα-α) κέρα
G.	κεράτ-ων	
D.	κεράσι	

## 603.

Sing. N.	(Ἡρακλέης) Ἡρακλῆς, ὁ, <i>Heracles</i>
G.	(Ἡρακλέε-ος) Ἡρακλέους
D.	(Ἡρακλέε-ϊ) Ἡρακλεῖ
A.	(Ἡρακλέε-α) Ἡρακλέα
V.	(Ἡράκλεες) Ἡράκλεις

<sup>1</sup> The forms in parenthesis show the stem after *σ* has been dropped from the end (e.g. *ὄρε-ος* is for *ὄρεσ-ος*) and before contraction has taken place.

604.

	Sing. N.	πόλις, ἡ, <i>city</i>	<del>πῆχυν, ὁ, <i>city</i></del>	ἔστυ, τό, <i>town</i>	<del>ἰχθῦς, ὁ, <i>fish</i></del>
#	G.	πόλιος	<del>πῆχιος</del>	ἔστωος	<del>ἰχθύος</del>
	D.	(πόλι-ῖ)	(πῆχε-ῖ)	(ἔστει-ῖ)	<del>ἰχθύῖ</del>
		πόλει	<del>πῆχει</del>	ἔσται	<del>ἰχθύει</del>
	A.	πόλιν	<del>πῆχυν</del>	ἔστυ	<del>ἰχθύν</del>
	V.	πόλι	<del>πῆχυ</del>	ἔστυ	<del>ἰχθῦ</del>
Dual N. A. V.	(πόλι-ε)	(πῆχε-ε)	(ἔστει-ε)	<del>ἰχθύε</del>	
	πόλει	<del>πῆχει</del>	ἔσται	<del>ἰχθύει</del>	
G. D.	πολίοιν	<del>πῆχειοιν</del>	ἔστειοιν	<del>ἰχθύοιν</del>	
Plur. N. V.	(πόλι-ες)	(πῆχε-ες)	(ἔστει-α)	<del>ἰχθύες</del>	
	πόλιες	<del>πῆχειες</del>	ἔσται	<del>ἰχθύες</del>	
G.	πόλιων	<del>πῆχεων</del>	ἔστων	<del>ἰχθύων</del>	
D.	πόλισι	<del>πῆχεσι</del>	ἔσταισι	<del>ἰχθύσι</del>	
A.	πόλις	<del>πῆχεις</del>	(ἔστει-α)	<del>ἰχθύς</del>	
			ἔσται		

605.

	Sing. N.	βασιλεὺς, ὁ, <i>king</i>	βοῦς, ὁ, ἡ, <i>ox, cow</i>	ναῦς, ἡ, <i>ship</i>
#	G.	βασιλέως	<del>βοῦς</del>	<del>ναῦς</del>
	D.	βασιλεῖ	<del>βοῦ</del>	<del>ναῖ</del>
	A.	βασιλέα	<del>βούον</del>	<del>ναῖον</del>
	V.	βασιλεῖθ	<del>βούθ</del>	<del>ναῖθ</del>
	Dual N. A. V.	βασιλεῖ	<del>βού</del>	<del>ναῖ</del>
G. D.	βασιλέοιν	<del>βούον</del>	<del>ναῖον</del>	
Plur. N. V.	(βασιλέ-ες) βασιλεῖς <sup>1</sup>	<del>βούες</del>	<del>ναῖες</del>	
G.	βασιλέων	<del>βούων</del>	<del>ναῖων</del>	
D.	βασιλεῦσι	<del>βούσι</del>	<del>ναῖσι</del>	
A.	βασιλεῖς	<del>βούε</del>	<del>ναῖς</del>	

<sup>1</sup> Older -ης.



## 606.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS

	<u>1</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>3</u>
Sing. N.	γυνή, ἡ, <i>woman</i>	<del>Ζεύς, ὁ, <i>Zeus</i></del>	χείρ, ἡ, <i>hand</i>
# G.	γυναικός	<del>Διός</del>	χειρός
# D.	γυναικί	<del>Δι</del>	χειρί #
A.	γυναίκα	<del>Δία</del>	χείρα
V.	γένοι	<del>Ζεῦ</del>	χείρ
Dual N. A. V.	γυναίκε		χείρε
G. D.	γυναικοῖν		χειροῖν and χειροῖν
Plur. N. V.	γυναίκες		χείρες
G.	γυναικῶν		χειρῶν
D.	γυναιξί ←		χειρσί
A.	γυναίκας		χείρας

	<u>4</u>	<u>5</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>7</u>
Sing. N. A. V.	πῦρ, τό, <i>fire</i>	ὔδωρ, τό, <i>water</i>	δόρυ, τό, <i>spear</i>	γότυ, τό, <i>knee</i>
# G.	πυρός	ὔδατος	δόρατος	γότατος
# D.	πυρί	ὔδατι	δόρατι	γότατι
Dual N. A. V.			δόρατε	γότατε
G. D.			δοράτοιιν	γοτάτοιιν
Plur. N. A. V.	πυρά	ὔδατα	δόρατα	γότατα
	<i>watch fires</i>			
G.	πυρῶν	ὑδάτων	δοράτων	γοτάτων
D.	πυροῖς	ὔδασι	δόρασι	γότασι

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## 607.

## THREE ENDINGS

	ἀγαθός <i>good</i>			πολέμιος <i>hostile</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	πολέμιος	πολεμίη	πολέμιον
G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ	πολεμίου	πολεμίας	πολεμίου
D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ	πολεμίῳ	πολεμίᾳ	πολεμίῳ
A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθὴν	ἀγαθόν	πολέμιον	πολεμίαν	πολέμιον
V.	ἀγαθί	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	πολέμιε	πολεμίη	πολέμιον

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Dual N. A. V.	ἀγαθῶ	ἀγαθῆ	ἀγαθῶ	πολεμῖω	πολεμῖξ	πολεμῖω
G. D.	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν	πολεμῖοιν	πολεμῖαιν	πολεμῖοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθὰ	πολέμιοι	πολέμιοι	πολέμια
G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	πολεμίων	πολεμίων	πολεμίων
D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς	πολεμίοις	πολεμῖαις	πολεμίοις
A.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθὰ	πολεμῖοις	πολεμῖξ	πολέμια

608.

## TWO ENDINGS

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἄπορος <i>impassable</i>	ἄπορον
G.		ἀπόρου
D.		ἀπόρου
A.		ἄπορον
V.	ἄπορα	ἄπορον
Dual N. A. V.		ἀπόρω
G. D.		ἀπόροι
Plur. N. V.	ἄποροι	ἄπορα
G.		ἀπόρων
D.		ἀπόροις
A.	ἀπόρους	ἄπορα

## CONTRACT ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

609.

## THREE ENDINGS

χρῦσοῦς *golden*

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. (χρῦσεος)	χρῦσοῦς (χρῦσῆᾶ)	χρῦση	(χρῦσειον) χρῦσοῦν
G. (χρῦσειον)	χρῦσοῦ (χρῦσεῦς)	χρῦσης	(χρῦσειον) χρῦσοῦ
D. (χρῦσέω)	χρῦσῆ (χρῦσεᾶ)	χρῦσῆ	(χρῦσέω) χρῦσῆ
A. (χρῦσειον)	χρῦσοῦν (χρῦσεᾶν)	χρῦσην	(χρῦσειον) χρῦσοῦν

## DUAL

N. A. (χρῦσῆῶ)	χρῦσῆ (χρῦσῆᾶ)	χρῦσῆ	(χρῦσῆῶ) χρῦσῆ
G. D. (χρῦσειῶν)	χρῦσειῶν (χρῦσειᾶν)	χρῦσειᾶν	(χρῦσειῶν) χρῦσειῶν

## PLURAL

N.	(χρῖσσοι)	χρῖσσοι	(χρῖσσαι)	χρῖσσαι	(χρῖσσεια)	χρῖσσαι
G.	(χρῖσσειών)	χρῖσσειών	(χρῖσσειών)	χρῖσσειών	(χρῖσσειών)	χρῖσσειών
D.	(χρῖσσειάσιν)	χρῖσσειάσιν	(χρῖσσειάσιν)	χρῖσσειάσιν	(χρῖσσειάσιν)	χρῖσσειάσιν
A.	(χρῖσσειούς)	χρῖσσειούς	(χρῖσσειάς)	χρῖσσειάς	(χρῖσσειά)	χρῖσσειά

ἀργυροῦς *silver*

## SINGULAR

N.	(ἀργύρεος)	ἀργυροῦς	(ἀργυρέᾱ)	ἀργυρέᾱ	(ἀργύρεον)	ἀργυροῦν
G.	(ἀργυρέου)	ἀργυροῦ	(ἀργυρέᾱς)	ἀργυρέᾱς	(ἀργυρέου)	ἀργυροῦ
D.	(ἀργυρέῳ)	ἀργυροῖ	(ἀργυρέᾳ)	ἀργυρέᾳ	(ἀργυρέῳ)	ἀργυροῖ
A.	(ἀργύρεον)	ἀργυροῦν	(ἀργυρέᾱν)	ἀργυρέᾱν	(ἀργύρεον)	ἀργυροῦν

## DUAL

N. A.	(ἀργυρέῳ)	ἀργυροῖ	(ἀργυρέᾱ)	ἀργυρέᾱ	(ἀργυρέῳ)	ἀργυροῖ
G. D.	(ἀργυρέοιν)	ἀργυροῖν	(ἀργυρέᾱιν)	ἀργυρέᾱιν	(ἀργυρέοιν)	ἀργυροῖν

## PLURAL

N.	(ἀργύρεοι)	ἀργυροῖ	(ἀργύρεαι)	ἀργυραῖ	(ἀργύρεα)	ἀργυρέᾱ
G.	(ἀργυρέων)	ἀργυρῶν	(ἀργυρέων)	ἀργυρῶν	(ἀργυρέων)	ἀργυρῶν
D.	(ἀργυρέοισιν)	ἀργυροῖσιν	(ἀργυρέοισιν)	ἀργυραῖσιν	(ἀργυρέοισιν)	ἀργυροῖσιν
A.	(ἀργυρέοις)	ἀργυροῖς	(ἀργυρέᾱς)	ἀργυράς	(ἀργύρεα)	ἀργυρέᾱ

ἀπλοῦς *sincere*

## SINGULAR

N.	(ἀπλόος)	ἀπλοῦς	(ἀπλέᾱ)	ἀπλή	(ἀπλόον)	ἀπλοῦν
G.	(ἀπλόου)	ἀπλοῦ	(ἀπλέᾱς)	ἀπλής	(ἀπλόου)	ἀπλοῦ
D.	(ἀπλόῳ)	ἀπλοῖ	(ἀπλέᾳ)	ἀπλή	(ἀπλόῳ)	ἀπλοῖ
A.	(ἀπλόον)	ἀπλοῦν	(ἀπλέᾱν)	ἀπλήν	(ἀπλόον)	ἀπλοῦν

## DUAL

N. A.	(ἀπλόῳ)	ἀπλοῖ	(ἀπλέᾱ)	ἀπλή	(ἀπλόῳ)	ἀπλοῖ
G. D.	(ἀπλόοιν)	ἀπλοῖν	(ἀπλέᾱιν)	ἀπλήν	(ἀπλόοιν)	ἀπλοῖν

## PLURAL

N.	(ἀπλόοι)	ἀπλοῖ	(ἀπλέαι)	ἀπλαῖ	(ἀπλόα)	ἀπλά
G.	(ἀπλόων)	ἀπλῶν	(ἀπλέων)	ἀπλῶν	(ἀπλόων)	ἀπλῶν
D.	(ἀπλόοισιν)	ἀπλοῖσιν	(ἀπλέαισιν)	ἀπλαῖσιν	(ἀπλόοισιν)	ἀπλοῖσιν
A.	(ἀπλόοις)	ἀπλοῖς	(ἀπλέᾱς)	ἀπλάς	(ἀπλόα)	ἀπλά

## 610.

## TWO ENDINGS

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	εὖνους <i>well-disposed</i>	εὖνου
G.	εὖνου	
D.	εὖνῳ	
A.	εὖνουν	
Plur. N.	εὖνοι	εὖνοα
G.	εὖνων	
D.	εὖνοις	
A.	εὖνους	εὖνοα

For uncontracted forms cp. *νοῦς*, § 596.

611. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND THIRD  
DECLENSIONS

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἡδύς <i>sweet</i>	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
G.	ἡδέος	ἡδείας	ἡδέος
D.	(ἡδέ-ι) ἡδεῖ	ἡδείῃ	(ἡδέ-ι) ἡδεῖ
A.	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
V.	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
Dual N. A. V.	(ἡδέ-ε) ἡδεῖ	ἡδείῃ	(ἡδέ-ε) ἡδεῖ
G. D.	ἡδέοιν	ἡδείαιν	ἡδέοιν
Plur. N. V.	(ἡδέ-ες) ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
G.	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
D.	ἡδέσι	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι
A.	ἡδέις	ἡδείαις	ἡδέα

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## 612. • STEMS IN -εσ

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἀσφαλῆς <sup>1</sup> <i>safe</i>	ἀσφαλές
G.	(ἀσφαλέ-ος)	ἀσφαλοῦς
D.	(ἀσφαλέ-ι)	ἀσφαλεῖ
A.	(ἀσφαλέ-α) ἀσφαλῆ	ἀσφαλές
V.	ἀσφαλές	

<sup>1</sup> See footnote on p. 284.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Dual N. A. V.	(ἀσφαλέε) ἀσφαλεῖ	
G. D.	(ἀσφαλέειν) ἀσφαλοῖν	
Plur. N. V.	(ἀσφαλέες) ἀσφαλεῖς	(ἀσφαλέα) ἀσφαλεῖ
G.	(ἀσφαλέων) ἀσφαλῶν	
D.	ἀσφαλεῖσι	
A.	ἀσφαλεῖς	(ἀσφαλέα) ἀσφαλεῖ

613.

## STEMS IN -ν

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
# Sing. N.	εὐδαίμων <i>fortunate</i>	εὐδαίμων
G.	εὐδαίμονος	
D.	εὐδαίμονι	
A.	εὐδαίμονα	εὐδαίμων
V.	εὐδαίμων	
Dual N. A. V.	εὐδαίμονε	
G. D.	εὐδαίμόνοιν	
Plur. N. V.	εὐδαίμονες	εὐδαίμονα
G.	εὐδαίμόνων	
D.	εὐδαίμοσι	
A.	εὐδαίμονας	εὐδαίμονα

614.

## COMPARATIVES IN -ων

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἡδίων <i>sweeter</i>	ἡδίων
G.	ἡδιόνος	
D.	ἡδιόνι	
A.	ἡδιόνα or ἡδίω	ἡδίων
V.	ἡδιόν	
Dual N. A. V.	ἡδιόνα	
G. D.	ἡδιόνοιν	
Plur. N. V.	ἡδιόνες or ἡδίους	ἡδιόνα or ἡδίω
G.	ἡδιόνων	
D.	ἡδιόσι	
A.	ἡδιόνας or ἡδιούς	ἡδιόνα or ἡδίω

615.

## STEMS IN -ντ

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	πᾶς <i>all</i>	πᾶσα	πᾶν
G.	παντός	πάσης	παντός
D.	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
A.	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
Plur. N. V.	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
G.	πάντων	πᾶσάν	πάντων
D.	πᾶσι	πᾶσαις	πᾶσι
A.	πάντας	πᾶσᾶς	πάντα

#  
without ντ  
alpha is  
long.

616.

## PARTICIPLES

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
1. Sing. N. V.	ὄν <i>being</i>	οὖσα	ὄν
G.	ὄντος	οὖσης	ὄντος
D.	ὄντι	οὖσῃ	ὄντι
A.	ὄντα	οὖσαν	ὄν
Dual N. A. V.	ὄντε	οὖσᾶ	ὄντε
G. D.	ὄντοιιν	οὖσαιιν	ὄντοιιν
Plur. N. V.	ὄντες	οὖσαι	ὄντα
G.	ὄντων	οὖσάν	ὄντων
D.	οὖσι	οὖσαις	οὖσι
A.	ὄντας	οὖσᾶς	ὄντα

a. Second aorist active participles are declined like ὄν, as λιπών, λιπούσα, λιπόν, *having left*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
2. Sing. N. V.	λῦον <i>loosing</i>	λῦουσα	λῦον
G.	λῦοντος	λῦούσης	λῦοντος
D.	λῦοντι	λῦούσῃ	λῦοντι
A.	λῦοντα	λῦουσαν	λῦον
Dual N. A. V.	λῦοντε	λῦούσᾶ	λῦοντε
G. D.	λῦόντοιιν	λῦούσαιιν	λῦόντοιιν
Plur. N. V.	λῦοντες	λῦουσαι	λῦοντα
G.	λῦόντων	λῦουσάν	λῦόντων
D.	λῦουσι	λῦούσαις	λῦουσι
A.	λῦοντας	λῦούσᾶς	λῦοντα

a. Participles of more than two syllables, like *καλύων* *hindering*, are inflected

καλύων, καλύουσα, καλύων (observe the accent), etc.

617.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	ιστάς <i>setting</i>	ιστάσα	ιστάν
G.	ιστάντος	ιστάσης	ιστάντος
D.	ιστάντι	ιστάση	ιστάντι
A.	ιστάντα	ιστάσαν	ιστάν
Dual N. A. V.	ιστάντε	ιστάσθε	ιστάντε
G. D.	ιστάντων	ιστάσαιν	ιστάντων
Plur. N. V.	ιστάντες	ιστάσαι	ιστάντα
G.	ιστάντων	ιστάσων	ιστάντων
D.	ιστάσι	ιστάσαις	ιστάσι
A.	ιστάντας	ιστάσας	ιστάντα

~~618~~

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	λύσας <i>having loosed</i>	λύσασα	λύσαν
G.	λύσαντος	λύσασης	λύσαντος
D.	λύσαντι	λύσαση	λύσαντι
A.	λύσαντα	λύσασαν	λύσαν
Dual N. A. V.	λύσαντε	λύσασθε	λύσαντε
G. D.	λύσάντων	λύσασαιν	λύσάντων
Plur. N. V.	λύσαντες	λύσασαι	λύσαντα
G.	λύσάντων	λύσασων	λύσάντων
D.	λύσασι	λύσασαις	λύσασι
A.	λύσαντας	λύσασας	λύσαντα

a. Participles of more than two syllables, like *ἀκούσας* *having heard*, are inflected

ἀκούσας, ἀκούσασα, ἀκούσαν (observe the accent), etc.

619.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	δεικνύς <i>showing</i>	δεικνύσα	δεικνόν
G.	δεικνύτος	δεικνύσης	δεικνύτος
D.	δεικνύντι	δεικνύση	δεικνύντι
A.	δεικνύντα	δεικνύσαν	δεικνόν

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Dual N. A. V.	δεικνόντε	δεικνύσῃ	δεικνόντε
G. D.	δεικνόντοιν	δεικνύσαιν	δεικνόντοιν
Plur. N. V.	δεικνόντες	δεικνύσαι	δεικνόντα
G.	δεικνόντων	δεικνύσων	δεικνόντων
D.	δεικνῶσι	δεικνύσαις	δεικνῶσι
A.	δεικνόντας	δεικνύσῃς	δεικνόντα

620.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	τιθείς <i>placing</i>	τιθείσα	τιθέν
G.	τιθέντος	τιθείσης	τιθέντος
D.	τιθέντι	τιθείσῃ	τιθέντι
A.	τιθέντα	τιθείσαν	τιθέν
Dual N. A. V.	τιθέντε	τιθείσῃ	τιθέντε
G. D.	τιθέντοιν	τιθείσαιν	τιθέντοιν
Plur. N. V.	τιθέντες	τιθείσαι	τιθέντα
G.	τιθέντων	τιθείσων	τιθέντων
D.	τιθείσι	τιθείσαις	τιθείσι
A.	τιθέντας	τιθείσῃς	τιθέντα

a. Similarly are declined aorist passive participles:

*λυθείς having been loosed, λυθείσα. λυθέν, etc.*

621.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	διδούς <i>giving</i>	διδούσα	διδόν
G.	διδόντος	διδούσης	διδόντος
D.	διδόντι	διδούσῃ	διδόντι
A.	διδόντα	διδούσαν	διδόν
Dual N. A. V.	διδόντε	διδούσῃ	διδόντε
G. D.	διδόντοιν	διδούσαιν	διδόντοιν
Plur. N. V.	διδόντες	διδούσαι	διδόντα
G.	διδόντων	διδουσών	διδόντων
D.	διδόθσι	διδούσαις	διδόθσι
A.	διδόντας	διδούσῃς	διδόντα

622.

	MASC.	FEM.
Sing. N. V.	(τιμάων) τιμών <i>honoring</i>	(τιμάουσα) τιμάσα
G.	(τιμάοντος) τιμώντος	(τιμαούσης) τιμάσης
D.	(τιμάοντι) τιμώντι	(τιμαούσῃ) τιμάσῃ
A.	(τιμάοντα) τιμώντα	(τιμάουσαν) τιμάσαν



## NEUT.

N. V.	(τῆμάον) τῆμῶν
G.	(τῆμάοντος) τῆμῶντος
D.	(τῆμάοντι) τῆμῶντι
A.	(τῆμάον) τῆμῶν

## MASC.

## FEM.

Dual N. A. V.	(τῆμάοντε) τῆμῶντε	(τῆμαούσᾱ) τῆμῶσᾱ
G. D.	(τῆμάοντων) τῆμῶντων	(τῆμαούσαι) τῆμῶσαι

## NEUT.

N. A. V.	(τῆμάοντε) τῆμῶντε
G. D.	(τῆμάοντων) τῆμῶντων

## MASC.

## FEM.

Plur. N. V.	(τῆμάοντες) τῆμῶντες	(τῆμαούσαι) τῆμῶσαι
G.	(τῆμάοντων) τῆμῶντων	(τῆμαουσῶν) τῆμῶσῶν
D.	(τῆμάουσι) τῆμῶσι	(τῆμαούσαις) τῆμῶσαις
A.	(τῆμάοντας) τῆμῶντας	(τῆμαούσας) τῆμῶσας

## NEUT.

N. V.	(τῆμάοντα) τῆμῶντα
G.	(τῆμάοντων) τῆμῶντων
D.	(τῆμάουσι) τῆμῶσι
A.	(τῆμάοντα) τῆμῶντα

## MASC.

## FEM.

Sing. N. V.	(ποιέων) ποιῶν <i>making</i>	(ποιέουσα) ποιῶσα
G.	(ποιέοντος) ποιῶντος	(ποιεούσης) ποιῶσῆς
D.	(ποιέοντι) ποιῶντι	(ποιεούσῃ) ποιῶσῃ
A.	(ποιέοντα) ποιῶντα	(ποιέουσιν) ποιῶσιν

## NEUT.

N. V.	(ποιέον) ποιῶν
G.	(ποιέοντος) ποιῶντος
D.	(ποιέοντι) ποιῶντι
A.	(ποιέον) ποιῶν

## MASC.

## FEM.

Dual N. A. V.	(ποιέοντε) ποιῶντε	(ποιεούσᾱ) ποιῶσᾱ
G. D.	(ποιέοντων) ποιῶντων	(ποιεούσαι) ποιῶσαι

		NEUT.	
N. A. V.		(ποιέοντε)	ποιόντι
G. D.		(ποιόντων)	ποιόντων
		MASC.	
Plur. N. V.	(ποιέοντες)	ποιόντες	(ποιούσαι)
G.	(ποιόντων)	ποιόντων	(ποιουσών)
D.	(ποιούσι)	ποιόσσι	(ποιούσαις)
A.	(ποιέοντας)	ποιόντας	(ποιούσας)
		FEM.	
		NEUT.	
N. V.		(ποιέοντα)	ποιόντα
G.		(ποιόντων)	ποιόντων
D.		(ποιέουσι)	ποιόσσι
A.		(ποιέοντα)	ποιόντα

a. δηλών *showing*, which contracts to  
 δηλῶν, δηλοῦσα, δηλοῦν,  
 is declined like ποιῶν, ποιούσα, ποιοῦν.

## PERFECT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

623.

λελυκός *having loosed* (λελυκοτ-)

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
#	Sing. N. V.	λελυκός	λελυκυία	λελυκός
	G.	λελυκότος	λελυκυίδε	λελυκότος
	D.	λελυκότι	λελυκυίῃ	λελυκότι
	A.	λελυκότα	λελυκυίαν	λελυκός
Dual N. A. V.	λελυκότε	λελυκυίᾱ	λελυκότε	
G. D.	λελυκότοιιν	λελυκυίαιιν	λελυκότοιιν	
Plur. N. V.	λελυκότες	λελυκυίαι	λελυκότα	
G.	λελυκότων	λελυκυίων	λελυκότων	
D.	λελυκόσι	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι	
A.	λελυκότας	λελυκυίδε	λελυκότα	

624.

ἑστῆς *standing* (ἑστωτ-)

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	ἑστῆς	ἑστῶσα	ἑστῶσα	ἑστῆς
G.	ἑστῶτος	ἑστῶσης	ἑστῶσης	ἑστῶτος
D.	ἑστῶτι	ἑστῶσῃ	ἑστῶσῃ	ἑστῶτι
A.	ἑστῶτα	ἑστῶσαν	ἑστῶσαν	ἑστῆς

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Dual N. A. V.	ἰσῳῖτε	ἰσῳῖσῦ	ἰσῳῖτε
G. D.	ἰσῳῖτων	ἰσῳῖσαι	ἰσῳῖτων
Plur. N. V.	ἰσῳῖτες	ἰσῳῖσαι	ἰσῳῖτα
G.	ἰσῳῖτων	ἰσῳῖσῶν	ἰσῳῖτων
D.	ἰσῳῖσι	ἰσῳῖσαις	ἰσῳῖσι
A.	ἰσῳῖτας	ἰσῳῖσῦς	ἰσῳῖτα

a. ἰσῳῖς is contracted from ἰσῳῖαῖς; the neuter ἰσῳῖς is irregular.

625.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	μέγας <i>great</i>			πολύς <i>much</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
# Sing. N.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
G.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
D.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
A.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
Plur. N.	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαι	πολλά
G.	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
D.	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
A.	μεγάλους	μεγάλαις	μεγάλα	πολλοῖς	πολλῆς	πολλά

626.

## NUMERALS

	εἷς <i>one</i>			δύο <i>two</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM., NEUT.		
N.	εἷς	μία	ἓν	N. A.	δύο	
G.	ἑνός	μιάς	ἑνός	G. D.	δυσὶν	
D.	ἑνί	μιά	ἑνί			
A.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἓν			

	τρεις <i>three</i>		τέτταρες <i>four</i>	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
N.	τρεις	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
G.		τριῶν		τεττάρων
D.		τρισὶ		τέτταρσι
A.	τρεις	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

**627.**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
# Sing. N.	οὐδείς <i>nobody</i>	οὐδεμία	οὐδέν <i>nothing</i>
G.	οὐδενός	οὐδεμίας	οὐδενός
D.	οὐδενί	οὐδεμιᾷ	οὐδενί
A.	οὐδένα	οὐδεμίαν	οὐδέν
Masc. Plur. N. οὐδένας, G. οὐδένων, D. οὐδέσι, A. οὐδένας			

## PRONOUNS

**628.**

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON <i>Indirect Reflexive</i>
# Sing. N.	ἐγώ <i>I</i>	σύ <i>thou</i>	
G.	ἐμοῦ, μου	σοῦ, σου	[οὐ], [οἰ]
D.	ἐμοί, μοι	σοί, σοι	οἱ, οἱ, <i>to himself</i>
A.	ἐμέ, με	σέ, σε	[ἐ], [ἑ]
Dual N. A.	νὼ	σφά	
G. D.	νῶν	σφῶν	
Plur. N.	ἡμεῖς <i>we</i>	ὑμεῖς <i>you</i>	σφεῖς
G.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν	σφῶν
D.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	σφίσι
A.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς	σφᾶς

**629.**αὐτός *self, same, him* (in oblique cases), etc.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
D.	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
A.	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Dual N. A.	αὐτό	αὐτά	αὐτό
G. D.	αὐτοῖν	αὐταῖν	αὐτοῖν
Plur. N.	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
G.	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
A.	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο, *another, other*, is declined like αὐτός.

630.

## REFLEXIVE

*ἑαυτοῦ of myself*

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.
G.	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς
D.	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆ
A.	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν

## PLURAL

MASC.	FEM.
ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	
ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς
ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς

*σεαυτοῦ of yourself*

	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
G.	σεαυτοῦ or σαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς or σαυτῆς	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	
D.	σεαυτοῦ or σαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆ or σαυτῆ	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
A.	σεαυτόν or σαυτόν	σεαυτήν or σαυτήν	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς

*ἑαυτοῦ of himself*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
G.	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
D.	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆ	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταις	ἑαυτοῖς
A.	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά

or, contracted,

G.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆ	αὐτοῦ	αὐτοῖς	αὐταις	αὐτοῖς
A.	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

Plural also: σφῶν αὐτῶν  
σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, αἰς  
σφᾶς αὐτούς, αἶς

631.

## RECIPROCAL

*ἀλλήλων of one another*

	DUAL			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
G.	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
D.	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλοισ	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοισ
A.	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλαι	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλληλα

632.

## DEFINITE ARTICLE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ὁ <i>the</i>	ἡ	τό
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
A.	τόν	τήν	τό
Dual N. A.	τό	τό	τό
G. D.	τοῖν	τοῖν	τοῖν
Plur. N.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τούς	τάς	τά

633.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ὅδε <i>this</i>	ἥδε	τόδε	οὗτος <i>this</i>	αὕτη	τούτο
G.	τοῦδε	τῆςδε	τοῦδε	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
D.	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
A.	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τούτον	ταύτην	τούτο
Dual N. A.	τάδε	τάδε	τάδε	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω
G. D.	τοίνδε	τοίνδε	τοίνδε	τούτοιν	τούτοιν	τούτοιν
Plur. N.	οἷδε	αἷδε	τάδε	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
G.	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
D.	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
A.	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἐκεῖνος <i>that</i>	ἐκεῖνη	ἐκεῖνο
G.	ἐκείνου	ἐκεῖνης	ἐκείνου
D.	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκεῖνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
A.	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκεῖνην	ἐκεῖνο
Dual N. A.	ἐκεῖνω	ἐκεῖνω	ἐκεῖνω
G. D.	ἐκείνοιν	ἐκείνοιν	ἐκείνοιν
Plur. N.	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
G.	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
D.	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
A.	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

634. INTERROGATIVE635. INDEFINITE

#

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	τις <i>who?</i>	τι <i>what?</i>	τις <i>anybody</i>	τι <i>anything</i>
G.	τινος, του		τινος, του	
D.	τινι, τη		τινι, τη	
A.	τινα	τι	τινα	τι
Dual N. A.	τινε		τινε	
G. D.	τινων		τινων	
Plur. N.	τινες	τινα	τινες	τινα
G.	τινων		τινων	
D.	τισι		τισι	
A.	τινας	τινα	τινας	τινα

636.

## RELATIVE

<u>SINGULAR</u>			<u>DUAL</u>			<u>PLURAL</u>					
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.			
N.	ος	η	ο	N. A.	ω	ω	ω	N.	οι	αι	α
G.	ου	ης	ου	G. D.	ων	ων	ων	G.	ων	ων	ων
D.	ου	ης	ου	D.	οις	αις	οις	D.	οις	αις	οις
A.	ου	ην	ο	A.	οις	αις	α	A.	οις	αις	α

637.

## INDEFINITE RELATIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	οστις	ητις	οτι οη, τι
G.	οστινος, του	ηστινος	οστινος, του
D.	οστινι, του	ηστινι	οστινι, του
A.	οστινα	ηστινα	οτι οη, τι
Dual N. A.	οστινε	οστινε	οστινε
G. D.	οστινων	οστινων	οστινων
Plur. N.	οστινες	αστινες	οστινα
G.	οστινων, των	αστινων	οστινων, των
D.	οστισι, τοις	αοστισι	οοστισι, τοις
A.	οοστινας	αοστινας	οστινα

638.

	Direct or indirect interrogatives :	Indirect interrogatives or indefinite relatives :	The definite relative meaning
PRONOUNS	τίς <i>who?</i>	ὅστις	<i>who</i> is τις
	ποῖος { <i>of what sort?</i> <i>what sort of?</i>	ὅποιος	<i>of what sort</i> is οἷος
	πόσος { <i>how great?</i> <i>how much?</i> <i>how many?</i>	ὅπόσος	<i>as great as</i> <i>as much as</i> <i>as many as</i> } is ὅσος
ADVERBS	πότε <i>when?</i>	ὅποτε	<i>when</i> is ὅτε
	ποῦ <i>where?</i>	ὅπου	<i>where</i> is οὗ or ἔνθα
	πῶς <i>how?</i>	ὅπως	<i>how, as,</i> is ὅς or ὡς-περ

VERBS

639.

PERSONAL ENDINGS

INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, AND OPTATIVE

ACTIVE

MIDDLE

Primary Tenses Secondary Tenses Primary Tenses Secondary Tenses

Sing. 1.	-μι	-ν	-μαι	-μην
2.	-ς	-ς	-σαι	-σο
3.	-σι	—	-ται	-το
Dual 2.	<del>-μεν</del>	<del>—</del>	<del>-μεθα</del>	<del>-σθε</del>
3.	<del>—</del>	<del>—</del>	<del>-σθη</del>	<del>—</del>
Plur. 1.	-μεν	-μεν	-μεθα	-μεθα
2.	-τε	-τε	-σθε	-σθε
3.	-νσι	-νσι	-νται	-ντο

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE

MIDDLE

Sing. Dual Plur.

Sing. Dual Plur.

2.	-θι	-τον	-τε
3.	-τω	-των	-ντων

2.	-σο	-σθον	-σθε
3.	-σθω	-σθων	-σθων

INFINITIVE ENDINGS

ACTIVE

MIDDLE

-ειν (contracted with thematic vowel to -ειν) and -ναι

-σθαι



640.

## VOWEL STEMS; UNCONTRACTED.

## I. ACTIVE

		PRES.	IMPF.	FUT.
<i>Indic.</i>	Sing. 1.	<u>λέω</u>	<u>λέων</u>	λέσω
		λέεις	λέεις	λέσεις
		λέει	λέει	λέσει
	Dual 2.	<del>λέσων</del>	<del>λέσων</del>	<del>λέσων</del>
		<del>λέσων</del>	<del>λέσων</del>	<del>λέσων</del>
	Plur. 1.	λέομεν	λέομεν	λέσομεν
		λέετε	λέετε	λέσετε
		λέουσι	λέουσι	λέσουσι
<i>Subjv.</i>	Sing. 1.	<u>λέω</u>		
		λέης		
		λέη		
	Dual 2.	<del>λέσων</del>		
		<del>λέσων</del>		
	Plur. 1.	λέομεν		
		λέητε		
		λέωσι		
<i>Opt.</i>	Sing. 1.	<u>λέοιμι</u>		λέσοιμι
		λέοις		λέσοις
		λέοι		λέσοι
	Dual 2.	<del>λέσων</del>		λέσοιμι
		<del>λέσων</del>		<del>λέσοιμι</del>
	Plur. 1.	λέοιμεν		λέσοιμεν
		λέοιτε		λέσοιτε
		λέοιεν		λέσοιεν
<i>Imp.</i>	Sing. 2.	λέε		
		λέετω		
	Dual 2.	<del>λέσων</del>		
		<del>λέσων</del>		
Plur. 2.	λέετε			
	λέόντων			
<i>Inf.</i>		<u>λέειν</u>	<u>λέσειν</u>	
<i>Partic.</i>		λέων, λέουσα,	λέων, λέουσα,	
		λέον (§ 616. 2)	λέον (cp. § 616. 2)	

## INFLECTION OF λθω / loose

## VOICE

	1 AOR.	1 PF.	1 PLUR.
<i>Indic.</i> Sing. 1.	<u>ἔθρα</u>	ἔθρακα	ἔθρακῃ
2.	ἔθρασ	ἔθρακας	ἔθρακῃς
3.	ἔθρε	ἔθρακε	ἔθρακει(ν)
Dual 2.	<del>ἔθρατον</del>	<del>ἔθρακατον</del>	<del>ἔθρακατον</del>
3.	ἔθρατον	ἔθρακατον	ἔθρακατον
Plur. 1.	ἔθραμεν	ἔθρακαμεν	ἔθρακαμεν
2.	ἔθρατε	ἔθρακατε	ἔθρακατε
3.	ἔθραν	ἔθρακασι	ἔθρακασαν
<i>Subj.</i> Sing. 1.	<u>λθῶ</u>	[λελύκω (§ 436)]	
2.	λθῆς	λελύκῃς	
3.	λθῆ	λελύκῃ	
Dual 2.	<del>λθῶτον</del>	<del>λελύκῃτον</del>	
3.	λθῶτον	λελύκῃτον	
Plur. 1.	λθῶμεν	λελύκομεν	
2.	λθῆτε	λελύκητε	
3.	λθῶσι	λελύκωσι]	
<i>Opt.</i> Sing. 1.	<u>λθῶμαι</u>	[λελύκοιμι (§ 436)]	
2.	λύσαιο, λύσειαι (§ 254)	λελύκοις	
3.	λύσαι, λύσει	λελύκοι	
Dual 2.	<del>λθῶμετον</del>	<del>λελύκοιμετον</del>	
3.	λθῶμετον	λελύκοιμετον	
Plur. 1.	λθῶμεν	λελύκοιμεν	
2.	λθῆιτε	λελύκοιτε	
3.	λύσαιεν, λύσειαν (§ 254)	λελύκοιεν]	
<i>Imp.</i> Sing. 2.	λθσον	(§ 437)	
3.	λθσάτω		
Dual 2.	<del>λθσάτω</del>		
3.	λθσάτω		
Plur. 2.	λθσατε		
3.	λθσάντων		
<i>Inf.</i>	<u>λθσαι</u>	λελυκέναι	
<i>Partic.</i>	λθσῶς, λθσῶσα, λθσαν (§ 618)	λελυκός, λελυκυία, λελυκός (§ 623)	

Pres  
Fut.

## 2. MIDDLE

		PRES.	IMPF.	FUT.
<i>Indic.</i>	Sing.	1. λύομαι	ἐλύομην	λύσομαι
		2. λύῃ, λύει	ἐλύου	λύσῃ, λύσει
		3. λύεται	ἐλύετο	λύσεται
	Dual	2. <del>λύεσθον</del>	<del>ἐλύεσθον</del>	<del>λύσεσθον</del>
		3. <del>λύεσθον</del>	<del>ἐλύεσθον</del>	<del>λύσεσθον</del>
	Plur.	1. λύομεθα	ἐλύομεθα	λύσομεθα
		2. λύεσθε	ἐλύεσθε	λύσεσθε
		3. λύονται	ἐλύοντο	λύσονται
	<i>Subjv.</i>	Sing.	1. λύομαι	
2. λύῃ				
3. λύηται				
Dual		2. <del>λύεσθον</del>		
		3. <del>λύεσθον</del>		
Plur.		1. λύομεθα		
		2. λύησθε		
		3. λύωνται		
<i>Opt.</i>		Sing.	1. λύοιμην	
	2. λύοιο			λύσοιο
	3. λύοιτο			λύσοιτο
	Dual	2. <del>λύεσθον</del>		<del>λύσεσθον</del>
		3. <del>λύεσθον</del>		<del>λύσεσθον</del>
	Plur.	1. λύοιμεθα		λύσοιμεθα
		2. λύοισθε		λύσοισθε
		3. λύοιντο		λύσοιντο
	<i>Imv.</i>	Sing.	2. λύου	
3. λύεσθω				
Dual		2. λύεσθον		
		3. λύεσθον		
Plur.		2. λύεσθε		
		3. λύεσθων		
<i>Inf.</i>		λύεσθαι	λύεσθαι	
<i>Partic.</i>		λύόμενος, λύομένη, λύόμενον	λύόμενος, -η, -ον	

## VOICE

		I AOR.	PF.	PLUP.
<i>Indic.</i>	Sing.	1. ἐλύσαμεν	ἐλύσαμεν	ἐλύσαμεν
		2. ἐλύσω	ἐλύσαι	ἐλύσο
		3. ἐλύσατο	ἐλύται	ἐλύτο
	Dual	2. <del>ἐλύσαμεθ</del>	<del>ἐλύμεθα</del>	<del>ἐλύμεθα</del>
		3. ἐλύσασθ	<del>ἐλύσασθ</del>	<del>ἐλύσασθ</del>
		Plur.	1. ἐλύσαμεθα	ἐλύμεθα
		2. ἐλύσασθε	ἐλύσθε	ἐλύσθε
		3. ἐλύσαντο	ἐλύνται	ἐλύοντο
	<i>Subj.</i>	Sing.	1. λύσῃμαι	λυμένος ὦ
2. λύσῃ			λυμένος ᾗς	
3. λύσῃται			λυμένος ᾗ	
Dual		2. <del>λύσασθ</del>	<del>λυμένοι ᾗμεν</del>	
		3. <del>λύσασθ</del>	<del>λυμένοι ᾗτε</del>	
		Plur.	1. λύσασθε	λυμένοι ὦμεν
		2. λύσῃσθε	λυμένοι ᾗτε	
		3. λύσονται	λυμένοι ὦσι	
<i>Opt.</i>		Sing.	1. λύσαιμην	λυμένος εἶην
	2. λύσαιο		λυμένος εἶης	
	3. λύσαιτο		λυμένος εἶη	
	Dual	2. <del>λύσαιμεθ</del>	<del>λυμένοι εἶμεν</del>	
		3. <del>λύσαιμην</del>	<del>λυμένοι εἶητε</del>	
		Plur.	1. λύσαιμεθα	λυμένοι εἶμεν ἢ εἶμεν
		2. λύσαισθε	λυμένοι εἶητε ἢ εἶτε	
		3. λύσαιντο	λυμένοι εἶσαν ἢ εἶεν	
	<i>Imv.</i>	Sing.	2. λύσαι	λύσο
3. λύσασθε			λύσθε	
Dual			2. <del>λύσαιμεθ</del>	<del>λύσασθε</del>
		3. <del>λύσαιμεθ</del>	<del>λύσασθε</del>	
Plur.		2. λύσασθε	λύσθε	
		3. λύσασθων	λύσθων	
<i>Inf.</i>		λύσασθαι	λύσθαι	
<i>Partic.</i>		λύσάμενος, -η, -ον	λυμένος, -η, -ον	

## 3. PASSIVE VOICE

		FUT. PF.	I AOR.	I FUT.
<i>Indic.</i>	Sing.	1. λεύσομαι	ἐλύθην	λευθήσομαι
		2. λεύσῃ, λεύσει	ἐλύθης	λευθήσῃ, λεύσει
		3. λεύσεται	ἐλύθη	λευθήσεται
	Dual	2. λεύσεσθον	ἐλύθητον	λευθήσεσθον
		3. λεύσεσθον	ἐλυθήτην	λευθήσεσθον
	Plur.	1. λεύσομεθα	ἐλύθημεν	λευθησόμεθα
		2. λεύσεσθε	ἐλύθητε	λευθήσεσθε
		3. λεύσονται	ἐλύθησαν	λευθήσονται
	<i>Subj.</i>	Sing.	1.	λυθῶ
2.			λυθῆς	
3.			λυθῆ	
Dual		2.	λυθήτον	
		3.	λυθήτον	
Plur.		1.	λυθῶμεν	
		2.	λυθήτε	
		3.	λυθῶσι	
<i>Opt.</i>		Sing.	1. λεύσοιμην	λυθείην
	2. λεύσοιο		λυθείης	λευθήσοιο
	3. λεύσοιτο		λυθείη	λευθήσοιτο
	Dual	2. λεύσοισθον	λυθείτον or λυθείητον	λευθήσοισθον
		3. λεύσοίστην	λυθείτην or λυθείήτην	λευθησοίστην
	Plur.	1. λεύσοιμεθα	λυθείμεν or λυθείημεν	λευθησοίμεθα
		2. λεύσοισθε	λυθείτε or λυθείητε	λευθήσοισθε
		3. λεύσοιντο	λυθείεν or λυθείησαν	λευθήσοιντο
	<i>Imv.</i>	Sing.	2.	λύθητι
3.			λυθήτω	
Dual		2.	λύθητον	
		3.	λυθήτων	
Plur.		2.	λύθητι	
		3.	λυθέντων	
<i>Inf.</i>		λεύσεσθαι	λυθῆναι	λευθήσεσθαι
<i>Partic.</i>		λεύσόμενος, -η, -ον	λυθείς, λυθείσα, λυθὴν (§ 620. a)	λευθησόμενος, -η, -ον

*Beau  
fut. perf.*

641. As examples of the second aorist and second perfect systems (§§ 83, 445, 485), the second aorist (active and middle) and the second perfect and pluperfect of *λείπω leave* are here given.

		2 AOR. ACT.	2 AOR. MID.	2 PF.	2 PLUP.	
<i>Indic.</i>	Sing.	1. ἔλιπον	ἐλίπόμην	ἔλειπα	ἐλεόλιπα	
		2. ἔλιπετε	ἐλίπετε	ἔλειπατε	ἐλεόλιπετε	
		3. ἔλιπε	ἐλίπετο	ἔλειπε	ἐλεόλιπει(ν)	
	Dual	2. ἐλίπετον	ἐλίπεσθον	ἔλειπατον	ἐλεόλιπετον	
		3. ἐλίπέτην	ἐλίπέσθην	ἔλειπατον	ἐλεόλιπέτην	
	Plur.	1. ἐλίπομεν	ἐλίπόμεθα	ἔλειπαμεν	ἐλεόλιπιμεν	
		2. ἐλίπετε	ἐλίπεσθε	ἔλειπατε	ἐλεόλιπετε	
		3. ἔλιπον	ἐλίποντο	ἔλειπεσσι	ἐλεόλιπισαν	
	<i>Subjv.</i>	Sing.	1. λίπω	λίπωμαι	[ἔλειπῶ (§ 446)]	
			2. λίπῃς	λίπῃ	ἔλειπῃς	
3. λίπῃ			λίπῃται	ἔλειπῃ		
Dual		2. λίπητον	λίπησθον	ἔλειπητον		
		3. λίπητον	λίπησθον	ἔλειπητον		
Plur.		1. λίπομεν	λιπόμεθα	ἔλειπομεν		
		2. λίπητε	λίπησθε	ἔλειπητε		
		3. λίπωσι	λίπωνται	ἔλειπωσι]		
<i>Opt.</i>		Sing.	1. λίποιμι	λιπόμην	[ἔλειποιμι (§ 446)]	
			2. λίποις	λίποιω	ἔλειποις	
	3. λίποι		λίποιτο	ἔλειποι		
	Dual	2. λίποιτον	λίποισθον	ἔλειποιτον		
		3. λιποίτην	λιποίσθην	ἔλειποιτην		
	Plur.	1. λίποιμεν	λιπόιμεθα	ἔλειποιμεν		
		2. λίποιτε	λίποισθε	ἔλειποιτε		
		3. λίποιεν	λίποιντο	ἔλειποιεν]		
	<i>Imv.</i>	Sing.	2. λίπε	λιποῦ		
			3. λιπέτω	λιπέσθε		
Dual		2. λίπετον	λίπεσθον			
		3. λιπέτων	λίπεσθων			
Plur.		2. λίπετε	λίπεσθε			
		3. λιπόντων	λίπέσθων			

	2 AOR. ACT.	2 AOR. MID.	2 PR.
<i>Inf.</i>	λιπεῖν	λιπέσθαι	λελοιπέναι
<i>Partic.</i>	λιπών, λιπούσα, λιπόν (§ 616. I. a)	λιπόμενος, -η, -ον	λελοιπώς, -υα, -ός (cp. § 623)

642. As an example of the second passive system, the second aorist passive and the second future passive of *βλάπτω* *hurt* are here given.

	2 AOR. PASS.	2 FUT. PASS.
<i>Indic.</i>	Sing. 1. ἐβλάβην	βλαβήσομαι
	2. ἐβλάβης	βλαβήσῃ or -σει
	3. ἐβλάβη	βλαβήσεται
Dual	2. ἐβλάβητον	βλαβήσεσθον
	3. ἐβλαβήτην	βλαβήσεσθον
Plur.	1. ἐβλάβημεν	βλαβησόμεθα
	2. ἐβλάβητε	βλαβήσεσθε
	3. ἐβλάβησαν	βλαβήσονται
<i>Subjv.</i>	Sing. 1. βλαβῶ	
	2. βλαβῆς	
	3. βλαβῆ	
Dual	2. βλαβήτον	
	3. βλαβήτον	
Plur.	1. βλαβώμεν	
	2. βλαβήτε	
	3. βλαβῶσι	
<i>Opt.</i>	Sing. 1. βλαβείην	βλαβησοίμην
	2. βλαβείης	βλαβήσοιο
	3. βλαβείη	βλαβήσοιτο
Dual	2. βλαβείτον or βλαβείητον	βλαβήσοισθον
	3. βλαβείτην or βλαβείητην	βλαβησοίστην
Plur.	1. βλαβείμεν or βλαβείημεν	βλαβησοίμεθα
	2. βλαβείτε or βλαβείητε	βλαβήσοισθε
	3. βλαβείεν or βλαβείησαν	βλαβήσοιντο

		2 AOR. PASS.	2 FUT. PASS.
<i>Imv.</i>	Sing. 2.	βλάβηθι	
	3.	βλαβήτω	
	Dual 2.	βλάβητον	
	3.	βλαβήτων	
	Plur. 2.	βλάβητε	
	3.	βλαβέντων	
<i>Inf.</i>		βλαβήναι	βλαβήσεσθαι
<i>Partic.</i>		βλαβείς, βλαβεῖσα, βλαβέν (§ 620. a)	βλαβησόμενος, -η -ον

## CONTRACT VERBS

643. Verbs in -άω, -έω, -όω are contracted only in the present and imperfect. For the principles of contraction, see §§ 504, 505, 507, 516, 528. *τιμάω* (τιμα-) *honor*, *ποιέω* (ποιε-) *make*, and *δηλώω* (δηλο-) *manifest* are inflected as follows in the present and imperfect of the active, middle, and passive.

	ACTIVE					
	Present Indicative					ΠΟΙΕΩ
	SINGULAR					
1. (τιμάω)	τιμάω	(ποιέω)	ποιάω	(δηλώω)	δηλώω	
2. (τιμάεις)	τιμάῃς	(ποιεῖς)	ποιεῖς	(δηλόεις)	δηλοῖς	
3. (τιμάει)	τιμάῃ	(ποιεῖ)	ποιεῖ	(δηλόει)	δηλοῖ	
	DUAL					
2. (τιμάετον)	τιμάων	(ποιέετον)	ποιεῖτον	(δηλόετον)	δηλοῦτον	
3. (τιμάετον)	τιμάων	(ποιέετον)	ποιεῖτον	(δηλόετον)	δηλοῦτον	
	PLURAL					
1. (τιμάομεν)	τιμάμεν	(ποιόομεν)	ποιούμεν	(δηλόομεν)	δηλούμεν	
2. (τιμάετε)	τιμάτε	(ποιέετε)	ποιείτε	(δηλόετε)	δηλοῦτε	
3. (τιμάουσι)	τιμάσσι	(ποιέουσι)	ποιούσι	(δηλόουσι)	δηλοῦσι	
	Imperfect					
	SINGULAR					
1. (ἐτίμαον)	ἐτίμων	(ἐποίεον)	ἐποῖον	(ἐδήλοον)	ἐδήλουν	
2. (ἐτίμαες)	ἐτίμας	(ἐποίεες)	ἐποῖες	(ἐδήλοες)	ἐδήλους	
3. (ἐτίμαε)	ἐτίμα	(ἐποίεε)	ἐποῖε	(ἐδήλοε)	ἐδήλου	



## DUAL

2. (ἐτίμαστον)	ἐτίματον	(ἐποιέστον)	ἐποιετον	(ἐδηλόστον)	ἐδηλοῦτον
3. (ἐτίμασθην)	ἐτίμασθην	(ἐποιέσθην)	ἐποιείσθην	(ἐδηλόσθην)	ἐδηλούσθην

## PLURAL

1. (ἐτιμάομεν)	ἐτιμάμεν	(ἐποιέομεν)	ἐποιούμεν	(ἐδηλόομεν)	ἐδηλούμεν
2. (ἐτιμάετε)	ἐτιμάτε	(ἐποιέετε)	ἐποιείτε	(ἐδηλόετε)	ἐδηλούτε
3. (ἐτίμαον)	ἐτίμαον	(ἐποιέον)	ἐποιούν	(ἐδήλοον)	ἐδήλουν

*Present Subjunctive*

## SINGULAR

1. (τιμάω)	τιμάω	(ποιέω)	ποιῶ	(δηλόω)	δηλῶ
2. (τιμάῃς)	τιμάῃς	(ποιεῖς)	ποιῆς	(δηλόῃς)	δηλοῖς
3. (τιμάῃ)	τιμάῃ	(ποιεῖ)	ποιῆ	(δηλόῃ)	δηλοῖ

## DUAL

2. (τιμάητον)	τιμάητον	(ποιεῖτον)	ποιήτον	(δηλόητον)	δηλώητον
3. (τιμάησθον)	τιμάησθον	(ποιεῖσθον)	ποιήσθον	(δηλόησθον)	δηλώησθον

## PLURAL

1. (τιμάωμεν)	τιμάωμεν	(ποιέωμεν)	ποιώμεν	(δηλόωμεν)	δηλώμεν
2. (τιμάητε)	τιμάητε	(ποιεῖτε)	ποιήτε	(δηλόητε)	δηλώητε
3. (τιμάωσι)	τιμάωσι	(ποιέωσι)	ποιώσι	(δηλόωσι)	δηλώσι

*Present Optative*

## SINGULAR

1. (τιμαοίην)	τιμάφην	(ποιοίην)	ποιοίην	(δηλοοίην)	δηλοίην
2. (τιμαοίῃς)	τιμάφῃς	(ποιοίῃς)	ποιοίῃς	(δηλοοίῃς)	δηλοίῃς
3. (τιμαοίῃ)	τιμάφῃ	(ποιοίῃ)	ποιοίῃ	(δηλοοίῃ)	δηλοίῃ

## DUAL

2. (τιμαοίητον)	[τιμάφητον (ποιοίητον)]	[ποιοίητον	(δηλοοίητον)	[δηλοίητον	
3. (τιμαοιήσθην)	τιμάφήσθην]	(ποιοιήσθην)	ποιοιήσθην]	(δηλοοιήσθην)	δηλοιήσθην]

## PLURAL

1. (τιμαοίημεν)	[τιμάφημεν (ποιοίημεν)]	[ποιοίημεν	(δηλοοίημεν)	[δηλοίημεν	
2. (τιμαοιήτε)	τιμάφητε	(ποιοιήτε)	ποιοιήτε	(δηλοοιήτε)	δηλοιήτε
3. (τιμαοιήσαν)	τιμάφησαν]	(ποιοιήσαν)	ποιοιήσαν]	(δηλοοιήσαν)	δηλοιήσαν]

or<sup>1</sup>or<sup>1</sup>or<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The forms with the mood sign *ιη* are commonly found in the singular; the forms with the mood sign *ι* (without *η*), in the dual and plural.

## SINGULAR

1. (τιμάοιμι)	[τιμᾶμι	(ποιόοιμι)	[ποιόοιμι	(δηλόοιμι)	[δηλοῶμι
2. (τιμάοις)	τιμᾶς	(ποιόοις)	ποιόοις	(δηλόοις)	δηλοῶις
3. (τιμάοι)	τιμᾶ]	(ποιόοι)	ποιόοι]	(δηλόοι)	δηλοῶ]

## DUAL

2. (τιμάοιτον)	τιμᾶτον	(ποιόοιτον)	ποιόοτον	(δηλόοιτον)	δηλοῶτον
3. (τιμαοίτην)	τιμᾶτην	(ποιόοίτην)	ποιόοίτην	(δηλοοίτην)	δηλοίτην

## PLURAL

1. (τιμάοιμεν)	τιμᾶμεν	(ποιόοιμεν)	ποιόομεν	(δηλόοιμεν)	δηλοῶμεν
2. (τιμάοιτε)	τιμᾶτε	(ποιόοιτε)	ποιόοτε	(δηλόοιτε)	δηλοῶτε
3. (τιμάοιεν)	τιμᾶεν	(ποιόοιεν)	ποιόοιεν	(δηλόοιεν)	δηλοῶιεν

*Present Imperative*

## SINGULAR

2. (τίμαε)	τίμαε	(ποιέε)	ποιέι	(δηλόε)	δηλού
3. (τιμαέτω)	τιμᾶτω	(ποιέέτω)	ποιέτω	(δηλοέτω)	δηλοῦτω

## DUAL

2. (τιμαέτον)	τιμᾶτον	(ποιέετον)	ποιέτον	(δηλόετον)	δηλοῦτον
3. (τιμαέτων)	τιμᾶτων	(ποιέέτων)	ποιέτων	(δηλοέτων)	δηλοῦτων

## PLURAL

2. (τιμάετε)	τιμᾶτε	(ποιέετε)	ποιέτε	(δηλόετε)	δηλοῦτε
3. (τιμαόντων)	τιμᾶντων	(ποιεόντων)	ποιούντων	(δηλοόντων)	δηλοῦντων

*Present Infinitive*

(τιμάειν)	τιμᾶν <sup>1</sup>	(ποιέειν)	ποιεῖν <sup>1</sup>	(δηλόειν)	δηλοῦν <sup>1</sup>
-----------	--------------------	-----------	---------------------	-----------	---------------------

*Present Participle* (see § 622 and a)

(τιμάων)	τιμᾶν	(ποιέων)	ποιᾶν	(δηλόων)	δηλοῶν
----------	-------	----------	-------	----------	--------

## MIDDLE AND PASSIVE

*Present Indicative*

## SINGULAR

1. (τιμάομαι)	τιμᾶμαι	(ποιόομαι)	ποιόομαι	(δηλόομαι)	δηλοῶμαι
2. (τιμάῃ οἱ τιμάει)	τιμᾶῃ	(ποιέῃ οἱ ποιέει)	ποιῃ οἱ ποιεῖ	(δηλόῃ οἱ δηλόει)	δηλοῖ
3. (τιμάεται)	τιμᾶται	(ποιέεται)	ποιεῖται	(δηλόεται)	δηλοῦται

<sup>1</sup> As the infinitive ending -ειν is a contraction of the thematic vowel ε and εν (cp. § 639), τιμᾶν really represents τιμα-ε-εν; ποιεῖν, ποιμ-ε-εν; and δηλοῦν, δηλο-ε-εν.

## DUAL

2. (τιμάεσθον)	τιμᾶσθον	(ποιέεσθον)	ποιεῖσθον	(δηλόεσθον)	δηλοῦσθον
3. (τιμάεσθον)	τιμᾶσθον	(ποιέεσθον)	ποιεῖσθον	(δηλόεσθον)	δηλοῦσθον

## PLURAL

1. (τιμάομεθα)	τιμάμεθα	(ποιεόμεθα)	ποιούμεθα	(δηλούμεθα)	δηλούμεθα
2. (τιμάεσθε)	τιμᾶσθε	(ποιέεσθε)	ποιεῖσθε	(δηλόεσθε)	δηλοῦσθε
3. (τιμάονται)	τιμώνται	(ποιέονται)	ποιούνται	(δηλούνται)	δηλοῦνται

*Imperfect*

## SINGULAR

1. (ἐτιμάομην)	ἐτιμάμην	(ἐποιεόμην)	ἐποιούμην	(ἐδηλοόμην)	ἐδηλούμην
2. (ἐτιμάου)	ἐτιμῶ	(ἐποιέου)	ἐποιοῦ	(ἐδηλόου)	ἐδηλοῦ
3. (ἐτιμάετο)	ἐτιμάτο	(ἐποιέετο)	ἐποιεῖτο	(ἐδηλόετο)	ἐδηλοῦτο

## DUAL

2. (ἐτιμάεσθον)	ἐτιμᾶσθον	(ἐποιέεσθον)	ἐποιεῖσθον	(ἐδηλόεσθον)	ἐδηλοῦσθον
3. (ἐτιμάεσθην)	ἐτιμᾶσθην	(ἐποιέεσθην)	ἐποιεῖσθην	(ἐδηλόεσθην)	ἐδηλοῦσθην

## PLURAL

1. (ἐτιμάομεθα)	ἐτιμάμεθα	(ἐποιεόμεθα)	ἐποιούμεθα	(ἐδηλούμεθα)	ἐδηλούμεθα
2. (ἐτιμάεσθε)	ἐτιμᾶσθε	(ἐποιέεσθε)	ἐποιεῖσθε	(ἐδηλόεσθε)	ἐδηλοῦσθε
3. (ἐτιμάοντο)	ἐτιμώντο	(ἐποιέοντο)	ἐποιούντο	(ἐδηλόοντο)	ἐδηλοῦντο

*Present Subjunctive*

## SINGULAR

1. (τιμάωμαι)	τιμάωμαι	(ποιέωμαι)	ποιῶμαι	(δηλόωμαι)	δηλάωμαι
2. (τιμάῃ)	τιμάῃ	(ποιέῃ)	ποιῇ	(δηλόῃ)	δηλοῖ
3. (τιμάηται)	τιμάηται	(ποιέηται)	ποιῆται	(δηλόηται)	δηλάται

## DUAL

2. (τιμάησθον)	τιμᾶσθον	(ποιέησθον)	ποιῆσθον	(δηλόησθον)	δηλάσθον
3. (τιμάησθον)	τιμᾶσθον	(ποιέησθον)	ποιῆσθον	(δηλόησθον)	δηλάσθον

## PLURAL

1. (τιμαίωμεθα)	τιμάμεθα	(ποιεάμεθα)	ποιάμεθα	(δηλούμεθα)	δηλάμεθα
2. (τιμάησθε)	τιμᾶσθε	(ποιέησθε)	ποιῆσθε	(δηλόησθε)	δηλάσθε
3. (τιμάωνται)	τιμώνται	(ποιέωνται)	ποιῶνται	(δηλόωνται)	δηλώνται

*Present Optative*

## SINGULAR

1. (τιμαοίμην)	τιμάμην	(ποιεοίμην)	ποιοίμην	(δηλοοίμην)	δηλοοίμην
2. (τιμάοιο)	τιμῶοιο	(ποιέοιο)	ποιοιο	(δηλόοιο)	δηλοιο
3. (τιμάοιτο)	τιμῶοιτο	(ποιέοιτο)	ποιοίτο	(δηλόοιτο)	δηλοίτο

## DUAL

2. (τῖμαίσθον) τῖμῶσθον (ποιεῖσθον) ποιεῖσθον (δηλοῖσθον) δηλοῖσθον  
 3. (τῖμαίσθην) τῖμῶσθην (ποιεῖσθην) ποιεῖσθην (δηλοῖσθην) δηλοῖσθην

## PLURAL

1. (τῖμαίμεθα) τῖμῶμεθα (ποιεῖμεθα) ποιεῖμεθα (δηλοῖμεθα) δηλοῖμεθα  
 2. (τῖμαίσθε) τῖμῶσθε (ποιεῖσθε) ποιεῖσθε (δηλοῖσθε) δηλοῖσθε  
 3. (τῖμαίντο) τῖμῶντο (ποιεῖντο) ποιεῖντο (δηλοῖντο) δηλοῖντο

*Present Imperative*

## SINGULAR

2. (τῖμάου) τῖμᾶ (ποιέου) ποιῶ (δηλόου) δηλοῦ  
 3. (τῖμαέσθω) τῖμᾶσθω (ποιέσθω) ποιέσθω (δηλόέσθω) δηλοῦσθω

## DUAL

2. (τῖμαέσθον) τῖμᾶσθον (ποιέεσθον) ποιεῖσθον (δηλόεσθον) δηλοῦσθον  
 3. (τῖμαέσθων) τῖμᾶσθων (ποιέεσθων) ποιεῖσθων (δηλόεσθων) δηλοῦσθων

## PLURAL

2. (τῖμαέσθε) τῖμᾶσθε (ποιέεσθε) ποιεῖσθε (δηλόεσθε) δηλοῦσθε  
 3. (τῖμαέσθων) τῖμᾶσθων (ποιέεσθων) ποιεῖσθων (δηλόεσθων) δηλοῦσθων

*Present Infinitive*

- (τῖμαέσθαι) τῖμᾶσθαι (ποιέεσθαι) ποιεῖσθαι (δηλόεσθαι) δηλοῦσθαι

*Present Participle*

- (τῖμαόμενος) τῖμᾶμενος (ποιόμενος) ποιόμενος (δηλόόμενος) δηλοόμενος

644. Liquid Verbs: future active and middle of φαίνομαι  
 show.

*Indicative*

## FUTURE ACTIVE

## FUTURE MIDDLE

- |          |            |          |                    |                |
|----------|------------|----------|--------------------|----------------|
| Sing. 1. | (φανέω)    | φανῶ     | (φανέομαι)         | φανομαι        |
| 2.       | (φανείεις) | φανείεις | (φανήῃσσι or -έει) | φανῆσσι or -ει |
| 3.       | (φανείη)   | φανείη   | (φανέεται)         | φανείται       |
| Dual 2.  | (φανέετον) | φανείτον | (φανέεσθον)        | φανείσθον      |
| 3.       | (φανέετον) | φανείτον | (φανέεσθον)        | φανείσθον      |
| Plur. 1. | (φανόμεν)  | φανόμεν  | (φανόμεθα)         | φανόμεθα       |
| 2.       | (φανέετε)  | φανέετε  | (φανέεσθε)         | φανέεσθε       |
| 3.       | (φανέουσι) | φανούσι  | (φανέονται)        | φανούνται      |

*Optative*

Sing. 1.	(φανείην)	φανείην	(φανείμην)	φανείμην
2.	(φανείης)	φανείης	(φανείοιο)	φανείοιο
3.	(φανείῃ)	φανείῃ	(φανείτοιο)	φανείτοιο
Dual 2.	(φανείοιτον)	φανείοιτον	(φανείοισθον)	φανείοισθον
3.	(φανείοίτην)	φανείοίτην	(φανείοίσθην)	φανείοίσθην
Plur. 1.	(φανέοιμεν)	φανέοιμεν	(φανέοιμεθα)	φανέοιμεθα
2.	(φανέοιτε)	φανέοιτε	(φανέοισθε)	φανέοισθε
3.	(φανέοιεν)	φανέοιεν	(φανέοιεντο)	φανέοιεντο
		or		
Sing. 1.	(φανέοιμι)	[φανέοιμι		
2.	(φανέοις)	φανέοις		
3.	(φανέοι)	φανέοι]		

*Infinitive*

(φανέειν)	φανείν	(φανέεσθαι)	φανείσθαι
-----------	--------	-------------	-----------

*Participle*

(φανέων, φανέουσα, φανών, φανούσα, φανέομενος, φανέμενος, φανέον)	φανούν (cp. § 622)	-η, -ον	-η, -ον
--	-----------------------	---------	---------

645. Liquid Verbs: first aorist active and middle of *φαίνω show*.

*Indicative*

	I AORIST ACTIVE	I AORIST MIDDLE
Sing. 1.	ἔφηνα	ἔφηνάμην
2.	ἔφηνας	ἔφηνω
3.	ἔφηνε	ἔφηνετο
Dual 2.	ἔφηνάτο	ἔφηνάσθον
3.	ἔφηνάτην	ἔφηνάσθην
Plur. 1.	ἔφηνάμεν	ἔφηνάμεθα
2.	ἔφηνάτε	ἔφηνάσθε
3.	ἔφηναν	ἔφηνάντο

*Subjunctive*

Sing. 1.	φήνω	φήνομαι
2.	φήνῃς	φήνῃ
3.	φήνῃ	φήνηται

I AORIST ACTIVE		I AORIST MIDDLE
Dual 2.	φήνητον	φήνησθον
3.	φήνητον	φήνησθον
Plur. 1.	φήνωμεν	φήνώμεθα
2.	φήνητε	φήνησθε
3.	φήνωσι	φήνωνται
<i>Optative</i>		
Sing. 1.	φήναιμι	φήναιμην
2.	φήναις or φήνεις (cp. § 254)	φήναιο
3.	φήναι or φήναιε	φήναιτο
Dual 2.	φήναιτον	φήναισθον
3.	φήναιτήν	φήναισθην
Plur. 1.	φήναιμεν	φήναιμεθα
2.	φήναιτε	φήναισθε
3.	φήναιεν or φήναιεν (cp. § 254)	φήναιντο
<i>Imperative</i>		
Sing. 2.	φήνον	φήναι
3.	φήνάτω	φήνάσθω
Dual 2.	φήνατον	φήνασθον
3.	φήνάτων	φήνάσθων
Plur. 2.	φήνατε	φήνασθε
3.	φήνάντων	φήνάσθων
<i>Infinitive</i>		
	φήναι	φήνασθαι
<i>Participle</i>		
	φήνας, -ασα, φήναν (cp. § 618)	φήνάμενος, -η, -ον

## CONJUGATION OF MI-VERBS

646. Root class. — Inflection of *τίθημι place*, *ἵστημι set*, *δίδωμι give*, in the present, imperfect, and second aorist tenses; and of *ἐπριάμην I bought*.

## ACTIVE

*Present Indicative*

Sing. 1.	τίθημι	ἵστημι	δίδωμι
2.	τίθης	ἵστης	δίδως
3.	τίθεισι	ἵστησι	δίδωσι

Dual 2.	τι-θε-τον	ἴστα-τον	δι-δο-τον
3.	τι-θε-τον	ἴστα-τον	δι-δο-τον
Plur. 1.	τι-θε-μεν	ἴστα-μεν	δι-δο-μεν
2.	τι-θε-τε	ἴστα-τε	δι-δο-τε
3.	τι-θε-σι	ἴστα-σι	δι-δο-σι

*Imperfect*

Sing. 1.	ἔτι-θη-ν	ἴσθη-ν	ἔδι-δουν (§ 570)
2.	ἔτι-θε-εις (§ 559)	ἴσθη-ς	ἔδι-δους
3.	ἔτι-θει	ἴσθη	ἔδι-δου
Dual 2.	ἔτι-θε-τον	ἴστα-τον	ἔδι-δο-τον
3.	ἔτι-θε-την	ἴστα-την	ἔδι-δο-την
Plur. 1.	ἔτι-θε-μεν	ἴστα-μεν	ἔδι-δο-μεν
2.	ἔτι-θε-τε	ἴστα-τε	ἔδι-δο-τε
3.	ἔτι-θε-σαν	ἴστα-σαν	ἔδι-δο-σαν

*Present Subjunctive*

Sing. 1.	τι-θῶ	ἴσθῶ	δι-δῶ
2.	τι-θῆ-ς	ἴσθῆ-ς	δι-δῆ-ς
3.	τι-θῆ	ἴσθῆ	δι-δῆ
Dual 2.	τι-θῆ-τον	ἴσθῆ-τον	δι-δῶ-τον
3.	τι-θῆ-τον	ἴσθῆ-τον	δι-δῶ-τον
Plur. 1.	τι-θῶ-μεν	ἴσθῶ-μεν	δι-δῶ-μεν
2.	τι-θῆ-τε	ἴσθῆ-τε	δι-δῶ-τε
3.	τι-θῶ-σι	ἴσθῶ-σι	δι-δῶ-σι

*Present Optative*

Sing. 1.	τι-θείη-ν	ἴσταίη-ν	δι-δοίη-ν
2.	τι-θείης	ἴσταίης	δι-δοίης
3.	τι-θείη	ἴσταίη	δι-δοίη
Dual 2.	τι-θεί-τον	ἴσταί-τον	δι-δοί-τον
3.	τι-θεί-την	ἴσταί-την	δι-δοί-την
Plur. 1.	τι-θεί-μεν	ἴσταί-μεν	δι-δοί-μεν
2.	τι-θεί-τε	ἴσταί-τε	δι-δοί-τε
3.	τι-θεί-ν	ἴσταί-ν	δι-δοί-ν

or<sup>1</sup>or<sup>1</sup>or<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In the dual and plural the forms without η are commonly found.

Dual 2.	[τι-θείη-τον]	[λοταίη-τον]	[δει-δοίη-τον]
3.	[τι-θείη-την]	[λοταίη-την]	[δει-δοίη-την]
Plur. 1.	[τι-θείη-μεν]	[λοταίη-μεν]	[δει-δοίη-μεν]
2.	[τι-θείη-τε]	[λοταίη-τε]	[δει-δοίη-τε]
3.	[τι-θείη-σαν]	[λοταίη-σαν]	[δει-δοίη-σαν]

*Present Imperative*

Sing. 2.	τι-θεί (§ 559)	λοτη (§ 551)	δει-δου (§ 570)
3.	τι-θεί-τω	λοτά-τω	δει-δέ-τω
Dual 2.	τι-θεί-τον	λοτα-τον	δει-δο-τον
3.	τι-θεί-των	λοτά-των	δει-δέ-των
Plur. 2.	τι-θεί-τε	λοτα-τε	δει-δο-τε
3.	τι-θεί-ντων	λοτά-ντων	δει-δέ-ντων

*Present Infinitive*

τι-θεί-ναι	λοτά-ναι	δει-δέ-ναι
------------	----------	------------

*Present Participle*

τι-θείς, -είσα, -όν (§ 620)	λοτάς, -άσα, -όν (§ 617)	δει-δοίς, -οίσα, -όν (§ 621)
--------------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------------

## MIDDLE AND PASSIVE

*Present Indicative*

Sing. 1.	τι-θεί-μαι	λοτα-μαι	δει-δο-μαι
2.	τι-θεί-σαι	λοτα-σαι	δει-δο-σαι
3.	τι-θεί-ται	λοτα-ται	δει-δο-ται
Dual 2.	τι-θεί-σθον	λοτα-σθον	δει-δο-σθον
3.	τι-θεί-σθον	λοτα-σθον	δει-δο-σθον
Plur. 1.	τι-θεί-μεθα	λοτά-μεθα	δει-δέ-μεθα
2.	τι-θεί-σθε	λοτα-σθε	δει-δο-σθε
3.	τι-θεί-νται	λοτα-νται	δει-δο-νται

*Imperfect*

Sing. 1.	ἔτι-θεί-μην	ἔλοτά-μην	ἔδει-δέ-μην
2.	ἔτι-θεί-σο	ἔλοτα-σο	ἔδει-δο-σο
3.	ἔτι-θεί-το	ἔλοτα-το	ἔδει-δο-το
Dual 2.	ἔτι-θεί-σθον	ἔλοτα-σθον	ἔδει-δο-σθον
3.	ἔτι-θεί-σθην	ἔλοτά-σθην	ἔδει-δέ-σθην



Plur. 1.	ἐπι-θέ-μεθα	ἐπιτά-μεθα	ἐπι-δέ-μεθα
2.	ἐπι-θέ-σθε	ἐπιτά-σθε	ἐπι-δέ-σθε
3.	ἐπι-θέ-ντε	ἐπιτά-ντε	ἐπι-δέ-ντε

*Present Subjunctive*

Sing. 1.	τι-θή-μαι	λοιπά-μαι	δι-δέ-μαι
2.	τι-θῆ	λοιπῆ	δι-δέ
3.	τι-θῆ-ται	λοιπῆ-ται	δι-δέ-ται
Dual 2.	τι-θῆ-σθον	λοιπῆ-σθον	δι-δέ-σθον
3.	τι-θῆ-σθον	λοιπῆ-σθον	δι-δέ-σθον
Plur. 1.	τι-θή-μεθα	λοιπά-μεθα	δι-δέ-μεθα
2.	τι-θῆ-σθε	λοιπῆ-σθε	δι-δέ-σθε
3.	τι-θή-νται	λοιπά-νται	δι-δέ-νται

*Present Optative*

Sing. 1.	τι-θεί-μην	λοιπαί-μην	δι-δοί-μην
2.	τι-θεί-ο	λοιπαί-ο	δι-δοί-ο
3.	τι-θεί-το	λοιπαί-το	δι-δοί-το
Dual 2.	τι-θεί-σθον	λοιπαί-σθον	δι-δοί-σθον
3.	τι-θεί-σθη	λοιπαί-σθη	δι-δοί-σθη
Plur. 1.	τι-θεί-μεθα	λοιπαί-μεθα	δι-δοί-μεθα
2.	τι-θεί-σθε	λοιπαί-σθε	δι-δοί-σθε
3.	τι-θεί-ντο	λοιπαί-ντο	δι-δοί-ντο

or<sup>1</sup>

Sing. 1.	τι-δοί-μην
2.	τι-δοί-ο
3.	τι-δοί-το
Dual 2.	τι-δοί-σθον
3.	τι-δοί-σθη
Plur. 1.	τι-δοί-μεθα
2.	τι-δοί-σθε
3.	τι-δοί-ντο

*Present Imperative*

Sing. 2.	τί-θε-σο	λοιπά-σο	δι-δέ-σο
3.	τι-θέ-σθε	λοιπά-σθε	δι-δέ-σθε

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ποιοίμην (§ 643).

Dual 2.	τι-θείσθον	ἴστασθον	δέδοσθον
3.	τι-θείσθων	ἴστέσθων	δέδεσθων
Plur. 2.	τι-θείσθε	ἴστασθε	δέδοσθε
3.	τι-θείσθων	ἴστέσθων	δέδεσθων

*Present Infinitive*

τι-θείσθαι	ἴστασθαι	δέδοσθαι
------------	----------	----------

*Present Participle*

τι-θείμενος	ἴστέμενος	δέδεμενος
-------------	-----------	-----------

## SECOND AORIST

*Indicative*

	ACTIVE	MIDDLE	ACTIVE	MIDDLE	ACTIVE	MIDDLE
Sing. 1.	(ἴθῃκα)	ἔθιμην	ἔστην <sup>1</sup>	ἔπριάμην <sup>2</sup>	(ἴθωκα)	ἔθεμην
2.	(ἴθῃκας)	ἔθου	ἔστης	ἔπριω	(ἴθωκας)	ἔθου
3.	(ἴθῃκε)	ἔθειτο	ἔστη	ἔπριετο	(ἴθωκε)	ἔθετο
Dual 2.	ἔθειτον	ἔθεισθον	ἔστητον	ἔπρίασθον	ἔθετον	ἔθεσθον
3.	ἔθειτην	ἔθεισθην	ἔστήτην	ἔπριάσθην	ἔθετην	ἔθεσθην
Plur. 1.	ἔθειμεν	ἔθειμεθα	ἔστημεν	ἔπριάμεθα	ἔθεμεν	ἔθεμεθα
2.	ἔθειτε	ἔθεισθε	ἔστητε	ἔπρίασθε	ἔθετε	ἔθεισθε
3.	ἔθεισαν	ἔθειντο	ἔστησαν	ἔπριαντο	ἔθεισαν	ἔθειντο

*Subjunctive*

Sing. 1.	θῶ	θῶμαι	στῶ	πρίωμαι	δέω	δέωμαι
2.	θῆς	θῆ	στῆς	πρίῃ	δέης	δέῃ
3.	θῆ	θῆται	στῆ	πρίῃται	δέῃ	δέται
Dual 2.	θῆτον	θῆσθον	στῆτον	πρίῃσθον	δέωτον	δέωσθον
3.	θῆτον	θῆσθον	στῆτον	πρίῃσθον	δέωτον	δέωσθον
Plur. 1.	θῶμεν	θῶμεθα	στῶμεν	πρίωμεθα	δέωμεν	δέωμεθα
2.	θῆτε	θῆσθε	στῆτε	πρίῃσθε	δέωτε	δέωσθε
3.	θῶσι	θῶνται	στῶσι	πρίωνται	δέωσι	δέωνται

*Optative*

Sing. 1.	θελῶν	θελῶμην	σταλῶν	πριαλῶμην	δελῶν	δελῶμην
2.	θελῆς	θελῶ	σταλῆς	πριαλῶ	δελῆς	δελῶ
3.	θελῆ	θελῶτο <sup>3</sup>	σταλῆ	πριαλῶτο	δελῆ	δελῶτο

<sup>1</sup> *stool*.<sup>2</sup> *bought*, § 550.<sup>3</sup> Or *θεῖτο*.

Dual 2.	θεί-τον	θεί-σθον	σταί-τον	πρία-σθον	δοί-τον	δοί-σθον.
3.	θεί-την	θεί-σθην	σταί-την	πρία-σθην	δοί-την	δοί-σθην
Plur. 1.	θεί-μεν	θεί-μεθα	σταί-μεν	πρία-μεθα	δοί-μεν	δοί-μεθα
2.	θεί-τε	θεί-σθε	σταί-τε	πρία-σθε	δοί-τε	δοί-σθε
3.	θεί-εν	θεί-ντο	σταί-εν	πρία-ντο	δοί-εν	δοί-ντο

or

or

or

or

Dual 2.	[θείη-τον]		[σταίη-τον]		[δοίη-τον]	
3.	[θείή-την]		[σταίή-την]		[δοίή-την]	
Plur. 1.	[θείη-μεν]	θείμεθα	[σταίη-μεν]		[δοίη-μεν]	
2.	[θείη-τε]	θείσθε	[σταίη-τε]		[δοίη-τε]	
3.	[θείη-σαν]	θείντο	[σταίη-σαν]		[δοίη-σαν]	

*Imperative*

Sing. 2.	θείς	δοθ	στήθι	πρία	δός	δοθ
3.	θείτω	θείσθω	στήτω	πρίασθω	δότω	δοσθω
Dual 2.	θεί-τον	θεί-σθον	στή-τον	πρία-σθον	δό-τον	δό-σθον
3.	θεί-των	θεί-σθων	στή-των	πρία-σθων	δό-των	δό-σθων
Plur. 2.	θεί-τε	θεί-σθε	στή-τε	πρία-σθε	δό-τε	δό-σθε
3.	θεί-ντων	θεί-σθων	στά-ντων	πρία-σθων	δό-ντων	δό-σθων

*Infinitive*

θεί-ναι	θεί-σθαι	στή-ναι	πρία-σθαι	δοθ-ναι	δοσ-θαι
---------	----------	---------	-----------	---------	---------

*Participle*

θείς,	θεί-μενος,	στάς,	πρία-μενος,	δοός,	δό-μενος,
θείσα,	-η, -ον	στάσα,	-η, -ον	δοόσα,	-η, -ον
θέν <sup>1</sup>		σταν <sup>2</sup>		δόν <sup>3</sup>	

## SECOND PERFECT OF MI-VERBS

647. A few verbs of the *μ*-class have a second perfect and pluperfect. Only the dual and plural occur; for the singular, the first perfect and pluperfect are used. The second perfect and pluperfect of *ἵστημι* are inflected as follows:

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 620.<sup>2</sup> Cp. § 617.<sup>3</sup> Cp. § 621.

## SECOND PERFECT

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT. (poetic)	IMV. (poetic)
Sing. 1.	(ἴστηκα) <i>stand</i>	ἴστω	ἴσταίην	
2.	(ἴστηκας)	ἴσθῆς	ἴσταίης	ἴσταθι
3.	(ἴστηκε)	ἴσθῆ	ἴσταῖη	ἴστάτω
Dual 2.	ἴστατον	ἴσθητον	ἴσταίητον or -αίτων	ἴστατον
3.	ἴστατον	ἴσθητον	ἴσταίητην or -αίτην	ἴστάτων
Plur. 1.	ἴσταμεν	ἴσθῶμεν	ἴσταίημεν or -αίμεν	
2.	ἴστατε	ἴσθητε	ἴσταίητε or -αίτε	ἴστατε
3.	ἴσθασι	ἴσθῶσι	ἴσταίησαν or -αίεν	ἴστάωντων

*Infinitive* ἴστάσθαι     *Participle* ἴσθῶς, ἴσθῶσα, ἴσθῶς (§ 624)

## SECOND PLUPERFECT

Sing. 1.	(εἰσθήκη) <i>stood</i>	Dual 2.	ἴστατον	Plur. 1.	ἴσταμεν
2.	(εἰσθήκης)	3.	ἴστάτην	2.	ἴστατε
3.	(εἰσθήκει)			3.	ἴστασαν

648. -νῦμι class. — Inflection of the present system of *δεικνῦμι show* and of second aorist *ἔδῴν entered*.

*Indicative*

	ACTIVE		MIDDLE AND PASSIVE		ACTIVE
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>2 Aorist</i>
Sing. 1.	δεικνῦμι	ἔδεικνῦν	δεικνυμαι	ἔδεικνύμην	ἔδῴν
2.	δεικνῦς	ἔδεικνῦς	δεικνυσαι	ἔδεικνυσο	ἔδῴς
3.	δεικνῦσι	ἔδεικνῦ	δεικνυται	ἔδεικνυτο	ἔδῴ
Dual 2.	δεικνυτον	ἔδεικνυτον	δεικνυσθον	ἔδεικνυσθον	ἔδῴτον
3.	δεικνυτον	ἔδεικνύτην	δεικνυσθον	ἔδεικνύσθην	ἔδῴτην
Plur. 1.	δεικνυμεν	ἔδεικνυμεν	δεικνύμεθα	ἔδεικνύμεθα	ἔδῴμεν
2.	δεικνυτε	ἔδεικνυτε	δεικνυσθε	ἔδεικνυσθε	ἔδῴτε
3.	δεικνύσσι	ἔδεικνυσαν	δεικνυνται	ἔδεικνυντο	ἔδῴσαν

*Subjunctive*

Sing. 1.	δεικνῶ	δεικνῶμαι	δῶ
2.	δεικνῆς	δεικνῆ	δῆς
3.	δεικνῆ	δεικνῆται	δῆ
Dual 2.	δεικνύητον	δεικνύησθον	δῆτον
3.	δεικνύητον	δεικνύησθον	δῆτον

Plur. 1.	δεικνόμεν	δεικνόμεθα	δύομεν
2.	δεικνύητε	δεικνύσθε	δύητε
3.	δεικνύσσι	δεικνύνται	δύσσι

*Optative*

Sing. 1.	δεικνύοιμι	δεικνυίμην
2.	δεικνύοις	δεικνύοιο
3.	δεικνύοι	δεικνύοιτο
Dual 2.	δεικνύοιτον	δεικνύοισθον
3.	δεικνύοιτην	δεικνύοισθην
Plur. 1.	δεικνύοιμεν	δεικνυίμεθα
2.	δεικνύοιτε	δεικνύοισθε
3.	δεικνύοιεν	δεικνύοίντο

*Imperative*

Sing. 2.	δείκ-νῦ (§ 579)	δείκ-νυ-σο	δύ-θι
3.	δείκ-νέ-τω	δείκ-νέ-σθε	δύ-τω
Dual 2.	δείκ-νυ-τον	δείκ-νυ-σθον	δύ-τον
3.	δείκ-νέ-των	δείκ-νέ-σθων	δύ-των
Plur. 2.	δείκ-νυ-τε	δείκ-νυ-σθε	δύ-τε
3.	δείκ-νέ-ντων	δείκ-νέ-σθων	δύ-ντων

*Infinitive*

δείκ-νέ-ναι	δείκ-νυ-σθαι	δύ-ναι
-------------	--------------	--------

*Participle*

δείκ-νός, -ύσα, -όν (§ 619)	δείκ-νέ-μενος, -η, -ον	δύς, δύσα, δύν (cp. § 619)
--------------------------------	------------------------	-------------------------------

649. *ἔημι* (έ-, ἦ-) *send* is inflected nearly like *τίθημι* (§ 646). The inflection of the present and second aorist systems is as follows :

	ACTIVE			MIDDLE (PASSIVE)			MIDDLE
	<i>Indicative</i>			<i>Indicative</i>			
	PRES.	IMPF.	2 AOR.	PRES.	IMPF.	2 AOR.	
Sing. 1.	ἔημι	ἔην	(ἦκα)	ἔμαι	ἔμην	—	εἶμην
2.	ἔης, εἶς	εἶς	(ἦκας)	ἔσαι	ἔσο	—	εἶσο
3.	ἔησι	εἶ	(ἦκα)	ἔται	ἔτο	—	εἶτο

Dual 2.	ἔτον	ἔτον	— εἶτον	ἔσθον	ἔσθον	— εἰσθον
3.	ἔτον	ἔτην	— εἶτην	ἔσθον	ἔσθην	— εἰσθην
Plur. 1.	ἔμεν	ἔμεν	— εἶμεν	ἔμεθα	ἔμεθα	— εἰμεθα
2.	ἔτε	ἔτε	— εἶτε	ἔσθε	ἔσθε	— εἰσθε
3.	ἔσσι	ἔσαν	— εἶσαν	ἔνται	ἔντο	— εἶντο

*Subjunctive*

Sing. 1.	ἔω	— ᾶ	ἔωμαι	— ᾶμαι
2.	ἔῃς	— ῆς	ἔῆ	— ῆ
3.	ἔῆ	— ῆ	ἔῆται	— ῆται
Dual 2.	ἔητον	— ῆτον	ἔησθον	— ῆσθον
3.	ἔητον	— ῆτον	ἔησθον	— ῆσθον
Plur. 1.	ἔωμεν	— ᾶμεν	ἔωμεθα	— ᾶμεθα
2.	ἔητε	— ῆτε	ἔησθε	— ῆσθε
3.	ἔωσι	— ᾶσι	ἔώνται	— ᾶνται

*Optative*

Sing. 1.	ἔλην	— εἶην	ἔλιμην	— εἶμιην
2.	ἔλης	— εἶης	ἔλο	— εἶο
3.	ἔλη	— εἶη	ἔλιτο	— εἶτο (— οἶτο)
Dual 2.	ἔητον or ἔητρον	— εἶτον or εἶτρον	ἔησθον	— εἶσθον
3.	ἔητην or ἔητήην	— εἶτην or εἶτήην	ἔησθην	— εἶσθην
Plur. 1.	ἔλιμεν or ἔλιμεν	— εἶμεν or εἶμεν	ἔλιμεθα	— εἶμεθα (— οἶμεθα)
2.	ἔλιτε or ἔλιητε	— εἶτε or εἶητε	ἔλιθε	— εἶθε (— οἶθε)
3.	ἔλιεν or ἔλιησαν	— εἶεν or εἶησαν	ἔλιεντο	— εἶεντο (— οἶεντο)

*Imperative*

Sing. 2.	ἔε	— ἔε	ἔεσο	— οἶ
3.	ἔτω	— ἔτω	ἔετω	— ἔετω
Dual 2.	ἔετον	— ἔετον	ἔεσθον	— ἔεσθον
3.	ἔετων	— ἔετων	ἔεσθων	— ἔεσθων
Plur. 2.	ἔετε	— ἔετε	ἔεσθε	— ἔεσθε
3.	ἔετων	— ἔετων	ἔεστων	— ἔεστων

*Infinitive*

εἶναι — εἶναι εἶσθαι — εἶσθαι

*Participle*

εἶς, εἶσα, — εἷς, — εἷσα, εἶμενος — εἶμενος  
 εἶν (cp. § 620) — εἶν (cp. § 620)

Future: — ἦσω in prose only in composition; — ἦσομαι.

First Aorist: ἦκα in prose usually in composition, — ἠκάμην; both only in the indicative.

Perfect Active: — εἶκα only in composition.

Perfect Middle (Passive): — εἶμαι, — εἶμην (pluperfect); — εἶσθαι, — εἶσθαι, — εἶμενος only in composition.

Aorist Passive: — εἶθην, — εἶθῶ, — εἶθήναι, — εἶθε; only in composition.

Future Passive: — εἶσομαι only in composition.

Verbal Adjectives: — εἶός, — εἶτός; only in composition.

650. εἶμι (έσ-; cp. Lat. *es-se*) *I am* is inflected as follows:

		PRESENT			IMPERFECT	
		INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Sing.	1.	εἶμι	ᾶ	εἶην		ἦ or ἦν
	2.	εἶ	ἦς	εἶης	εἶθι	ἦσθα
	3.	εἶσι	ἦ	εἶη	εἶτω	ἦν
Dual	2.	εἶτόν	ἦτον	εἶητον or εἶτον	εἶτον	ἦστον
	3.	εἶτόν	ἦτον	εἶήτην or εἶτην	εἶτων	ἦστην
Plur.	1.	εἶμεν	ᾶμεν	εἶημεν or εἶμεν		ἦμεν
	2.	εἶτε	ἦτε	εἶητε or εἶτε	εἶτε	ἦτε or ἦστε (rare)
	3.	εἶσι	ᾶσι	εἶησαν or εἶεν	εἶτων	ἦσαν

Inf.: εἶναι. Partic.: εἶν, οὔσα, ὄν, gen. ὄντος, οὔσης, ὄντος, etc.

## FUTURE (with middle forms)

ἦσομαι, ἦσῃ (or ἦσαι), ἦσται, ἦσεσθον, ἦσεσθον, ἦσόμεθα, ἦσεσθε, ἦσονται, opt. ἦσοίμην, inf. ἦσεσθαι, partic. ἦσόμενος, -η, -ον

a. In the imperative 3 pl. *δυντων* and *ἔστωσαν* also occur.

b. All the forms of the present indicative except *εἶ* are enclitic.

c. In composition *ὄν* retains its accent, as *παρών*, *παρούσα*, *παρόντος*, etc.; and so *ἔσται*, as *παρέσται*.

651. εἶμι (*ι-, ει-*; cp. Lat. *i-re*) *go* has only the present system.

	PRESENT				IMPERFECT
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Sing. 1.	εἶμι	ἔω	λοιμι or λοίην		ἦα or ἦειν
2.	εἶ	ἔης	λοις	ἔθι	ἦισθα or ἦεις
3.	εἶσι	ἔη	λοι	ἔτω	ἦειν or ἦε
Dual 2.	ἔτον	ἔητον	λοιτον	ἔτον	ἦτον
3.	ἔτον	ἔητον	λοίτην	ἔτων	ἦτην
Plur. 1.	ἔμεν	ἔωμεν	λοιμεν		ἦμεν
2.	ἔτε	ἔητε	λοιτε	ἔτε	ἦτε
3.	ἔσσι	ἔωσι	λοιεν	λόντων	ἦσαν or ἦσαν

Inf. : *ἔναι*. Partic. : *ἰών, ἰούσα, ἰών*, gen. *ἰόντος, ἰούσης, ἰόντος*, etc.

Verbal Adjectives : *ἰτός, ἰτέος, ἰτητέος*.

a. The imperative 3 pl. *ἴτωσαν* occurs rarely.

b. The participle *ἰών* is accented like a second aorist. The accent of the simple form of participle and infinitive is kept in composition, as *ἀπιών, ἀπιούσα, ἀπιέναι*. Otherwise the compounds have recessive accent so far as the rules allow : *ἄπειμι, ἄπεισι*, but *ἀπῆα, ἀπῆμεν*.

652. φημί (*φα-, φη-*, cp. Lat. *fā-rī*) *say, say yes, or assent* is inflected in the present as follows :

	PRESENT				IMPERFECT
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Sing. 1.	φημί	φῶ	φαίην		ἔφην
2	φῆς	φῆς	φαίης	φάθι or φάθι	ἔφησθα or ἔφης
3.	φησί	φῆ	φαίη	φάτω	ἔφη
Dual 2.	φατόν	φῆτον	not found	φάτον	ἔφατον
3.	φατόν	φῆτον	not found	φάτων	ἔφάτην
Plur. 1.	φάμεν	φῶμεν	φάιμεν or φαίημεν		ἔφάμεν
2.	φάτε	φῆτε	φαίητε	φάτε	ἔφατε
3.	φᾶσι	φῶσι	φάιεν or φαίησαν	φάντων	ἔφασαν



Inf. : φάναι. Partic. : poet. φάς, φάσα, φάν (Attic prose φάσκον).

Verbal Adjectives : φάτος (poet.), φάτος.

Future : φήσω, φήσειν, φήσων.

First Aorist : ἔφησα, φήσω, φήσαιμι, —, φήσαι, φήσῃς.

Pf. Pass. Imv. : πεφάσθω *let it be said*.

a. All the forms of the present indicative except φής are enclitic.

653. In place of ἦμαι *sit* we find usually κάθ-ημαι in Attic prose and comedy. κάθημαι sometimes is perfect in meaning (*I have sat, I have been seated*). The σ of the verb stem does not appear except before -το.

PRESENT				IMPERFECT		
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.	
Sing. 1.	κάθηναι	καθήμεαι	καθοίμην		ἐκαθήμην	οἱ καθήμεν
2.	κάθησαι	καθήῃ	καθοίῃς	κάθησο	ἐκάθησο	καθήσο
3.	κάθηται	καθήται	καθοίτο	καθήσθω	ἐκάθητο	καθήτο <sup>1</sup>
Dual 2.	κάθησθον	καθήσθον	καθοίσθον	κάθησθον	ἐκάθησθον	καθήσθον
3.	κάθησθον	καθήσθον	καθοίσθην	καθήσθων	ἐκαθήσθην	καθήσθην
Plur. 1.	καθήμεθα	καθόμεθα	καθοίμεθα		ἐκαθήμεθα	καθήμεθα
2.	κάθησθε	καθήσθε	καθοίσθε	κάθησθε	ἐκάθησθε	καθήσθε
3.	κάθηνται	καθώνται	καθούντο	καθήσθων	ἐκάθηντο	καθήντο

Inf. : καθήσθαι. Partic. : καθήμενος.

a. In the imperfect ἐκαθήμην is used about as often as καθήμην.

654. κείμαι (κει-) *lie, am laid*, regularly used in the present and imperfect instead of the perfect and pluperfect passive of τίθημι *place*.

PRESENT				IMPERFECT	
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Sing. 1.	κείμαι				ἐκειμην
2.	κείσαι			κείσο	ἐκείσο
3.	κείται	κίηται	κίητο	κείσθω	ἐκείτο

<sup>1</sup> Οἱ καθήτο.

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Dual 2.	κείσθον			κείσθον	ἔκείσθον
3.	κείσθον			κείσθον	ἔκείσθην
Plur. 1.	κείμεθα				ἔκείμεθα
2.	κείσθε	(δια)κίησθε		κείσθε	ἔκείσθε
3.	κείνται	(κατα)κίωνται (προσ)κίοντο		κείσθω	ἔκείντο

Inf.: κείσθαι. Partic.: κείμενος.

Future: κείσομαι, κείσῃ or κείσει, κείσεται, etc.

a. In the subjunctive and optative *κει-* becomes *κε* before a vowel.

b. Compounds have recessive accent only in present indicative and imperative: *κατάκειμαι, κατάκεισο*, but *κατακείσθαι*.

655. *οἶδα* (*ιδ, ειδ-ε, οιδ-*; cp. Lat. *videō*) *know* is a perfect with the meaning of a present, and formed without reduplication. The second perfect and second pluperfect are inflected as follows:

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	2 PERFECT OPT.	IMV.	2 PLUPERFECT INDIC.
Sing. 1.	οἶδα	εἶδῶ	εἶδειην		ἦδει or ἦδειν
2.	οἶσθα	εἶδῆς	εἶδειης	ἴσθι	ἦδησθα ἦδεις
3.	οἶδε	εἶδῆ	εἶδειη	ἴστω	ἦδει(ν)
Dual 2.	ἴστων	εἶδητον	εἶδειτον	ἴστων	ἦστων
3.	ἴστων	εἶδητον	εἶδειτην	ἴστων	ἦστην
Plur. 1.	ἴσμεν	εἶδῶμεν	εἶδειμεν or εἶδειμεν		ἦσμεν ἦδειμεν
2.	ἴσθε	εἶδητε	εἶδειτε εἶδειητε	ἴσθε	ἦσθε ἦδειτε
3.	ἴσσι	εἶδῶσι	εἶδειν εἶδεισαν	ἴστων	ἦσαν ἦδεισαν

Inf.: εἶδναι.

Partic.: εἶδός, εἶδύα, εἶδός.

Verbal Adjective: ἴστικός.

Future: εἴσομαι.

Compound: σένοιδα *am conscious of*.



## SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

## USES OF THE CASES

## 656. Nominative :

1. Subject (§ 53. a).
2. Predicate nominative (§ 53. k).

## 657. Vocative :

Person addressed (cp. § 64, *O brave captain*).

## 658. Accusative :

1. DIRECT OBJECT (§ 53. b).
2. COGNATE (§§ 181, 356).
- ~~3. Adverbial (§ 284). ||~~
- ~~4. Specification (§ 279). |||~~
5. Extent of time or space (§ 142).
6. Limit of motion, always with a preposition (cp. § 53. e).
7. Two accusatives after verbs of *making* and *appointing*; *asking* and *depriving* (§§ 510, 511).
8. Subject of infinitive (§ 53. g).
9. Absolute (§ 566).

## 659. Genitive :

- |                |   |   |
|----------------|---|---|
| True genitive. | { | 1. "OF" RELATIONS, including              |
|                |   | 2. Subjective and Objective (§ 53. f).    |
|                |   | 3. Possession (§§ 53. f, 72).             |
|                |   | 4. <u>Measure</u> (§ 278).                |
|                |   | 5. Material (cp. § 502. II. 16).          |
|                |   | 6. Value (§ 402).                         |
|                |   | 7. PARTITIVE (§ 179).                     |
|                |   | 8. <u>Time within which</u> (§ 155).      |
|                |   | 9. <u>After adverbs of place</u> (§ 372). |



10. SEPARATION (§ 201). *M*
11. Comparison (§ 355). *M learn*
12. Absolute (§ 401).
13. With *ὑπό* to express agent (§ 390).
14. In the predicate (§ 229).

660. Dative:

- |              |   |  |
|--------------|---|--|
| True dative. | { | 1. "TO" OR "FOR" RELATIONS, including  |
|              |   | 2. Indirect object, etc. (§ 53. c).  |
|              |   | 3. Interest (advantage or disadvantage) (§ 53. d).   |
|              |   | 4. Possession (§ 119).   |
|              |   | 5. Agent with perfect passive (§ 458) and verbals in <i>-τέος</i> (§ 478).                                   |
|              |   | 6. LOCATIVE: <u>Time when</u> (§ 180).<br>Place <i>where</i> (after <i>prepositions</i> , <i>ἐν</i> , etc.). |
|              |   | 7. INSTRUMENTAL, including   |
|              |   | 8. Means and Manner, etc. (§ 141). ←   |
|              |   | 9. Degree of difference (§ 410).   |
|              |   | 10. Respect (§ 322).   |
|              |   | 11. Cause (§ 403).   |
|              |   | 12. Association (§ 317). <i>without a preposition.</i>   |
13. Dative with adjectives (§ 111).
  14. After verbs compounded with certain prepositions (§ 136). *ἐν - ἐπί - ὀπίω.*

USES OF THE MOODS

For constructions that take the negative *μή* instead of *οὐ* see *μή* in the general VOCABULARY.

661. Indicative, — in addition to independent statements and ordinary relative clauses, note especially:

1. *ἐπεὶ* and *ἐπειδὴ* *when* with imperfect or *after* with aorist indicative (§ 167); *ὅτε* *when* commonly with the imperfect, of past time.
2. *ἐπεὶ* and *ὅτι* causal *since* with various tenses of indicative (§ 310).
3. *ἕως*, *ἔστω*, and *μέχρι*, *while*, *so long as*, *until*, with present or past indicative (§§ 522. 1, 548. I. 2).
4. *πρίν* *until*, after a negative clause, with aorist indicative (§ 523. 1).
5. *εἰ* *if* with various tenses of indicative in real conditions (§ 106).
6. *εἰ* *if* with imperfect or aorist indicative in contrary to fact (unreal) conditions — much less frequent (§ 545).
7. *εἰ* *if* with future indicative in warning future conditions (§ 242).
8. *ὥστε* *so that* with various tenses of indicative to express result (§ 147).  
[Cp. *ὥστε* with infinitive (§ 147).]
9. *ὅπως* with future indicative after verbs signifying *to strive for*, *to care for*, or *to effect* (§ 535).

### 662. Subjunctive:

1. Introduced by *εἰάν* (*άν*, *ἦν*) in protasis of more vivid future (§ 241) or present general condition (§§ 398, 399).
2. Introduced by relative (*ὅς*, *ὅστις*) or temporal word (*ἐπεὶ*, *ὅτε*, *ἕως*, etc.) in protasis (§§ 248, 400, 522. 2, 523. 2).

NOTE. — *άν* always accompanies the subjunctive in protasis. *ὅτε* + *άν* = *ὅταν*; *ὅποτε* + *άν* = *ὅπόταν*; *ἐπει* + *άν* = *ἐπάν* or *ἐπῆν*; *ἐπειδὴ* + *άν* = *ἐπειδάν*.

3. Introduced by *ὅτι*, *ὅπως*, or *ὥς*, *in order that*, after primary tenses and sometimes after secondary tenses (§§ 243, 535. a).
4. Introduced by *μή* *lest* or *μή οὐ* *lest not* after verbs of *fearing* in primary tenses and sometimes in secondary tenses (§ 438).
5. Hortatory, in first person (§ 244).
6. Deliberative, in first person (§ 564).
7. Prohibitory, in second person of aorist tense with *μή* (§ 309. 2).

### 663. Optative :

1. In future wishes (§ 584).  
 [Wishes that cannot be realized (in present or past time) are expressed by the imperfect or aorist indicative introduced by *εἴθε* or *εἰ γάρ* (§ 585); they may also be expressed by using *ὄφελον* *I ought, etc.*, with the infinitive (§ 586).]
2. In indirect discourse after a secondary tense of the verb of *saying*, representing an indicative or subjunctive of the *same tense* in the direct discourse (§ 260).  
 [But the indicative or the mood of the direct quotation may be retained (§ 260).]
3. In indirect questions (§§ 345, 565).  
 [But the indicative or the mood of the direct question may be retained (§ 345).]
4. With *ἄν* in the potential use (§ 266). *ἄν* can never stand first in its clause.
5. Introduced by *εἰ* *if* in protasis of the less vivid future condition (§ 267) or past general condition (*iterative optative*), § 416.
6. Introduced by a relative (*ὅς*, *ὅστις*) or temporal

word (*ὄτε*, etc.) in protasis of a condition, particularly of the past general (*iterative optative*), § 417.

7. Introduced by *ὡς*, *ὅπως*, or *ὡς*, *in order that*, after secondary tenses (§§ 268, 535. a).
8. Introduced by *μή* *lest* or *μή οὐ* *lest not* after verbs of *fearing* in secondary tenses (§ 438. a).

#### 664. Imperative :

1. In commands.
2. In prohibitions : *μή* and the *present* imperative (§ 309. 1).  
[The *aorist* subjunctive with *μή* is also used (§ 309. 2).]

#### 665. Infinitive :

1. In indirect discourse after *ἔφη* *he said*, *ἐνόμιζε* *he thought*, and similar verbs, when the infinitive represents an indicative or optative of the *same tense* in the direct discourse (§§ 110, 156. 1); if *ἄν* was used with the optative (or indicative) of direct discourse, it is retained with the infinitive of indirect discourse (§§ 277, 546).
2. After verbs of *promising*, *hoping*, and *swearing* : the future infinitive; negative, if required, *μή* (§ 519).
3. With *δοκεῖ* *he seems* and *λέγεται* *he is said* in the "personal" use (§§ 391, 512).
4. As subject of verbs meaning *is*, *is possible*, etc.; with *δεῖ* *it is necessary*, *δοκεῖ* *it seems best*, etc. (§§ 223, 512. a).
5. With *ἀνάγκη* *it is necessary*, *ὥρα* *it is time*, etc. (§ 230).

6. With verbs like δύναμαι *be able*, κελεύω *command*, βούλομαι *wish*, ἐθέλω *wish* (§ 98).
7. With the article τό, τοῦ, τῷ as a neuter substantive in various constructions; especially common is διὰ τό with the infinitive: *on account of the fact that*, etc. (§ 500).
8. With ὥστε *so as* indicating a result (§ 147).  
[Cp. ὥστε with the indicative (§ 147).]
9. With adjectives of *ability* and *fitness*, like ἰκανός *able* (§ 333).
10. With πρῶν *before* after an affirmative clause (§ 524).  
[After a negative clause πρῶν usually means *until* and has the construction of other temporal words (§ 523).]
11. Rarely expressing purpose (after verbs signifying *to give* or *to appoint*).  
The negative with the infinitive is μή except in indirect discourse, when οὐ is regularly used,

## USES OF THE PARTICIPLE

- 666.
1. As an attributive adjective (§ 211). —
  2. With or without the article to represent a relative clause: οἱ βουλόμενοι *those that desire* (§ 212).
  3. To represent a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause (§ 213).
  4. Common is ἔχων or λαβῶν *with agreeing with* the subject (§ 213. b).
  5. To indicate purpose: the *future* participle with or without ὡς is used (§§ 331, 332).
  6. In the genitive absolute construction (§ 401).
  7. In the accusative absolute construction (§ 566).



8. With verbs of *perception* whether of the mind or of the senses (§ 440): ὀρῶ *see*, ἀκούω *hear*, etc., ὀρῶ αὐτὸν ἰόντα *I see him coming*.
9. In the construction of indirect discourse (§§ 441, 449, 520).  
[For such a participle a clause with *ὅτι* may be used (§ 442).]
10. With τυγχάνω *happen*, λανθάνω *escape notice*, and οἴχομαι *be gone* (cp. §§ 215, 318, 443).
11. With verbs of *beginning*, *ceasing*, etc. (§ 439).  
The negative with the participle is οὐ; but the conditional participle takes μή.

### 667. PURPOSE IS COMMONLY EXPRESSED

- By ἵνα, ὅπως, or ὡς, *in order that*, with the subjunctive. After a secondary tense the optative is commonly used (§§ 243, 268). Negative: μή.
- By the future participle (§§ 331, 332).

### 668. FORMS OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

#### Simple or Real (§ 106)

##### PROTASIS

##### APODOSIS

<i>Present.</i> εἰ with pres. indic. :	any form of verb :
εἰ ταῦτα λέγει, if he says this,	ἀληθῆ λέγει he speaks the truth.
<i>Past.</i> εἰ with past tense of indic. :	any form of verb :
εἰ ταῦτα ἔλεξεν, if he said this,	ἀληθῆ ἔλεξεν he spoke the truth.

#### Contrary to Fact or Unreal (§ 545)

<i>Present.</i> εἰ with impf. indic. :	impf. indic. with ἄν :
εἰ ταῦτα ἔλεγεν, if he were (now) saying this,	οὐκ ἄν ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν he would not be speaking the truth.

*Past. εἰ* with aor. indic. :

*εἰ ταῦτα ἔλεξεν,*  
if he had said this (then),

aor. indic. with ἄν :

*οὐκ ἂν ἀληθῆ ἔλεξεν*  
he would not have spoken  
the truth.

## General (§§ 399, 416)

*Present. εἰάν* with subjv. :

*εἰάν τι λέγῃ (or λέξῃ),*  
if [ever] he says anything,

pres. indic. :

*ἀληθῆ λέγει*  
he speaks the truth.

*Past. εἰ* with opt. :

*εἰ τι λέγοι (or λέξειεν),*  
if he [ever] said anything,

impf. indic. :

*ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν*  
he spoke the truth.

## More Vivid Future (§ 241)

*εἰάν* with subjv. :

*εἰάν ταῦτα λέγῃς (or λέξῃς),*  
if you say (or shall say) this,

fut. indic. or equiv. :

*ἀληθῆ λέξεις*  
you will speak the truth.

## Less Vivid Future (§ 267)

*εἰ* with opt. :

*εἰ ταῦτα λέγοις (or λέξειας),*  
if you should say this,

opt. with ἄν :

*ἀληθῆ ἂν λέγοις (or λέξειας)*  
you would speak the truth.

## Warning Future (§ 242)

*εἰ* with fut. indic. :

*εἰ ταῦτα λέξεις,*  
if you say this,

fut. indic. or equiv. :

*κακὸς φανεῖ*  
you will appear base.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

## USES OF COMMON VERBS THAT TAKE THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

669. I. A FINITE MOOD with *ὅτι* or *ὡς* follows *λέγω* (active) *say*, *εἶπον said*, *ἀποκρίνομαι reply*, and

often those verbs with which the participle in indirect discourse is also regular. Such verbs are mentioned below in 3.

2. AN INFINITIVE follows *φημί say*, *λέγεται* (passive) *is said*, *νομίζω think*, *οἶμαι think*, *ὑπισχνέομαι promise*, *ἀκούω hear*, and other verbs meaning *to think* or *to agree*.
3. A PARTICIPLE follows *ὁράω see*, *αἰσθάνομαι perceive*, *ἀκούω hear*, *οἶδα know*, *δηλός εἰμι be evident*, *ἀγγέλλω announce*, and other verbs of similar meaning. But see 1 above.

a. Observe that *ἀκούω hear* belongs in all three of the preceding classes.

b. When *εἶπε* means *he bade*, *he commanded*, *he proposed*, an infinitive *not* in indirect discourse follows, as after *κελεύω command*. The other verbs of *saying* may be similarly used.

c. With the infinitive *ἐπίσταμαι* means *know how* (instead of *know that*), *μανθάνω learn how* (instead of *learn that*).

#### USES OF THE ADVERB ἄν

- 670.
1. In protases, always with subjunctive: *εἰάν* (*εἰ + ἄν*), *ὅς ἄν*, *ἐπειδάν* (*ἐπειδή + ἄν*), etc.
  2. In apodoses, (a) with the optative in less vivid future conditions, (b) with the imperfect or aorist indicative in contrary to fact conditions.
  3. With the optative in the potential use (§ 266).
  4. With the infinitive of indirect discourse when the infinitive with *ἄν* represents an optative with *ἄν*, § 277 (or past tense of the indicative with *ἄν*, § 546), of the direct discourse.

## A FEW IMPORTANT LISTS

### 671. SOME VERBS WHOSE MEANING DISTINCTLY CHANGES IN THE MIDDLE VOICE

ACTIVE	MIDDLE
<i>αἰρέω</i> take	<i>choose</i>
<i>ἐπιτίθημι</i> put upon	<i>attack</i> (with dat.)
<i>ἔχω</i> have, hold	<i>come next</i>
	<i>cling to</i> (with gen.)
<i>λύω</i> release	<i>ransom</i>
<i>παύω</i> stop (another)	<i>cease</i> (intr.)
<i>πείθω</i> persuade (with acc.)	<i>obey</i> (with dat.)
<i>συμβουλεύω</i> advise (with dat.)	<i>consult</i> (with dat.)
<i>φαίνω</i> show	<i>appear</i>
<i>φοβέω</i> frighten	<i>fear</i>
<i>φυλάττω</i> guard	<i>guard against</i>

### 672. SOME VERBS WHOSE PASSIVE IS EXPRESSED BY A DIFFERENT VERB

<i>αἰρέω</i> take	<i>ἀλίσκομαι</i> be taken
[but <i>αἰρέομαι</i> (mid.) choose	<i>αἰρέομαι</i> (pass.) be chosen]
<i>ἀποκτείνω</i> kill	<i>ἀποθνήσκω</i> be killed
<i>νικάω</i> conquer.	<i>ἡττάομαι</i> be conquered
<i>τέθηκα</i> have put or placed	<i>κείμαι</i> have been placed
<i>εὖ</i> (or <i>καλῶς</i> ) <i>τινα</i> ποιέω do	<i>εὖ</i> ὑπό <i>τινος</i> <i>πάσχω</i> be done
<i>somebody</i> a kindness	<i>a kindness</i> by <i>somebody</i>

**673. SOME VERBS WHOSE AORISTS ARE PASSIVE IN FORM, BUT NOT IN MEANING (DEPONENTS PASSIVE)**

	AORIST PASSIVE
βούλομαι <i>wish</i>	ἐβουλήθην <i>I wished</i>
δέομαι <i>ask, beg</i>	ἐδεήθην <i>I begged</i>
δύναμαι <i>be able</i>	ἐδυνήθην <i>I was able</i>
ἐπιμελέομαι <i>take care</i>	ἐπεμελήθην <i>I took care</i>
οἶομαι <i>think</i>	ᾤήθην <i>I thought</i>
πορεύομαι <i>proceed</i>	ἐπορεύθην <i>I proceeded</i>
φοβέομαι <i>fear</i>	ἐφοβήθην <i>I feared</i>

**674. SOME VERBS WHOSE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE APPEARS IRREGULAR IN AUGMENT**

PRESENT	IMPERFECT
ἐάω <i>permit</i>	εἶων ( <i>i.e.</i> εἶαον)
ἔπομαι <i>follow</i>	εἰπόμην
ἔχω <i>have</i>	εἶχον
ὁράω <i>see</i>	εἴωρων ( <i>i.e.</i> εἴωραον)

**675. Distinguish among**

*αἰτέω* *ask* a favor of somebody, *ask somebody for* something (with two accusatives).

*ἀξιόω* *ask* as a right, *demand* (with infinitive).

*δέομαι* *want* or *ask* a person (in the genitive) to do something (infinitive).

*ἔρωτάω* { *ask* a question, *inquire*; may be followed by accusative of person and indirect question.

2 aor. ἠρόμην



## ABBREVIATIONS

A. or acc.	= accusative.	interr.	= interrogative.
abl.	= ablative.	intr.	= intransitive.
abs.	= absolute.	irreg.	= irregular.
act.	= active.	κτλ.	= καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ = <i>etc.</i>
adj.	= adjective.	Lat.	= Latin.
adv.	= adverb.	lit.	= literal, literally.
aor.	= aorist.	masc.	= masculine.
art.	= article.	mid.	= middle.
comp.	= comparative.	N. or nom.	= nominative.
conj.	= conjunction.	neg.	= negative.
const.	= construction.	neut.	= neuter.
cp.	= compare.	obj.	= object.
D. or dat.	= dative.	opt.	= optative.
def.	= definite.	p., pp.	= page, pages.
dem.	= demonstrative.	part. gen.	= partitive genitive.
dep.	= deponent.	partic.	= participle.
dim.	= diminutive.	pass.	= passive.
dir.	= direct.	pers.	= person.
disc.	= discourse.	pf.	= perfect.
<i>e.g.</i>	= <i>for example.</i>	pl. or plur.	= plural.
Eng.	= English.	plup.	= pluperfect.
equiv.	= equivalent.	poss. gen.	= possessive genitive.
<i>etc.</i>	= <i>and so forth.</i>	pred.	= predicate.
fem.	= feminine.	prep.	= preposition.
Fig.	= Figure.	pres.	= present.
fut.	= future.	priv.	= privative.
G. or gen.	= genitive.	pron.	= pronoun.
<i>i.e.</i>	= <i>that is.</i>	rel.	= relative.
impers.	= impersonal.	sing.	= singular.
impf.	= imperfect.	subj.	= subject.
imv.	= imperative.	subjv.	= subjunctive.
indecl.	= indeclinable.	subst.	= substantive.
indef.	= indefinite.	sup.	= superlative.
indic.	= indicative.	trans.	= transitive.
indir.	= indirect.	V. or voc.	= vocative.
inf.	= infinitive.	vocab.	= vocabulary.
interj.	= interjection.	§	= section.

## ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY

For numerals not included in the following list see § 421.

### A

- > abandon: ἀπολείπω, ἐκλείπω, καταλείπω.  
 > able: δυνατός, ή, όν; ικανός, ή, όν; οίός τε, οίά τε, οίόν τε.  
 able, be: δύναμαι.  
 > about: ἀμφί with acc. (round about, near); περί with gen. (concerning); περί with dat. (near); περί with acc. (around, in relation to).  
 about (with numerals): ὡς.  
 > about, be: μέλλω.  
 > above: ὑπέρ with gen.  
 Abrocomas: Ἀβροκόμας, ἄ, ό.  
 accept: δέχομαι.  
 accompany: συμπορεύομαι.  
 > accomplish: πράττω, διαπράττομαι.  
 > according to: κατά with acc.  
 > accordingly: δή, οὖν.  
 > accuse falsely: διαβάλλω.  
 Achaean: Ἀχαιός, οὐ, ό.  
 > across: πέραν.  
 addition to, in: πρὸς with dat.  
 admirable: θαυμαστός, ή, όν.  
 > admire: θαυμάζω.  
 > advise: συμβουλεύω.  
 > afoot: πεζός, ή, όν.  
 > afraid, be: φοβέομαι.  
 > after (conj.): ἐπει, ἐπειδή.  
 > after (prep.): μετά with acc.  
 > again: πάλιν, ἔτι.  
 > against: ἀντί in composition; ἐπί with acc.; κατά with acc.; πρὸς with acc.
- agree: συντίθιμαι.  
 agreement: σύνθημα, ατος, τό.  
 all: ὅλος, η, ον (entire); πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν.  
 all together: ἀπᾶς, ἅσα, ἅν; σύμπᾶς, ἅσα, ἅν.  
 allow: ἕω.  
 ally: σύμμαχος, ου, ό.  
 alone: μόνος, η, ον.  
 along: κατά with acc.  
 already: ἤδη.  
 also: καί.  
 altogether: πάνυ.  
 always: ἀεί.  
 ambassador: πρεσβευτής, οὐ, ό; πρ. πρέσβεις, εων, οί.  
 ancient: ἀρχαίος, ἄ, ον.  
 and: καί.  
 and in fact: γάρ; καί γάρ.  
 and not: οὐδέ, μηδέ.  
 announce: ἀγγέλλω.  
 annoyance: ὄχλος, ου, ό.  
 another: ἄλλος, η, ο.  
 another place, in: ἄλλη.  
 another, one: ἀλλήλοιν.  
 answer: ἀποκρίνομαι.  
 any, anybody, anything: τις, τε.  
 anywhere: πη, που.  
 apart, apart from: χωρίς.  
 apart, be: διέχω.  
 appear: φαίνομαι.  
 approach (noun): ἕφοδος, ου, ή.  
 approach (verb): ἐπιεμν.  
 Ariaeus: Ἀρραίος, ου, ό.



arise (take place): γίγνομαι.  
 Aristippus: Ἀριστιππος, ου, δ.  
 arms (of war): ὅπλα, ων, τά.  
 army: στρατεύμα, ατος, τό; στρατιά,  
 αι, η.  
 around (see 'about'): περί with dat.;  
 περί with acc.  
 arrange: τάττω.  
 arrangement: τάξις, εως, η.  
 arrest: συλλαμβάνω.  
 arrive: ἀφικνέομαι.  
 arrow: τόξωμα, ατος, τό.  
 Artarpates: Ἀρταπάτης, ου, δ.  
 Artaxerxes: Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, δ.  
 as, as if: ὡς, ὥσπερ.  
 as (of comparison): ὡς, ὥσπερ.  
 as (with sup.): ὅτι, ὡς.  
 as many as, as much as: ὅσος, η, ου;  
 ὁπόσος, η, ου.  
 as often as: ὅποτε.  
 as (= such as): οἷος, α, ου.  
 ask about: πυνθάνομαι.  
 ask (a favor): αἰτέω, δέομαι.  
 ask (a question): ἐρωτάω, 2 aor. ἤρῶ-  
 μην.  
 ask (as a right): ἀξιόω.  
 ask for: αἰτέω.  
 ass: ὄνος, ου, δ.  
 assemble: ἀθροίζω (trans.), συνέρχο-  
 μαι.  
 assembly: ἐκκλησιᾶ, αι, η.  
 at: ἐπί with dat.  
 at any rate: μήν, οὖν.  
 Athenian: Ἀθηναῖος, α, ου.  
 attack: ἐπιτίθεμαι, ἐπικίεμαι.  
 attempt: πειράσομαι.  
 attend: πάρεμι.  
 avoid: φεύγω.  
 away, be: ἀπέχω.  
 away from: ἀπό.

## B

Babylon: Βαβυλών, ὄνος, η.  
 back: πάλιν.

bad: κακός, ή, ὄν.  
 badly: κακῶς.  
 barbarian (adj.): βαρβαρικός, ή, ὄν.  
 barbarian (noun): βάρβαρος, ου, δ.  
 bare: ψιλός, ή, ὄν.  
 battle: μάχη, ης, η.  
 be: γίγνομαι, εἰμί.  
 beast, wild: θηρίον, ου, τό.  
 beast (of burden): ὑποζύγιον, ου, τό.  
 bear: φέρω.  
 beautiful: καλός, ή, ὄν.  
 beautifully: καλῶς.  
 because of: διά with acc.; ὑπό with  
 gen.  
 become: γίγνομαι.  
 before (adv.): πρόσθεν, πρόσθεν . . .  
 πρῖν, τό πρόσθεν, ἔμπροσθεν.  
 before (conj.): πρῖν.  
 before (prep.): πρό.  
 beg: αἰτέω, δέομαι.  
 begin: ἔρχω, ἔρχομαι.  
 beginning: ἀρχή, ης, η.  
 behold: θεάομαι, δράω.  
 behooves, it: χρή.  
 believe: ἠγέομαι.  
 beneath: ὑπό with dat.  
 beside: παρά or πρὸς with dat.  
 besides: ἔτι.  
 best (adj.): ἄριστος, η, ου; βέλ-  
 τιστος, η, ου; κράτιστος, η, ου.  
 best (adv.): ἄριστα, etc.  
 better (adj.): ἀμείνων, ου; βελτίων,  
 ου; κρείττων, ου.  
 better (adv.): ἕμεινον, etc.; μᾶλλον.  
 between: μεταξύ with gen.; ἐν μέσῳ.  
 bewilder: ἐκπλήττω.  
 beyond: ὑπέρ with acc.  
 bid: κελεύω.  
 big: μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα.  
 bird: ὄρνις, ἴθος, ὄ and ή.  
 birth: γένος, ους, τό.  
 Boeotian: Βοιωτίας, α, ου.  
 born, be: γίγνομαι.  
 both . . . and: τε . . . καί; καί . . .  
 καί.

bother: **ἄχλος, ου, ὁ.**  
 bow: **τόξον, ου, τό.**  
 Bowman: **τοξότης, ου, ὁ.**  
 boy: **παῖς, παιδός, ὁ.**  
 brave: **ἀγαθός, ἡ, ὁν.**  
 bravery: **ἀρετή, ἡς, ἡ.**  
 breadth: **εὖρος, ους, τό.**  
 break: **λῦω.**  
 break through: **διακόπτω.**  
 breastplate: **θώραξ, ἄκος, ὁ.**  
 bridge: **γέφυρα, ἄς, ἡ.**  
 brilliancy: **λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ.**  
 bring about: **διαπράττωμαι.**  
 bring into harbor: **κατάγω.**  
 brother: **ἀδελφός, οὔ, ὁ.**  
 burn: **καίω** or **κάω.**  
 business: **πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό.**  
 but: **ἀλλά, δέ** (postpositive).  
 buy: **ἀγοράζω** (*bought* also **ἐπιράμην**).  
 by: **διά** with acc. (by means of);  
     **κατά** with acc. (as in 'by land');  
     **ὑπό** with gen. (of the agent); **παρά**  
     with dat. (by the side of).  
 by far: **πολύ.**  
 by no means: **ἤκιστα.**

## C

call: **καλέω.**  
 call together: **συγκαλέω.**  
 camp (*noun*): **στρατόπεδον, ου, τό.**  
 camp (*verb*): **σκηνώω**; see 'encamp.'  
 canal: **διώρυξ, υχος, ἡ.**  
 captain: **λοχαγός, οὔ, ὁ.**  
 capture: **αἰρέω, (pass.) ἀλίσκομαι.**  
 Carduchi: **Καρδοῦχοι, ων, οἱ.**  
 care for, take care of: **ἐπιμελόμαι.**  
 carriage: **ἄμαξα, ης, ἡ.**  
 carry: **φέρω.**  
 catch (by hunting): **θηρεύω.**  
 cattle: **πρόβατον, ου, τό.**  
 cavalry: **ἵππεις, οἱ.**  
 cavalry, consisting of: **ἵππικός, ἡ, ὄν.**  
 cease (intr.): **παύομαι.**  
 cease (= make cease): **παύω, ἀνα-**  
     **παύω.**

Celaenae: **Κελαιναί, ὄν, αἱ.**  
 certain, a: **τις, τι.**  
 certainly: **γε, μήν.**  
 Chalus: **Χάλος, ου, ὁ.**  
 chance (*verb*): **τυγχάνω.**  
 chance upon: **ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.**  
 character: **τρόπος, ου, ὁ.**  
 chariot: **ἄρμα, ατος, τό.**  
 chastise: **κολάζω.**  
 cheat: **ἐξαπατάω.**  
 Cheirisophus: **Χειρίσοφος, ου, ὁ.**  
 child: **παῖς, παιδός, ὁ** and **ἡ**; **τέκνον,**  
     **ου, τό.**  
 choose: **αἰρέομαι.**  
 Cilicia: **Κιλικία, ἄς, ἡ.**  
 Cilician woman: **Κιλισσα, ης, ἡ.**  
 circumstances: **πρᾶγματα, ων, τά.**  
 citadel: **ἀκρόπολις, εως, ἡ.**  
 city: **πόλις, εως, ἡ.**  
 claim (as one's right): **ἀξιώω.**  
 clear: **δήλος, η, ον**; **φανερός, ἄ, ὄν.**  
 Clearchus: **Κλιάρχος, ου, ὁ.**  
 closely set (= closely planted): **πυκνός,**  
     **ἡ, ὄν.**  
 collect: **ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω, συνάγω.**  
 column (military): **τάξις, εως, ἡ.**  
 come: **ἔρχομαι, ἀφικνέομαι**; have  
     come: **ἤκω.**  
 come! **ἄγε** (*interj.*).  
 come down (= reach down): **καθήκω.**  
 come forth: **ἐξέρχομαι.**  
 come in: **εἰσέρχομαι.**  
 come on: **ἔπιμι.**  
 come to: **παραγίγνομαι, προσέρχομαι,**  
     **προσθήκω.**  
 come together: **συνέρχομαι.**  
 come up: **προσέρχομαι.**  
 come upon: **καταλαμβάνω.**  
 come upon by chance: **ἐντυγχάνω,**  
     **ἐπιτυγχάνω.**  
 command (= rule): **ἄρχω.**  
 command (= order): **ἐπιτάττω, κε-**  
     **λεύω, παραγγέλλω** (*εἶπον*).  
 commander: **ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ**; **ἡγεμών,**  
     **όνος, ὁ.**

common: κοινός, ή, όν.  
 compact, make a: συντίθεμαι.  
 company (of soldiers): λόχος, ου, ό.  
 compel: άναγκάζω.  
 concerning: περί with gen.; άμφί with gen.  
 confine: κατακλείω.  
 conquer: νικάω, (pass.) ήττάομαι.  
 consider: σκέπτομαι.  
 contend: άγωνίζομαι.  
 contest: άγόν, ώνος, ό.  
 continually: άεί.  
 contrary to: παρά with acc.  
 converse: διαλέγομαι.  
 corpse: νεκρός, ου, ό.  
 country: χώρα, ας, ή.  
 cow: βούς, βούς, ή.  
 cowardly: κακός, ή, όν.  
 Cretan: Κρής, Κρητός, ό.  
 crisis: καιρός, ου, ό.  
 cross: διαβαίνω.  
 crossed, able to be: διαβατός, ή, όν;  
   necessary to be: διαβατέος, α, ον.  
 crowd: όχλος, ου, ό; πληθος, ους, τό.  
 cubit: πήχυς, εως, ό.  
 custom: νόμος, ου, ό.  
 cut down: κατακόπτω.  
 cut off: άπολαμβάνω, άποκόπτω.  
 cut through (in pieces): διακόπτω.  
 Cyrus: Κύρος, ου, ό.

## D

danger: κίνδυνος, ου, ό.  
 danger, incur: κινδυνεύω.  
 doric: δαρεικός, ου, ό.  
 Darius: Δαρειός, ου, ό.  
 darkness: σκότος, ους, τό, and σκότος, ου, ό.  
 daughter: θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός, ή.  
 day: ήμέρα, ας, ή.  
 day's journey: σταθμός, ου, ό.  
 death, put to: άποκτείνω.  
 deceive utterly: έξαπατάω.  
 decide: κρίνω.  
 declare: φημί.

deed: έργον, ου, τό; πράγμα, ατος, τό  
 deem worthy: άξιόω.  
 deep: βαθός, εια, ύ.  
 delay: μέλλω.  
 deliberate: βουλευομαι.  
 demand: άξιόω.  
 deny: ού φημι.  
 deprive: άφαιρέομαι.  
 descend: καταβαίνω.  
 descent: κατάβασις, εως, ή.  
 descry: καθοράω.  
 desert (verb): άπολείπω.  
 deserted: έρημος, η, ον, or έρημος, ον.  
 deserts (justice): δίκη, ης, ή.  
 desire: θέλω, ήθελω, επιθυμέω. See 'wish.'  
 despondency: άθυμία, ας, ή.  
 destroy: άπόλλυμι, λθώ.  
 devise: βουλεύω.  
 die: άποθνήσκω, τελευτάω.  
 die off: άποθνήσκω.  
 difficult: χαλεπός, ή, όν.  
 difficulty: άπορία, ας, ή; πράγμα, ατος, τό.  
 direct: επιτάττω, παραγγέλλω.  
 direct the mind: προσέχω τόν νούν.  
 discouragement: άθυμία, ας, ή.  
 dismiss: άποπέμπο, άφίημι.  
 distant, be: απέχω.  
 distinguish oneself: επιδεικνυμαι.  
 distribute: διαδίδωμι.  
 ditch: τάφρος, ου, ή.  
 division (military): τάξις, εως, ή.  
 do: ποιέω, πράττω.  
 down along: κατά with acc.  
 down from: κατά with gen.  
 down over: κατά with acc.  
 draw near: προσελαύνω.  
 draw up: τάττω.  
 drink (noun): ποτόν, ου, τό.  
 drive: έλαύνω.  
 drive in: εισελαύνω.  
 drive out: έξελαύνω.  
 drive past: παρελαύνω.  
 drive up: προσελαύνω.

## E

each: ἕκαστος, η, ον.  
 eagerly: προθύμως.  
 earlier than: πρόσθεν . . . πρὶν.  
 earth: γῆ, γῆς, ἡ.  
 easy: ῥάδιος, ἄ, ον.  
 effect: πράττω, διαπραττομαι.  
 either . . . or: ἢ . . . ἢ.  
 elder: πρεσβύτερος, ἄ, ον.  
 elsewhere: ἄλλῃ.  
 embarrassment: ἀπορία, ἄς, ἡ.  
 empire: ἀρχή, ἡς, ἡ.  
 empty: κενός, ἡ, ον.  
 encamp: στρατοπεδεύω and -ομαι;  
 see 'camp.'  
 encounter: ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.  
 end (*noun*): τέλος, οὐς, τό.  
 end (*verb*): τελευτάω; put an end to:  
 παύω.  
 enemy: οἱ πολέμιοι; personal enemy:  
 ἐχθρός, οὐ, ὁ.  
 enlist: λαμβάνω.  
 enter: δύνω, δύνω, εἰσέρχομαι.  
 entire: ὅλος, η, ον; πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν;  
 see 'all.'  
 equip: παρασκευάζω.  
 escape: ἀποφεύγω.  
 escape notice: λανθάνω.  
 Euphrates: Εὐφράτης, οὐ, ὁ.  
 ever: ποτέ.  
 ever yet: ἄποποτε.  
 every: πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν; see 'each.'  
 evident: δῆλος, η, ον; φανερός, ἄ, ον.  
 evident, make: δηλόω.  
 exceedingly: ἰσχυρώς.  
 excellence: ἀρετή, ἡς, ἡ.  
 exercise: γυμνάζω.  
 exile: φυγᾶς, ἄδος, ὁ.  
 expedition: στόλος, οὐ, ὁ; στρατεία,  
 ἄς, ἡ.  
 expedition, make an: στρατεύω.  
 extend: καθήκω.  
 extensive: πολλός, πολλή, πολύ.  
 extreme: ἰσχατος, η, ον.

## F

face about: ἀναστρέφομαι.  
 fact, and in: γάρ, καὶ γάρ.  
 fail: ἐκλείπω.  
 faithful: πιστός, ἡ, ον.  
 family: γένος, οὐς, τό.  
 father: πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ.  
 fatherland: πατρίς, ἰδος, ἡ.  
 favor: χάρις, ιτος, ἡ.  
 favor, show: χαρίζομαι.  
 fear (*noun*): φόβος, οὐ, ὁ.  
 fear (*verb*): δέδοικα, φοβέομαι.  
 fearful: δεινός, ἡ, ον; φοβερός, ἄ, ον.  
 fearfully: φοβερῶς.  
 feed: τρέφω.  
 few: ὀλίγος, η, ον.  
 field, take the: στρατεύομαι; take the  
 field with: συστρατεύομαι.  
 fight (*noun*): μάχη, ἡς, ἡ.  
 fight (*verb*): μάχομαι.  
 finally: τέλος.  
 find: εὐρίσκω, καταλαμβάνω.  
 find by chance: ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυ-  
 χάνω.  
 finish: τελευτάω.  
 fire: πῦρ, πυρός, τό.  
 first: πρῶτος, η, ον.  
 fish: ἰχθύς, ὄος, ὁ.  
 fitness: ἀρετή, ἡς, ἡ.  
 flee, flee from: φεύγω; flee away:  
 ἀποφεύγω.  
 flight: φυγή, ἡς, ἡ.  
 flight, put to: τρέπω εἰς φυγὴν.  
 fodder: χίλος, οὐ, ὁ.  
 follow: ἕπομαι.  
 following (*adj.*): ὑστεραίος, ἄ, ον.  
 follows, as: ὡς.  
 food: σίτιον, οὐ, τό; σίτος, οὐ, ὁ.  
 foot: πούς, ποδός, ὁ; on foot: πεζός,  
 ἡ, ον.  
 for (*conj.*): γάρ.  
 for (*prep.*): ἐπὶ with dat.; περὶ with  
 gen.  
 for (= instead of): ἀντί with gen.

force (*noun*): δύναμις, εως, ἡ.  
 force (*verb*): ἀναγκάζω.  
 fordable: διαβατός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 forearm: πῆχυς, εως, ὁ.  
 foreign: βαρβαρικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 foreigner: βάρβαρος, ου, ὁ.  
 former: πρότερος, α, ὄν; πρόσθεν  
 (*adv.* as *adj.*).  
 formerly: τὸ ἀρχαῖον, τὸ πρόσθεν.  
 fortress: τεῖχος, ους, τό.  
 fortunate: εὐδαίμων, ὄν.  
 forward: εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν.  
 fresh: νέος, α, ὄν.  
 friend: φίλος, ου, ὁ.  
 friendly: φιλικός, η, ὄν.  
 friendship: φιλία, ας, ἡ.  
 frighten: φοβέω.  
 frightful: δεινός, ἡ, ὄν; φοβερός, εἰ,  
 ὄν.  
 from: ἀπό (away from); ἐκ (out  
 from); παρά and πρὸς (from the  
 side of); ὑπό (because of).  
 front, in: ἔμπροσθεν.  
 fugitive: φυγὰς, ἄδος, ὁ.  
 full: μεστός, ἡ, ὄν; πλήρης, ες.  
 furnish: παρέχω.  
 future, in the: τὸ λοιπόν.

## G

games (= contest of games): ἀγών,  
 ὄνος, ὁ.  
 garrison: φυλακή, ης, ἡ.  
 gate: πύλη, ης, ἡ.  
 gather together: ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω.  
 gathering: ἀγών, ὄνος, ὁ.  
 gaze at: θεάομαι.  
 general (*adj.*): κοινός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 general (*noun*): στρατηγός, οὔ, ὁ.  
 gift: δῶρον, ου, τό.  
 girl: παῖς, παιδός, ἡ.  
 give: δίδωμι.  
 give over: παραδίδωμι.  
 gladly: ἡδέως.  
 go: εἶμι, ἔρχομαι, πορεύομαι.  
 go across: διαβαίνω.

go away (or back): ἀπείμι, ἀπέρχομαι.  
 go by: παρέρχομαι.  
 go down: καταβαίνω.  
 go forth: ἔξειμι, ἐξέρχομαι.  
 go forward: προέρχομαι.  
 go on: ἔπειμι.  
 go out: ἔξειμι, ἐξέρχομαι.  
 go past: παρέρχομαι.  
 go through: διέρχομαι.  
 go to: προσέρχομαι.  
 go together: συνέρχομαι.  
 go up (inland): ἀναβαίνω.  
 god: θεός, οὔ, ὁ.  
 goddess: θεός, οὔ, ἡ.  
 gold (*adj.*), golden: χρυσοῦς, ἡ, οὔν.  
 gold (*noun*): χρυσίον, ου, τό.  
 gone, be (or have gone): οἴχομαι.  
 good: ἀγαθός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 grace: χάρις, ιτος, ἡ.  
 grain: σίτιον, ου, τό; σίτος, ου, ὁ.  
 grant (as a favor): χαρίζομαι.  
 grass: χιλός, οὔ, ὁ.  
 gratify: χαρίζομαι.  
 gratitude: χάρις, ιτος, ἡ.  
 great: μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα.  
 great (= how great, as great as): ὀ-  
 η, ὄν; ὀπόσος, η, ὄν.  
 greave: κνημίς, ιδος, ἡ.  
 Greece: Ἑλλάς, ἄδος, ἡ.  
 Greek (*adj.*): Ἑλληνικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 Greek (*noun*): Ἕλληνας, ηνος, ὁ.  
 Greek force: Ἑλληνικόν, οὔ, τό.  
 groundless: κενός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 guard (*noun*): φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ; (= gar-  
 rison) φυλακή, ης, ἡ.  
 guard (*verb*): φυλάττω.  
 guest-friend: ξένος, ου, ὁ.  
 guide (*noun*): ἡγεμών, ὄνος, ὁ.  
 guide (*verb*): ἡγέομαι.

## H

half (*adj.*): ἡμισυς, εια, υ.  
 half (*noun*): τὸ ἡμισυ.  
 halt: τίθεμαι τὰ ὄπλα.  
 halting place: σταθμός, οὔ, ὁ.

hand: χείρ, χειρός, ἡ.  
 hand, be at: παραγίγνομαι, πάρεμι.  
 handsome: καλός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 happen: γίγνομαι, τυγχάνω.  
 happen upon: ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.  
 harbor: λιμὴν, ἔνος, ὁ.  
 hard: χαλεπός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 harm: βλάβη.  
 harsh: χαλεπός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 harshly: ἰσχυρῶς.  
 hasten: ἔμαι, σπεύδω.  
 have: ἔχω.  
 he (in 'and he,' 'but he'): ὁ δέ.  
 head: κεφαλῆ, ἡς, ἡ.  
 hear, hear of: ἀκούω.  
 height: ἄκρον, ου, τό.  
 Hellas: Ἑλλάς, ἄδος, ἡ.  
 Hellenic: Ἑλληνικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 helper: ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὁ.  
 herald: κήρυξ, ὄκος, ὁ.  
 here: αὐτοῦ (= here on the spot),  
 ἐνταῦθα, ἐνθάδε.  
 higher (*adv.*): ἀνωτέρω.  
 highest (*adv.*): ἀνωτάτω.  
 highest point of: ἄκρος, α, ον.  
 hill: λόφος, ου, ὁ.  
 himself: ἑαυτοῦ.  
 hinder: κωλύω.  
 hold: ἔχω.  
 holy: ἱερός, α, ὄν.  
 home (= homeward): οἶκαδε.  
 honor (*noun*): τιμῆ, ἡς, ἡ.  
 honor (*verb*): τιμᾶω.  
 honorable: καλός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 honorably: καλῶς.  
 hoplite: ὀπλίτης, ου, ὁ.  
 horse: ἵππος, ου, ὁ.  
 horse, consisting of: ἵππικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 horseman: ἵππεύς, ἔως, ὁ.  
 host: πλήθος, ους, τό.  
 hostile: ἐχθρός, α, ὄν; πολέμιος, α, ον;  
 πολεμικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 hour: ὥρᾱ, ας, ἡ.  
 house: οἰκίᾱ, ας, ἡ.  
 how (*interr.*): πῶς.

how (*rel.*): ὅπως, ὅπη.  
 how great, how much (how many):  
 ὅσος, η, ον; ὀπόσος, η, ον.  
 however: μέντοι.  
 hundred: ἑκατόν.  
 hunt: θηρεύω.  
 hurl: βάλλω, ἔημι.  
 hurt: βλάβη.  
 husband: ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ.

## I

I: ἐγώ.  
 if: εἰ; εἰᾶν or εἰᾶν or ἦν with subjv.  
 impassable: ἄβατος, ον; ἀδιάβατος,  
 ον; ἄπορος, ον.  
 impossible: ἀδύνατος, ον.  
 in: ἐν.  
 in company with: μετὰ with gen.  
 in front of: πρό.  
 in sight of: πρὸς with gen.  
 inclose: κατακλείω.  
 indeed: δή.  
 infantry: οἱ πεζοί.  
 inferior, be: ἡττάομαι.  
 inflict (*e.g.* punishment): ἐπιτίθημι.  
 injure: ἀδικέω, βλάβη.  
 inland: ἔνω.  
 inquire: πυνθάνομαι; see also 'ask.'  
 instead of: ἀντί.  
 intend: μέλλω.  
 interpreter: ἑρμηνεύς, ἔως, ὁ.  
 into: εἰς.  
 into the midst of: μετὰ with acc.  
 invisible: ἀφανής, ἔς.  
 invite: καλέω.  
 Ionian: Ἴωνικός, ἡ, ὄν.

## J

javelin: παλτόν, οὐ, τό.  
 judge: κρίνω.  
 judgment: γνώμη, ης, ἡ.  
 just: δίκαιος, α, ον.  
 just as: ὥσπερ.  
 justice: δίκη, ης, ἡ.  
 justly: δικαίως.

## Κ

kill: ἀποκτείνω.  
 kindle: καίω or κέω.  
 king: βασιλεύς, εως, ό.  
 king, be: βασιλεύω.  
 kingdom: βασιλεία, ας, ή.  
 kinglike: βασιλικός, ή, όν.  
 kinship: γένος, ους, τό.  
 knee: γόνυ, γόνατος, τό.  
 know: γινώσκω, οίδα.  
 knowledge, without the knowledge of:  
 λάθρα.

## Λ

labor: κάμνω.  
 Lacedaemonian: Λακεδαιμόνων, ονος, ή.  
 Lacedaemonian: Λακεδαιμόνιος, α, ον.  
 land: γη, γης, ή; χώρα, ας, ή.  
 large: μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα; πολύς,  
 πολλή, πολύ.  
 last: ἔσχατος, η, ον.  
 later (*adj.*): ὕστερος, α, ον; ὑστερατος,  
 α, ον.  
 latest: ὕστατος, η, ον.  
 law: νόμος, ου, ό.  
 lead: ἄγω, ήγέομαι.  
 lead away (*or* lead back): ἀπάγω.  
 lead down: κατάγω.  
 lead in: εἰσάγω.  
 lead out: ἐξάγω.  
 lead together: συνάγω.  
 lead up: ἀνάγω.  
 leader: ἡγεμών, όνος, ό.  
 learn: γινώσκω, μαθαίνω.  
 learn about: πυνθάνομαι.  
 least, at: γε.  
 least of all: ἥκιστα.  
 leave: λείπω.  
 leave behind: ἀπολείπω, καταλείπω.  
 leave off (*or* leave out): ἐκλείπω.  
 left, what is: λοιπός, ή, όν.  
 lest: μή.  
 lest not: μή ού.  
 let: έάω.  
 letter: ἐπιστολή, ης, ή.

libation: σπονδή, ης, ή.  
 lie (recline): κείμαι.  
 lie down: κατακείμαι.  
 lie upon: ἐπικείμαι.  
 light (*verb*): καίω or κέω.  
 light-armed: ψιλός, ή, όν.  
 light-armed warrior: γυμνής, ητος, ό.  
 like: ὡσπερ.  
 line (military): τάξις, εως, ή.  
 listen: ἀκούω.  
 little: ὀλίγος, η, ον.  
 live: ζάω.  
 long: μακρός, α, όν.  
 longer (*adv.*): ἔτι.  
 look: βλέπω.  
 look down on: καθοράω.  
 look on: θεάομαι.  
 loose: λύω.  
 lose: ἀπόλλυμι.  
 Lydia: Λυδία, ας, ή.  
 Lydian: Λυδίας, α, ον.

## Μ

magnanimity: ἀρετή, ης, ή.  
 make: ποιέω.  
 man: άνήρ, άνδρός, ό; άνθρωπος, ου, ό.  
 manage: διαπράττομαι.  
 manner: τρόπος, ου, ό.  
 many: πολύς, πολλή, πολύ (*in pl.*).  
 many (how many, as many as): ὅσος,  
 η, ον; ὅπόσος, η, ον.  
 march: ἐλαύνω.  
 march in: εἰσελαύνω.  
 march out: ἐξελαύνω.  
 market, market-place: ἀγορά, ας, ή.  
 marshal: τάττω.  
 master: δεσπότης, ου, ό.  
 matter: πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό.  
 means, by no: ἥκιστα.  
 Medes: Μῆδοι, ων, οί.  
 Menon: Μένων, ανος, ό.  
 messenger: ἄγγελος, ου, ό.  
 method: τρόπος, ου, ό.  
 middle (middle of): μέσος, η, ον.

midnight: μέσαι νύκτες.  
 midst, in the: ἐν μέσῳ.  
 might: κράτος, οὐς, τό.  
 mina: μνᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ.  
 mind: νοῦς, οὐ, ὄ.  
 Mithradates: Μιθραδάτης, οὐ, ὄ.  
 mixing bowl: κρᾶτήρ, ἡρος, ὄ.  
 money: ἀργύριον, οὐ, τό; χρήματα,  
 ων, τά.

month: μῆν, μηνός, ὄ.  
 monthly: κατὰ μῆνα.  
 more (*adv.*): μᾶλλον.  
 most (*adv.*): μάλιστα.  
 mother: μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ.  
 mountain: ὄρος, οὐς, τό.  
 much (*adj.*): πολὺς, πολλή, πολύ.  
 much (*adv.*): πολύ.  
 much (how much, as much as): ὅσος,  
 η, ον; ὀπόσος, η, ον.  
 multitude: πλήθος, οὐς, τό.  
 must, one: χρή; see 'necessary.'  
 my: ἐμός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 myself: ἑμαυτοῦ, ἡς.

## N

name: ὄνομα, ατος, τό.  
 narrow: στενός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 near: ἐγγύς; πρὸς with dat.; περί with  
 acc.  
 necessary (*adj.*): ἐπιτήδειος, ᾶ, ον.  
 necessary, it is: δεῖ, χρή, ἀνάγκη (ἔστί).  
 necessity: ἀνάγκη, ης, ἡ.  
 need: δέομαι; there is need: δεῖ,  
 χρή.  
 neighbor: γείτων, ονος, ὄ.  
 neither . . . nor: οὔτε (μήτε) . . . οὔτε  
 (μήτε).  
 never: οὔποτε, μήποτε.  
 never yet: οὔπω.  
 new: νέος, ᾶ, ον.  
 next: ὑστεραίος, ᾶ, ον; (*adv.*), ἔπειτα.  
 night: νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ.  
 night, by: νύκτωρ.  
 noble: καλός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 noble-mindedness: ἀρετή, ἡς, ἡ.

nobly: καλῶς.  
 noise: θόρυβος, οὐ, ὄ.  
 no longer, no more: οὐκέτι.  
 no one: οὐδεὶς, μηδεὶς.  
 nobody: οὐδεὶς, μηδεὶς.  
 nor: οὐδέ, μηδέ.  
 not: οὐ, μή.  
 not even: οὐδέ, μηδέ.  
 not yet: οὔπω.  
 nothing: οὐδέν, μηδέν.  
 now (inferential): δή.  
 now (temporal): ἤδη, νῦν.

## O

O: ὄ.  
 oath: ὄρκος, οὐ, ὄ.  
 oath, take: δμνῶμι.  
 obey: πείθομαι.  
 observe: καθορᾶω, σκέπτομαι.  
 occupy: καταλαμβάνω.  
 occupy beforehand: προκαταλαμβάνω.  
 off: ἀπό.  
 offer: δίδωμι (pres. and impf.).  
 offer (= sacrifice): θύω, θύομαι.  
 often: πολλάκις; as often as: ὅποτε,  
 ἔτε.  
 old: ἀρχαῖος, ᾶ, ον; of old (*adv.*):  
 τὸ ἀρχαῖον.  
 older: πρεσβύτερος, ᾶ, ον.  
 on: ἐπί with gen. or dat.  
 on account of: διὰ with acc.  
 on behalf of: ὑπέρ with gen.  
 once (upon a time): ποτέ.  
 once, at: εὐθὺς.  
 one another: ἀλλήλοιον.  
 one, the: ὁ μὲν; see Lesson VI.  
 only (*adj.*): μόνος, η, ον.  
 opinion: γνώμη, ης, ἡ.  
 opportunity: καιρὸς, οὐ, ὄ.  
 opposite: κατὰ with acc.  
 or: ἢ.  
 order (*noun*): τάξις, εως, ἡ.  
 order (*verb*): κελεύω (= command),  
 τάττω (= marshal).  
 Orontas: Ὀρόντας, ᾶ, ὄ.



other: ἄλλος, η, ον.  
other (others), the; ὁ δέ, οἱ δέ; see

Lesson VI.

otherwise: ἄλλως.

our: ἡμέτερος, α, ον.

out of: ἐκ.

outcry: κραυγή, ἦς, ἡ.

outside: ἔξω.

over: ὑπέρ with gen. or acc.

overtake: καταλαμβάνω.

ox: βότς, βοός, ὄ.

### P

pack up: συσκευάζω.

palace: βασιλεια, ον, τά.

parasang: παρασάγγης, ου, ὄ.

Parysatis: Παρύσατις, ιδος, ἡ.

Pasion: Πάσιων, ωνος, ὄ.

pass: ἔκβασις, εως, ἡ; πάροδος, ου, ἡ.

pass (passing over): ὑπερβολή, ἦς, ἡ.

pass along (a watchword): διαδίδωμι.

passable: διαβατός, ἡ, ὄν.

passage: πάροδος, ου, ἡ.

pay: μισθός, οὔ, ὄ.

peace: εἰρήνη, ἦς, ἡ.

pelt: βάλλω.

peltast: πελταστής, οὔ, ὄ.

perceive: αἰσθάνομαι, πυνθάνομαι.

perish: ἀποθνήσκω, ἀπόλλυμαι.

permit: εἶω.

permitted, it is: ἔξεστι.

Persian (*adj.*): Περσικός, ἡ, ὄν.

Persian (*noun*): Πέρσης, ου, ὄ.

persuade: πείθω.

pertain to: προσήκω.

phalanx: φάλαγξ, αγγος, ἡ.

Phrygia: Φρυγία, ας, ἡ.

Pisidians: Πισίδαι, ὄν, οἱ.

place (*noun*): τόπος, ου, ὄ; χωρίον, ου, τό.

place, in the same: αὐτοῦ.

place (*verb*): ἵστημι.

place, take: γίγνομαι.

place, take one's: καθίσταμαι.

place together: συντίθημι.

place upon: ἐπιτίθημι.

plain (*adj.*): δῆλος, η, ον; φανερός, ἄ, ὄν.

plain (*noun*): πεδιον, ου, τό.

plan (*noun*): γνώμη, ἦς, ἡ.

plan (*verb*): βουλευόμαι.

plan with: συμβουλεύω.

pleased, be: ἡδομαι.

pledges: δεξιά, ὄν, αἱ; πιστά, ὄν, τά.

plethrum: πλέθρον, ου, τό.

plot (*noun*): ἐπιβουλή, ἦς, ἡ.

plot against: ἐπιβουλεύω.

plunder: ἀρπάζω; plunder utterly: διαρπάζω.

point out: δείκνυμι, δεικνύω (and ἐπιδείκνυμι).

possessions: χρήματα, ον, τά.

possible, it is: ἔξεστιν, ἔστιν, εἶόν τε ἔστιν.

post, take one's: τίθειμι τὰ δπλα.

power (in the power of): ἐπί with prepare: παρασκευάζω. [dat.

prepared: ἔτοιμος, η, ον, or ἔτοιμος, ον.

present, be: παραγίγνομαι, πάρεμι.

primitive: ἀρχαῖος, α, ον.

proceed: πορεύομαι, προέρχομαι.

proceed with: συμπορεύομαι.

promise: ὑπισχνόμαι.

proposed: εἶπον.

proposition: γνώμη, ἦς, ἡ.

prosperous: εὐδαίμων, ον.

provide: παρέχω.

province: ἀρχή, ἦς, ἡ.

provisions: ἐπιτήδεια, ον, τά.

provisions, get: ἐπισιτίζομαι.

Proxenus: Πρόξενος, ου, ὄ.

punish: κολάζω.

punishment, inflict . . . on: δίκην ἐπιτίθημι.

punishment, suffer: δίκην δίδωμι.

pursue: διώκω.

put: τίθημι.

put together: συντίθημι.

put upon: ἐπιτίθημι.

## Q

quick : ταχύς, εἶα, ἔ.  
quickly : ταχέως, τάχα, ταχύ.

## R

rally : ἀναστρέφομαι.  
rapidly : see 'quickly.'  
rather : μάλλον.  
ravine : χαράδρα, ἄσ, ἡ.  
reach down : καθήκω.  
reach to : προσήκω.  
readily : προθύμως.  
ready : ἔτοιμος, ἡ, ον, or ἔτοιμος, ον.  
ready, make : συσκευάζω.  
ready, make oneself : παρασκευάζομαι.  
rear : τρέφω.  
receive : δέχομαι, λαμβάνω; of pay :  
λαμβάνω, φέρω.  
related : προσήκω.  
remain : μένω.  
remaining : λοιπός, ἡ, ὄν.  
remember : μέμνημαι.  
remind : μμνήσκω.  
reply : ἀποκρίνομαι.  
report : ἀγγέλλω, ἀπαγγέλλω.  
rest : ἀναπαύομαι.  
rest of : λοιπός, ἡ, ὄν; the rest of : ὁ  
ἄλλος, etc.  
restore : κατέγω.  
return : ἀπειμι.  
ride : εἰλαίνω.  
ride in : εἰσελαίνω.  
ride past : παραλαίνω.  
ride up : προσελαίνω.  
right (hand) : δεξιὰ, ἄσ, ἡ.  
right measure, time, place : καιρός,  
οὐ, ὁ.  
right (= on the right hand) : δεξιός,  
ἔ, ὄν.  
risk, run a : κινδυνεύω.  
river : ποταμός, οὐ, ὁ.  
road : ὁδός, οὐ, ἡ.  
road by : πάροδος, οὐ, ἡ.  
road up : ἀνοδος, οὐ, ἡ.

rob : ἀφαιρέομαι.  
royal : βασιλῆος, ον; βασιλικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
rule (noun) : ἀρχή, ἡς, ἡ.  
rule (verb) : ἄρχω; rule as king : βα-  
σιλεύω.  
ruler : ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ.  
run (noun) : δρόμος, ον, ὁ.  
run (verb) : τρέχω, θέω.  
run away (by stealth) : ἀποδιδράσκω.

## S

sack : διαρπάζω.  
sacred : ἱερός, ἔ, ὄν.  
sacrifice : θύω, θύομαι.  
safe : ἀσφαλής, ἔς.  
safely : ἀσφαλῶς.  
safety : σωτηρία, ἄσ, ἡ.  
safety, in : ἐν ἀσφαλεί.  
sail : πλέω.  
sail away : ἀποπλέω.  
sailing, sailing weather : πλοῦς, οὐ, ὁ.  
same : ὁ αὐτός.  
same time, at the : ἅμα.  
Sardis : Σάρδεις, ἑων, αἰ.  
satisfaction, give : δίκην δίδωμι.  
satrap : σατράπης, οὐ, ὁ.  
save : σφίζω.  
save from (= bring safely back) :  
ἀποσφίζω.  
say : λέγω, φημί.  
sea : θάλαττα, ἡς, ἡ.  
season : ὄρᾶ, ἄσ, ἡ.  
secretly : λάθρα.  
secure : ἀσφαλής, ἔς.  
see : θεάομαι, ὁράω.  
seem : δοκέω; seem best : δοκέω.  
seize : αἰρώ, ἄρπάζω, καταλαμβάνω,  
συλλαμβάνω.  
seize beforehand : προκαταλαμβάνω.  
self : αὐτός.  
send : πέμπω, ἔημι.  
send after : μεταπέμπομαι.  
send ahead : προπέμπω.  
send away : ἀποπέμπω.  
send down : καταπέμπω.

- send forward: **προπέμω.**  
 send off: **ἀποπέμω.**  
 send with: **συμπέμω.**  
 sent after: **μετάπεμπτος, ον.**  
 sentinel: **φύλαξ, ακος, ό.**  
 separate: **κρίνω.**  
 separated, be: **διέχω.**  
 servant: **ὑπηρέτης, ου, ό.**  
 serve in war: **στρατεύομαι; serve in war with: συστρατεύομαι.**  
 set: **ἴσθημι, τίθημι; of the sun: δῶν, δύνω.**  
 severe: **χαλεπός, ή, όν.**  
 shameful: **αἰσχρός, εἰ, όν.**  
 sheep:  **πρόβατον, ου, τό.**  
 shield: **ἀσπίς, ἰδος, ή.**  
 shoot: **τοξεύω.**  
 short: **βραχύς, εἰα, ύ.**  
 show: **δείκνυμι, δεικνύω (and ἐπιδεικνύμι), δηλώω, φαίνω.**  
 shun: **φεύγω.**  
 shut (= shut up): **κατακλείω.**  
 side, on the other: **πέραν.**  
 sight, out of: **ἀφανής, ες.**  
 silver (*adj.*): **ἀργυρούς, α, ουν.**  
 silver (*noun*): **ἀργύριον, ου, τό.**  
 simple: **ἀπλοῦς, ή, ουν.**  
 since: **ἐπει, ἐπειδή, όπότε.**  
 sincere: **ἀπλοῦς, ή, ουν.**  
 skillful: **δαινός, ή, όν.**  
 slander: **διαβάλλω.**  
 slave: **ἀνδράποδον, ου, τό.**  
 slay: **ἀποκτείνω; (pass.) ἀποθνήσκω.**  
 sling: **σφενδόνη, ης, ή.**  
 small: **μικρός, εἰ, όν.**  
 smite: **παίω.**  
 snow: **χιών, όνος, ή.**  
 so as: **ώστε.**  
 so great: **τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο.**  
 so long as: **ἔσθε, ἕως.**  
 so many (much): **τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο.**  
 so that: **ώστε.**  
 Socrates: **Σωκράτης, ους, ό.**  
 soldier: **στρατιώτης, ου, ό.**
- some: **οἱ μὲν.** See Lesson VI.  
 some, somebody, something: **τις, τι.**  
 somewhere: **που.**  
 Sphaenetus: **Σοφαίνετος, ου, ό.**  
 source: **πηγαί, ών, αἱ.**  
 Spartan: **Λακεδαιμόνιος, α, ον.**  
 spear: **δόρυ, δόρατος, τό; λόγχη, ης, ή.**  
 speech: **λόγος, ου, ό.**  
 splendor: **λαμπρότης, ητος, ή.**  
 spread (of a report): **διέρχομαι.**  
 spring: **πηγή, ής, ή.**  
 stadium: **στάδιον, ου, τό.**  
 stage: **σταθμός, οῦ, ό.**  
 stand: **ἴσθημι (intr. tenses).**  
 stand up: **ἀνίσταμαι.**  
 start up: **ἀνίστημι.**  
 station: **καθίστημι.**  
 steal: **κλέπτω.**  
 steep: **όρθιος, α, ον.**  
 still: **ἔτι.**  
 stone: **λίθος, ου, ό.**  
 stop, make to: **παύω.**  
 straightway: **εὐθύς, ήδη.**  
 strange: **θαυμαστός, ή, όν.**  
 strength: **δύναμις, εως, ή; κράτος, ους, τό.**  
 strike: **παίω.**  
 strong: **δυνατός, ή, όν; ἰσχυρός, εἰ, όν.**  
 stronghold: **χωρίον, ου, τό.**  
 strongly: **ἰσχυρώς.**  
 struggle: **ἀγωνίζομαι.**  
 such: **τοιούτος, τοιαύτη, τοιούτο.**  
 such as: **τοιούτος οἷος.**  
 suffer: **πάσχω.**  
 sufficient: **ἱκανός, ή, όν.**  
 suitable: **ἐπιτήδειος, α, ον.**  
 summon: **καλέω, μεταπέμπομαι.**  
 summoned: **μετάπεμπτος, ον.**  
 sun: **ήλιος, ου, ό.**  
 supplies: **ἐπιτήδεια, ων, τά.**  
 supply: **παρέχω.**  
 support: **τρέφω.**  
 supporter: **ὑπηρέτης, ου, ό.**  
 suppose: **οἶομαι.**  
 sure, to be: **μήν.**

surely: γε.  
 surpass: νικάω.  
 surprised, be: θαυμάζω.  
 surrender: παραδίδωμι.  
 suspicion: ὑποψία, ἄσ, ἡ.  
 swear: δυνῆμι.  
 sweet: ἡδύς, εἰα, ὦ.  
 swift: ταχύς, εἰα, ὦ.  
 swiftly: ταχέως, ταχύ.  
 Syennesis: Συέννησις, ἰος, ὄ.  
 Syria: Συρία, ἄσ, ἡ.

## T

take (= seize): αἰρέω, λαμβάνω.  
 take away for oneself: ἀφαιρέομαι.  
 take back: ἀπολαμβάνω.  
 take off: ἀπολαμβάνω.  
 take together: συλλαμβάνω.  
 talent: τάλαντον, ου, τό.  
 Tarsus: Τάρσοι, ὦν, οἶ.  
 tax: δασμός, οὐ, ὄ.  
 teach: διδάσκω.  
 tear to pieces: διαρπάζω.  
 tent: σκηνή, ἦς, ἡ.  
 terrible: δεινός, ἡ, ὄν; φοβερός, ἔ, ὄν.  
 terrify utterly: ἐκπλήττω.  
 than: ἤ.  
 thankful, feel: χάριν ἔχω.  
 that (*conj.*): ὅτι; (= in order that) ἵνα, ὅπως, ὡς.  
 that (*dem. pron.*): ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνο.  
 that (*rel. pron.*): ὅς, ἡ, ὄ.  
 the: ὄ, ἡ, τό.  
 then (inferential): τοίνυν.  
 then (temporal): τότε, εἴτα, ἔπειτα, ἔνθα, ἐντεῦθεν.  
 thence: ἐντεῦθεν.  
 there: ἐνταῦθα, ἔνθα, αὐτοῦ.  
 thereafter: τὸ λοιπόν.  
 therefore: οὖν, τοίνυν, τοιγαροῦν, ὥστε.  
 thereupon: εἴτα, ἔπειτα.

thick: παχύς, εἰα, ε.  
 thickly grown (wooded): δασύς, εἰα, ὄ.  
 thief: κλέψ, κλωπός, ὄ.  
 think: ἠγόομαι, νομίζω, οἴομαι, δοκέω.  
 this: ὅδε, ἦδε, τότε; οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο.  
 Thracian: Θράξ, Θρακός, ὄ.  
 throng: ὄχλος, ου, ὄ; πλῆθος, ους, τό.  
 through: διά with gen.  
 throw: βάλλω.  
 thus: οὕτω, οὕτως, ἴδε.  
 Tigris: Τίγρις, ἦτος, ὄ.  
 timbers: ξύλα, ὦν, τά.  
 time: χρόνος, ου, ὄ.  
 time, at any, at some: ποτέ.  
 time, at that: see 'then.'  
 time (= in the time of): ἐπί with gen.  
 time, fit or proper: ὥρᾱ, ἄσ, ἡ.  
 time, right, proper: καιρός, οὐ, ὄ.  
 Tissaphernes: Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὄ.  
 to: εἰς (= into); ἐπί with acc.; παρά with acc.; πρὸς with acc.; ὡς with acc. (of persons).  
 together with: ἅμα.  
 top of: ἄκρος, ἄ, ὄν.  
 toward: πρὸς with gen. or acc.  
 town: ἄστυ, εως, τό.  
 tree: δένδρον, ου, τό.  
 trench: διώρυξ, υχος, ἡ.  
 tribute: δασμός, οὐ, ὄ.  
 trireme: τριήρης, ους, ἡ.  
 trouble: πρῆγματα, ὦν, τά.  
 truce: σπονδαί, ὦν, αἶ.  
 true: ἀληθής, ἔς.  
 trumpet: σάλπιγξ, υγος, ἡ.  
 trust: πέποιθα.  
 truth, in: δῆ, μήν.  
 try: πειράομαι.  
 turn (*noun*): τρόπος, ου, ὄ.  
 turn (*verb*): στρέφω, τρέπω.  
 turn about or back: ἀναστρέφω and -ομαι.  
 turn out (= happen): γίγνομαι.

## Υ

under: *ὑπό* with dat. or acc.; (from under) *ὑπό* with gen.  
 understand: *ἐπίσταμαι*.  
 understanding: *γνώμη*, ης, ἡ.  
 undertake: *ὑπισχνόμαι*.  
 unguarded: *ἀφάλακτος*, ον.  
 unjust: *ἄδικος*, ον.  
 unprepared: *ἀπαράσκευος*, ον.  
 unprotected: *ψιλός*, ἡ, ὄν.  
 until: *ἕως*, ἕως, *μέχρι*, *πρίν*.  
 unwilling: *ἄκων*, *εὔσα*, ον.  
 up (*adv.*): *ἄνω*.  
 up (*prep.*), up along, up through: *ἀνά*.  
 upon: *ἐπί* with dat. or acc.  
 urge on: *σπεύδω*.  
 urged: *εἶπον*.  
 use: *χρᾶσμαι*.  
 useful: *χρήσιμος*, η, ον, or *χρήσιμος*, ον.

## Υ

vain: *κενός*, ἡ, ὄν.  
 very: *μάλα*, *πάνυ*; *ὡς* with sup.  
 victory: *νίκη*, ης, ἡ.  
 view: *σκέπτομαι*.  
 village: *κώμη*, ης, ἡ.  
 village chief: *κωμάρχης*, ου, ὄ.  
 virtue: *ἀρετή*, ης, ἡ.  
 visible: *φανερός*, ὄ, ὄν.  
 voice: *φωνή*, ης, ἡ.  
 voyage: *πλοῦς*, οὔ, ὄ.  
 vulnerable: *τραυτός*, ἡ, ὄν.

## W

wage war: *πολεμέω*.  
 wagon: *ἄμαξα*, ης, ἡ.  
 wait for: *μένω*.  
 wall: *τείχος*, ους, τό.  
 want: *δέομαι*.

war: *πόλεμος*, ου, ὄ; make war on, wage war: *πολεμέω*.  
 warlike: *πολεμικός*, ἡ, ὄν.  
 watch fires: *πυρά*, ὦν, τά.  
 watchword: *σύνθημα*, ατος, τό.  
 water: *ὔδωρ*, ὔδατος, τό.  
 way: *ὁδός*, οὔ, ἡ.  
 way down: *κατάβασις*, ἔως, ἡ.  
 way to: *ἔφοδος*, ου, ἡ.  
 way up: *ἀνοδος*, ου, ἡ.  
 way, in what (*interr.*): *πῶς*.  
 way, in what (*rel.*): *ὅπῃ*, ὅπως.  
 weary, am: *κάμνω*.  
 well (*adv.*): *εὖ*.  
 well! (in address): *ἀλλά*.  
 well-disposed: *εὖνους*, ουν.  
 what sort (of): *οἷος*, ἅ, ον; *ὅμοιος*, ἅ, ον.  
 whatever: *ὅ τι*.  
 wheel about: *στρέφω*.  
 when: *ὅτε*, *ἐπει*, *ἐπειδή*; (with subjv.) *ὅταν*, *ἐπειδάν*; (= whenever) *ὅποτε*, *ὅτε*.  
 whence: *ἐθεν*, *ἐθεν*.  
 where (*interr.* = whither): *ποῦ*.  
 where (*rel.*): *ἐνθα*; (= whence) *ἐθεν*; (= whither) *ὅπου*.  
 where, wherever: *ὅπῃ*, *ὅπου*.  
 whether: *εἰ*.  
 whether . . . or: *πότερον* (*πότερα*) . . . ἢ.  
 which: *ὅς*, ἡ, ὄ; *ὅστις*, ἡτίς, ὄ τι.  
 which, the very one: *ὅσπερ*, ἡπερ, *ὅπερ*.  
 while: *ἕως*, ἕως.  
 whither (*interr.*): *ποῦ*.  
 whither (= whithersoever): *ὅπου*.  
 who, which, what (*interr.*): *τίς*, *τί*.  
 who (*rel.*): *ὅς*, ἡ, ὄ; *ὅστις*, ἡτίς, ὄ τι.  
 whoever (or whichever): *ὅστις*, ἡτίς, ὄ τι.  
 whole: *ὅλος*, η, ον; *πᾶς*, *πᾶσα*, *πάν*; *ἅπας*, *ἅσα*, *ἅν*; *σύμπας*, *ἅσα*, *ἅν*.  
 wholly: *πάνυ*.  
 why (*interr.*): *τί*.  
 width: *εὖρος*, ους, τό.

wife: **γυνή, γυναικός, ή.**  
 wine: **οίνος, ου, ό.**  
 wish: **βούλομαι, έθελω.** See 'desire.'  
 with: **μετά** with gen.; **σύν.**  
 with the aid of: **σύν.**  
 within: **εἰσω, ένδον.**  
 without: **ένευ, (outside) έξω.**  
 woman: **γυνή, γυναικός, ή.**  
 wonder (= wonder at): **θαυμάζω.**  
 wonderful: **θαυμαστός, ή, όν.**  
 wood: **ξύλον, ου, τό;** (hewn or split)  
**ξύλα, ων, τά.**  
 word: **λόγος, ου, ό.**  
 work: **έργον, ου, τό.**  
 worse (*adj.*): **κακίων, ον; χειρών, ον.**  
 worse (*adv.*): **κάκιον, χειρον.**  
 worthy: **άξιος, α, ον.**  
 wound: **τιτρώσκω.**  
 write: **γράφω.**  
 wrong, do, be in the: **άδικέω.**

## X

Xenias: **Ξενίας, ου, ό.**  
 Xenophon: **Ξενοφών, ώντος, ό.**

## Y

yearn: **έπιθύμew.**  
 yet: **έτι** (temporal), **μέντοι** (adversative).  
 young: **νέος, α, ον.**  
 young man: **νεανίσκος, ου, ό.**  
 you: **σύ.**  
 your (sing.): **σός, σή, σόν.**  
 your (pl.): **ύμέτερος, α, ον.**  
 yourself: **σεαυτού, ής.**

## Z

zealously: **προθύμως.**



# GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## AND INDEX TO THE LESSONS

The Roman numerals indicate the number of the special vocabulary in which a word occurs. References to sections are made by Arabic numerals. If no references are placed under a word, it occurs for the first time in the SELECTIONS FROM THE ANABASIS (pp. 263-279).

For the principal parts of compound verbs see the simple verbs. In the few instances where compounds occur without the simple verbs, the principal parts are given under the compounds. If, in place of an active form, a middle form occurs in the principal parts, the middle form is understood to be used in the active sense. Thus ἀκούω *I hear*, ἀκούσομαι *I shall hear*.

If a part is omitted from its proper place, the indication is that the part does not occur, at least in Attic Greek.

### A

ἀ- or ἀν- before vowels, a negative prefix called *alpha privative*, equivalent to Lat. *in-* and Eng. *un-*.

ἀ-βατος, ον (ἀ-priv. and theme βα-, cp. δια-βαίνω): *not to be trodden on, impassable*. Cp. ἀ-διά-βατος. § 476. XXIX.

Ἀβροκόμας, ἄ (Doric gen., for ον), δ: *Abrocomas*, a satrap of Phoenicia and Syria. XXXI.

ἀγαθός, ἦ, ὄν: *good, brave*. §§ 64, 116. Comp. ἀμείνων, βελτίων, κρείττων; sup. ἀριστος, βελτιστος, κράτιστος; § 360. I. III.

ἀγγέλλω (for ἀγγελ + γω, theme ἀγγελ-), ἀγγελῶ, ἠγγεῖλα, ἠγγελκα, ἠγγέλμαι, ἠγγέλθην: *announce, report*, with ὅτι or partic. in indir. disc. § 669. 3. Cp. ἀγγελος. LV.

ἄγγελος, ου, ὁ: *messenger*. XLV.

ἄγε, inv. of ἄγω used as an interjection: *come!* ἄγε (or ἄγετε) δῆ: *come now!* XXIX.

ἀγορά, ἄς, ἡ: *market-place, market*. IX.

ἀγοράζω (theme ἀγοραδ-), ἀγοράσω, ἠγόρασα, ἠγόρακα, ἠγόρασμαι, ἠγόρασθην: *buy*. Cp. ἀγορά. XV.

ἄγω, ἄξω (§ 153), ἠγαγον (§§ 87, 239, 258), ἠχα (§ 445), ἠγμαι (§ 466. a), ἠχθην (§ 387. 1): *lead, bring; carry, convey*; MID. sometimes *marry* (§ 324). § 487. I.

ἀγών, ὄνος, ὁ: *gathering, contest, games*. § 220. XX.

ἀγωνίζομαι (theme ἀγωνιδ-), ἀγωνοῦμαι (§ 543), ἠγωνισάμην, ἠγώνισμαι: *contend as in games, struggle*. Cp. ἀγών. LV.



ἀδελφός, οὔ, ὁ: *brother*. The voc. sing. with irreg. accent is ἀδελφε.

VIII.  
ἀ-διά-βατος, ον (ἀ- priv. and διαβαίνω): *not to be crossed, impassable*. § 476. VII.

ἀδικέω (ἀδικος), ἀδικήσω, ἠδίκησα, ἠδίκηκα, ἠδίκημαι, ἠδικήθην: *do wrong to, injure, be in the wrong*. LV.

ἀ-δικος, ον (ἀ- priv. and δίκη, cp. δίκαιος): *unjust*. XLVI.

ἀ-δύνατος, ον (ἀ- priv. and δύναμαι): *impossible*. LX.

ἀει, adv.: *always, continually, in succession*. XLII.

Ἀθηναῖος, α, ον: *Athenian*. XXI.

ἀθροίζω (theme ἀθροῖδ-), ἀθροίσω, ἠθροῖσα, ἠθροῖκα, ἠθροῖσμαι, ἠθροῖσθη: *gather together, collect, assemble* (trans.); MID. *gather* (intr.), *muster*, with εἰς and acc. XXVII, XXX.

ἀθυμία, ας, ἡ: *discouragement, despondency*. LIV.

ἀθύμως (adv. of ἀθύμος *out of heart, discouraged*): *dejectedly*. ἀθύμως ἔχειν: *be discouraged*.

Αἰγύπτιος, α, ον (Αἴγυπτος *Egypt*): *Egyptian*.

αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, εἶλον, ἤρηκα, ἤρημαι, ἤρέθην: *take, capture, seize*; MID. *choose*. LI (cp. XXVI and XXXII).

αἰσθάνομαι (theme αἰσθ-, pres. tense suffix αν%), αἰσθήσομαι (with lengthened theme), ἤσθόμην, ἤσθημαι: *perceive*. §§ 441, 442. XXXVIII.

αἰσχρός, αῖ, ὄν: *shameful, disgraceful*. Comp. αἰσχίων, sup. αἰσχιωτος, § 352. b. XXXV.

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ἤτησα, ἤτηκα, ἤτημαι, ἤτήθην: *ask a favor, beg, ask for something from somebody* (two accs.); MID. *ask for oneself*. LI.

αἰχμ-άλωτος, ον (αἰχμή *spear-point* and ἀλίσκομαι): *captured by the spear*; οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι: *the captives*. ἀκοντιζω, ἀκοντιώ, etc.: *hit with a javelin*.

ἀκούσῃς, I aor. act. partic. of ἀκούω: *having heard*. Declined in § 209.

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα (§ 447), ἠκούσθην (σ is irregularly inserted): *hear, hear of, listen*, with object in gen. or acc., or with gen. of person and acc. of thing; may be followed by ὅτι clause (§ 262), or by inf. (§ 262. a), or by partic. (§ 442. a). XVII.

ἀκρό-πολις, εως, ἡ: *high part of a city, citadel*. XXXII.

ἄκρος, α, ον: *top of, highest point of*; τὸ ἄκρον (subst.): *the height*. Cp. Lat. *acus, acūtus, acies*. XXXII.

ἄκων, ουσα, ον (for declension cp. κωλύων, § 206): *unwilling*. Used like a partic. in the gen. abs. const. XL.

ἀληθεύω (ἀληθής), ἀληθεύσω, ἠλήθευσα: *speak the truth*.

ἀληθής, ἑς: *true*. Comp. ἀληθέστερος, sup. ἀληθέστατος, § 351. d. XXXIV.

ἀληθινός, ἡ, ὄν (ἀληθής): *true, worthy of the name, trusty*.

ἀλ-ίσκομαι (themes ἀλ- and ἀλο-), ἀλώσομαι, ἐάλων or ἤλων, ἐάλωκα or ἤλωκα: *be taken, be captured*. Used as pass. of αἰρέω. §§ 573. a, 574, 575. LVIII.

ἄλλά (ἄλλος), conj.: *otherwise, but*; sometimes in an address, *well!* V.

ἄλλῃ, adv. (dat. fem. of ἄλλος, with ὀδῶ or χώρῃ understood): *elsewhere, in another place or direction*. XLVII.

ἀλλήλων, αἰν, οἰν, reciprocal pron.: *of one another*. § 377. XXXVIII.

ἄλλος, η, ο: *other, another; besides*; preceded by article, *the other, the rest of*. § 124. X.

ἄλλως (adv. of ἄλλος): *otherwise*.

ἄλλως ἔχειν: see ἔχειν. LIV.

ἄλφιστα, ὄν, τά: *barley meal*.

ἅμα, adv.: *at the same time, together with*, with dat. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ: *at the same time with the day, at day-break*. ἅμα ἤλιφ δύνοντι: *at sunset* (§ 591). XIII.

ἅμαξα, ἡς, ἡ: *carriage, wagon*. § 140, XI.

ἁμείνων: comp. of ἀγαθός.

Ἀμπρακιάτης, οὐ, ὁ: *an Ambracian, a citizen of Ambracia in Epirus*.

ἄμφι, prep.: with GEN. *concerning, about* (but in prose περί is generally used in this sense); with ACC. *about*. οἱ ἄμφι Κύρου: *Cyrus and his men* (lit. *those [the men] about Cyrus*). οἱ ἄμφ' αὐτόν: *those about him*. XVII.

ἄν: modal adv. See §§ 249, 266. a, 267, 276, 277, 530. a, 531, 545, 546.

ἄν (εἰ + ἄν) = ἔάν: *if*, conj. with subjv. §§ 241, 249, 399. XXII.

ἀνά, prep. with acc. only: *up, up along, up through*. (In composition also *back*.) ἀνά κράτος: *to the limit of strength, at full speed*. XXVI.

ἀναβαίνω: *go up; go inland* ('up' from the coast); *mount one's horse*. XXVI.

ἀναγκάζω (theme ἀναγκαδ-, cp. ἀνάγκη), ἀναγκάσω, ἠνάγκασα, ἠνάγκακα, ἠνάγκασμαι, ἠναγκάσθην: *compel, force*. LVI.

ἀνάγκη, ἡς, ἡ: *necessity*; with or without ἐστί(ν): *it is necessary* (§ 230). XXI.

ἀναγώ (ἀνά + ἄγω): *lead up; lead 'up' from the coast*; MID. *put to sea* (§ 502). XXXIX.

ἀνακῆ: *light, kindle*.

ἀναλαμβάνω: *take up, take along*.

ἀναπαύω: *make cease*; MID. *rest*. LIX.

ἀναστρέφω: *turn back, turn about* (intr.); PASS. in mid. sense, *turn about, face about, rally*. XLI.

ἀναταράττω: *stir up*; pf. pass. partic. ἀνα-τεταραγμένον: *confused*.

ἀνδράποδον, οὐ, τό (ἀνὴρ and ποδός): *slave taken in war*. LVII.

ἄνευ, prep. with gen. only: *without*. LVI.

ἀν-έχω, impf. ἦν-έχον and 2 aor. ἦν-έσχον with double augment: *hold up*; MID. *hold oneself up, endure; restrain oneself*.

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρῆς, ὁ: *man; husband*. ὧ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται (or Ἑλληγες): *fellow soldiers (or Greeks)*. Cp. Lat. *vir*. § 321. XXXI.

ἄνθρωπος, οὐ, ὁ: *man*. Cp. Lat. *homō*. § 56. III.

ἀνιάω, ἀνιάσω, ἠνιάσα, ἠνιάσθην: *vex*; fut. mid. as pass. ἀνιάσομαι: *shall be grieved or hurt*.

ἀν-ίστημι: *make stand up, start up*; (intr.) *stand up*. For intr. tenses see § 555. LVI.

ἄν-οδος, οὐ, ἡ (ἀνά + ὁδός): *road up, way up*. XXXIX.

ἀντί, prep. with gen. only: *instead of, for; in comp.: against*. LVI.

ἀντίος, ἄ, ὄν: *face to face, opposite, against*, with dat. ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου: *from the opposite side, from the opposing line*.

ἄνω, adv. (cp. ἀνά): *up*; *up from the sea, inland, into the interior*. Comp. ἀνωτέρω (*higher*), sup. ἀνωτάτω (*highest*), § 369. I. XXXVII.

ἄξιος, ἄ, ὄν: *worthy, worth*. With gen., § 402. Comp. ἀξιώτερος, sup. ἀξιώτατος, § 351. ὁ. XXXV.

ἀξιόω (ἄξιος), ἀξιόσω, ἠξιόσα, ἠξιόκα, ἠξιόμαι, ἠξιόσθην: *deem worthy; claim as one's right, demand, ask*. LIII.

ἀπο-αγγέλλω: *bring back a message, report.* LV.

ἀπο-άγω: *lead away, lead back.* LIV.

ἀ-παράσκευος, ον (ἀ-priv. and παρασκευάζω): *unprepared.* XXXVII.

ἀ-πᾶς, ἅσα, ἅν (πᾶς): *all together, all.* The prefix ἀ- signifies together; cp. ἅμα. XXVIII.

ἀπο-εἶμι (εἶμι): *go away; go back, return.* LX.

ἀπο-ελαύνω: *drive off, ride off.*

ἀπο-έρχομαι, fut. supplied by ἀπο-εἶμι, ἀπ-ήλθον, ἀπ-ελήλυθα: *go away, go back.* Cp. Vocab. XIX.

ἀπ-έχω: *be distant, be away,* with gen. of person or place and acc. of extent of space. XVIII.

ἀπ-ήλθον: *I or they went away;* see ἀπ-έρχομαι. XIX.

ἀπλοῦς, ἦ, οὖν: *simple, sincere.* § 609. L.

ἀπό, prep. with gen. only: *off, from, away from.* Cp. Lat. ab. X.

ἀπο-βλέπω: *look away or off.*

ἀπο-γιγνώσκω: *abandon the idea of,* with gen.

ἀπο-διδράσκω (δι-δρά-σκω, δρᾶσομαι, ἔδραῖν, δέδρακα): *run away by stealth; run away from* (with acc.). § 553. LVI.

ἀπο-δίδωμι: *give back, pay.*

ἀπο-θνήσκω (θνήσκω die, θανούμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα be dead): *die off, die, perish, be slain, be killed.* X.

ἀπο-θύω: *sacrifice what is due on account of a vow.*

ἀπο-κόπτω: *cut off.* XLI.

ἀπο-κρίνομαι (mid. of ἀπο-κρίνω, see κρίνω): *give one's decision, answer, reply.* With ὅτι clause, § 669. I. LV.

ἀπο-κτείνω (κτείνω for κτεν-γω, theme κτεν-, *kill, κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, ἔκτονα*): *put to death, slay, kill.* The pass. is supplied by ἀπο-θνήσκω. LV.

ἀπο-λαμβάνω: *take or receive back; take off, cut off* (§ 444. I. 12). XXXIII.

ἀπο-λείπω: *leave behind, desert, abandon.* XLII.

ἀπο-δύωμι (δύωμι for δλ-νῦ-μι, themes δλ-, ὀλε-, *destroy, ὀλω, ὄλεσα, ὀλόλεκα* [§ 447] and 2 pf. ὄλωλα, ὄλωμην): *destroy utterly, lose;* MID. and 2 pf. act., *perish, be lost.* LIX.

ἀπο-πέμπω: *send off or away, dismiss.* X.

ἀπο-πλέω: *sail off or away.* LI.

ἀπορία, ἄς, ἡ (cp. ἀ-πορος, πορεύομαι): *lack of way out, embarrassment, difficulty.* XLVII.

ἀπορος, ον: *impassable; needy, without resources* (§ 232). § 118. III.

ἀπο-σπάω, -σπάσω, -τέπασα, -τέπακα, -τέπασμαι, -τέπασθην: *draw away.*

ἀπο-σφίζω: *save from something, bring safely back.* LVIII.

ἀπο-φεύγω: *flee away, escape.* XII. ἄρα, post-positive particle: *then* (inferential).

ἀργύριον, ον, τό: *silver, money.* L.

ἀργυροῦς, ᾧ, οὖν (cp. ἀργύριον): *of silver, silver.* § 609. L.

ἀρετή, ἡς, ἡ (cp. ἀρ-ιστος): *fitness, excellence, bravery; virtue, noble-mindedness, magnanimity.* XXXVII.

\* Ἀριαῖος, ον, ὁ: *Ariacus, a Persian nobleman. οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου: Ariacus and his men* (§ 557). XXV.

\* Ἀριστίππος, ον, ὁ: *Aristippus, a Thessalian general of mercenary soldiers.* XIX.

ἄριστος: see ἀγαθός.

ἄρμα, ατος, τό: *chariot for use in battle. atos.* See p. 252, Fig. 22. LVI.

**ἀρπάζω** (theme ἀρπαδ-, ἀρπάσω (§ 153) and ἀρπάσομαι (dep.), ἤρπασα (§ 164), ἤρπακα (§ 432. e, f), ἤρπασμαι (§ 467. a), ἤρπασθην (§ 387. 2): *seize, make booty of, plunder*. § 487. I.

**Ἀρταγέρσης, ου, δ**: *Artaxerxes*, commander of the Persian king's body-guard of six thousand.

**Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, δ**: *Artaxerxes*; in this book, Artaxerxes II, king of Persia in meant, the son of Darius and Parysatis, and brother of Cyrus. XIV.

**Ἀρταπάτης, ου, δ**: *Artapates*, a friend of Cyrus. XXXV.

**ἀρχαῖος, ᾶ, ον (ἀρχή)**: *primitive, of old, old, ancient*. τὸ ἀρχαῖον (adv. acc.): *of old, formerly*. XXVII.

**ἀρχή, ἡς, ἡ**: *beginning, rule, province, empire*. § 93. VI.

**ἄρχω** (cp. ἀρχή), ἄρξω, ἤρξα (§ 164), ἤρμαι, ἤρχθην: *begin, rule, command*, with gen.; MID. *begin*, with gen. or inf. VIII, XXXIV.

**ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ**: *ruler, commander*. Really the pres. masc. partic. of ἄρχω. §§ 195, 199, 200. XVIII.

**ἀσπίς, ἰδος, ἡ**: *shield*. See p. 97, Fig. 10. §§ 195, 196. XVIII.

**ἄστυ, εως, τό**: *town*. § 282. XXVII.

**ἀσφαλής, ἑς**: *secure, safe* (§ 275). ἐν ἀσφαλει: *in safety*. Comp. ἀσφαλέστερος, sup. ἀσφαλέστατος, § 351. d. XXVI, XXXV.

**ἀσφαλῶς, adv. (ἀσφαλής)**: *securely, safely*. Comp. ἀσφαλέστερον, sup. ἀσφαλέστατα, §§ 366, 368. XXXVII.

**ἄτε, adv. (neut. pl. of ὄσ-τε)**: *as, since*, accompanying causal partic.

**αὐτῆς**: see αὐτοῦ.

**αὐτός, ἡ, ὁ**, as intensive pron.: *self, very*; when preceded by article, *same*; in gen., dat., and acc., used

as pron. of third pers.: *him, her, it, them*. §§ 122, 123, 127, 307, 308. X.

**αὐτοῦ** (cp. αὐτός), adv.: *in the very place, here, there*. LIX.

**αὐτοῦ, ἡς, οὔ** (contracted from εἰ-ροῦ), reflexive pron. of third pers.: *of himself, herself, etc.* §§ 376. 3, 379. XXXVIII.

**ἀφ-αίρεομαι** (mid. of αἰρέω): *take away for oneself, deprive, rob somebody of something* (two accs.). LI.

**ἀφανής, ἑς**: *invisible, out of sight*. XXVI.

**ἀφ-έμι**: *let go away, dismiss*. LVII.

**ἀφ-ικ-νέ-ομαι** (theme ικ-; *ν*- appears only in pres. system), **ἀφ-ίζομαι, ἀφ-ικόμην, ἀφ-ιγμαι, dep. mid.**: *arrive, come*. LI.

**ἀ-φύλακτος, ον** (ἀ-priv. and φυλάττω), *unguarded; off one's guard*. § 476. IV.

**Ἀχαιός, οὔ, ὁ**: *an Achaean, inhabitant of Achaea*. XXVI.

## B

**Βαβυλών, ὄνος, ἡ**: *Babylon*. XXXII.

**βαθύς, εἰα, ὕ**: *deep*. XLVIII.

**βαίνω** (themes βα- or βη-, βαν-), **βήσομαι, ἔβην** (§ 553), **βέβηκα** (§ 432. a): *go*. See ἀνα-βαίνω, δια-βαίνω, etc.

**βάλλω** (for βαλ + γω, themes βαλ-, βλη-), **βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην**: *throw, hurl, pelt*. Often with acc. of pers. and dat. of means. LVII.

**βαρβαρικός, ἡ, ὄν** (βάρβαρος): *foreign, barbarian, not Greek*. τὸ βαρβαρικόν: *the barbarian force*. LVIII.

**βαρβαρικῶς**: *in a foreign tongue, in the Persian language*.

βάρβαρος, ου, ὁ: *foreigner, barbarian*. VIII.

βασιλειᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ (βασιλεύω): *kingdom*. LVI.

βασιλειος, ον (βασιλεύς): *of a king, royal*. τὰ βασιλεια (neut. pl. subst.): *the royal buildings, the palace*. XIX.

βασιλεύς, ἔως, ὁ, *king*. §§ 290, 292. XXVIII.

βασιλεύω (βασιλεύς), βασιλεύσω, ἐβασιλευσα: *be king, rule as king*. XIX.

βασιλικός, ἡ, ὄν (βασιλεύς, βασιλεις): *kinglike, fit to be king; royal*. XXXV.

βέλτιστος: *see ἀγαθός*.

βελτίων, ἰον: *see ἀγαθός*.

βιαίως, adv.: *with might, violently*.

βίος, ου, ὁ: *living, subsistence, livelihood*. Bio-logy (λόγος).

βλάπτω (theme βλαβ-), βλάψω, ἐβλαψα, βέβλαφα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάβηθην, 2 aor. pass. ἐβλάβην: *hurt, harm*. §§ 408, 414, 484, 487, 642. XLI.

βλέπω, βλέψομαι, ἐβλεψα: *look*. XXIX.

βοῶ, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα: *cry out, shout*.

βοή, ἡς, ἡ: *outcry, shouting*.

βοηθέω, βοηθήσω, ἐβοήθησα, βεβοήθηκα, βεβοήθημαι: *run to the rescue at an outcry, run to assist, assist*.

Βοιώτιος, ᾶ, ον: *Boeotian, an inhabitant of Boeotia*. XIV.

βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα, βεβούλευκα, βεβούλευμαι, ἐβουλεύθην: *plan, devise; the simple verb is commonly dep. mid. βουλεύομαι: take counsel with oneself, plan, deliberate*. Cp. ἐπι-βουλεύω and συμ-βουλεύω. XXXII.

βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι (with lengthened theme), βεβούλημαι, ἐβούλη-

θην (§ 389), dep. pass.: *wish*. XXX.

βοός, βοός, ὁ, ἡ: *ox, cow*. Cp. Lat. *bōs*. § 290. XXVIII.

βραδέως: *slowly*.

βραχύς, εἶα, ὅ: *short*. Comp. βραχύτερος, sup. βραχύτερος, § 351. c. βραχύτερα: *a shorter distance* (§ 460). XXXV.

## Γ

γάρ, postpositive conj.: *for, and in fact; sometimes why!* VIII.

γε, enclitic particle, regularly following the emphatic word: *certainly, surely, at least, etc.* LIV.

γείτων, ονος, ὁ: *neighbor*. § 220. XX.

γένος, ους, τό: *kinship, family, birth*. Lat. *genus, gēns*. XXXI.

γερρο-φόρος, ου, ὁ (γέρρον *wicker shield* and φέρω): *one who carries a wicker shield, wicker-shield bearer*.

γεύω, γεύσω, ἔγευσα, γέγευμαι: *give a taste of; MID. taste, with gen.*

γέφυρα, ᾶς, ἡ: *bridge*. § 140. XI.

γῆ, ἡς, ἡ: *earth, land*. § 594. L.

γίγνομαι (for γι-γεν-ο-μαι, reduplicated pres. from theme γεν-), γενήσομαι (theme γεν-η-), ἐγενόμην, γέγονα (§ 445), γεγένημαι (§ 456): *become, be born, be, get; happen, arise, take place, turn out*. XXXII.

γινώσκω (reduplicated pres. from theme γνο-, with pres. suffix σκ<sup>ε</sup>), γνώσομαι, ἔγνω, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην: *learn, know, judge, with ετι or partic. or inf. in indir. disc.* Cp. Lat. (*g*) *nōscō, īgnōtus*. §§ 573. b, 574, 575. LV.

γνώμη, ἡς, ἡ (γνώ-ναι): *opinion, judgment; plan, proposition; understanding*. XXIX.

γονεύς, ἔως, ὁ (γίγνομαι): *parent*.

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: *knee*. Lat. *genū*.

§ 336. 6. XXXIII.

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι (§ 465. a), ἔγράφην: *write*. §§ 409, 415. XXIV.

γυμνάζω (theme γυμναδ-), γυμνάσω, ἐγύμνασα, γεγύμναμαι, ἐγυμνάσθην: *exercise*. Cp. γυμνής. XLII.

γυμνής, ἦτος, ὁ: *light-armed warrior, javelin hurler, bowman, or slinger*. XXI.

Γυμνιάς, ἄδος, ἡ: *Gymnias, a city in Armenia*.

γυμνικός, ἡ, ὄν: *gymnastic, athletic*.

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: *woman, wife*.

§ 336. 1. XXXIII.

### Δ

δακρῶω, δακρῶσω, ἰδάκρῶσα: *weep*.

δάρικος, οὐ, ὁ: *daric, a Persian gold coin, worth about \$5.40*. XXII.

Δαρείος, ου, ὁ: *Darius*. The person indicated in this book is Darius II, king of Persia, father of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger. XVIII.

δασμός, ου, ὁ: *tribute, tax*. XXVII.

δασύς, εἰα, ὕ: *thickly grown, thickly wooded, with dat. (instrumental)*. Cp. Lat. *densus*. XXVIII.

δέ, postpositive conj.: *and, but, weaker than ἀλλά*. V.

δέδωκα, 2 pf. of μ-form, same in meaning as δέδοικα: *fear*; partic.

δεδιώς: *fearing* (§ 568).

δέδοικα, pf. with pres. meaning (from δεῖω): *fear*; 1 aor. ἴδωσα. Cp. δεῖνός. XLIV.

δέη, subjv. of δεῖ, impers. verb: *it is necessary*. XXIII.

δεῖ (contracted from δείει), fut. δεήσεται, aor. ἰδέησεται, impers. verb: *it is necessary*. §§ 223, 479. XX.

δεῖω (pres. not found in prose), aor.

ἴδωσα, 2 pf. δεῖω and (μ-form) δεῖω: *fear*; the pf. forms have pres. meaning. See δέδοικα.

δείκ-νύμι (and δεικ-νύω, theme δεικ-). δείξω, ἴδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαί, ἰδείχθην: *show, point out*. §§ 579, 580, 581, 619, 648. LIX.

δεικνύς, pres. act. partic. of δεικνύμι: *showing*. Declined in § 619.

δειλη, ης, ἡ: *afternoon, early or late*.

δεινός, ἡ, ὄν: *fearful, terrible, frightful; skillful*. τὸ δεινόν (subst.): *danger*. XLII.

δεκάς: see δεῖω.

δέκα, indecl.: *ten*. Lat. *decem*. XI.

δένδρον, ου, τό: *tree*. Dat. pl. δένδροις and δένδροισι (from nom. τὸ δένδρον). XXVIII.

δεξιός, ἄ, ὄν: *right, on the right hand or side*. δεξιὰ, ἄς, ἡ (supply χεῖρ): *the right hand, as a pledge*. τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέφατος: *the right (of the) wing*. Lat. *dexter*. LVIII.

δεῖοι, opt. of δεῖ: *it is necessary* (Vocab. XX). XXXVII.

δέομαι, δεήσομαι, δεδέημαι, ἰδεήθην (cp. § 389), dep. pass.: *want, need; desire, ask, beg*. Often with gen. or with gen. of pers. and inf. Cp. δεῖ. LIX.

δέρμα, ατος, τό: *hide, skin*. Dermatology, epi-dermis.

δεσπότης, ου, ὁ: *master*. Voc. δεσποτα. XLVIII.

δεύτερος, α, ὄν: *second*. (τὸ δεύτερον: *for the second time*).

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἰδέξομαι, δέδεγμαί, ἰδέχθην: *receive, accept*. XXXII.

δή: postpositive particle, emphasizing the preceding word. δή is difficult to render adequately, but is sometimes translated by *now, then, accordingly, very, in truth, indeed*. XXI.

δηλός, η, ον: *plain, clear, evident.*

See § 449 and *a.* XV.

δηλώ (δηλος), δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, ἐδηλώθη: *show, make evident.* §§ 529, 622. *a.*, 643. LVIII.

δηλών, pres. act. partic. of δηλώω: *showing.* Declined in § 622. *a.*

διά, prep.: with GEN. *through*; with ACC. *on account of, by means of.* XI.

διαβαίνω: *go across, cross.* XI.

διαβάλλω: *accuse falsely, slander.* LVIII.

διαβατέος, ᾶ, ον (verbal adj. of διαβαίνω, theme βα-): *necessary to be crossed.* § 477. I. XLVIII.

διαβατός, ῆ, ὄν (verbal adj. of διαβαίνω, theme βα-): *able to be crossed, fordable (of a river).* Cp. ἀδιάβατος. § 475. XLVIII.

διαβήσομαι: fut. of διαβαίνω (Vocab. XI). XXXII.

διαδίδωμι: *give from hand to hand, distribute.* LVIII.

διακόπτω: *cut through, cut in pieces, break through.* XLI.

διακόσιοι, αι, α: *two hundred.* § 421.

διαλέγομαι (cp. λέγω *say*), διαλέξομαι, irreg. pf. διέλεγμαi, διέλεχθην (§ 389), dep. pass.: *converse, with dat.* (§ 317). XXX.

διαλείπω: *leave an interval, be distant.*

διαπράττωμαι (cp. πράττω), διαπράξομαι, διεπραξάμην, διαπέρπαμαι: *carry through to the end, bring about, accomplish, effect (for oneself); manage that, with acc. and inf. or ὅπως clause* (§ 535. *a.*). XXXIV.

διαρπάζω: *tear in pieces, plunder utterly or thoroughly, sack.* XIV.

διασπείρω (σπείρω *sow*, σπερώ, ἔσπερα, ἔσπαρμαι, ἔσπαρην): *scatter*; MID. (of soldiers) *scatter.*

διδάσκω (theme διδαχ-), διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαι, ἐδιδάχθην: *teach.* LX.

διδούς, pres. act. partic. of δίδωμι: *giving.* Declined in § 621.

δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα and ἔδοτον. δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθη: *give, sometimes offer (in pres. and impf.). δίκην δίδοναι: give satisfaction, suffer punishment.* Cp. δῶρον. Lat. *dō, donum.* §§ 570, 571, 572, 621, 646. LVIII.

διείρω (είρω *shut out*, εἶρω, εἶρα, εἶρμαι, εἶρθη): *separate, shut off.*

διέρχομαι: *go through, travel, spread with λόγος (report) as subj.* See διήλθον.

διέχω: *be apart, be separated.* XVII.

διήλθον, 2 aor.: *I or they went through, traveled; spread with λόγος (word or report) as subject.* See διέρχομαι. XXIV.

Δί: see Ζεύς.

διίστημι: *set apart; intr. tenses, stand apart, open ranks.*

δικαίος, ᾶ, ον (δική): *just.* Comp. δικαιότερος, sup. δικαιοτάτος, § 351. *a.* XXV, XXXV.

δικαίως, adv. (δικαίος): *justly.* Comp. δικαιότερον, sup. δικαιοτάτα, §§ 366, 368. XXV, XXXVII.

δική, ης, ῆ: *justice, deserts.* δίκην ἐπιτιθέναι: *inflict punishment on somebody (dat.). δίκην δίδοναι: give satisfaction, suffer punishment* (§ 576). IX.

δισχίλιοι, αι, α: *two thousand.* § 421.

διωκτός, ᾶ, ον (verbal adj. of διώκω): *necessary to be pursued.* § 477. 2. XLVIII.

διώκω, διέξω or διώξομαι, ἐδίωξα, ἐδίωχα, δεδίωγμαi, ἐδιώχθην: *pursue.* XVII.

διώρυξ, υχος, ῆ: *trench, canal.* § 187. XVII.

δοκέω (theme δοκ-, but δοκε- in pres. system), δόξα, ἰδοξα, δίδογμαί, ἰδοχθην: *seem, be reputed; seem best; think.* § 512. LI.

δολιχος, ου, ὁ: *long foot-race*, from six to twenty-four times the length of the stadium. δολιχον θεῖν: *run the long race.*

δору, δόρατος, τό: *spear* of a Greek hoplite. See p. 152, Fig. 19. § 336. 5. XXXIII.

δουπέω, ἰδούπησα: *strike heavily, clash*, with dat. (of instrument) and πρὸς with acc.

Δρακόντιος, ου, ὁ: *Dracontius*, a soldier from Sparta.

δρεπανη-φόρος, ον: *scythe-bearing*, epithet of two-wheeled Asiatic chariots, which carried, for use on the battle field, scythes fixed to the axles and pointed obliquely downward. See p. 270, Fig. 25.

δρόμος, ου, ὁ (cp. ἔδραμον): a *run; race course* (§ 514). δρόμω: *on the run*. θεῖν δρόμω: *run with speed, run fast, charge on the run*. See p. 79, Fig. 6. XII.

δύνα-μαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἰδυνήθην (or ἡδυνήθην), dep. pass.: *be able*. Cp. δύναμις. LVI.

δύναμις, εως, ἡ: *force, strength*. XXVII. δυνατός, ἡ, ὄν (δύναμαι): *able, strong; possible*. Cp. § 333. XXXIV.

δύω: see δέω.

δύο, gen. and dat. δυοῖν, but generally used indeclinably: *two*. Lat. duo. § 423. XV.

δύω (and δύνω), δύνω, ἔδυσα (trans.), ἔδυν (intr.), δέδυκα, δέδυμαι, ἰδύθην: *enter, set* (used of the sun). §§ 580, 582, 648. LIX.

δώδεκα (δέω + δέκα), indecl.: *twelve*. XXXI.

δώρον, ου, τό: *gift*. Cp. Lat. donum. XLIII.

## E

ἐάν = εἰ + ἄν, conj. with subjv.: *if*. §§ 241, 399. XXII.

ἐαυτοῦ, ἡς, οὔ, reflexive pron. of third pers.: *of himself, herself, etc.* §§ 376. 3, 379. XXXVIII.

εἰώ, εἰσω, εἰάσα, εἰάκα, εἰάμαι, εἰάθην: *permit, allow, let*. The augment is irreg. §§ 515. a, 518. a. LII.

ἐγγύς, adv.: *near*, with gen. Comp. ἐγγύτερον or ἐγγυτέρω, sup. ἐγγύτατα or ἐγγυτάτω, § 369. 2. XXXVII.

ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ or μου: *I*. Lat. ego. §§ 304, 306, 308. XXIX.

ἔδαισα: see δέδοικα.

ἔδραμον: see τρέχω. XI.

ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω (with lengthened theme), ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα: *wish, desire*. VI.

ἔθνος, ους, τό: *nation, tribe*. Ethnology.

εἰ, proclitic conj.: *if*. εἰ μή: *if not, except* (§ 557). εἰ τι: *whatsoever* (§ 232). §§ 106, 242, 267, 416, 545. After an interr. verb or equivalent: *whether*, introducing an indirect question. §§ 343. a, 363. VII, XXXIV.

εἰ γάρ: *used in wishes*; see §§ 584, 585.

εἶδον, 2 aor.: *I or they saw*. Subjv. ἴδω, opt. ἴδομαι, imv. ἴδέ (§ 301. a), inf. ἴδειν, partic. ἰδόν. See ὄραμ. XIX.

εἶδά, εἶδάς: see οἶδα.

εἶθε: *used in wishes*; see §§ 584, 585. εἴκοσι(v), indecl.: *twenty*. XXVI.

εἰληφα: see λαμβάνω.

εἰλόμην, 2 aor. mid. of εἶλον: *I took for myself, I chose*. Subjv. ἐλωμαι, opt. ἐλοίμην, imv. ἐλοθ, inf. ἐλῶσθαι, partic. ἐλόμενος. See αἶψα. XXXII.



ἔλον, 2 aor.: *I or they took, seized.*  
Subjv. ἔλω, opt. ἔλοιμι, inv. ἔλε,  
inf. ἔλειν, partic. ἔλόν. See αἰρέω.  
XXVI.

εἶμι, impf. ἦα: *go, shall go*; pres.  
serving as fut. of ἔρχομαι. § 651.  
LX.

εἶμι, impf. ἦ or ἦν, fut. ἔσομαι: *am,*  
*be.* §§ 101, 102, etc., 650. VII.  
εἶναι: see εἶμι. VII.

εἶπον, 2 aor.: *I or they said.* Subjv.  
εἶπω, opt. εἶποιμι, inv. εἶπέ (§ 301. a),  
inf. εἶπειν, partic. εἶπόν. With ὅτι  
*that* and finite verb, § 262. In the  
sense of *commanded, proposed, urged,*  
εἶπον is followed by the inf.; cp. § 98.  
XXIV, XXXII.

εἶρηκα, pf.: *I have said, I have men-*  
*tioned.* § 448. Supplies missing  
pf. act. of λέγω say. XLV.

εἰρήνη, ης, ἡ: *peace.* LVIII.

εἷς, μίας, ἓν, gen. ἑνός, μιᾶς, ἑνός: *one.*  
§ 422. XLIII.

εἰς, proclitic prep. with acc. only: *into,*  
*to; for*; with numerals, *to the num-*  
*ber of, about* (§ 219). εἰς τὴν ἑσπέ-

ρᾶν: *into the evening, at evening.* V.

εἰσ-άγω: *lead in.* XXXV.

εἰσ-ελαύνω: *drive in, ride or march*

*in, with εἰς and acc.* XXXVIII.  
εἰσ-ἦλθον, 2 aor. of εἰσ-έρχομαι: *I or*

*they came in, entered.* XXI.

εἴσω, adv.: *within, with gen.* XLVI.

εἶτα, adv.: *then, thereupon.* X.

εἶχον (§ 80): see ἔχω.

ἐκ, before a vowel ἐξ, proclitic prep.

with gen. only: *out from, from.* V.

ἕκαστος, η, ον: *each*; used in predi-  
cate position to modify a noun with  
the article; used also without the  
article. XXII.

ἕκαστερος, α, ον: *each.*

ἐκατέρωθεν: *from both sides, on both*  
*sides.*

ἐκατέρωστε: *in both directions.*

ἑκατόν, indecl.: *hundred.* XV.

ἐκ-βάσις, εως, ἡ (ἐκ-βαίνω): *passage*  
*out, mountain pass.* L.

ἐκεῖ, adv.: *there.*

ἐκεῖνος, η, ο: *that, that one, that man;*  
*he, him, etc.* §§ 174, 175. a, 176,  
307. XV.

ἐκκλησιᾶ, ας, ἡ (ἐκ-καλέω *summon*  
*forth*): *assembly.* XXXVIII.

ἐκ-κλίνω (κλίνω *bend*, κλινῶ, ἐκλινα,  
κέκλιμαι, ἐκλιθην and ἐκλινην):  
*bend out of line, turn in flight.*

ἐκ-λείπω: *leave out, abandon*; (intr.)  
*leave off, fail.* LVIII.

ἐκ-πλέω: *sail forth, sail off.*

ἐκ-πλήττω (πλήττω, theme πληγ-  
or πλαγ-, *strike*, πλήξω, ἔπληξα,  
πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην, but  
in comp. -πλάγην): *strike out of*  
*one's wits, terrify utterly, bewilder.*  
§ 466. a. XLI.

ἐλαύνω (theme ἐλα-; the pres. is for  
ἐλα-νυ-ω), ἐλώ (§ 544. a), ἤλασα  
(§ 165), ἐήλακα (§ 447), ἐήλα-  
μαι, ἤλαθην: *drive, ride, march.*  
XV.

ἐλάχιστος: see ὀλίγος.

ἐλεείζω, ἠλεείξα (ἐλεεῦ a war cry):  
*shout ἐλεεῦ, raise the war cry, cry*  
*out.*

ἐήλακα: see ἐλαύνω.

ἐήλυθα: see ἔρχομαι.

ἐθέ: inv. of ἦλθον (έρχομαι), § 301. a.

ἔθω: subjv. of ἦλθον (έρχομαι).  
XXII.

Ἑλλάς, ἄδος, ἡ: *Hellas, the name*  
*given by the Hellēnes to their own*  
*country. From the Romans they re-*  
*ceived the appellation Greeks (Lat.*  
*Graeci), and their land was called*  
*Greece (Lat. Graecia). XVIII.*

Ἑλληγ, ηνος, ὅ: *a Greek.* XX.

Ἑλληνικός, ἡ, ὄν (Ἑλλην): *Hellenic,*  
*Greek. τὸ Ἑλληνικόν (neut. subst.):*  
*the Greek force.* XXVII, XXXIX.

- Ἑλληνικῶς, adv.: in the Greek tongue, *in Greek*.
- Ἑλληνίς, (ἰδος (Ἑλλην), fem. adj.: *Greek*.
- ἐμᾶντοῦ, ἤ, reflexive pron. of first pers.: *of myself*, etc. §§ 376. 1, 379. XXXVIII.
- ἐμ-βάλλω: *attack*.
- ἐμός, ἡ, ὄν (cp. ἐμοῦ, gen. of ἐγώ): *my, mine*. § 126. X.
- ἐμ-προσθεν, adv. (ἐν + πρόσθεν): *in front, before*, sometimes with gen. XLVII.
- ἐν, proclitic prep. with dat. only: *in; among*. II.
- ἐνδέκατος, ἡ, ον (ἐν-δεκα *eleven*): *eleventh*.
- ἐνδον, adv.: *within*. οἱ ἐνδον: *those within*. XLI.
- ἐν-δύω: *put on*. § 588.
- ἐνεκα, prep. with gen. only: *for the sake of*. Usually after its noun.
- ἐνθα, rel. adv.: *where; dem.: there; of time*, ἐνθα δὴ: *then indeed*. XLIV.
- ἐνθα-περ (strengthened ἐνθα): *just where, where; the word very may be used with the antecedent to translate -περ*.
- ἐνθεν, rel. adv.: *whence, from which, where*. XXIV.
- ἐνιοι, αἱ, α (from ἐνι [*i.e.* ἐν-εσσι] + οἱ): *some*. XLV.
- ἐν-νοῶ: *have in mind*.
- ἐνταῦθα, adv.: *there, thither*. VI.
- ἐντεῦθεν, adv.: *thence; of time, then*. XI.
- ἐν-τυγχάνω: *chance upon, happen upon, come upon by chance, encounter*, with dat. XLVII.
- Ἐνυάλιος, οὐ, ὄ: *Enyalios, a name of Ares, the Greek god of war*.
- ἕξ: indecl.: *six*. Lat. *sex*. § 421.
- ἕξ: see ἕκ.
- ἕξ-άγω: *lead out, induce* (§ 394). X.
- ἕκαστο-χίλιοι, αἱ, α: *six thousand*. § 421.
- ἕκαστοιοι, αἱ, α (ἕξ): *six hundred*. § 421.
- ἕξ-απατάω (ἀπατάω *deceive*, ἀπατήσω, ἠπάτησα, ἠπάτηκα, ἠπάτημαι, ἠπατήθη): *utterly deceive, cheat*. LIV.
- ἕξαπίνης, adv.: *suddenly*.
- ἕξ-εμι (εἶμι): *go out, go forth*. LX.
- ἕξ-ελαύνω: *drive out; march out or forth*. XI.
- ἕξ-έρχομαι, fut. ἕξ-εμι (εἶμι), 2 aor. ἕξ-ἦλθον, 2 pf. ἕξ-ελήλυθα: *go forth*. Cp. XXV.
- ἕξ-εστι(ν), 3 sing. of ἕξ-εμι (εἶμι): *it is possible or permitted* (§ 223).
- ἕξ-όν: *it being possible* (§ 566). XX.
- ἕξ-ήκοντα (ἕξ), indecl.: *sixty*. § 421.
- ἕξ-ἦλθον, 2 aor.: *I or they went forth*. XXV.
- ἕξ-ήχθη: see ἕξ-άγω.
- ἕξ-ικνέομαι (cp. ἀφ-ικνέομαι): *reach, reach the mark*.
- ἕξ-όν: see ἕξ-εστι(ν).
- ἕξ-οπλιζω: *arm fully; MID. fully arm oneself*.
- ἕξω, adv.: *without, outside*, sometimes with gen. οἱ ἕξω: *those without*. XLI.
- ἕξω: see ἕχω.
- ἐπᾶν (ἐπεῖ + ἄν), conj. with subjv.: *when* (§ 248. 2. a); *whenever* (§ 400).
- ἐπεῖ, temporal conj.: *when, after* (§ 167); *whenever* (§ 417); causal conj.: *since* (§ 310). XIV, XXIX.
- ἐπειδάν (ἐπειδή + ἄν), conj. with subjv.: *when, after* (§ 248. 2. a); *whenever* (§ 400). ἐπειδάν τάχιστα: *as soon as* (§ 533). XXIII.
- ἐπειδή (ἐπεῖ and δὴ), temporal conj.: *when, after* (§ 167); causal conj.: *since* (§ 310). ἐπειδή τάχιστα: *as soon as*. XIV.

ἔπι-εἰμι (εἰμι): *go or come on, approach.*

LX.

ἐπεὶ-περ (strengthened ἐπεὶ), causal

conj.: *since indeed* (§ 310). XXIX.

ἔπειτα, adv.: *thereupon, then, next.*

XXXVI.

ἐπὶν (ἐπεὶ + ἐν), conj. with subjv.:

*when* (§ 248. 2. a); *whenever*

(§ 400).

ἐπὶ, prep.: with GEN. *on, in the time*

*of*; with DAT. *on, upon, at, in the*

*power of, for*; with ACC. *against*

*(often with idea of hostility), to,*

*upon*; *after, i.e. to get* (§§ 405,

451). ἐπὶ τούτοις: *upon this,*

*thereupon* (§ 347). ἐπὶ πολὺ: *for*

*a long distance* (§ 557). VIII.

ἐπι-βουλεύω: *plot against*, with dat.

X.

ἐπι-βουλή, ἡς, ἡ: *plot (against).* Cp.

ἐπι-βουλεύω. XXXVIII.

ἐπι-δεικνύμι: *show, point out*; MID. in

sense of act., and also *distinguish*

*oneself.* LIX.

ἐπι-θυμέω, ἐπι-θυμήσω, ἐπ-εθύμησα:

*have one's heart set on, yearn, de-*

*sire*, with inf. or gen. LII.

ἐπι-κάμπτω (κάμπτω *bend*, κάμψω,

έκαμψα, κάκαμμαι, έκάμφθην): *bend*

*to, wheel.*

ἐπι-κειμαι: *lie upon, attack*, with dat.

LIX.

ἐπι-μελέομαι, ἐπι-μελήσομαι, ἐπι-

μεμέλημαι, ἐπ-εμελήθην, dep. pass.:

*take care of, care for*, with gen. or

object clause; *give heed, observe,*

*watch to see.* LIV.

ἐπι-ιόντες: see ἔπι-εἰμι (εἰμι).

ἐπι-σῖτιζομαι (theme σῖτιδ-), -σῖτιοθ-

μαι, -εσῖτισάμην: *get provisions for*

*oneself.* Cp. σῖτος. LV.

ἐπι-σταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, ἐπιστήθην:

*understand.* LVI.

ἐπι-στήσας: see ἐφ-ίστημι.

ἐπιστολή, ἡς, ἡ: *letter.* VIII.

ἐπι-τάττω: *enjoin something (acc.)*

*on somebody (dat.), direct, com-*

*mand.* XLVII.

ἐπιτήδειος, ἄ, ον: *suitable, necessary.*

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια (neut. pl. subst.):

*provisions, supplies.* XIII.

ἐπι-τίθημι: *put or place upon*; *put or*

*inflict punishment (δίκην) on some-*

*body (τινί); MID. set oneself upon,*

*attack*, with dat. LVII.

ἐπι-τυγχάνω: *chance upon, happen*

*upon, find*, with dat. XXXV.

ἔπομαι (for σέπομαι), ἔψομαι, 2 aor.

ἔσπόμην, impf. with irreg. augment

εἰπόμην: *follow*, with dat. (§ 317).

Cp. Lat. *sequor.* XLII.

ἐπριάμην, 2 aor.: *I bought.* No pres.

from this verb. §§ 550, 646.

LVI.

ἑπτά, indecl.: *seven.* Lat. *septem.*

§ 421.

ἔργον, ου, τό: *work, deed, under-*

*taking.* § 49. II.

ἔρημος, η, ον, or ἔρημος, ον: *deserted.*

σταθμοὶ ἔρημοι: *marches through*

*the desert.* LIII.

ἑρμηνεύς, ἑως, ὁ: *interpreter.* XXX.

ἔρυμα, ατος, τό: *defense, protection.*

ἔρχομαι, fut. supplied by εἰμι (§ 651),

2 aor. ἤλθον (Vocab. XVIII), 2 pf.

ἔλθυσθα (§ 447): *come, go.* For

the simple ἐλήλυθα, ἦκω is com-

monly used. XXX.

ἑρωτάω, ἑρωτήσω, ἑρώτησα, ἑρώτηκα.

ἑρώτημαι, ἑρωτήθην: *ask a ques-*

*tion, inquire.* Cp. ἑρόμην (§ 346),

which is often used for ἑρώτησα.

LII.

ἔσθαι: see ἔσομαι, fut. of εἰμι.

ἔσομαι: see εἰμι.

ἑσπέρας, ἄς, ἡ: *evening.* Lat. *vesper.*

ἔστε, temporal conj.: *while, so long as,*

*until.* §§ 521, 522. LII.

ἔστι(ν): *it is possible.* See εἰμι.

§ 102. VII.

ἴστω: 3 sing. inv. of ἐλάμ.  
 ἴστως, pf. act. partic. of ἴσστημι: *standing*. Declined in § 624.  
 ἴσχατος, η, ον: *last, extreme*. § 361. a. XXXVI.  
 ἴσχον (§ 88): see ἔχω.  
 ἑταῖρος, ου, ὁ: *companion*.  
 ἕτερος, ἄ, ον: *the other*; pl. subst. *others*. Hetero-dox (δόξα *opinion*).  
 ἔτι, adv.: *still, yet, besides, longer, again*. XX.  
 ἔτοιμος, η, ον, or ἑτοιμος, ον: *ready, prepared*. XXXVIII.  
 εὖ (adv. of ἀγαθός): *well*. Comp. ἄμεινον, etc., sup. ἄριστα, etc., § 369. 3. εὖ πάσχειν: *be treated kindly* (§ 537). XXXVII.  
 εὖ-δαίμων, ον (δαίμων *divinity*): *having a good divinity, fortunate, prosperous*. § 222. Comp. εὐδαιμονώστερος, sup. εὐδαιμονότατος, § 351. e. XX.  
 εὖ-δηλος, ον: *perfectly clear, very clear*.  
 εὐθύς, adv.: *straightway, at once*. XIII.  
 εὖ-νους, ουν: *well disposed*. §§ 499, 610. L.  
 εὖ-ξενος, ον (ξενος *stranger*): *hospitable*. ὁ Εὐξείνος Πόντος: *the Euxine or Black Sea*.  
 εὐρίσκω, εὐρήσω, ηῦρον, ηῦρηκα, ηῦρημαι, ηῦρήθη: *find*. For 2 aor. act. inv. εὐρέ see § 301. a. XLIV.  
 εὖρος, ους, τό: *breadth, width*. XXVI.  
 Εὐφράτης, ου, ὁ: *Euphrātes*, a great river in western Asia. XV.  
 εὐχομαι, εὐξομαι, εὐξάμην or ηῦξάμην, εὐγμαι or ηῦγμαι: *pray, vow*.  
 εὖ-ώνυμος, ον (εὖ and ὄνομα): *of good name or omen; left as opposed to right*. The Greeks avoided the use of the regular word for *left*, ἀριστερός, because in their regard the left

was the side of evil omens; and they regularly referred to the left by the euphemistic word εὐώνυμος: ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐώνυμου and ἐπὶ τῷ εὐώνυμῳ: *on the left wing*.

ἔφασαν: *they said*; see φημί. VIII.

ἔφη: *he said*; see φημί. VIII.

ἐφ-ίστημι: *halt, rein in one's horse*.

ἐφοδος, ου, ἡ (ἐπί + ὁδός): *way to, approach*. XLI.

ἐχθρός, ἄ, ὄν: *hostile*. ἐχθρός (subst.), οὐ, ὁ: *personal enemy*. To be distinguished from πολέμιος and οἱ πολέμιοι *the enemy in war*. Comp. ἐχθῶν, sup. ἐχθιστος, § 352. b. XXXI.

ἔχω, ἔξω (§ 153) or στήσω (§ 154), ἔσχω (§ 88), ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, impf. εἶχον (§ 80): *have, hold, occupy; restrain* (§ 335); *consider* (§ 365); *be able*, with inf.; MID. *be next, come next*, with gen. ἀλλῶμος ἔχειν: *be discouraged*; ἄλλως ἔχειν: *be otherwise*; κακῶς ἔχειν: *be bad*; καλῶς ἔχειν: *be good, be well*; οὕτως ἔχειν: *be thus or so* (§ 536); ἔχων: *with* (§ 213. b). § 487. I.

ἕως, temporal conj.: *while, so long as, until*. §§ 521, 522. LII.

## Z

ζῶω, ζήσω: *live*. In contract forms ζῶω has η for α (§ 517). LII.

Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ: *Zeus*, the most exalted of the gods, and honored by all Greeks. For declension see § 606. 2.

## H

ἢ, conj.: *or; than* (after comparative idea); ἢ . . . ἢ: *either . . . or*. XXVIII.

ἡ, fem. art., proclitic in nom. sing. and nom. pl. αἱ (§ 20): *the*; see δ.  
 ἡ δέ: *and she, but she*, indicating a change of subject from the preceding sentence. ἡ may mean *she*, but only with μὲν and δέ. §§ 93, 632. VI.

ἡ, fem. rel. pron.: *who, which*; see δα.

ἡγαγον (§ 87): see ἄγω.

ἡγεμόσυνα, ὤν, τὰ (ἡγεμόν), adj. with λέρα understood: *thank-offerings for good guidance*.

ἡγεμῶν, ὄνος, ὁ (ἡγεύομαι): *leader, guide, commander*. § 220. XX.

ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην, ἡγημαι, dep. mid.: *lead, guide*, with gen. or dat.; *think, believe*. LI.

ἡγον (§ 82): see ἄγω.

ἡδέως, adv. (ἡδύς): *gladly*. Comp. ἡδίον, sup. ἡδίστα, §§ 366, 368. XXXVII.

ἡδη, adv.: *now, already, straightway*. XXXIII.

ἡδομαι (theme ἡδ-): *be pleased*; ἡσθησομαι (fut. pass.): *shall be pleased*; ἡσθην (aor. pass.): *was pleased*; with supplementary partic. (§ 439) or dat. of cause (§ 403). Cp. ἡδύς. XLIV.

ἡδύς, εἶα, ὕ: *sweet*. § 288. Comp. ἡδέων (§ 354), sup. ἡδίστος (§ 352. a). Cp. Lat. *suavis*. XXVIII.

ἡκίστα, adv. (sup. of κακός, ἥττων): *least of all, by no means* (§ 360. 2). XXXVI.

ἦκω, ἦξω: *come, have come*; pres. with pf. meaning. X.

ἦλθον, 2 aor. of ἔρχομαι: *I or they came or went*. XVIII.

ἥλιος, οὐ, ὁ: *sun*. LIX.

ἡμεῖς, ἡμῶν: *we*; see ἐγώ I (§ 304).

ἡμελημένως, adv.: *carelessly*.

ἡμέρα, αἷ, ἡ: *day*. XIII.

ἡμέτερος, αἷ, ὄν (ἡμεῖς): *our, ours*. § 126. X.

ἡμιον, εἶα, υ: *half*. τὸ ἡμιον (with στρατεύματος): *the half*. ἡμιον takes the gender and the number of its part. gen. Cp. Lat. *semi-*, Eng. *hemi-*. XXVIII.

ἦν (εἰ + ἄν) = ἔάν: *if*, conj. with subjv. §§ 241, 399. XXII.

ἦν, 3 sing. impf. of εἶμι: *he (she or it) was; it was possible*. III, VII.

ἦνκα, temporal conj.: *when*.

ἦνι-οχος, οὐ, ὁ (ἦνία reins and ἔχω): *one who holds the reins, charioteer*. Ἡρακλῆς, εἶος, ὁ: *Heracles, son of Zeus and Alcmena; famed for his deeds of might. He was invoked as a guide of travelers*. § 603.

ἦρόμην, 2 aor.: *I asked (a question) or inquired*; subjv. ἔρωμαι, opt. ἐροίμην, imv. ἐροῦ, inf. ἐρίσθαι, partic. ἐρόμενος. The pres. and other tenses are supplied by ἐρωτάω, which see. XXXIV.

ἦσαν, 3 pl. impf. of εἶμι: *they were*. III.

ἡττώομαι (ἡττων), ἡττήσομαι, ἡττήμαι, ἡττήθην: *be inferior, be conquered*; used as pass. of νικάω. LIV.

ἦττων: comp. of κακός. § 360. 2.

## Θ

θ': see τε.

θάλαττα, ης, ἡ: *sea*. § 140. XI.

θαυμάζω (theme θαυμαδ-), θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, τεθαύμακα, ἐθαυμάσθην: *wonder, be surprised; wonder at, admire*, with acc. XIV.

θαυμαστός, ἡ, ὄν (verbal adj. of θαυμάζω): *admirable, wonderful, strange*. XLVIII.

θεῖα, αἷ, ἡ: *sight, spectacle*.



## Κ

καθ-έβω, καθευδήσω, impf. ἐκάθεινον  
and καθυθόν: *sleep*.

καθ-ήκω: *come down, reach down, ex-  
tend*. XXVI.

κάθ-ημαι: *sit*; pres. partic. καθήμενος:  
*seated*. § 653.

καθ-ίστημι: *set or place down, station*;  
intr. tenses: *be placed, stationed, or  
established; station oneself, take one's  
place*. For intr. tenses cp. ἵστημι,  
§ 555. LVI.

καθ-οράω: *look down on, descry, ob-  
serve*. Cp. 2 aor. κατ-εἶδον.

καί, conj.: *and, also, even*. καί . . .  
καί: *both . . . and*. καί . . . δέ:  
*and also, 'also' being represented  
by καί. καί γάρ: and in fact; or  
for also, for even; and sometimes may  
be rendered yes, for*. III, XV.

καιρός, οὔ, ὅ: *the right measure, right  
time, right place; proper time;  
opportunity, crisis*. XLIV.

καίω: see κίω.

κακίων: comp. of κακός (§ 360. 2).

κακός, ή, ὄν: *bad, cowardly*. Comp.  
κακίων, χείρων, ἥττων; sup. κάκι-  
στος, χείριστος, ἥκιστα (adv.);  
§ 360. 2. VI, XXXVI.

κακῶς, adv. (κακός): *badly, ill*. Comp.  
κάκιον, etc., *worse*, sup. κάκιστα,  
etc., § 368. Cp. the adj. κακός,  
§ 360. 2. κακῶς ἔχειν: see ἔχω.  
κακῶς ποιεῖν: see ποίω. XXXVII.

καλέω, καλώ (fut. for καλέσω, § 544),  
ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλή-  
θην: *call, summon, invite; call,  
name*. LV.

καλός, ή, ὄν: *beautiful, handsome,  
noble, honorable* (§ 232. I. 14), *fair,  
favorable*. . . Comp. καλλίων, sup.  
κάλλιστος, § 360. 3. VI, XXXVI.

καλῶς, adv. (καλός): *beautifully,  
nobly, honorably*. Comp. κάλ-

λίον, sup. κάλλιστα (§ 368) *most  
successfully* (§ 394). καλῶς ἔχειν:  
see ἔχω. XXII, XXXVII.

κάμ-νω (theme καμ-), καμοῦμαι, ἑκα-  
μον (2 aor.), κέκμηκα: *labor, be  
weary*. LX.

καῖν: by crasis (§ 30) for καί ἔν  
(= καί ἔν).

Καρδοῦχοι, ὄν, οἱ: the *Carduchi*,  
a mountain people on the left bank  
of the Tigris. XXIV.

κατά, prep.: with GEN. *down from*;  
with ACC. *down over, down along,  
along, opposite, against*, by in a local  
sense; *according to, by* in a distribu-  
tive sense, as κατά μήνα: *by the  
month, monthly*; κατά ἔθνη: *by  
nations, nation by nation*. κατά  
θάλατταν: *by sea*. κατά μέσον:  
*along or opposite the middle, at the  
middle*. κατά τὸ στήρνον: *on the  
breast*. τὸ καθ' αὐτοῦς: *the division  
opposite themselves*. κατά κράτος:  
*with might and main*. XX.

κατα-βαίνω: *go down, descend; enter  
games*. Cp. ἀνα-βαίνω. XXXIV.  
κατά-βασις, εως, ή (κατα-βαίνω): *de-  
scend, way down a mountain side;  
the descent from the interior to the  
sea*. XLVII.

κατ-άγω: *lead down; bring a ship  
(especially a captured one) into  
harbor; restore exiles*. XLII.

κατα-θεόμαι: *gaze down, survey*.

κατα-καίνω (καίνω *kill, κανῶ, ἕκανον,  
κέκονα*): *kill*.

κατά-κειμαι: *lie down*. LIX.

κατα-κλείω: *shut up, confine, inclose*.  
XLVI.

κατα-κόπτω: *cut down*. XLI.

κατα-λαμβάνω: *seize, occupy, overtake,  
come upon, find*, with acc. XXXII.

κατα-λείπω: *leave behind, leave, aban-  
don*. XXVI.

κατα-λείμενοι: see κατα-λείπω.

κατα-λύω: *unloose; unyoke, halt* (intr.).

κατα-πέμπω: *send down*, especially to the sea. XXXIX.

κατα-πηδάω (πηδάω *leap*, πηδήσομαι, ἐπήδησα, πεπήδηκα): *jump down*.

κατα-πίπτω (πίπτω *fall*, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπιπον, πέπτωκα): *fall down*.

κατα-φανής, ἐς (φαίνω): *in sight, visible*.

κατ-εἶδον, 2 aor.: *I or they looked down on, described, observed*. Cp. καθ-οράω. XXIV.

κάω or καίω, κάσσω, ἔκαυσα, ἐκάυκα, ἐκάυμαι, ἐκαύθην: *burn, light, kindle*. XXI.

καίμαι, κείσομαι: *lie; lie outstretched*, as the dead on the battlefield. This verb is used as the pass. of the pf. tenses of τίθημι, in the meaning *be placed, be set*. With τὰ ὄπλα κείται cp. the act. θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα. § 654.

LIX.

Κελαίνα, ἄν, αἰ: *Celaenae*, a city in Phrygia. XXXIII.

κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκλευκα, κεκλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην (σ is irregularly inserted in the last two parts): *command, bid, order*. VI.

κενός, ἡ, ὄν: *empty; vain, groundless*. XXV.

κέρας, κέραιος or κέρως, τό: *horn; wing* of an army. See § 602 for declension.

κερδαλιός, ἄ, ὄν (κέρδος): *profitable*. Comp. κερδαλιώτερος.

κέρδος, οὐς, τό: *gain, profit, pay*.

κεφαλή, ἡς, ἡ: *head*. Cp. I.at. *caput*. LVI.

κήρυξ, ὄκος, ὁ: *herald*. § 187. XVII.

Κιλικία, ας, ἡ: *Cilicia*. XI.

Κιλιξίος, ὁ: *Cilician*, a native of Cilicia. XLI.

Κιλιξία, ἡς, ἡ: *Cilician woman*. XI.

κινδυνεύω, κινδυνεύσω, ἐκινδυνεύσω, κεικινδυνεύκα, κεικινδυνεύμαι, ἐκινδυνεύθην: *incur danger, run a risk*. XIX.

κινδύνος, οὐ, ὁ: *danger*. κινδύνος ἔστι(ν): *there is danger*. Cp. κινδυνεύω. XL.

Κλέαρχος, οὐ, ὁ: *Clearchus*, a Lacedaemonian general in the service of Cyrus. V.

κλείω, κλείσω, ἔκλεισα, ἐκλείκα, ἐκλείμαι, ἐκλείσθην (σ is irregularly inserted): *shut*. XLVI.

κλέπτω (themes κλεπ-, κλαπ-, κλοπ-), κλέψω, ἔκλεψα, ἐκκλοφα, ἐκκλεμμαί, ἐκλάπην: *steal*. Cp. κλώψ. XVIII.

κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ: *thief*. § 187. XVII. κνημίς, ἴδος, ἡ: *greave*. See p. 101, Fig. 11. XVIII.

κοινός, ἡ, ὄν: *common, in common, general*. LIX.

κολάξω (theme κολαδ-), κολάσω, ἐκόλασα, ἐκόλασμαι, ἐκόλασθην: *chastise, punish*. XXXVII.

κολωνός, οὐ, ὁ: *hill, mound* of stones. Cp. Lat. *culmen, collis*.

κονιορτός, οὐ, ὁ (κόνης *dust*, and δονῆμα *rouse*): *a rising of dust*.

κόπτω (theme κοπ-), κόψω, ἔκοψα, ἐκόφα, ἐκομμαί, ἐκόπην: *cut*. §§ 409, 473. XLI.

κράνος, οὐς, τό: *helmet*. See p. 156, Fig. 20. Cranium.

κράτηρ, ἡρος, ὁ: *mixing bowl*. Lat. *crātera*. See p. 109, Fig. 12. § 220. XX.

κράτιστος, ἡ, ὄν: *best; sup. of ἀγαθός*.

κράτος, οὐς, τό: *strength, might; ἀνὰ κράτος*: to the limit of strength, *at full speed*; κατὰ κράτος: *with might and main*. XLIV.

κραυγή, ἡς, ἡ: *outcry*. LX.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ: *Cretan*, a native of Crete. XLVI.



κρίνω (for κρίνω + γω, theme κρίν-), κρίνω, κρίνω, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην: *separate, judge, decide*. Cr. Lat. *cernō*. LV.

κτάομαι, κτήσομαι, ἐκτησάμην, κέκτημαι, ἐκτήθην: *acquire*; in pf. *possess, gain*.

κύκλος, ου, ὁ: *circle*; κύκλω: *in a circle, around*. Cycle.

κυκλώω, κυκλώσω, ἐκύκλωσα, ἐκύκλωμαι, ἐκυκλώθην: *encircle, surround*.

κύκλωσις, εως, ἡ (κυκλώω): *an encircling, flank march*.

Κύρος, ου, ὁ: *Cyrus*. The person indicated by the name in this book is *Cyrus the Younger*, son of Darius and Parysatis. IV.

κωλύω, κωλύσω, ἐκώλυσα, ἐκώλυκα, ἐκώλυμαι, ἐκωλύθην: *hinder*. § 206. VII.

κωλύων, pres. act. partic. of κωλύω: *hindering*. Declined in § 206.

κωμ-άρχης, ου, ὁ (κώμη and ἄρχω): *ruler or head man of a village, village chief*. XLVI.

κώμη, ης, ἡ: *village*. § 96. VI.

## Δ

λαβῆ: 2 aor. act. impv. of λαμβάνω. § 301. a.

λάβω: see λαμβάνω.

λάβρα, adv.: *secretly*; with gen.: *without the knowledge of*. XXVIII.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, α, ον (Λακεδαίμων): *Lacedaemonian, Spartan*. XVIII.

Λακεδαίμων, ονος, ἡ: *Lacedaemon or Lacedaemonia*. XXVII.

λαμβάνω (themes λαβ-, ληβ-, § 218), λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, ἐλήφα (§ 448), ἐλήμμαι (§ 465. a), ἐλήφθην (§ 387. 1): *take, receive, enlist* (soldiers, § 324); λαβόν: *with* (§ 213. δ). § 487. V.

λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ: *splendor, brilliancy*. XIX.

λανθάνω (themes λαθ-, ληθ-, cp. § 218), λήσω, ἔλαθον, ἐλήθα, ἐλήσομαι: *lie hid, escape notice of*; with supplementary partic. in const. like τυγχάνω (§ 215); thus ἔλαθεν ἐλθάν: *he went secretly, lit. he escaped notice going*. XLIV.

λέγω, λέξω, εἶξα, pf. act. supplied by εἶρηκα, ἐλέγμαι (but δι-ε-λέγμαι), ἐλέχθην: *say*, followed by εἶ or ὡς *that* and a finite verb (§§ 260, 261). In pass. followed by inf., § 391. XXIV.

λείπω (themes λειπ-, λοιπ-, λιπ-), λείψω (§ 153), ἔλιπον (§ 85), ἔλοιπα (§ 445), ἐλείμμαι (§§ 462. 1, 465), ἐλείφθην (§ 387. 1): *leave*. §§ 85, etc., 483, 487, 641. I.

λευκός, pf. act. partic. of λῦω: *loosing loosed*. Declined in § 435.

λευκο-θώραξ, ἄκος, ὁ, adj.: *with white corslet*.

λευκός, ἡ, ὄν: *white*.

λήψομαι (theme ληβ-): fut. of λαμβάνω (Vocab. V). XXXII.

λίθος, ου, ὁ: *stone*. LVII.

λιμὴν, ἔνος, ὁ: *harbor*. § 220. XX.

λιπόν, 2 aor. act. partic. of λείπω: *having left*. Declined in § 208.

λόγος, ου, ὁ: *word, speech, report* (§ 263), *account* (§ 533). VIII.

λόγχη, ης, ἡ: *spear point, spear*. See p. 30, Fig. 2; p. 256, Fig. 23. LVIII.

λοιπός, ἡ, ὄν (λείπ-ω): *left, rest of, remaining*; τὸ λοιπόν (adv. acc. § 284): *thereafter, in the future*. XXVII.

λόφος, ου, ὁ: *hill*. XI.

λοχαγός, ου, ὁ (λόχος and ἄγω): *captain*. IV.

λόχος, ου, ὁ: *company of soldiers*. II.

Λυδία, ἡ, ἴ: *Lydia*, a district of western Asia Minor, of which Sardis was the chief city. XXXIX.

Λύδιος, ἄ, ον (Λυδία): *Lydian*. LVI.

λυθείς, aor. pass. partic. of λύω: *having been loosed*. Declined in § 388.

Λύκιος, ου, ό: *Lycius*, commander of the cavalry organized by the Ten Thousand during their retreat.

λύπη, ης, ἴ: *grief*.

λύσῃς, ι aor. act. partic. of λύω: *having loosed*. For declension cp. § 209. b.

λύσων, fut. act. partic. of λύω: *about to loose*. For declension cp. § 207.

λύω, λύσω, λύσα, λύκα, λύμαι, λύθην: *loose, break, destroy*; MID. *ransom*. §§ 45, etc., 482, 487, 640. I.

λύω, pres. act. partic. of λύω: *loosing*. For declension cp. §§ 206. a, 616. 2.

## M

μακρός, ἄ, όν: *long*. Comp. μακρότερος, sup. μακρότατος, § 351. a. XXXV.

μάλα, adv.: *very*. Comp. μάλλον *more*, sup. μάλιστα *most*. §§ 369. 4, 370. XXXVII.

μᾶλλον, comp. adv.: *more, better, rather*. See μάλα. § 370. XXII.

μανθάνω (themes μαθ-, μαθη-, cp. τυγχάνω, § 218), μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα: *learn*. May be followed by εἶ clause (§ 262), or in sense of *learn how* by inf. (§ 457). See also § 457. a. XXIV.

μάντις, εως, ό: *soothsayer*.

μάχη, ης, ἴ: *battle, fight*. § 93. VI.

μάχομαι (cp. μάχη), μαχοῦμαι (for μαχίσσομαι, § 544), ἐμαχέσασθην (with lengthened theme), μεμάχη-

μαι: *fight*, with dat. (§ 317), or πρὸς *against* and acc. XXXVII.

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: *great, large, loud* (of a noise). Comp. μέζων, sup. μέγιστος (§ 360. 4). § 337. I. XXXIII.

μέγιστος, η, ον: see μέγας.

μέζων, μέζον: see μέγας.

μείων, adv. (cp. μικρός): *less*.

μείων, ον: *smaller, fewer* (in pl.); comp. of μικρός.

μελανία, ἄς, ἴ (μέλας *black*): *blackness*.

μέλει, μέλησει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε, impers.: *it is a care*, with dat. of person and εἶως clause.

μέλλω, μέλλῃσω, ἐμέλλῃσα: *be about, intend*, with fut., pres., or aor. inf.; *delay*. § 156. 2. XIII.

μνησθῆναι (pf. with pres. meaning), μνησθήσομαι (§ 473), ἐμνήσθην: *remember*. For const. see § 457 and a. May take obj. in gen. The pres. act. is μνησθῶ *remind*, which form is made up of the reduplication μν- plus the theme μνη- (long form of μνα-) plus the pres. suffix ῶ; fut. μνήσω, I aor. ἐμνήσα. XLVI.

μέν, postpositive particle, used with a word or clause that is contrasted with a following word (in another clause) or a second clause. The second word or clause often has δέ, which is sometimes replaced by another conjunction. μέν sometimes means *on the one hand*; but more often it is to be omitted in translation. ό μέν . . . ό δέ: *the one . . . the other*; οί μέν . . . οί δέ: *some . . . others*. See δέ. VI.

μέντοι, postpositive particle: *however, yet*. XV.

μένω (themes μαν-, μανη-), μανῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα: *remain, wait for*. Cp. Lat. *maneo*. §§ 541, 542. LV.

Μένων, ὄνος, ὁ: *Menon*, a Thessalian general in the service of Cyrus. XXV.

μέσος, ἡ, ὄν: *middle, middle of* (§ 192); (τὸ) μέσον: *the middle, the midst* (§ 219); ἐν μέσῳ: *in the midst, between, with gen.*; μέσον ἡμέρας: *midday*. XVII.

μιστός, ἡ, ὄν: *full, with gen.* VI.

μετά, prep.: with GEN. *with, in company with*; with ACC. *into the midst of, after*. XV.

μεταξύ, adv.: *between, with gen.* IX.

μετα-πέμπωμαι (mid. of μετα-πέμπω send for), -πέμψομαι, -πεμψάμην, -πέπεμμαι: *send after to come to oneself; summon*. XXX.

μετά-πεμπτος, ὄν (verbal adj. of μετα-πέμπωμαι): *sent after, summoned*. XLVIII.

μέχρι, temporal conj.: *until*. §§ 521, 522. LII.

μή, (1) neg. adv.: *not; with inf.* (§§ 98, 519. δ), in protases (§§ 106. δ, 216, etc.), purpose clauses (§§ 243, 268), object clauses (§ 535), prohibitions (§ 309), wishes (§§ 584, 585), with hortatory subjv. (§ 244), and deliberative subjv. (§ 564). (2) conj.: *lest, after verbs of fearing*; μή οὐ: *lest not* (§ 438). VI, XLIV.

μηδέ: *and not, nor, not even*. Used like μή. Cp. οὐδέ. XLIII.

μηδ-εις, μηδε-μία, μηδ-έν (μηδέ + εις): *nobody, no one, no, nothing*. Used like μή. § 426. a. XLIII.

Μήδοι, ὄν, οἱ: *the Medes*. LIX.

μήν, μηνός, ὁ: *month*. Lat. *mēnsis*. § 220. XX.

μήν, postpositive adv.: *in truth, certainly*; γέ μήν: *to be sure, at any rate*. LIX.

μήποτε: *never*. Used like μή not. LIV.

μή-τε . . . μή-τε: *neither . . . nor*. Used like μή. Cp. οὔτε . . . οὔτε. XLIII.

μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ: *mother*. Lat. *māter*. § 321. XXXI.

Μιθραδάτης, ὄν, ὁ: *Mithradātes*. XLIV.

μικρός, ἄ, ὄν: *small*. Comp. μικρότερος, sup. μικρότατος, § 360. 5. Comp. also μείων, μέων: *fewer* (in pl.). XXXVI.

μισθός, οὐ, ὁ: *pay*. XX.

μισθοφορᾶ, ἄς, ἡ (ἴμισθός and φέρω): *receipt of wages, pay*.

μνᾶ, ἄς, ἡ: *mina*, one sixtieth of a talent, i.e. about \$18. § 594. L.

μόνος, ἡ, ὄν: *alone, only*. XLVII.

μῦριοι, αἰ, α: *ten thousand*. § 421.

## N

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: *ship*. § 605.

νεανίας, ὄν, ὁ: *young man*. § 593.

νεανίσκος, ὄν, ὁ: *young man*. XXI.

νεκρός, οὐ, ὁ: *dead body, corpse*. Cp. Lat. *neccō*. LIX.

νεός, ἄ, ὄν: *new, fresh, young*. Comp. νεώτερος, sup. νεώτατος. Cp. Lat. *novus*. XXXV.

νεφέλη, ἡς, ἡ: *cloud*.

νικάω (νίκη), νικήσω, ἐνίκησα, νενίκηκα, νενίκημαι, ἐνίκηθην: *conquer, surpass*. The pass. is often expressed by ἡττάομαι. LII.

νίκη, ἡς, ἡ: *victory*. XI.

νομίζω (theme νομιδ-), νομιῶ (§ 543), ἐνόμισα, ενόμιμα, ενόμισμαι, ἐνόμισθην: *think, consider*. With inf. § 110. VIII.

νόμος, ὄν, ὁ: *custom, law*. XXXIX.

νοῦς, οὐ, ὁ: *mind*. § 596. L.

νύκτωρ, adv. (Cp. νύξ): *by night*. XXXIII.

νῦν, adv.: *now* (of time). Lat. *nūnc*.

XX.

**νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ:** *night*; **μέσαι νύκτες:** *midnight* (middle watches of the night). Lat. *nox*. §§ 195, 196, 198. XVIII.

## Ξ

**Ξενίας, ου, ὁ:** *Xenias*, an Arcadian general in the service of Cyrus. XII.

**ξένιος, α, ου (ξένιος):** *hospitable, relating to hospitality*; **ξένια,** neut. pl. subst.: *gifts in token of hospitality, guest-gifts*.

**ξένος, ου, ὁ:** *guest-friend*. XIX.

**Ξενοφών, ώντος, ὁ:** *Xenophon*, the author of the *Anabasis*. See pp. 264, 265. LIV.

**ξύλινος, η, ου (ξύλον):** *made of wood, wooden*.

**ξύλον, ου, τό:** *wood*; pl. of hewn or split wood; *timbers*. XXIV.

## Ο

**ὁ, ἡ, τό, gen. τοῦ; τῆς, τοῦ, def. art.:** *the*. The forms of the definite article are often used for possessive pronouns of the first, second, or third person, either singular or plural, as suggested by the context, *i.e. my, your, his, her, our, their*.

In this VOCABULARY, placed after a noun, **ὁ, ἡ,** and **τό** indicate its gender. **ὁ δέ:** *and he, but he*; **ἡ δέ:** *and she, but she*, indicating a change of subject from the preceding sentence. **ὁ** may mean *he*, and **ἡ** *she*, but only with **μέν** (which see) and **δέ**. §§ 48, 49, 67-70, 89, 93, 143, 281 (footnote 1), 307, 427, 632. II, VI.

**ὅδε, ἦδε, τόδε,** dem. pron.: *this*, often with reference to what is to follow; **τάδε:** *these things* as follows (§ 175). §§ 173, 176, 307. XV.

**ὁδός, ου, ἡ:** *way, road*. § 115. IX.  
**ὅθεν,** rel. adv.: *whence, from which place, from what source*. LI.

**οἶδα** (2 pf. with pres. meaning), **ἦδην** (2 plup.) or **ἦδειν, εἶσομαι** (fut.): *know*. § 655. With partic. or **ὅτι** clause, § 669. LX.

**οἰκαδε,** adv. (cp. **οἰκίᾱ**): *homeward, home*. XXII.

**οἰκέω** (cp. **οἰκίᾱ**), **οἰκήσω, ᾤκησα, ᾤκηκα, ᾤκημαι, ᾤκήθην:** *dwelt, inhabit*; **πόλις οἰκουμένη:** *an inhabited city*. The pass. partic. *ma:* sometimes be translated *be situated*.

**οἰκίᾱ, ας, ἡ:** *house*. XIII.

**οἶμαι:** see **οἴομαι**.

**οἶνος, ου, ὁ:** *wine*. § 60. III.

**οἴομαι** (often **οἶμαι**), **οἴήσομαι** (with lengthened theme), **οἴηθην** (§ 389), dep. pass.: *think, suppose*. XXXVIII.

**οἶος, α, ου, rel. pron.:** *of what sort, what sort of, (such) as*; **οἶός τε:** *able*; **οἶόν τ' ἐστίν:** *it is possible*. Lat. *qualis*. LIV.

**οἴσω:** see **φέρω**.

**οἴχομαι, οἴχησομαι** (with lengthened theme): *be gone, have gone* (pres. with pf. meaning). Often with supplementary partic.; cp. § 215. XXX.

**ὀκτα-κόσιοι, αι, α:** *eight hundred*. § 421.

**ὀκτώ,** indecl.: *eight*. Lat. *octō*. XXXIX.

**ὀλίγος, η, ου:** *little, few*. Comp. **ελάττων**, sup. **ελάχιστος**, § 360. 6. XXXVI.

**ὅλος, η, ου:** *whole, entire, all*. XVII.  
**ὀμαλώς:** *evenly, with even step*.

**ὀμ-νῦ-μι** (and **ὀμ-νύω, θέμεθ-μ-, ὀμο-**), **ὀμοῦμαι, ὀμοσα, ὀμώμοκα** (§ 447), **ὀμώμο(σ)μαι, ὀμώ(σ)θην:** *swear, promise with an oath, take oath*. LIX.

ὄμο-τράπεζος, ον: sitting at the same table. As subst. masc. table companion.

ὅμως, adv.: nevertheless.

ὄνομα, ατος, τό: name. XXXVII.

ὄνος, ου, ὄ: ass. Lat. *asinus*. LVI.

ὅπη, rel. adv.: where, wherever; how, in what way. Cp. πη. XL.

ὀπισθεν, adv.: behind.

ὀπισθο-φύλαξ, ακος, ὄ: one who guards the rear; οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες: the rear guard.

ὀπλίξω, ὀπλισα, ὀπλισμαι, ὀπλισθην (ὀπλον): arm; MID. arm oneself.

ὀπλίτης, ου, ὄ (ὀπλον): a heavy-armed soldier, *hoplite*. See p. 139, Fig. 18. XII.

ὀπλον, ου, τό: implement; commonly pl. ὀπλα, τά: arms of war. See p. 28, Fig. 1; p. 139, Fig. 18. II.

ὀπου, rel. adv.: whithersoever, whither, where. § 343. XXIII.

ὀποῖος, α, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: of what sort, what sort of. XLVII.

ὀπόσος, η, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: as many as, how great, (pl.) how many. Cp. ὅσος. XLII.

ὀπότε, rel. adv.: when, whenever, as often as; since. Cp. ὅτε. XLII.

ὀπου, rel. adv.: wherever, where. § 343. XXIII.

ὀπως, (1) conj.: in order that, that, with purpose clause (§§ 243, 268); how, with object clause (§ 535). (2) rel. adv.: how, in what way. XXII, XXXIX, LIV.

ὀράω (impf. ἰώραν), ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἰδῶκα or ἰδῶκα, ἰδῶμαι or ἴψμαι, ὄφθην: see, behold. With acc. and partic. (rarely with ὄτι clause). §§ 440, 441, 520. LII.

ὄρθιος, α, ον: sleep. IX.

ὄρκος, ου, ὄ: oath. IX.

ὄρμᾶω, ὄρμήσω, ὄρμησα, ὄρμηκα.

ὄρμημαι, ὄρμήθην: start, hasten, MID. set out.

ὄρνις, ἰθος, ὄ and ἦ: bird. Acc. sing. both ὄρνιν (§ 197) and ὄρνιθα. XVIII.

ὄροντᾶς, α (Doric gen., for ου), ὄ: Orontas, a Persian. XXXI.

ὄρος, ους, τό: mountain. § 272. XXVI.

ὄς, ἦ, ὄ, rel. pron.: who, which, that. §§ 125, 135, 285. X.

ὄσος, η, ον, rel. pron.: as great as, as much as, as many as, all that, as (many); how great, how much, how many; ὄσον, adv. acc.: as far as; with numerals, about (§ 444). XXXVII.

ὄσ-περ, ἦ-περ, ὄ-περ (strengthened ὄς): the very one which, the very thing which. XXIX.

ὄστις, ἦτις, ὄ τι (or ὄ,τι): indef. rel. pron.: whoever or whichever, whatever; who, which, what; often with conditional force, if anybody (= εἴ τις), if anything (= εἴ τι); ἴστιν ὄστις: there is who, somebody. §§ 228, 343. XXI.

ὄταν = ὄτε + ἄν (§ 248. 2. a), conj. with subjv.: when, whenever (§ 400). XXIX.

ὄτε, rel. adv.: when, at the time when, commonly with impf. indic.; whenever, with opt. (§ 417). XVIII.

ὄτι, conj.: that, introducing a quotation (§ 260); because, since (§ 310). As adv., like ὄς, strengthens a superlative. Thus ὄτι ἀπαρασκευάτατος: as unprepared as possible. XXIV, XXXVII.

ὄ τι or ὄ,τι: neut. of ὄστις.

ὄτων: see ὄστις.

ὄτω: see ὄστις.

ὄσ', dat. οἱ, pl. σφίσι, indirect reflexive of the third person: of himself, to himself, etc. § 378 and a. XXXVIII.

οὐ, proclitic neg. adv.: *not*; before a vowel with smooth breathing, written οὐκ; before a rough breathing, οὐχ. At the end of a sentence, οὐ. VI. οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, used in interrogative sentence: *not*; expects the answer *yes*. Cp. Lat. *nōne*. VII.

οὐδέ (οὐ + δέ): *nor, not even*; Lat. *nē . . . quidem*. § 428. VIII.

οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν (οὐδέ + εἰς): *nobody, no one, no, nothing*. § 426. οὐδέν: *in no respect, not at all* (cp. § 284). XLIII.

οὐκέτι, adv.: *no longer, no more*. XVII.

οὐν, postpositive particle: *therefore, accordingly, at any rate*. XIV.

οὐ-περ (strengthened οὐ): *just where, the very place where*.

οὐ-ποτε, adv.: *never*. XXV.

οὐ-πω, adv.: *not yet, never yet*. XXXV.

οὔτε . . . οὔτε (οὐ + τε): *neither . . . nor*. VIII.

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, dem. pron.: *this, this man, he, etc.*; ταῦτα: *these things, this* (§ 177); ἐκ τούτου: *thereupon* (§ 588). §§ 171, 172, 175, 176, 307. XV.

οὕτω(ς), adv. (οὗτος): *thus, in this way* (usually with reference to what goes before), *so*; οὕτως ἔχαιν: see ἔχω. XXXVII.

ὀφθαλμός, οὐ, ὄ: *eye. Ophthalmia*.

ὄχλος, οὐ, ὄ: *crowd, throng; annoyance, bother*. XXXV.

ὄψομαι: see ὄραω.

## II

παγ-κράτιον, οὐ, τό (πᾶς and κράτος): *the pancratium, an athletic contest composed of both boxing and wrestling*.

πάθω: 2 aor. subjv. of πάσχω.

παιδνίζω, ἐπαιδνισα: *sing the paeon or war song*.

παῖς, παιδός, ὄ and ἦ: *child, boy, girl*; ἐκ παιδων: *from boyhood* (§ 203). The gen. (and dat.) dual is exceptionally accented παιδων, and the gen. pl. παιδων. The voc. sing. is παῖ. XVIII.

παῖω, παῖσω, ἐπαῖσα, ἐπαῖσκα, ἐπαῖσθην (σ is irregularly inserted): *strike, smite*. XII.

παλαίω (πάλη), ἐπαλαίωσα, ἐπαλαίσθην (σ is irregularly inserted): *wrestle*. πάλη, ης, ἦ: *wrestling*.

πάλιν, adv.: *back, again*. X.

παλτόν, οὐ, τό: *javelin, used by barbarians; the Greek hoplite's spear was called δόρυ*. V.

πάντη, adv. (cp. πᾶς): *on all sides*.

πᾶν, adv. (cp. πᾶς) \* *wholly, altogether, very*. XXXIX.

παρά, prep.: with GEN. *from the side of*; with DAT. *by the side of, after verbs of rest*; with ACC. *to the side of, after verbs of motion; along; contrary to*. IX.

παρ-αγγέλλω: *give directions to, direct, command, with dat. of pers. or acc. of pers. and inf.* LV.

παρα-γίγνομαι: *come (to), be at hand, be present*. Cp. παρ-εἶμι. XXXII.

παρα-δίδομι: *give over, surrender; pass along* (a watch word: σύν-θημα). LVIII.

παραμηρίδιον, οὐ, τό: *protection for the thigh; pl. thigh pieces, cuisses*.

παρασάγγης, οὐ, ὄ: *parasang, a Persian measure of distance, about 3.3 English miles*. Cp. our *league* (3 miles). XV.

παρα-σκευάζω (σκευάζω, theme σκευαδ-, *prepare, σκευάσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, ἐσκευάσθην*): *prepare, equip; MID. make oneself ready, prepare oneself*; also *prepare for oneself*. §§ 315. I, II, 467. a. XXX.

παρ-εἶμι (εἶμι) : *be by, be at hand, be present; attend, with dat.* X.  
 παρ-ελαύνω : *drive past, drive by, march past, ride past.* XI.  
 παρ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. παρ-ήλθον : *go by, go past.* XLII.  
 παρ-έχω : *hold beside, furnish, provide, supply; cause (§§ 405, 502).* XIII.  
 πάροδος, ου, ἡ (παρά + ὁδός) : *road by or past, passage, pass.* IX.  
 Παρύσατις, ἰδος, ἡ : *Parysatis, wife of Darius II, king of Persia, and mother of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger.* XXXI.  
 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν : *every (in sing.), all, whole.* §§ 289, 293. XXVIII.  
 Πᾶσιων, ωνος, ὁ : *Pasion, a Greek general (from Megara) employed by Cyrus.* XLIII.  
 πάσχω (themes παθ-, πενθ-, πονθ-), πείσομαι (for πενθ-σομαι), ἔπαθον, πέπονθα (§ 445) : *suffer; πάσχω τι (§ 181); suffer something, euphemism for be hurt or be killed; κακῶς πάσχειν : to be injured; εὖ πάσχειν : to be treated kindly (§ 537).* XXII.  
 Πατηγγύας, α (Doric gen., for Attic ου), ὁ : *Pategyas, a Persian companion of Cyrus.*  
 πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ : *father.* Lat. *pater.* § 321. XXXI.  
 πατρίς, ἰδος, ἡ (cp. πατήρ) : *fatherland.* XXIX.  
 παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, πέπαυκα, πέπαυμαι, ἐπαύθην : *make to stop, stop (trans.), put an end to; MID. stop oneself, cease.* § 439. XXVI, XXXII.  
 παχύς, εἶα, ὕ : *thick in diameter.* XXVIII.  
 πεδῖον, ου, τό : *plain.* § 49. II.  
 πεζός, ἡ, ὄν : *a foot, on foot; οἱ πεζοί : the infantry.* VII.  
 πέιθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα (§ 164), πέπεικα

(§ 432. f) and πέπειθα (§ 445 and a), πέπεισμα (§ 467), ἐπεισθην (§ 387. 2) : *persuade;* MID. and PASS. *obey, with dat.* § 487. I, XXXIX.  
 πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, ἐπειράσομαι, πειράομαι, ἐπειράομαι, ἐπειράομαι, πειράομαι, ἐπειράομαι : *try, attempt.* § 518. a. LII.  
 πείσομαι : either (1) fut. of πάσχω, *suffer* (Vocab. XXII) or (2) fut. mid. of πέιθω (Vocab. I) in mid. meaning *obey* (with dat.). XXXII.  
 πιστόν (verbal adj. of πείθομαι), impers. : *one must obey, with dat.* § 477. 2. XLVIII.  
 πελάζω, πελάσω and πελώ, ἐπέλασα, ἐπέλασθην : *approach.*  
 πελαστής, οὔ, ὁ : *a light-armed soldier, pellast.* Sec. p. 67, Fig. 4; p. 117, Fig. 14. § 146. XII.  
 πέμπτος, η, ον (πέντε) : *fifth.*  
 πέμπω (themes πεμπ-, πομπ-), πέμψω (§ 153), ἐπέμψα (§ 164), πέπομφα (§§ 445, 488), πέπεμμαι (§ 465. δ), ἐπέμψθην (§ 387. 1) : *send.* § 487. I.  
 πεντακόσιοι, αι, α (πέντε) : *five hundred.* XIX.  
 πέντε, indecl. : *five.* XIII.  
 πεντε-καλ-δεκα, indecl. : *five and ten, fifteen.* XXVII.  
 πέραν, adv. : *across, on the other side, with gen.; ἐν τῷ πέραν : on the other side or bank.* XXIII.  
 περί (like πρό, never suffers elision of the final vowel), prep. : with GEN. *about, concerning, for*, as a prize; with DAT. (not common in prose) *around, about*; with ACC. *around, about, near, in relation to.* XI.  
 περι-βάλλω : *throw around, throw one's arms around, embrace.*  
 Πέρσης, ου, ὁ : *a Persian.* Voc. Πέρσα. XXIV.  
 Περσικός, ἡ, ὄν (Πέρσης) : *Persian.* XXIV.

πῆ, enclitic adv.: *anywhere*. XVII.

πηγή, ἡ, ἡ: *spring* of water; generally pl.: *source*. XXXII.

πῆχυς, εως, ὁ: *forearm, cubit*, 1½ Greek feet. § 282. XXVII.

Πίγρης, ἦτος, ὁ: *Pigres*, interpreter of Cyrus.

πίπτω (themes πει-, πι-, and πτω-), πεσοῦμαι (for πετόμαι), ἔπεσον (for ἔπετον), πέπτωκα: *fall*. See κατα-πίπτω.

Πισίδια, ὄν, οἱ: *Psidians*, natives of Pisidia. XII.

πιστός, ἡ, ὄν (cp. πείθω): *trustworthy, faithful*; πιστά, ὄν, τά, neut. pl. subst.: *pledges*. Comp. πιστότερος, sup. πιστότατος, § 351. a. VIII.

πλήθρον, ον, τό: *plethrum*, 100 Greek feet. XXVII.

πλείστος: see πολύς.

πλείων: see πολύς.

πλέω, πλεύσομαι (also πλευσοῦμαι, contracted from πλου-σέ-ο-μαι), ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι (σ is irregularly inserted): *sail*. § 508. LI.

πλήθος, ουσ, τό: *crowd, throng, host, multitude*. LIII.

πλήθω (cp. πλήθος): *be full*; ἀμφὶ ἀγορᾶν πλήθουσεν: *about the time of full market, i.e. the middle of the forenoon*.

πλήν, adv. and conj.: *except, except that*; prep. with gen.: *except*.

πλήρης, es: *full*. Cp. Lat. *plē-nus*. XXVII.

πλησίον, adv.: *near*.

πλοῖον, ον, τό (πλέω): *boat*. See p. 36, Fig. 3. § 60. III.

πλοῦς, οὐ, ὁ (cp. πλέω): *voyage; a sailing, sailing weather*. L.

ποδ-ήρης, es: *reaching to the feet*.

πόθος, ον, ὁ: *desire*, with gen.

ποῖ, interr. adv.: *whither, where?* LVII.

ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποίηθην: *do, make*. The mid. is translated like the act., but implies *in* or *for one's own interest*; κακῶς ποιεῖν: *do harm to, injure*, with acc. (§ 537). §§ 509, 622, 643. LI.

ποιητέος, ἄ, ον (verbal adj. of ποιέω, with ἐστὶ or εἰσὶ expressed or understood): *necessary to be done, must be done*. LIV.

ποιῶν, pres. act. partic. of ποιέω: *making*. Declined in § 622.

πολεμέω (πόλεμος), πολεμήσω, ἐπολέμησα, πεπολέμηκα, πεπολέμημαι, ἐπολεμήθην: *wage war, make war on*, with dat. (§ 317), or πρὸς and acc. LII.

πολεμικός, ἡ, ὄν (πόλεμος): *suited to war, warlike; hostile*. LI.

πολέμιος, ἄ, ον (πόλεμος): *of war, hostile*; οἱ πολέμοι (subst. adj.): *the enemy*. Comp. πολεμώτερος (§ 540. I. II). § 117. IX.

πόλεμος, ον, ὁ: *war*. XXXVII.

πόλις, εως, ἡ: *city*. § 282. XXVII.

πολλάκις, adv. (πολύς): *often*. XLII.

πολύ, adv. (cp. πολύς): *much, by far*. § 410. a. XXXVII.

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: *much, many; extensive, large; loud* (of noise), § 337. 2; οἱ πολλοί: *the many, the most*; τὸ πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος: *the most of the army*; ἐπὶ πολὺ: *over or for a long distance*. Comp. πλείων or πλέων, sup. πλείστος, § 360. 7. πλείστοι: *very many* (§ 533); οἱ πλείστοι: *the most*. XXXIII, XXXVI.

πόντος, ον, ὁ: *sea*; ὁ Εὐξείνιος Πόντος: *the Euxine or Black Sea*.

πορεία, ἄς, ἡ: *journey*.

πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, πεπόρευμαι, ἐπορεύθην (§ 389), dep. pass.: *go, proceed, travel*. Cp. ἄπορος. XXX.



πορευτός, ἄ, ον (verbal adj. of πορεύομαι): necessary to be passed over, to be traversed; neut. impers. *one must proceed*. § 477. 2. XLVIII.

ποταμός, οὔ, ὅ: *river*. § 56. III.

ποτέ, enclitic adv. of time: *ever, at any time, at some time, once on a time*. L.

πότερον (πότερα) . . . ἤ, introducing a double question, direct or indirect: *whether . . . or*. § 362. XXXVI.

ποτόν, οὔ, τό: *drink*. XLVII.

που, indef. adv., enclitic: *somewhere, anywhere*. XLVII.

πούς, ποδός, ὅ: *foot*. Also the Greek unit of length. Lat. *pēs*. §§ 195, 196, 198. XVIII.

πράγμα, ατος, τό (πράττω): something done, *business, deed, matter, difficulty*; pl. sometimes *circumstances, often trouble*. XXII.

πράττω (theme πρᾶγ-, § 218), πρᾶξα, ἐπράξα, πέπραγμα (§ 466. a), ἐπράχθην (§ 387. 1): *accomplish, effect, do; fare* (§§ 375, 538). XIX.

πρέσβεις, εων, οί: *ambassadors*. The nom. sing. is πρεσβευτής, οὔ, ὅ. XXVII.

[πρέσβυς, poetic], comp. πρεσβύτερος *older*, sup. πρεσβύτατος *oldest*, § 351. c. Cp. pl. πρέσβεις. XXXV. πρῆσθαι: see ἐπριάμην.

πρίν, temporal conj.: *before, until; πρόσθεν* (Vocab. XXVI) . . . πρίν = Lat. *prius . . . quam: earlier than, before*. §§ 523, 524. LII.

πρό (like περί, never suffers elision of the final vowel), prep. with gen. only: *before, in front of*. Lat. *prō*. XVII.

πρόβατον, ου, τό: *cattle, sheep*. XXXVI.

προ-δίδωμι: *betray*.

πρό-εimi (είμι): *go forward, advance*.

προ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. προ-ήλθον, 2 pf. προ-ελήλυθα (§ 447): *go before, go forward, proceed*. XLV.

προθύμως (adv. of πρόθυμος *ready, eager*): *readily, eagerly, zealously*. Comp. προθυμότερον, sup. προθυμότερα. XXXVII.

προ-θύω: *sacrifice before*; MID. *offer a preliminary sacrifice to ascertain something for one's own interest*.

προ-ίδωιν: 2 aor. opt. of προ-οράω.

προ-κατα-λαμβάνω: *seize or occurry beforehand*. XLVII.

Πρόξενος, ου, ὅ: *Proxenus, a Theban general employed by Cyrus*. XIV.

προ-οράω, 2 aor. προ-είδον: *see in front of oneself, see approaching*.

προ-πέμπω: *send forward or ahead*. XXX.

πρός, prep.: with GEN. *from the side of, from, toward*; πρὸς (τῶν) θεῶν: *before the gods, in the sight of the gods*; with DAT. *near, beside, in addition to*; with ACC. *to, toward, against; with reference to* (§ 335). II, XXIX.

προσ-ανᾶλίσκω (ἀνᾶλίσκω *spend, ἀνᾶλώσω, ἀνήλωσα, ἀνήλωκα, ἀνήλωμαι, ἀνηλώθη*): *spend besides, spend in addition*.

πρόσ-εimi (είμι): *come on, advance*.

προσ-ελαύνω: *drive up, ride up, draw near*. XX.

προσ-έρχομαι: *go to, come to, come up*, sometimes with dat. of pers. or with εἰς and acc. XXXVI,

προσ-έχω, with τὸν νοῦν: *direct the mind to*, with dat. L.

προσ-ήκω: *come to, reach to, pertain to*; pres. partic. *related*, with dat. XXXI.

πρόσθεν, adv. (cp. πρὸς): *forward* (of space): *before, former* (of time); ἡ πρόσθεν (§ 70) νύξ: *the night before*; ὁ πρόσθεν λόγος: *the previous account* (§ 533). XXVI. τὸ πρόσθεν (adv. acc.): *before, formerly*; εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν: *to the front* (§ 319). XXXVII.

προσκυνέω, προσκυνήσω, προσκύνησα: *do homage to, salute*.

προσστατέω, προσεστάτησα: *stand before, manage*, with gen.

πρότερος, ἄ, ον: *former, earlier* (§ 361). XXXVI.

προεδεδόκεσαν: contracted from προεδεδόκεισαν, plup. of προ-δίδωμι.

προφαίνω: *show forth*; MID. *appear*.

πρῶτος, η, ον: *first* (§ 361); οἱ πρῶτοι: *the van* (§ 375); adv. πρῶτον: *first* (§ 284). XXIII.

πυγμή, ης, ἡ: *boxing*.

πυκνός, ή, όν: *closely set, closely standing, closely planted*. XXVIII.

πύλη, ης, ἡ: *gate*. XLVI.

πυνθάνομαι (themes πυνθ-, πυνθ-, cp. § 218), πυνθόσομαι, ἐπυνθόμην, πέπυσμαι: *inquire, ask; learn, perceive*. §§ 441, 442. XXXIX.

πῦρ, πυρός, τό: *fire*; πυρά, τά: *watch fires*. § 336. 3. XXXIII.

πῶποτε, adv. of time: *ever yet, ever*. LI.

πῶς, interr. adv.: *how, in what way?* LI.

## P

ρήδιος, ἄ, ον: *easy*. Comp. ῥήων, sup. ῥήστος, § 360. 8. XXXII.

## Σ

σάλπιγξ, γγος, ή: *trumpet*. See p. 90, Fig. 8. XVII.

Σάρδαις, εων, αί: *Sardis*, a city in Lydia. XXVII.

σατραπείης, ου, ό: *satrap*, Persian

name for a provincial governor appointed by the king. XXIV.

σαυτοῦ, ης (contracted from σεαυτοῦ, ης), reflexive pron. of second person: *of yourself*, etc. §§ 376. 2, 379. XXXVIII.

σεαυτοῦ, ης, reflexive pron. of second person: *of yourself*, etc. §§ 376. 2, 379. XXXVIII.

Σιλᾶνός, ου, ό: *Silānus*, a soothsayer.

σίτιον, ου, τό (dim. of σίτος): *grain, food*. XLVII.

σίτος, ου, ό: *grain, food*; in the pl. the declension irregularly changes to neut. σίτα, τά. IV.

σκεπτόν (verbal adj. of σκεπτομαι), impers.: *it must be considered, one must consider*, with ὅπως clause (§ 535). § 477. 2. XLVIII.

σκεπτομαι, σκέψομαι, ἑσκεμμαι, dep. mid.: *view, observe, consider*. The pres. and impf. are rare in Attic. XXXIV.

σκηνή, ης, ἡ: *tent*. VI.

σκηνώω (σκηνή), ἐσκήνωσα, (κατ-) ἐσκήνωκα: *stay in a tent, camp*. LIII.

σκληρόν, ἄ, όν: *hard, rough*; ἐν σκληρῷ: *in a rough place*.

σκότος, ους, τό: *darkness*. Also ό σκότος, gen. ου. XXVIII.

σός, σή, σόν (cp. σοῦ, gen. of σύ): *thy, your* (sing.), *yours*. § 126. X.

Σοφαινετος, ου, ό: *Sophaenetus*, a Greek general, from Stymphālus in Arcadia, employed by Cyrus. XLIII.

σπάνις, εως, ή: *scarcity, want*, with gen.

Σπαρτιάτης, ου, ό (Σπάρτη *Sparta*): *a Spartan*.

σπεύδω (theme σπευδ-), σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα: *urge on, hasten*. XLII.

σπονδή, ης, ή: *libation*; pl. *truce*. IX. σπονδής, ης, ή (σπεύδω): *haste*.

στάδιον, ου, τό: *stadium* (race course): then a measure of distance, *stade*, 600 Greek feet. Pl. both στάδιοι, οί, and στάδια, τά. See p. 95, Fig. 9. XVII.

σταθμός, οθ, ό: *day's journey, stage; halting place* (first meaning, but less common). XI.

στενός, ή, όν: *narrow*. IX.

στέρον, ου, τό: *breast*.

στίφος, ους, τό: *crowd*.

στόλος, ου, ό: *expedition*. IX.

στρατιά, ἄς, ή (στρατεύω): *expedition*. LI.

στράτευμα, ατος, τό (cp. στρατιά): *army*. §§ 195, 199. XVIII.

στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα, ἐστράτευκα (§ 432. c), ἐστράτευμαι: *make an expedition; dep. MID. take the field, serve in war*. Cp. στρατευμα, etc. XXXI.

στρατηγός, οθ, ό: *general*. III.

στρατιά, ἄς, ή: *army*. § 114. IX.

στρατιώτης, ου, ό (στρατιά, etc.): *soldier*. § 146. XII.

στρατοπεδεύω (στρατόπεδον) and dep. mid. στρατοπεδεύομαι, ἐστρατοπεδευσάμην, ἐστρατοπεδευμαι (§ 456): *encamp*. XL.

στρατόπεδον, ου, τό: *camp*. Cp. στρατευμα. XXIX.

στρέφω (themes στρεφ-, στραφ-), στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι (§ 490), ἐστράφην (§ 489): *turn; wheel about*. §§ 409, 487. XLI.

σύ, σοῦ: *you* (sing.), §§ 304, 306, 308. XXIX.

συγκαλέω (σύν + καλέω): *call together*. LV.

Συέννης, ιος (non-Attic gen.), ό: *Syennesis, king of Cilicia*. XXXVIII.

συλλαμβάνω: *take together, seize, arrest*. Cp. Lat. *comprehendō*. § 465. a. X.

συλλέγω, συλλέξω, συναλεξα, συναίλοχα (§ 448), συνείλεγμαι, συνείλεχθην and συνείλεχην (§ 409): *gather together, collect*. This λέγω is a different verb from λέγω *say*. §§ 415, 487. XIV.

συμβουλεύω (σύν + βουλεύω): *plan with, advise, with dat; MID. consult* (§ 514), with dat. XIV.

σύμμαχος, ου, ό (μάχη): *fellow-fighter, ally*. XXVIII.

σύνπᾶς, ἄσα, αν (σύν + πᾶς): *all together, all, whole*. XLIII.

συνπέμπω (σύν + πέμπω): *send a person (in acc.) with a person (in dat.)*. X.

συνπορεύομαι: *proceed with, accompany*. XXXVII.

σύν, prep. with dat. only: *with, with the aid of*. III.

συνάγω: *lead together, collect*. XII.

συναντάω, συνήντησα: *meet*.

συνειλημμένος: see συλλαμβάνω.

συνείλοχα: see συλλέγω.

συνέλαβον: see συλλαμβάνω.

συνέρχομαι, 2 aor. συνήλθον: *go or come together, assemble*. XLIII.

σύνθημα, ατος, τό (συντίθημι): *agreement; watchword*. XXIX.

συντάττω: *draw up together, form in line; MID. form in line* (intr.).

συντίθημι: *place or set together; MID. place oneself in agreement with somebody, agree with somebody* (dat.), *make a compact*. May be followed by inf. of indir. disc. LVII.

Συρία, ἄς, ή: *Syria*. XIX.

συσκευάζω (σύν + σκευάζω), theme σκευαδ-, *prepare, σκευάσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, ἐσκεύασθην*): *make ready* (by getting things together, συν-), *pack up, with acc.; MID. pack up one's own baggage, pack up*. XXXIV.

συ-σπειρόμαι, συν-σπειράμαι, συν-σπειράθην: *be coiled up together, be drawn up in close array.*

συ-στρατεύω (σύν + στρατεύω), usually dep. MID. συ-στρατεύομαι: *take the field with, serve in war with*, with dat. XXXI.

συχνός, ή, όν: *considerable, much.*

σφάγιον, ου, τό: *victim for a propitiatory sacrifice; τὰ σφάγια: the omens from the propitiatory sacrifices (a special offering).*

σφενδόνη, ης, ή: *sling.* See p. 112, Fig. 13. XXI.

σχεδόν, adv.: *nearly; chiefly.*

σφίλω (themes σφδ- and σω-), σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, σέσω(σ)μαι, ἐσώθην: *save; MID. save oneself.* XXX.

Σοκράτης, ους, ό: *Socrates, (1) the Achaean, a general employed by Cyrus; to be distinguished from (2) the famous philosopher of Athens.* § 273. XXVI.

σωτήρ, ήρος, ό (σφίλω): *savior.*

σωτηρία, ας, ή (σωτήρ): *safety.* XX.

σωτήριος, ου, όν (σωτήρ): *bringing safety, salutary.* Neut. pl. σωτήρια (supply λαρά): *thank-offerings for safety.*

## T

τ': see τε.

τά μέν . . . τὰ δέ (cp. ό, ή, τό): *some . . . others.*

τάλαντον, ου, τό: *talent, an amount of money = about \$1080.* XXIII.

τάξις, εως, ή (τάττω): *order, arrangement; military line, column, division; εν τάξει: in line.* XXXVIII.

τάραχος, ου, ό (ταράττω stir up): *disturbance, confusion.*

Ταρσοί, ών, οί: *Tarsus, the chief city of Cilicia.* XXXIII.

τάττω (theme ταγ-, cp. § 182, NOTE), τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμα (§ 466), ἐτάχθην: *arrange, draw up, marshal troops.* XXXVIII.

τάττα: neut. pl. of οὔτος.

τάφρος, ου, ή: *ditch.* IX.

τάχα or ταχέως, adv.: *swiftly, quickly, rapidly = ταχύ.* Comp. θάπτον, sup. τάχιστα, § 368. ώς (or ότι) τάχιστα: *as quickly as possible* (§ 373); ἐπειδή (or ἐπειδάν) τάχιστα: *as soon as* (§ 533). XXV.

τάχιστος: see ταχύς.

ταχύ, adv.: *quickly, § 367.* XXII.

ταχύς, εια, ύ: *swift, quick.* Comp. θάπτων, sup. τάχιστος, § 352. α. τήν ταχίστην [όδόν]: *by the quickest way* (§ 356). XXXV.

τε, enclitic conj.: *and; τε . . . καί: both . . . and.* VII.

τέθνηκα (§ 432. b, d'): see θνήσκω and ἀπο-θνήσκω. XLIV.

τείχος, ους, τό: *wall; fortress.* XXVI.

τέκνον, ου, τό: *child.* XLII.

τελευτάω (τελευτή end), τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, τετελεύτηκα, ἐτελευτήθην: *end, finish, die.* LIII.

τέλος, ους, τό: *end.* As adv. acc.: *finally* (§ 284). XXVII.

τετρακισχίλιοι, αι, α: *four thousand.* § 421.

τέτταρες, α: *four.* §§ 421, 425.

Τίγρης, ητος, ό: *Tigris, a great river of western Asia.* L.

τιθείς, pres. act. partic. of τίθημι: *placing.* Declined in § 620.

τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθετον, τέθηκα, ἐτέθη: *put, set.* The pl. pass. is supplied by κειμαι. τίθεσθαι τὰ όπλα: *set down one's arms, rest one's arms on the ground; therefore (1) take a military position, take one's post; (2) halt.* §§ 559, 560, 620, 646. LVII.

τιμάω (τιμή), τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα, τιμήματα, τιμήματα, ἐτίμηθην: *honor*. §§ 518, 622, 643. LII.

τίμη, ἦς, ἡ: *honor*. XXXIX.

τιμών, pres. act. partic. of τιμάω: *honoring*. Declined in § 622.

τίς, τί, interr. pron.: *who? which? what? τί: what? often as adv: why? (§ 284)*. §§ 226, 343. XXI.

τις, τι, enclitic indef. pron.: *any, some, anybody, somebody, anything, something; a certain*. § 227. XXI.

Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὁ: *Tissaphernes, a Persian satrap*. § 273. ὁ. XXVI.

τιτρώσκω (theme τρω-, reduplicated in pres. τι-τρω, and with the pres. suffix σκ%) , τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην: *wound*. XLVI.

τό: see ὁ; τὸ καθ' αὐτούς: *the division opposite themselves (§ 526)*. II.

τοι-γαρ-οὖν, strong particle of inference: *therefore*. XXXIX.

τοίνυν, inferential particle, post-positive: *therefore, then*. LIII.

τοιούτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο (declined like οὗτος, § 171), dem. pron.: *of such a sort, such*, often understood or expressed as antecedent of οἷος. τοιούτος οἷος: *such as*. The neut. is also τοιοῦτον as well as τοιοῦτο. Cp. Lat. *talis*. LIV.

τόξημα, ατος, τό (τοξέω): *arrow*. XVIII.

τοξέω, τοξέσομαι, ἐτόξευσα, τετόξευμαι, ἐτοξέσθην: *shoot with bow (τόξον) and arrow*. XLVI.

τόξον, ου, τό: *bow*. XXXIII.

τοξότης, ου, ὁ (τόξον): *bowman*. See p. 68, Fig. 5. § 146. XII.

τόπος, ου, ὁ: *place*. I.

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο (declined like οὗτος, § 171), dem. pron.: *so much, so great, so many; often followed by correlative word*

like ὅσος *as*. The neut. is also τοσοῦτον as well as τοσοῦτο. Cp. Lat. *tantus*. XLV.

τότε, adv. of time: *then, at that time*. XXIV.

Τραπεζούντιος, α, ον (Τραπεζοῦς): *Trapezuntian*. Subst. nom. pl. *the Trapezuntians*.

Τραπεζοῦς, οῦντος, ἡ: *Trapezus, a Greek city on the Euxine Sea, modern Trebizond*.

τρῆς, τρία: *three*. §§ 421, 424. Cp. Lat. *trēs*.

τρέπω (themes τρω-, τρεπ-, τραπ-), τρέψω, ἔτρεψα and ἔτραπον, τέτροφα and τέτραφα, τέτραμμα ( § 490), ἐτρέφθην and ἐτρέπην (§§ 409, 489): *turn*; τρέπω εἰς φυγὴν: *put to flight*. There are two aorists in the mid. voice also: ἐτρέψαμην and ἐτραπέμην. XIV.

τρέφω (themes τροφ-, τρεφ-, τραφ-, for θροφ-, etc.), θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέτροφα, τέτραμμα ( § 490), ἐτρέφθην ( § 409): *feed, support, rear*. XLI. τρέχω, fut. δραμοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔδραμον (XI), pf. διδράμηκα, mid. διδράμημαι: *run*. XXIII.

τριᾶκοντα, indecl. (τρῆς): *thirty*. § 421.

τριᾶκόςιοι, αι, α: *three hundred*. § 421.

τριήρης, ους, ἡ: *trireme*. See p. 125, Fig. 15; p. 132, Fig. 16. § 274. XXVI.

τριᾶ-χίλιοι, αι, α: *three thousand*. § 421.

τρίτος, η, ον (τρῆς): *third*; τῇ τρίτῃ [ἡμέρᾳ]: *on the third day*.

τροπή, ἦς, ἡ (τρέπω): *roul*.

τρόπος, ου, ὁ (τρέπω): *turn, manner, method, character*. LI.

τρω-τός, ἡ, ὄν (verbal adj. of τιτρώσκω): *able to be wounded, vulnerable*. XLVIII.

τυγχάνω (themes τυγχ-, τυχ-, τυχη-, § 218), τεύξομαι, ἐτυχον, τετύχηκα: *hit*, with gen.; *happen, chance*, with supplementary partic. XIX.

## Υ

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: *water; rain.* § 336.

4. XXXIII.

ὑμεῖς: *you* (pl.), see σὺ, § 304.

ὑμέτερος, α, ὄν (ὑμεῖς): *your* (pl.), *yours.* § 126. X.

ὑπάρχω: *begin, support, serve*, with dat. ὑπέρ, prep.: with GEN. *over, above; on behalf of*; with ACC. *over, beyond.* XXIX.

ὑπερβολή, ης, ἡ (ὑπερβάλλω *hurl over, pass over*): *passing over, pass.* XLIV.

ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὄ: *servant, helper, supporter.* XXXIX.

ὑποσχετόμαι (ἴσχω, strong form of ἴχω, with pres. suffix νε-), ὑποσχέσομαι, ὑποσχήσῃην, ὑποσχήσῃην: *undertake, promise*, with inf. § 519. LII.

ὑπό, prep.: with GEN. *from under, by* (with pass. verb, § 390); *because of, from*; with DAT. *under, beneath* (with verbs of rest); with ACC. *under* (with verbs of motion). XXXIX.

ὑποζύγιον, ου, τό (ζυγόν *yoke*): *something under the yoke, beast of burden.* XLVIII.

ὑποχωρέω (χωρέω *give place, withdraw*, χωρήσω, ἐχώρησα, κεχώρηκα, κεχώρημαι, ἐχώρησθην): *retreat.*

ὑποψία, ας, ἡ: *suspicion.* XXIV.

ὑστεραίος, α, ὄν: *later, following*; τῇ ὑστεραίῃ (supply ἡμέρῃ): *on the following day* (§ 180); εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν (ἡμέρῃν): *on the morrow, on the following day* (§ 568). XV.  
ὑστερος, α, ὄν: *later* (§ 361); ὑστερον, adv. acc.: *later.* XXXVI.

## Φ

φαίνω (for φαν + γω, theme φαν-), φανῶ, ἐφηνά, πέφηνά (*have appeared*), πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην (*was shown*) and ἐφάνην (*appeared*): *bring to light, show*; MID. and PASS. usually *appear*. In mid. and pass. the verb may take a supplementary partic. like δῆλός ἐστι(ν) (§ 449). §§ 541, 542, 644, 645. LV.

φάλαγξ, αγγος, ἡ: *line of battle, phalanx.* § 187. XVII.

φανερός, α, ὄν: *visible, clear, evident.* § 449. XLV.

φασί(ν): *they say*: see φημί. VIII.

φέρω (themes φερ-, οί-, ἐνεκ-, ἐνεγκ-), ὀσσω, ἤνεγκα or ἤνεγκον, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνευμαι, ἠνέχθην: *bear, carry; carry away, receive* (as pay). Cp. Lat. *ferō*. LX.

φεύγω (themes φευγ-, φυγ-), φεύξομαι or φευξοῦμαι (for φευξίομαι), ἐφυγον, πέφευγα (§ 445): *flee, flee from, avoid, shun.* Lat. *fugiō*. V.

φημί (theme φα-), φήσω, ἔφησα: *say, declare*; οὐ φημι: *deny, say . . . not* (§ 156. I. a). With inf. §§ 110, 652. Cp. Lat. *fārī*. LX.

φησί(ν): *he says*; see φημί. VIII.  
φθέγγομαι, φθέγξομαι, ἐφθέγγαμην, ἐφθέγγαμην: *shout.*

φιλία, ας, ἡ (φίλος): *friendship.* XL.

φιλο-νικία, ας, ἡ (φίλος and νίκη): *striving for victory, rivalry.*

φίλος, η, ὄν: *friendly*. Subst. φίλος, ου, ὄ: *friend.* § 48. II, VIII.

φοβερός, α, ὄν (φόβος): *fearful, terrible*. Comp. φοβερότερος, sup. φοβερότατος, § 351. b. XXXV.

φοβερῶς, adv. (φοβρός): *fearfully*. Comp. φοβερότερον, sup. φοβερότατα, § 368. XXXVII.

φοβέω (φόβος), φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην: *frighten*; MID. with dep. aor. pass.: *be afraid, fear*. The mid. forms are common (φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην). LI.

φόβος, ου, ὁ: *fear*. VII.

Φρυγιά, ᾶς, ἡ: *Phrygia*. LVI.

φυγᾶ, ἄδος, ὁ (φεύγω): *fugitive, exile*. XVIII.

φυγή, ἡς, ἡ (φεύγω): *flight*; *φυγή*: *in flight*. XII.

φυλακή, ἡς, ἡ (φυλάττω): *guard, garrison*; φυλακᾶς φυλάττειν: *to do guard duty* (§ 181). VI.

φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ (φυλάττω): *guard, sentinel*. XVII.

φυλάττω (theme φυλακ-, § 182, NOTE), φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι (§ 462. 2), ἐφυλάχθην: *guard*; MID. *guard oneself, be on one's guard (against, with acc.)*. XV, XXX.

φωνή, ἡς, ἡ (cp. φᾶ-, φημί): *voice*. LIV.

### Χ

χαλεπός, ἡ, ὄν: *hard, difficult, harsh, severe*. Comp. χαλεπότερος, sup. χαλεπώτατος, § 351. b. XXXV.

Χάλος, ου, ὁ: *Chalus, a river in Syria*. XXVII.

χαράδρα, ᾶς, ἡ: *ravine*. XLIV.

χαρίζομαι (theme χαριδ-), χαρισομαι (§ 543), ἐχαρισάμην, κεχαρισμαι, dep. mid.: *show a favor to somebody (dat.), gratify, grant something (acc.) to somebody (dat.) as a favor*. Cp. χάρις. XXXIV.

χάρις, ιτος, ἡ: *grace, favor, gratitude*; χάριν ἔχειν: *to feel thankful, with dat.* §§ 195, 197. XVIII.

χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: *hand*. § 336. 2. XXXIII.

Χειρσοφος, ου, ὁ: *Cheiriso-phus,*

a Spartan general. See pp. 264-265. XII.

χίλιοι, αι, α: *thousand*. XVII.

χίλος, οθ, ὁ: *grass, green fodder*. XXI.

χιών, ὄνος, ἡ: *snow*. XXXIV.

χράομαι, χρῆσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι, with pass. aor: ἐχρήσθην: *use, have the service of, with dat. of means; cp. Lat. ūtor with abl.* In contract forms κράομαι has η for α (§ 517). § 518. a. LII.

χρή (ἐστὶ is understood, but never expressed): *there is need, it behooves, it is necessary; one must*. Inf. χρῆναι. § 223. XX.

χρήμα, ατος, τό (χράομαι): *a thing of use; commonly pl., possessions, money, wealth*. XIX.

χρήσιμος, η, ον or χρήσιμος, ον (χράομαι): *useful*. XXI.

χρόνος, ου, ὁ: *time*. XXXIX.

χρῦσιον, ου, τό: *gold*. XIV.

χρῦσός, η, ον: *golden, of gold, gold*. § 609. L.

χώρα, ᾶς, ἡ: *country, place, post, land*. § 115. IX.

χωριον, ου, τό: *place, stronghold*. IV.

χωρίς, adv.: *apart*; prep. with gen.: *apart from*. XXXVIII.

### Ψ

ψιλός, ἡ, ὄν: *bare, unprotected; light-armed*. XLVI.

### Ω

ὦ, interj.: *O*, often preceding the voc. case. IV.

ὦδε, adv. (cp. ὅδε): *thus, as follows*. XXXVIII.

ὤθηθην: see ὀλομαι.

ὄν, οὔσα, ὄν, pres. partic. of εἶμι: *being*. Declined in § 205.

ὥρα, ὥς, ἥ: *season, hour; fit or proper time*; ὥρα (ὥρην): *it is the proper time, it is high time*, with inf. (§ 230). Lat. *hōra*. XXI.

ὥς, (1) rel. adv. (cp. ὅς): introducing a comparison, *as*; with causal partic., *as, as if* (§§ 213. a, 401. b); with partic. of purpose, *as if, apparently* (§ 332); with numerals, *about*; of degree, *how, in what way* (§§ 312, 533); with sup. to express the very highest degree, cp. Lat. *quam* with sup.; thus ὥς μακρότατος: *as long as possible* (§ 358); ὥς τάχιστα: *as quietly as possible*; ὥς μάλιστα: *as much as possible* (§ 373).  
(2) Conj.: of time, *as, when*; intro-

ducing a quotation, *that* (§ 260); introducing a purpose clause, *in order that, that* (§§ 243, 268); introducing the inf. like ὥστε, *so as*.

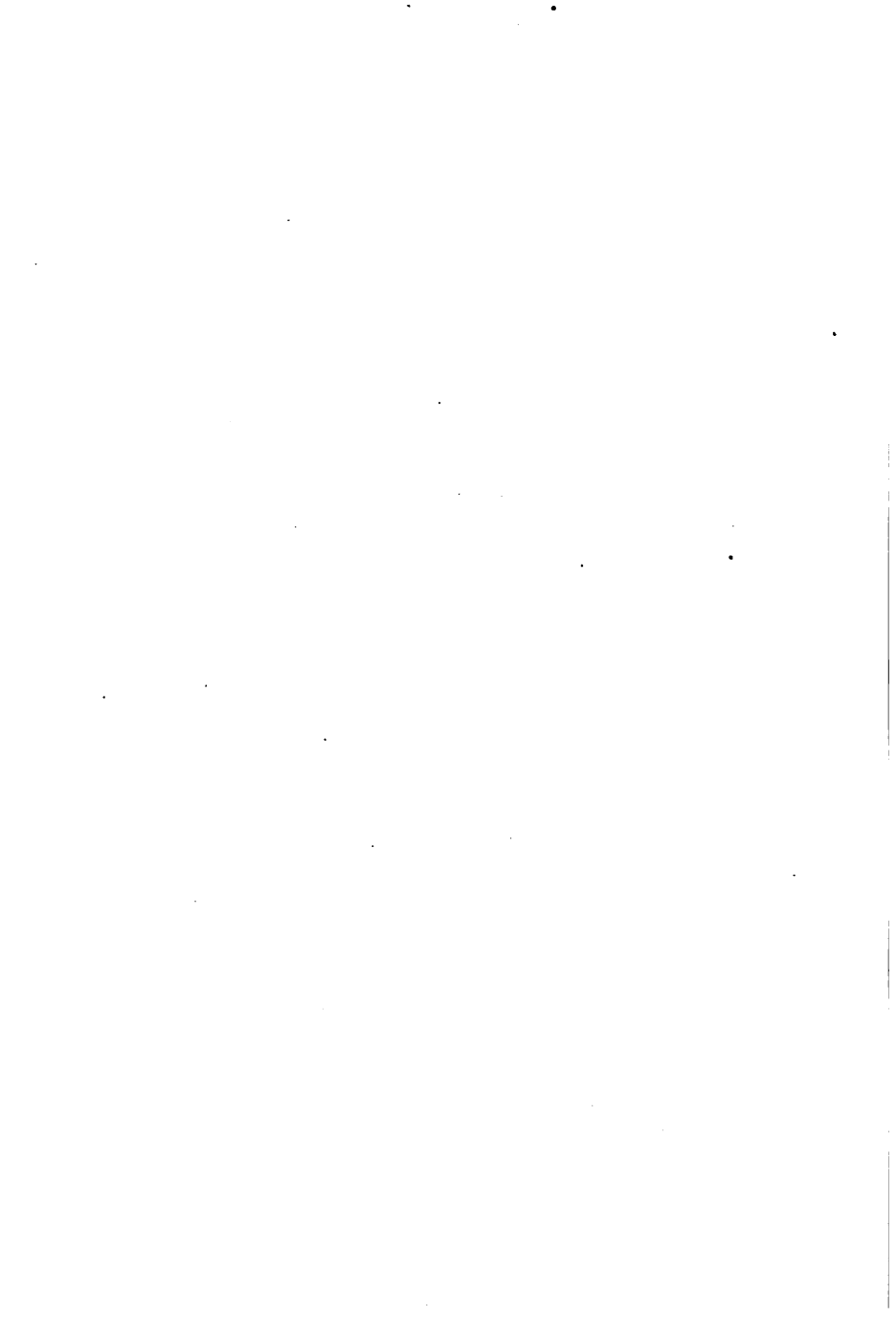
(3) As prep. with acc.: *to*, used only with names of persons and βασιλεύς, *king of Persia*. XXII, XXIV, XXVI, XXVIII, XXXV.  
ὥς = οὕτως. οὐδ' ὥς: *not even thus, i. e. not even under these circumstances*.

ὥσπερ, rel. adv.: *just as, as, as if, like*. XLI.

ὥστε, conj.: *so that, so as, therefore*, with indic. or inf. § 147. XII.

ὀφείλον: *I ought*, used in wishes; see § 586.





# ENGLISH INDEX

Supplementary to the Table of Contents, pp. 11-15.

References are to sections.

- Accent, 12-19; of  $\bar{a}$ -stems, 94, 95; of  $\bar{o}$ -stems, 57-59, 61; of monosyllables of the consonant declension, 189; of verbs, 44; of contracted syllables, 271. *b*, 504, 505.
- Accusative case, summary of uses of, 658.
- Agent, with pass. verb, 390, 458; with verbal in *-tōs*, 478.
- Agreement, rules of, 53. *k*, *i*, *j*, *k*, 71, 135, 285.
- Aorist indic. and inf., meaning of, 84.
- Article, uses of, 54, 89, 143, 281 (footnote 1), 292, 427. See also Attributive position and Predicate position.
- Asking, verbs of, 675.
- Aspiration, 31.
- Attraction of the rel. pron., 285.
- Attributive phrases, 70.
- Attributive position, 67, 69; of poss. adj., 126; of poss. gen., 72; of poss. gen. of reflexive pron., 379; of name of river, 178.
- Augment, 77-79; verbs with irreg., 674.
- Breathings, 3, 19.
- Compound verbs, 128-132.
- Conditional rel. protases, 248, 400, 417, 418.
- Conditions, summary of forms of, 668.
- Contraction, principles of, 271. *a*, 353. *a*, 498, 504, 507, 508, 516, 517, 528, 552.
- Correlative pronouns and adverbs, 638.
- Crisis, 30.
- Dative case, summary of uses of, 660.
- Deponent verbs, 316.
- Deponent pass. verbs, 389; list of, 673.
- Diacresis, mark of, 19. *a*.
- Double questions, 362, 363.
- Elision, 29.
- Enclitics, 21, 103-105, 305.
- Euphonic rules: see Rules of euphony.
- Genitive case, summary of uses of, 659.
- Imperative mood, summary of uses of, 664; meaning of tenses of, 303.
- Indicative mood in dependent clauses, summary of uses of, 661.
- Indirect disc., 110, 156. 1, 260-262, 276, 277, 391, 441, 442, 449, 512, 519. *a*, 520, 530, 531, 546; summary of constructions of, 669.
- Indirect questions, 343-345.
- Infinitive, summary of uses of, 665; tenses of, 84, 110. *a*, 156. 1.
- Liquids, 27.
- Middle voice, 315; some verbs whose meanings change in the, 671.
- Mutes, classes of, 27, 28.
- Negations, emphatic, 428.
- Negative with inf., 98, 110. *e*, 223. *c*; for neg. with other constructions, see  $\mu\eta$  and  $\sigma\theta$  in Greek-Eng. Vocab.
- Numerals, 421.

- Object clenses, after verbs of fearing, 438; after verbs of striving, 535 and *α*.
- Optative mood, summary of uses of, 663; meaning of tenses of, 259.
- Participles, summary of uses of, 666; meaning of tenses of, 214, 441.
- Passive voice expressed by a change of verb, 672.
- Personal endings of verbs, 639.
- Personal use of λέγεται, 391; of δοκέω, 512.
- Predicate position, 68, 69; of dem. pron., 176; of μένος, 192; of πᾶς, 293; of poss. gen. of personal pron., 308.
- Predicate subst. without the art., 107.
- Principal parts of verbs, 485-487.
- Proclitics, 20, 105.
- Prohibitions, 309.
- Purpose, how expressed, 667.
- Questions: see Double questions, Indirect questions, *οὐ* in Greek-Eng. Vocab., and 33.
- Recessive accent, 44.
- Reduplication, 432, 447, 448.
- Result clauses, 147.
- Rules of euphony: *ν* before other consonants, 133; mutes before *σ*, 153; mutes before mutes, 387; mutes before *μ*, 462; *σ* dropped between two consonants, 463.
- Subjunctive mood, summary of uses of, 662; meaning of tenses of, 240.
- Suffixes used in forming nouns and adjectives, 491-496.
- Syllables, division of, 8, 9, 132.
- Synopsis of the *ω*-verb, 482-484.
- Tenses, primary and secondary, 39.
- Thematic vowel, 41.
- Theme of verb, 40.
- Vowel changes in themes, 488-490.
- Wishes, 584-586.

e question  
in Greek

448

ore other  
efore 1;  
387; ne  
ped here

ary of x  
uses of, 2  
nouns 2

132  
-134  
271, 29

2-422

1. Introduction sun & moon.
  2. Erasmus' life & times.
  3. Critical eye & sympathetic attitude
  4. " " scientific advance
- Inherent legacy of each succeeding generation.

ΕΙΣ  
 ΔΟΥ  
 ΤΡΟΙΣ  
 ΤΕΤΤΑΡΕΣ  
 ΠΕΝΤΑ  
 ΕΞ  
 ΕΠΤΑ  
 ΟΚΤΩ  
 ΕΝΔΕΚΑ

UP 6.30 <sup>not</sup>  
B 7.30  
 CH 8.40  
 9-11 at  
 11-12 at  
 12-4 at  
 4-5.30 gm.  
 6-6.45 A  
 7-10 at T

W20 at 4.00

4p 6.30

~~F.T. in W.~~

~~B+~~  
~~B-~~

B-  
C+  
C  
D

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly. ✓

To keep off

Bed  
Up  
break  
8.-  
7.45  
9-11  
11-1  
12-  
4-5  
5.3  
3.4  
3.  
7-  
10

~~DUE FEB -6 '33~~

DUE MAY 31 '38 \*

~~DUE JUN 30 '35~~

DUE OCT -1 1938

~~DUE JUL 13 '35~~

~~DUE AUG 12 '35~~

~~DUE SEP 12 '35~~

~~DUE OCT 14 '35~~

~~DUE OCT 13 '35~~

~~OCT 29 1937~~

2  
6

2

4

4

3

9

